

# **Jesus is Coming QUICKLY!**

**Copyright 2023 Dale A. Beckman, Jr.**

**October 27, 2023**

**<https://TheTrueWay.xyz>   <https://jwjw.org>**

The information in this publication can also be found at:

<https://TheTrueWay.xyz/> or <https://jwjw.org/>

## Contents

[Beware of Groupthink!](#) p.4

[Intelligent Design](#) p.9

[Is the Bible Inspired?](#) p.12

[Be cautious of people who add to scripture](#) p.13

[How to Tell if Someone is a False Prophet or an Apostate](#) p.14

[Should You Test Your Beliefs?](#) p.17

[Meditation and Speculation](#) p.21

[The meanings of the words “God” and “Worship” are very important to understand! A must read!](#) p.23

[Who is the Almighty?](#) p.25

[Who is the Son of the Almighty?](#) p.30

[Who is Satan?](#) p.46

[Who is Abraham?](#) p.50

[Is there life after death?](#) p.54

[Is Michael, Jesus?](#) p.56

[Was Jesus \(Yahshua/Yeshua\) fully human?](#) p.59

[Bible Names and Their Meanings](#) p.64

[The word, “name” can denote authority](#) p.71

[Alpha and Omega](#) p.72

[Who can be rightfully called, “god,” or “God?”](#) p.76

[Isaiah 9:6-7: Who is this, “Mighty God?”](#) p.84

[When Jesus states that he and his father are one, what does that mean?](#) p.86

[What does “God the Father” mean?](#) p.88

[What is the “Holy Spirit?”](#) p.92

[What does “the Son” mean?](#) p.94



[John 1:1c – “the Word was God” or “the Word was a god?” p.98](#)

[What about the term, “I AM?” p.99](#)

[What does it mean to worship, and can someone worship more than one person? p.101](#)

[How Yahweh is shown to be the Lord and Father of Jesus \(Yeshua\) p.106](#)

[Yahweh, Yeshua, and the Holy Spirit – Differences through time p.112](#)

[Who are Christ’s brothers? p.116](#)

[\*\*Revelations from the Original Gospel of Matthew \(OGM\) p.117\*\*](#)

Matt 28:19+ Did the trinitarian formula exist in the original?

Was Mary a virgin?

Did Jesus tell his followers to follow the Pharisees?

What was the “Moses’ seat?”

The 30 pieces of silver

How do we know that the original book of Matthew was written in the Hebrew language?

[The Soul and Spirit p.121](#)

[The Resurrection of the Good and Bad p.126](#)

[Blessings Under the Kingdom of God p.129](#)

[How God’s kingdom will be as it was in ancient times, 24 elders, and white robes p.136](#)

[The Secrets of Jesus Returning! p.147](#)

[Powerful Women of Revelation and Secrets Concerning the “Time of the End.”p.165](#)

[The “Universal Issue” and why did God kill in the past? p.170](#)

[How did ones view Jesus when he was on earth? p.174](#)

[The Sacrifice of Christ \(Yeshua/Jesus\) p.178](#)

[When is Jesus’ Coming and Arrival? p.183](#)

[The Difference Between the Coming and the Arrival of the Kingdom of God p.187](#)

[What happens with Jesus’ coming, arrival, and the end of the age? p.191](#)

[“This generation will not pass away until...” \(Matt. 24:34\) p.199](#)

[Christ’s Bride, Apostasy, and the Great Crowd p.202](#)

[The Faithful and Discreet Slave p.214](#)

[Kingdom Illustrations by Jesus](#) p.217

[The Last Supper and The Value of Jesus' Sacrifice](#) p.228

[What does it mean to be "Born Again" and was Jesus born again?](#) p.237

[The Rich Man and Lazarus. What does it mean?](#) p.238

[What We Can Do and Our Personal Relationship with God](#) p.240

[Jehovah's Organized Heavenly and Earthly Rulership](#) p.243

[Why the Year 1914 Could Not be the Year of Jesus' Kingdom Beginning in Heaven](#) p.245

[Why Satan Did Not Think Humans Would be Better Off Under His Rulership](#) p.253

[Does Faith Need Works?](#) p.266

[Do people need to follow the Mosaic Law or Sabbath, to be saved?](#) p.267

[Are Christians required to be circumcised or follow the Mosaic Law \(+Sabbaths\)](#)p271

[Does someone need to use Jesus' name to be heard by the Almighty?](#) p.275

[A Timeline Interpretation of Prophecy - Jesus' Second Coming and Arrival](#) p.276

[Elijah](#) p.279

[Daniel](#) p.284

Daniel 1 p.286

Daniel 2 p.288

Daniel 3 p.292

Daniel 4 p.293

Daniel 5 p.296

Daniel 6 p.298

Daniel 7 p.300

Daniel 8 p.305

Daniel 9 p.310

Daniel 10 p.311

Daniel 11 and 12 p.312

[Malachi](#) p.317

[Revelation](#) p.321

[Zechariah p.367](#)

[Zephaniah p.371](#)

[Jonah p.372](#)

[Micah p.373](#)

[Amos p.375](#)

[Joel p.376](#)

[Hosea p.377](#)

[Ezekiel p.378](#)

[Lamentations p.387](#)

[Jeremiah p.389](#)

[Isaiah p.398](#)

[Matthew p.421](#)

[John p.429](#)

[The meaning of “baptized for the dead” at 1 Cor.15:29-32 p.433](#)

[Other Prophecy p.435](#)

[Politics and Military p.439](#)

[Marriage p.441](#)

[Points about water baptism p.448](#)

[The book of Enoch p.452](#)

[Personal Comments p.454](#)

## Beware of Groupthink!

Humans as well as other creatures often find feelings of protection, acceptance, and even a lower sense of responsibility when they belong to a group. It is true that if you are a zebra and are in a herd that is being hunted by one lion, your probabilities of being the lion's dinner go down, the larger the group is. But that is not the kind of groupthink that is going to be addressed here.

American Indians used to direct stampeding buffalo over cliffs. The buffalo would generally stampede together, for protection. But what they did not realize is that they were being led to their deaths!

Humans are emotional creatures and usually have strong desires to be protected, accepted, and to minimize personal responsibility. Sad to say, it is a fact that many humans will defy logic or morals to protect the group that they are in, even if it means their death. We see this in almost all politics, business, and religion.

An amazing animation that has groupthink interwoven throughout the story is *Smallfoot* (2018). The main character finds himself at odds with strong held beliefs of his group. He decides to side with integrity, but then changes his mind, and then back again. He is banished for his initial decision to believe differently from the group and undergoes pressure to change his mind. This is, in my mind, a very good lesson and story for all ages.



### But what does this have to do with religion?

For many, religion provides a sanctuary in which *they feel* protected and accepted. This is how it should be. But are they really protected? Where are the spiritual shepherds leading their flocks?

Some might argue that all religions are good. However, that is not what Jesus indicated. He told a group of religious leaders, the Pharisees, that their father was the Devil (John 8:13; 8:44). And

these were the ones who were supposed to be shepherding the flock of the God of Abraham, Yahweh!

[John 8:13; 8:44 \(WEB\);](#)

In a discussion with Jesus, the religious leaders said;

<sup>13</sup> The Pharisees therefore said to him, “You testify about yourself. Your testimony is not valid.”

Jesus replied;

<sup>44</sup> You are of your father, the devil, and you want to do the desires of your father. He was a murderer from the beginning, and doesn’t stand in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaks a lie, he speaks on his own; for he is a liar, and its father.

Jesus also stated that the spiritual shepherds were keeping themselves and their flock from entering the kingdom of God! (Matthew 23:13)

[Matthew 23:13 \(TPT\);](#)

<sup>13</sup> Great sorrow awaits you religious scholars and you Pharisees—such frauds and pretenders! You do all you can to keep people from experiencing the reality of heaven’s kingdom realm. Not only do you refuse to enter in, you also forbid anyone else from entering in!

**Groupthink can be dangerous because not only do the leaders choose to be blinded from the truth, by their own desires, and their followers are too!** This is because *they are following their desires, their emotions, their hearts*. They put these emotional desires of acceptance, protection, and lack of personal responsibility before seeking the truth of God. They are moving, as a herd, thinking that they are protected, but are blind.

**What these unscrupulous groups do not want is for followers to question where they are going.** However, if someone decides to seek the truth of God first, what these groups think will not matter!

It can be an emotionally scary thing, to break away from a group that has provided a sense of acceptance and protection, in the past. But can you imagine if you were a buffalo that broke away from the group? It would have been scary, but you would have lived!

If we were among the group that Jesus spoke of as having the Devil as their father, would we have given what Jesus said some thought, and got out? Or would we have exercised groupthink to protect our own emotional needs? It is much easier to go with the group than to challenge it. This is one reason why Jesus stated that the road leading to everlasting life is narrow in comparison to the road leading to death (Matthew 7:13).

[Matthew 7:13 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>13</sup> Enter in by the narrow gate; for wide is the gate and broad is the way that leads to destruction, and many are those who enter in by it.

It makes one wonder how could those religious leaders actually put Jesus to death, with all the things that they had seen? Logically, it does not make sense, with the exception of the exercise of groupthink, and that type of ill-founded logic leads to death. That is because, in groupthink, people are thinking with ill-placed emotions rather than logic. They allow emotions to block out logic.

**It is mainly because of groupthink, that people refuse to see the simple truth.** They are blind. Until they want to break away, they choose to remain blind. That is why someone could be looking at the truth, right in front of them, and they would refuse to acknowledge it as truth. They would have to fight strongly established emotions, which make them *feel right*. But they do not have the love or desire to hold God above themselves. **They hold the group above God.** Otherwise, why protect it from scrutiny based upon scriptures?

This is why, when trying to show most people logical reasoning that assaults long held beliefs (doctrines), most will not listen. That is because they are part of groupthink. **They allow emotions to overrule common sense.**

When thinking about groupthink, it is much easier to understand [2 Corinthians 4:4 \(AMP\)](#);

<sup>4</sup> among them the god of this world [Satan] has blinded the minds of the unbelieving to prevent them from seeing the illuminating light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God.

Examples of this would be any strongly held doctrine that is protected from close examination by means of God's word by their leaders:

Catholics: Prayers to Mary

Mainstream Christianity: Trinity

Mormons: Baptism for the dead (See the chapter on 1 Cor.15:29)

Jehovah's Witnesses: Doctrine that Jesus began ruling in 1914, over the earth.

## Intelligent Design



There are many reasons for this belief – Especially with how scientists continue to find nature surprisingly more complex than recently believed. This is not a principle subject of this site. However, below are posted some reasons to believe in intelligent design.

As time goes on, scientists are amazed at nature – Especially creatures. But how could these things happen by chance? How is it that eyes of different creatures are different shapes and sizes and yet all focus light with the right size lens and distance from the surface to receive the light? Then the light is translated for the brain to receive and process it! How could a lens create itself by chance? Or, how could the process of converting the light waves into electrical signals and transmitting those signals to the brain to be understood by the brain happen by chance? Evolution can't explain this. But intelligent design can!

If evolutionists believe that it is easy for nature to create a fully functioning cell with all its parts such as mitochondria and chromosomes, not to mention the DNA involved, why haven't scientists created one from scratch yet? If it is so hard to do in the laboratory, how much harder is it in nature?

If someone took all the individual parts of a new car and put them in a big box and shook it for billions of years, do you think that you would ever see a completed car? Let us say, for argument's sake, that the car assembled itself by chance. Now, how long would it take for it to "learn" to reproduce? Absurd! Yet, how much more complex a real-life organism is than a car. That goes to show absurd that the belief that life originated by chance is.



## **Theories based upon evolution are based upon reaction, not pro-action.**

Take [the example of the human eye and its complexity](#). How could the eye “know” to design a flexible biological lens that is structured to automatically focus light waves onto rods and cones onto the back of the eye? And then to turn the wavelengths of light into signals to be transported to the brain? Then to deliver the signals to the correct regions of the brain so that you can understand what you are reading at this very moment? That could not happen by chance or reaction.

[The octopus has a brain for each of its arms](#)

[A desert beetle’s shell is designed so that it distills moisture from the air and the water from the air is channeled to its mouth](#)

[There is a creature that can change crystals in its skin cells to reflect different colors of light](#)

- Evolution (the teaching of things happening by chance) can’t explain how the skin cells of this chameleon “evolved” to “know” how to space themselves in order to reflect different wavelengths (colors) of light. How would a cell know how to change the distance between crystals to reflect a certain wavelength (color) of light?

[There’s a creature that has eye lenses made of rock and it continually replaces them](#)

## **Epigenetics:**

This is a “newer” branch of science which basically studies what directs a gene to “express” itself. As an example: How does a gene express itself to “know” how to form an ear or a heart or a lens of an eye? And how does it “know” how to interconnect with other parts? Our entire body is made of the same genes. We have the same genes in our hair that we do in our veins or toes or ear drums or bones. What has scientists amazed and wondering is how the genes “know” how to express themselves in such complex ways so as to create all these body parts which are so different and yet work so well together. Scientists seem to be afraid to speculate on how many different “recipes” there could be. Certainly, in the millions.

The same genes that make up our lungs make up an eye lens. But how could the lens “know” how to be “transparent” to allow light through and at the correct angle? It is not glass or plastic like our glasses. And how could the rods and cones (made of the same genes) “know” how to convert the light colors into different electrical signals? And how could the optic nerve “know” how to transport the signals let alone transport them to the correct places in the brain? And how did the genes “know” how to create themselves into a brain that could receive the signals from the optic nerves? And how does the brain “know” something is pleasant or not pleasant to view? Not to mention how the brain understands emotions, morals, or how to read this!

## **Genetics:**

There is a web site that helps explain the [human genome project](#). A very interesting finding is that some scientists thought that man would have around 130,000 to 150,000 genes “because man is so much more complex.” However, as time went on, many scientists were stunned to find



that humans have between 20,000 and 25,000 genes! A small roundworm has 20,000 genes! So, how can it be that a small roundworm can have just about as many genes as a human? That is where Epigenetics comes in. But with this additional “layer” of complexity, random happenings just cannot happen as explained by current theories of evolution.

Some references are: TIME magazine Jan. 18, 2010 [\*“Why Your DNA isn’t your destiny”\*](#) and [Perceptions of Epigenetics](#)

## Is the Bible Inspired?



In a short time, all questions will be answered with no room for doubt. Prophecy will be fulfilled.

The scriptures are inspired. I base this upon prophetic fulfillment and how the bible agrees throughout, even though it was put together over the span of a couple thousand years. There are some who say it doesn't agree with itself, but I believe that those critics have not investigated all the possibilities of why something was stated as it was. Even the apostle Paul stated that some of his written thoughts were his opinions and "not the Lord's." (1 Corinthians 7:12) That is one reason why it is so important to read the context of a verse. That enables one to get a better understanding of the passages.

There is also the case for prophetic fulfillment in the past and recent history.

It is a sad thing but sometimes true when some lose faith in the scriptures due to the hypocrisy of many religious leaders who are supposed to represent the teachings of the scriptures.

Some people have been indoctrinated that the scriptures can't be true. And they see no reason to seek other opinions. But as mentioned earlier, as time goes on, all the questions will be answered for everyone on earth regarding many fundamental questions such as: Are the scriptures true or is there a God?

I personally immensely appreciate how the book of Revelation along with Daniel tie all the prophecies in the bible together, although being written hundreds of years apart. It is done in a cryptic way, but I hope that once you understand it, it may amaze you as it did me. I personally believe that Revelation is the most amazing book ever inspired! It has been so cleverly put together and it ties so much together covering multiple time periods and prophecies, It is the work of a "genius of geniuses!"

## **Be cautious of people who add to scripture.**

Would you like to buy a beautiful home only to find it broken down inside? Many churches make their teachings appear beautiful. But upon close inspection, the teachings are not from God at all, but from men. It can take courage to test doctrines, especially one's own beliefs. But how else can someone know if they are worshipping God properly?

Religious institutions adamantly protect their teachings. They protect them from being tested against God's word. They do not want to lose members or their money. Some may not add to scripture, but they will not remove false scriptures either, due to the fear of losing credibility and members.

But it is important to ask oneself if God would be upset if teachings were checked. Of course not! But men might be! So, who do you want to please, God or man? If God knew that you were seeking his truth, don't you think that it would make him proud?

A suggestion is to start out with a scripture that can be proven to have words added to it to support the trinity doctrine. I suggest to read carefully the chapter on [The Original Gospel of Matthew](#) and look for comments on Matthew 28:19.

Does your religion strive for and teach about the original passages and their meanings? If not, be careful and be as the Bereans were. They checked the teachings of the Apostle Paul by using scripture. [Acts 17:11](#)

May you be blessed and have God's guidance, as you seek his truth!

## How to Tell if Someone is a False Prophet or an Apostate

Some feel that because someone speaks something different than they believe that they are an apostate or are in the wrong. Some feel that “independent” thinkers are apostates too. But just because someone believes or thinks or speaks differently does not mean that they are apostatizing against God. Jesus was certainly an “independent” and dangerous speaker, when viewed from the crooked religious leader’s viewpoint, in the first century. He was even called a ruler of the Demons by some ([Mark 3:22](#))! Even some of Jesus’ relatives had thought that Jesus had lost his mind ([Mark 3:21](#))! But Jesus did not look to the religious leaders of his day for direction, but he looked to his spiritual father, Yahweh (Jehovah God). Jesus challenged the religious traditions of his day by showing that they were traditions of man – not God’s. So, it is good for us today to test our beliefs against scripture. Are they really from man or God? That is the difference between blind faith and true faith. Do we test what we hear and know?

[Deuteronomy 18:20-22](#): Sayings of prophets – how to view – false prophets to die.

[Psalms 139:21,22](#) Hatred toward those hating Yahweh. This needs to be coupled with a desire for them to turn around as mentioned in Ezekiel 33:11. Hate the action not the person.

**It is important to realize that Jesus stated that we are to love our enemy and his Father mentioned in Ezekiel that he doesn’t want the wicked to die but to turn around. [Ezekiel 33:11](#); [Matthew 5:43-45](#)**

[Isaiah 9:16-17](#) God’s people as “all apostates” – showing need of correction. This does not mean that they started off that way or that they cannot turn around.

1. Compare [Isaiah 14:1-7](#); [Ezekiel 16:62,63](#) to see how Jehovah forgives his repentant people who have apostatized against him. This is ample proof to those who think that apostasy is an “unforgivable” sin – Good thing, because all of God’s people are considered apostates, in this passage!

[Jeremiah 9:23-24\(NOG\)](#):

<sup>23</sup> This is what *Yahweh* says:

Don’t let wise people brag about their wisdom.

Don’t let strong people brag about their strength.

Don’t let rich people brag about their riches.

<sup>24</sup> If they want to brag, they should brag that they understand and know me.

They should brag that I, *Yahweh*, act out of love, righteousness, and justice on the earth.

This kind of bragging pleases me, declares *Yahweh*.

[Jeremiah 17:13](#): ones leaving Jehovah as apostates.

[Jeremiah 23](#) : Jehovah against false prophets

**Jeremiah 28:9** When the word of the prophet comes true the prophet whom Jehovah has sent in truth will become known.

**Jeremiah 28:11-17** Hananiah's false prophesy meant her death – she caused Jehovah's people to trust in a falsehood.

**Ezekiel 3:7** Israel (as an apostate) will not want to listen to Jehovah's prophets (in principle)

**Ezekiel 3:18** Prophet blood-guilty if does not warn.

**Amos 3:7**: Jehovah will not do anything until he reveals matters to his prophets.

**Luke 21:8** referring to Jesus speaking to his disciples; “He said: Look out that YOU are not misled; for many will come on the basis of my name, saying, ‘I am he,’ and, ‘the due time has approached.’ Do not go after them.”

The key here is to know what God's word supports and what it does not. God's word is 100% true and no false scriptural teaching can stand up to it. Remember what **Daniel 11:32b** says about those who prevail for our day: “But as regards the people who are knowing their God, they will prevail and act effectively.”

**Acts 17:11(WEB)** <sup>11</sup> Now these were more noble than those in Thessalonica, in that they received the word with all readiness of mind, examining the Scriptures daily to see whether these things were so. // Only by carefully examining the sacred scriptures and using sound reason, can one tell if what they hear is based upon God's word or not.

**Acts 20:29-30(WEB)** <sup>29</sup> For I know that after my departure, vicious wolves will enter in among you, not sparing the flock. <sup>30</sup> Men will arise from among your own selves, speaking perverse things, to draw away the disciples after them. // Here is recorded what the apostle Paul mentioned to true worshippers of Jehovah in his day. He told them to watch out for these “oppressive wolves.” How can one tell who these are today? – By checking what they say against the sacred scriptures.

**Romans 16:17(WEB)** <sup>17</sup> Now I beg you, brothers, look out for those who are causing the divisions and occasions of stumbling, contrary to the doctrine which you learned, and turn away from them. // The key thought here is “contrary to the doctrine” of what they had learned from the sacred scriptures.

**2 John 9-10(AMP)** <sup>9</sup> Anyone who runs on ahead and does not remain in the doctrine of Christ [that is, one who is not content with what He taught], does not have God; but the one who *continues* to remain in the teaching [of Christ does have God], he has both the Father and the Son. <sup>10</sup> If anyone comes to you and does not bring this teaching [but diminishes or adds to the doctrine of Christ], do not receive *or* welcome him into your house, and do not give him a greeting *or* any encouragement. // All need to check their current beliefs to see whether or not they have been taught things that are not scriptural. Many beliefs today have gone astray from scriptural backing. It is important to check teachings that are new to us, just as the Bereans did, as mentioned in Acts 17:11.

**Jesus warned that there would be many false Christ's** and he said to make sure that we would not be misled. ([Matthew 24:4-5](#)) Daniel shows us that “the people that are knowing their God they will prevail and act effectively.” ([Daniel 11:32](#)) And [2 Corinthians 13:5](#) admonishes Christians to keep testing whether they are in the faith so that they are not disapproved somehow. So, we can see that accurate knowledge is critical. And the source of this knowledge is the scriptures – not a man-made organization or publication.

*Everything needs to be tested.*

*Truth does not fear being tested but lies do!*

### **Refuting some who will (or already do) claim to be Jesus:**

Jesus stated himself that “the sign of the Son of man **will appear in heaven**, and then all the tribes of the earth will beat themselves in lamentation, and they will see the Son of man coming on the clouds of heaven **with power and great glory**.” ([Matthew 24:29-30](#)) *Everyone* on earth will know. No one will have to be shown because it will be evident to all!

Some “false Christs” may twist scripture and refer to when Jesus mentioned that the kingdom would not come with striking observableness and that is why everyone does not know of them (the one professing to be Christ) yet. (Luke 17:20) This is only true for the first century, not our day. Jesus continues on to explain to his disciples that later on, when the Son of Man is to be revealed, on his arriving back, everyone will know, as one sees lightning traverse the sky ([Luke 17:20-25 WEB](#))

<sup>20</sup> Being asked by the Pharisees when God's Kingdom would come, he answered them, “God's Kingdom doesn't come with observation; <sup>21</sup> neither will they say, ‘Look, here!’ or, ‘Look, there!’ for behold, God's Kingdom is within you.”

<sup>22</sup> He said to the disciples, “The days will come when you will desire to see one of the days of the Son of Man, and you will not see it. <sup>23</sup> They will tell you, ‘Look, here!’ or ‘Look, there!’ Don't go away or follow after them, <sup>24</sup> for as the lightning, when it flashes out of one part under the sky, shines to another part under the sky; so will the Son of Man be in his day. <sup>25</sup> But first, he must suffer many things and be rejected by this generation.

## Should You Test Your Beliefs?

**YES! YES! YES!**

If you are afraid to, be careful, you just might find yourself being human! It is human nature to want to feel comfortable with what we believe. [We like stability not confusion.](#)

However, confusion is a natural response of the mind when established thoughts are challenged. It is natural. The brain is trying to figure something out. So, if we find ourselves confused when challenging “spiritual” doctrine by using scripture, constantly look for established facts – Not manmade doctrine. Confusion is not necessarily an indicator of a lack of faith, but it can be an indicator that you have the strength to confirm your beliefs as being based upon the scriptures. And that is certainly commendable!

Some mathematicians can be confused while trying to figure out mathematical answers. But they don’t allow confusion to stop them! They continue searching for the answer.

Here are some questions with some answers to consider:

1. If you were taught for years about a doctrine, would you be comfortable testing it against scriptures even if it meant you might get confused for a time? Perhaps not. As mentioned earlier, we naturally avoid confusion. But if one is looking for the truth in scripture, hopefully they will have greater love for God’s word than for any imperfect spiritual leader or even themselves! Even if it means some confusion for a time until things get reasoned out. Is it proper to love yourself less than God who gave us life? So, confusion can be rightly expected although not really wanted. But it shows God that we are willing to search for him, even if it means our being uncomfortable for a time. How do you think God would view you doing this?
2. What if the ones teaching scriptures had great respect from their congregation and possibly you too? Would that be a valid reason to excuse them from being tested by scripture? What do you think God would say?
3. Are the religious leaders’ opinions so great that they are above testing by God’s word? What do they say?
4. What would you think if a religious leader told you that he was qualified to understand but you were not? Does that mean he has authority over you to keep you from testing his thoughts? What do you think God would say about that?
5. If the religious leaders feel that they have “the truth” should they be afraid to have their doctrines tested by the scriptures? If they were afraid to have their doctrines tested, what do you think they would do to protect their doctrines?
6. If a religious leader claimed that their doctrine is bible based and so did not need to be tested, would that statement excuse the doctrine from being tested against inspired scripture?

7. Would there be any excuse not to test the teachings of a religious leader alive or dead? Who is your religious leader or mentor? Who do you love more, God or man?
8. Joseph Smith? (Mormons)
9. Charles T. Russel? (Bible Students)
10. Governing Body? (Jehovah's Witnesses)
11. Martin Luther? (Lutherans)
12. The Pope? (Catholics)
13. John Smyth? (Baptists)
14. Chief Rabbi? (Jews)

***Truth doesn't mind being tested but lies do!***

Here are some scriptures that can help us to have a correct viewpoint regarding the testing of doctrines against the word of God:

1. [\*\*2 Corinthians 13:5-6\(WEB\)\*\*](#) states; “<sup>5</sup> Examine your own selves, whether you are in the faith. Test your own selves. Or don't you know about your own selves, that Jesus Christ is in you? —unless indeed you are disqualified. <sup>6</sup> But I hope that you will know that we aren't disqualified.”
2. Notice that this was the apostle Paul who wrote this. He was encouraging the continual self-checking of one's religious beliefs.
3. Paul did not tell the congregation that they did not have to check scriptures and that only he was qualified to teach or understand them.
4. This also shows that some beliefs can be “disapproved.” So, it gives further reason for those who really love God to continually check their beliefs by using scripture.
5. Notice that in verse 6, Paul hopes that by their testing their beliefs they will see that he (and possibly referring to other leaders of the Christian congregation back then) is not disapproved. Religious leaders have no good excuse to tell others not to check what they are being taught! They should encourage it as Paul did!
6. [\*\*Revelation 2:2\(WEB\)\*\*](#) Here Jesus himself commends the congregation of Ephesus. They tested teachings of those claiming to be apostles.
  - <sup>2</sup> “I know your works, and your toil and perseverance, and that you can't tolerate evil men, and have tested those who call themselves apostles, and they are not, and found them false.
7. Do you know of any who claim to be modern day apostles or leaders of Jesus? It is proper to test what they claim by using scriptures and they should not resist but welcome



it – But they might fight being tested, if they are deceivers. If they are, they are opposing God’s will just as Satan does. So, who is their “father?”

8. [Acts 17:11-12\(WEB\)](#)<sup>11</sup> Now these were more noble than those in Thessalonica, in that they received the word with all readiness of mind, examining the Scriptures daily to see whether these things were so. <sup>12</sup> Many of them therefore believed also of the prominent Greek women, and not a few men.
  1. Here Luke writes about the commendable actions of the ones in Berea when they were visited by Paul and Silas. They checked the scriptures to test what they were hearing! And it was Paul and Silas who were teaching them! So, it is a commendable thing to check what one is being taught! And it is a commendable thing for the ones teaching to encourage others to check what they are being told by using scripture!
9. Many teachers today will refer to older ones that are held in high esteem by some and will base their teachings on their ancestor “Father’s” teachings rather than going back to the inspired scriptures themselves. This is sad because they are basing their teachings on men rather than going to the bible to guide their worship.
  1. One example of this are ones called the “apostolic fathers” who were not of the apostles, but they are thought to have had personal contact with them. But just because they may have had personal contact with the apostles, does that mean that their teachings are correct? Does that excuse their teachings from being tested by scripture? There are many who have had personal contact with the apostles, but does that make their teachings “approved?” Take the example of Nicolaus mentioned in **Revelation 2:6,15,16**. He was a teacher of false doctrine during the time of the apostles. Just because Nicolaus probably knew the apostles does not mean that his teachings were acceptable to Jesus. In fact, Jesus hated his teachings. Jesus mentions about the Ephesian congregation; “(6) Still, you do have this, that you hate the deeds of the sect of Nicolaus, which I also hate.” Jesus then mentions about the congregation in Pergamum; “(15) So you, also, have those holding fast the teaching of the sect of Nicolaus likewise. (16) Therefore repent. If you do not, I am coming to you quickly, and I will war with them with the long sword of my mouth.”
  2. Another example is Jezebel who was misleading Jesus’ slaves. Here Jesus is talking about the congregation in Thyatira. It is noteworthy that the words used here for fornication and adultery can refer to a literal or spiritual meaning or both. Spiritual fornication can be likened to idolatry or false worship. **Revelation 2:20-22**; “Nevertheless, I do hold [this] against you, that you tolerate that woman Jezebel, who calls herself a prophetess, and she teaches and misleads my slaves to commit fornication and to eat things sacrificed to idols. (21) And I gave her time to repent, but she is not willing to repent of her fornication. (22) Look! I am about

to throw her into a sickbed, and those committing adultery with her into great tribulation, unless they repent of her deeds.”

Here are some scriptures that show the apostles themselves warned of apostate teachings – And some of it would come from those taught by them!

1. [2 Thessalonians 2:1-3\(WEB\)](#); Now, brothers, concerning the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ and our gathering together to him, we ask you <sup>2</sup> not to be quickly shaken in your mind, and not be troubled, either by spirit, or by word, or by letter as if from us, saying that the day of Christ has already come. <sup>3</sup> Let no one deceive you in any way. For it will not be, unless the rebellion comes first, and the man of sin is revealed, the son of destruction.
  1. There is a lot of information here. Paul wrote this in about 51 CE. But to keep on subject, notice that it was stated that “the apostasy comes first.” This would make sense because **Daniel 11:35** talks about a cleansing or whitening work that is done to God’s people for our very near future (See the chapter *When is Jesus Coming?*). It can be easily figured that if God’s people were already serving him properly, they would not need to be cleansed.
  2. Some might say, “Hey! The thought of this site is that *Jesus is coming quickly!* So how can anyone put faith in what it says?” Well, notice that the scripture did not say it would not happen – So it must happen sometime. But the scripture also states not to be quickly shaken from reason. It implies to test what you hear! It also states that it is coming but other things must happen first. Hopefully, many will discern that the day of God is very near, and it will soon be here!
2. Some teachers say that only they can understand scriptural passages because of their experience or “wisdom.” But do not let that thought from men fool you into thinking that you cannot have even more wisdom than they have! **God says himself that he will give wisdom to all those who ask him! God is a vastly superior source then any imperfect man or organization!**

[James 1:5](#) “So, if any one of YOU is lacking in wisdom, let him keep asking God, for he gives generously to all and without reproaching; and it will be given him.”

Feel free to ask God for wisdom and show it by studying his word – The inspired scriptures!

In conclusion, it is a proper and critical to test doctrines. The apostle Paul encouraged it and Christ never turned away people who sincerely asked questions.

## Meditation, Speculation, and Freeness of Speech

**Speculation** can be a healthy part of **meditation**. In fact, it can sometimes be hard to meditate deeply on a subject without speculating. Meditation and speculation are good as long as they are based upon good intentions.

According to THE RANDOM HOUSE DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE (Second Edition Unabridged), “speculate” is defined as “1. to engage in thought or reflection; meditate (often fol. by *on, upon,* or a clause). 2. to indulge in conjectural thought. // The definition of “speculation” is given as: “1. the contemplation or consideration of some subject: *to engage in speculation on humanity’s ultimate destiny.*”

**Freedom of speech**, religiously speaking, is simply to be free to search for and speak about the word of God, with no fear of man (Compare [Ephesians 3:8-13](#)). To have this freedom, individuals love God more than man. Seekers of truth do not allow rules of man or an organization to hinder their searching for truth of God. Those who use their speech to share with others the truths that they have found are free from the influence of the Devil, in that regard. [2 Corinthians 4:4 \(ASV\)](#); “in whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of the unbelieving, that the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God, should not dawn *upon them.*” The Devil has blinded the minds of the unbelievers. Organizations and people who do not allow the testing of their doctrines or look down on or punish those who do, are struggling to hinder truth seekers and freedom of speech. They are doing the Devil’s work by hindering the truth from shining. If an organization or person “has the truth,” why should they be afraid to have their doctrines tested by others openly? Just like a con-artist, they don’t want to be caught. Their doctrine is based upon falsehood. **Ephesians 5:9,10 (Interlinear Bible)** encourages all to keep on making sure of what is acceptable; “For the fruit of the spirit is in all goodness and righteousness and truth, (10) proving what is well-pleasing to the lord.” ([Eph.5:9-10 NIV](#), [Romans 12:2 RSV](#))

### [Proverbs 3:5-6\(WEB\)](#)

<sup>5</sup> Trust in Yahweh with all your heart,  
and don’t lean on your own understanding.

<sup>6</sup> In all your ways acknowledge him,  
and he will make your paths straight.

The original scriptures are correct and should be the first and only thing to look toward as being the word of Yahweh. Due diligence is required to examine the oldest available manuscripts, to avoid translation mistakes and fraudulent changes. The inspired scriptures can “explain themselves” by diligent study – This is part of the seeking the righteousness of Yahweh (Psalms 14:2-3 below) It can be safely said that Yahweh provided the scriptures to be understood to the extent that he would allow, and he encouraged his people to be taught by them. The sayings of Yahweh are pure. This language is straight and true.

### [Psalms 14:2-3\(WEB\)](#)

<sup>2</sup>Yahweh looked down from heaven on the children of men,  
to see if there were any who understood,  
who sought after God.

<sup>3</sup>They have all gone aside.  
They have together become corrupt.  
There is no one who does good, no, not one.

To seek Jehovah's insight, we need to test our beliefs and way of life upon his word and rely on that above all else. See [Daniel 11 comments \(verses 33-35\)](#).

### [Proverbs 18:15\(WEB\)](#)

The heart of the discerning gets knowledge.  
The ear of the wise seeks knowledge.

### [2 Corinthians 1:9\(WEB\)](#)

Yes, we ourselves have had the sentence of death within ourselves, that we should not trust in ourselves, but in God who raises the dead.

### **Jeremiah 17:5-8(WEB)**

<sup>5</sup>Yahweh says:

“Cursed is the man who trusts in man,  
relies on strength of flesh,  
and whose heart departs from Yahweh.

<sup>6</sup>For he will be like a bush in the desert,  
and will not see when good comes,  
but will inhabit the parched places in the wilderness,  
an uninhabited salt land.

<sup>7</sup>“Blessed is the man who trusts in Yahweh,  
and whose confidence is in Yahweh.

<sup>8</sup>For he will be as a tree planted by the waters,  
who spreads out its roots by the river,  
and will not fear when heat comes,  
but its leaf will be green,  
and will not be concerned in the year of drought.  
It won't cease from yielding fruit.

Lovers of God will seek God's truth even if they have opposition. They will not stop, no matter what any man or organization says or does. This is because they love God more than men. They put their full trust in God. God looks for such ones. [2 Chronicles 16:9a \(ASV\)](#), “For the eyes of Jehovah run to and fro throughout the whole earth, to show himself strong in the behalf of them whose heart is perfect toward him.”

## **The meanings of the words “God” and “Worship” are very important to understand! A must read!**

This has been placed towards the top of the table of contents, because of the importance of understanding what the words “God” and “worship” mean.

These are studied more in depth with the cited scriptures below, on other pages of this site: ([Who can be called “God?”](#)) and ([What does it mean to worship?](#))

### **“God”**

There’s only one Almighty God ([Yahweh/Jehovah](#))

There are other Gods mentioned in the Bible. Some have been given authority from Yahweh and others are false.

[Yeshua](#) (Jesus) quoted Psalms 82:1-6 where Yahweh called the **human judges** of ancient Israel “gods.”

Yahweh also made **Moses** “God” before Pharaoh (Exodus 7:1).

The apostle Paul at 2 Corinthians 4:4 calls **Satan** the god of this world.

Thomas called **Yeshua** “my God!” at John 20:28.

Yahweh commands that the names of **false gods** not even be mentioned among his people at Exodus 23:13 ([Bible names and their meanings](#))

It is apparent that the word “God” indicates that someone has been given great authority from Yahweh. It is ok to call Yeshua (Christ) “God,” as Thomas did, with the understanding that he is not the Almighty God. Certainly, as Yahweh calls some humans “gods,” in the past, he did not sin but set a precedent. It does not mean that the humans, Satan, or Yeshua, are equal to Yahweh, the Almighty God, just because they are called gods.

It is also apparent that humans can make their own gods, even money. But they are false gods.

### **“Worship”**

Many people think that the word worship only means to render sacred service. But it has another meaning which is to render homage, meaning to show special respect.

In all the Bible, only Yahweh the Almighty is shown both types of worship. Only sacred worship was shown to Yahweh (Jehovah).

Examples:

In ancient Israel, during the coronation of David's son Solomon, it is written that all Israel fell down and worshipped Solomon and Yahweh. However, only sacred worship such as sacrifices were given to Yahweh. (1 Chronicles 29:20-21 (ASV))

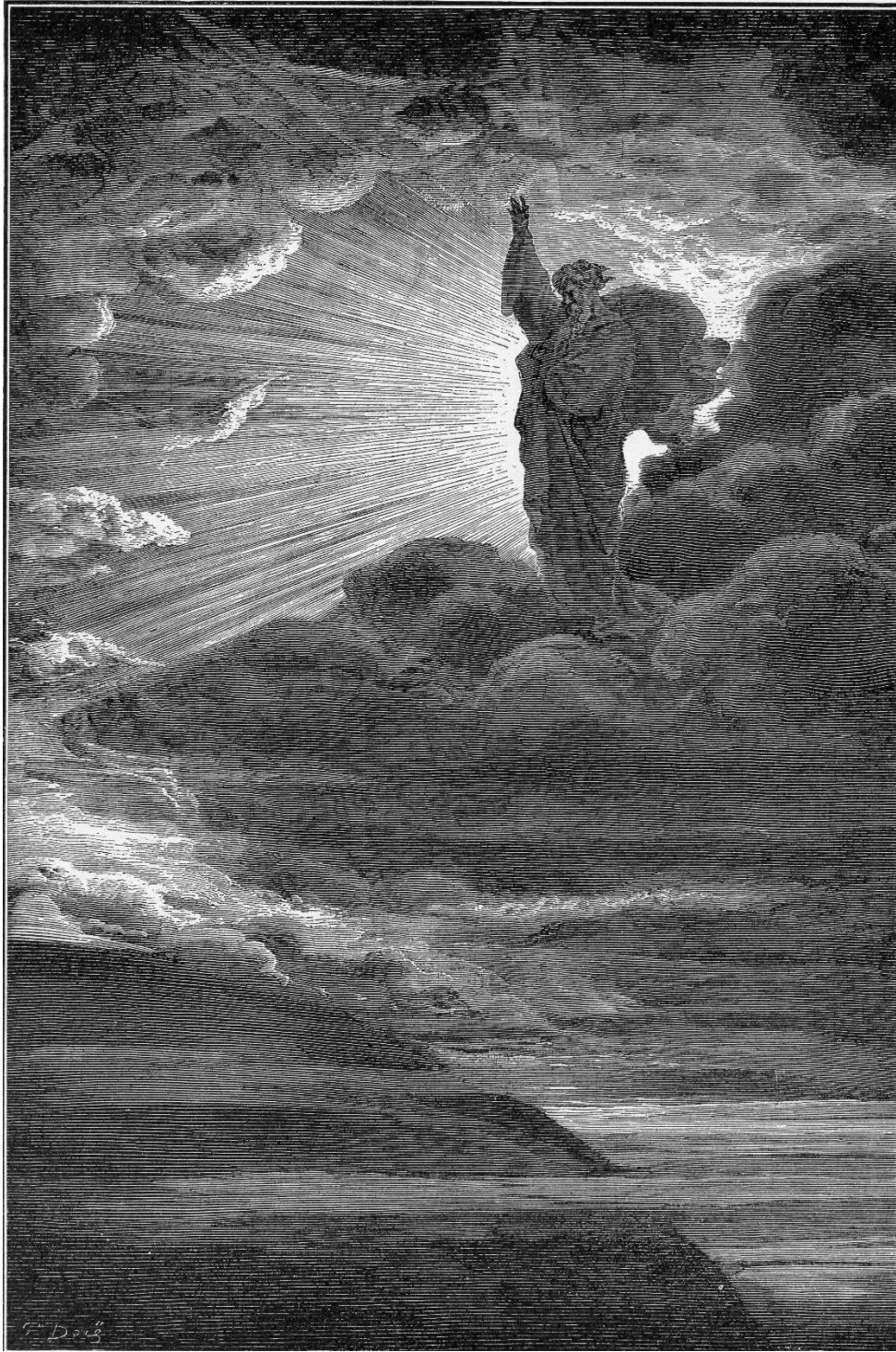
King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon (Worshipped) paid homage to the prophet David to show respect to his God (Yahweh). (Daniel 2:46 (WEB))

Wise men (Worshipped) showing homage to Yeshua. (Matthew 2:11 (YLT))

In Revelation 7:9-12 shows the Lamb (Yeshua) in heaven and separately, Yahweh on the throne. Sacred worship is only shown to the Almighty, Yahweh (A.K.A. Jehovah). Nowhere is sacred worship shown to the lamb.

From the example above, one can worship Yeshua with the understanding that it is homage and not sacred worship. Sacred worship belongs to Yahweh alone.

## Who is the Almighty?



The Almighty creates the heavens and earth.



## Who is the Almighty?

His name is commonly known as “Jehovah” or “[Yahweh](#).” He is the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob

### [Exodus 3:15 \(NLT\)](#):

<sup>15</sup> God also said to Moses, “Say this to the people of Israel: Yahweh, the God of your ancestors—the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob—has sent me to you.

### [Exodus 3:15 \(HCSB\)](#):

<sup>15</sup> God also said to Moses, “Say this to the Israelites: Yahweh, the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, has sent me to you. This is My name forever; this is how I am to be remembered in every generation.

Interestingly, his name has been found on [a small lead tablet, dated to approximately 1200 BCE](#).

[Psalms 83:18](#); “That people may know that you, whose name is Jehovah, You alone are the most high over all the earth.”

This name, “Jehovah,” is not the original spelling or pronouncing of this name. But neither are the commonly known names, “Jesus,” “Jeremiah,” or “Jerusalem.” However, we use the common spelling and pronouncing of these and other names so that we can identify individuals and places.

The name “Yahweh” (a.k.a. Jehovah) is found in whole or part about 7,000 times in the scriptures! It is the most widely placed name in the scriptures. Many translations have taken the name out and replaced it with the title “LORD” in capital letters. Why? Did they think that the Almighty made a mistake when he originally had it placed there? It was God’s intention to have it there!! Some translations claim to follow the Jewish practice of the removing of the name. But it is obvious that anyone who replaces God’s name with a title is attempting to usurp what God had originally planned. Who wants the removal of God’s name? God or Satan? It is clear from the above scripture of Exodus 3:15 that Yahweh wants his name to be known!

Yahweh wants to have his name memorialized among the nations and to have the names of other God’s not mentioned – See [Bible Names and Their Meanings](#)

[Psalms 148:1-5](#); “Praise Jah, YOU people! Praise Jehovah from the heavens, Praise him in the heights. (2) Praise him, all YOU his angels. Praise him, all YOU his army. (3) Praise him, YOU sun and moon. Praise him, all YOU stars of light. (4) Praise him, YOU heavens of the heavens, And YOU waters that are above the heavens. (5) Let them praise the name of Jehovah; For he himself commanded, and they were created.”

1. How can people praise Jehovah if they are not told his name or if the name has been removed from some translations? Who would do this? One thing is for certain, Satan



does not want to praise Jehovah (more on that later). So, anyone who hinders praise to Jehovah – like removing his name – is serving Satan’s interests.

**Proverbs 1:7** “The fear of Jehovah is the beginning of knowledge...” This “fear” is a respectful fear, and it is important. Will someone obey or listen to someone that they do not respect?

**2 Chronicles 16:9a**; “As regards Jehovah, his eyes are roving about through all the earth to show his strength in behalf of those whose heart is complete toward him.” This does not say that Jehovah is looking for only the smartest, richest, or the poorest. Jehovah is simply looking for those whose heart is complete toward him. Could someone’s heart be complete toward Jehovah if they were involved with false worship? How about if they did not care to test their doctrines to see if they were approved of, according to God’s word?

**Daniel chapter 4** is about the Babylonian king Nebuchadnezzar being humbled by the Most High. He becomes haughty and declares that it is because of himself alone that his kingdom was so great. (Daniel 4:30) But he is humbled by the Most High. For seven years he lost his mind. (Daniel 4:31-33) But after the time period, he began to get his senses back (Daniel 4:34-37) and he realizes about God that those who are walking in pride he is able to humiliate. He also realizes that the Most High is Ruler in the kingdom of mankind, and that to the one whom he wants to he gives it. (vs.32)

1. We can conclude that the Most High answers to no one (vs. 35) and that he can place and remove kings at his own will. (vs.35)
2. The Most High is referring to Jehovah for multiple reasons. Especially is this so when compared to Psalm 83:18 where it states that Jehovah alone is the Most High.
3. **Daniel chapter 5** tells of an event where there is a hand that writes a message on a wall during a feast of Belshazzar the son (descendant) of Nebuchadnezzar. This event is well known as, “the hand writing on the wall.” Daniel interprets the message for the king in verses 26-28. The message was that God had numbered the kingdom and had finished it. Belshazzar had been weighed in the balances and was found deficient. His (Belshazzar’s) kingdom had been divided and given to the Medes and the Persians. Belshazzar died that very night. (vs.30) And his kingdom was given to Darius the Mede. (vs.31)
4. **Daniel 7:21,22,26**; “I kept on beholding when that very horn made war upon the holy ones, and it was prevailing against them, (22) until the Ancient of Days came and judgment itself was given in favor of the holy ones of the Supreme One, and the definite time arrived that the holy ones took possession of the kingdom itself. (26) And the Court itself proceeded to sit, and his own rulership they finally took away, in order to annihilate [him] and to destroy [him] totally.” The Ancient of Days is the Almighty, Jehovah. One reason is because it is his court and judgment that determines the end of a rulership, by an opposer of God (Satan). This rulership is given to the holy ones of the Supreme One who are figured as the “Bride of Christ” and Jesus. This is a rulership over all the kingdoms of the earth. Compare **Daniel 2:44**. This transfer of rulership happens at Jehovah’s time of judgment, in our near future. This transfer of kingdom rulership is also mentioned

in **Revelation 11:15**, “The kingdom of the world did become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ, and he will rule as king forever and ever.” Compare **Zechariah 3** in which Jehovah cleanses and appoints ones of his choosing. He takes orders from no one. Notice how in the accounts at Matthew and Luke chapters 4 that Jesus does not dispute Satan’s claim to have authority over the kingdoms of the world. He received that authority before he turned bad.

5. In Daniel 10 and elsewhere, Michael is mentioned. Many people believe Michael to be Jesus. Interestingly, Michael is mentioned as being one of the foremost princes and, “the prince of YOU people,” not a king or the Most High. (**Daniel 10:13,21; 12:1**) I bring this up because some believe that Michael is the Most High. But a “foremost prince” is not “the Most High.” The Most High is Jehovah. Interestingly, it is only after Michael takes a stand, that blessings begin with the resurrection of the righteous and unrighteous. Compare **Daniel 12:1,2; John 5:25-29**. See the chapter on *Is Michael, Jesus?*
6. **Ezekiel 34:23-31**: Jehovah raises up his servant David over his sheep and then brings blessings. This is a futuristic “David,” as the original king David, son of Jesse, had died of the time of the writing of this passage.
7. **Ezekiel 37:24**: Jehovah makes his servant “David” king.
8. **Isaiah 42:1,6,7**; “Look! My servant, on whom I keep fast hold! My chosen one, [whom] my soul has approved! I have put my spirit in him. Justice to the nations is what he will bring forth. (6) I myself, Jehovah, have called you in righteousness, and I proceeded to take hold of your hand. And I shall safeguard you and give you as a covenant of the people, as a light of the nations, (7) [for you] to open the blind eyes, to bring forth out of the dungeon the prisoner, out of the house of detention those sitting in darkness.” It is Jehovah who chooses his servant, protects him, and creates a covenant that involves his servant who is Jesus – For the sake of mankind! (Compare **Luke 1:26-33; 3:21,22; 22:29**)
9. **Jeremiah 23:5**; “Behold, the days come, says Jehovah, that I will raise to David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and act wisely, and shall do justice and righteousness in the earth.” – The Interlinear Bible
10. **Psalms 110:1**; “The utterance of Jehovah to my Lord is: ‘Sit at my right hand until I place your enemies as a stool for your feet.’” Jehovah is placing enemies as a stool for David’s Lord. It was David who was inspired to write this. So, who would be David’s Lord? This would be Jehovah’s servant, Jesus. It is Jehovah who places these enemies in a position of subjugation. Compare **Psalms 2; Luke 20:41-44; Matthew 22:41-45**.



The Almighty inviting his Son to rule the earth – **Psalms 2; 110:1,2.**

In conclusion, we can see that it is Jehovah that has the ultimate authority. Jesus and Satan have authority given to them too, but they still must answer to Jehovah.

## Who is the Son of the Almighty?

**The Son of the Almighty is commonly known as Jesus (Yeshua or Yahshua), Christ, or the Messiah.**

Many have misconceptions of Jesus which are based upon man's beliefs rather than solid proof from God's word. Do not let the ideas of man blind you into using your own mind with scriptures! God wants all of us to turn to him, not man – And that includes ourselves! Do we have the courage to test our beliefs against scripture? Hopefully, yes!

Just as the name "Jehovah" or "Jeremiah" or "Jerusalem" is pronounced, "Jesus" is not commonly pronounced or spelled as it was originally. The name Jesus is "Yeshua or Yahshua," in Hebrew. The name spelled "Yahshua" is probably the closest to the original Hebrew. For one thing, the letter "J" was not even used back then! Today, someone's name may be spelled differently or be pronounced differently in different parts of the world, but the important thing is that we know who we are talking about.

[Many believe that Jesus is Michael at Daniel 12:1.](#) See the chapter Is Michael, Jesus?

[Jesus \(Yahshua\) called his God, "Father" and God called Jesus, his Son.](#)

1. [John 14:28](#) "The Father is greater than I am" Jesus is speaking here.
2. [John 20:17](#) "I am ascending to my Father and your father and to my God and your God."
3. [Luke 3:21-22](#) "Now when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized and, as he was praying, the heaven was opened up and the holy spirit in bodily shape like a dove came down upon him, and a voice came out of heaven: 'You are my Son, the beloved: I have approved you.' "

Jesus (Yeshua or Yahshua) is called "[my Son](#)" by God and is approved by him.

[Acts 10:38](#) "Jesus who was from Nazareth, how God anointed him with holy spirit and power, and he went through the land doing good and healing all those oppressed by the Devil."

Jesus was anointed by Yahweh

1. [Galatians 4:4](#) "When the full limit of the time arrived, God sent forth his Son, who came to be out of a woman."
2. God's Son was sent by God.
3. [Luke 3:23-38](#) traces Jesus' earthly lineage back to king David (vs.31) and even all the way to God. (vs.38)
4. [Psalms 110:1](#) "The utterance of Jehovah to my Lord is: 'Sit at my right hand until I place your enemies as a stool for your feet.'" It is Jehovah who places enemies "as a stool" for David's "Lord." It was David who was inspired to write this. So, who would be David's

Lord? This would be Jehovah's servant, Jesus. – Compare [Matthew 22:41-45](#); [Mark 12:35-37](#); [Luke 20:41-44](#)

5. [Ezekiel 34:23-31](#) “And I will raise up over them one shepherd, and he must feed them, even my servant David. He himself will feed them, and he himself will become their shepherd. (24) And I myself, Jehovah, will become their God, and my servant David a chieftain in the midst of them. I myself, Jehovah, have spoken...”

Jehovah (Yahweh) raises up his servant “David” as king (Who would be Jesus (Yahshua)) over his sheep and then brings blessings. Remember that the book of Ezekiel was written after the literal king David's death.

[Ezekiel 37:24-25](#) “And my Servant David will be king over them, and one shepherd is what they will all come to have.... (25) ...to time indefinite, and David my servant will be their chieftain to time indefinite.” – Compare [Daniel 2:44](#) where it shows God's kingdom to rule to time indefinite.

It is Jehovah (Yahweh) who chooses his servant, protects him, and creates a covenant that involves his servant. This servant is Jesus (Yahshua).

1. [Isaiah 42:1,6-7](#) “Look! My servant, on whom I keep fast hold! My chosen one, [whom] my soul has approved! I have put my spirit in him. Justice to the nations is what he will bring forth. (6) “I myself, Jehovah, have called you in righteousness, and I proceeded to take hold of your hand. And I shall safeguard you and give you as a covenant of the people, as a light of the nations, (7) [for you] to open the blind eyes, to bring forth out of the dungeon the prisoner, out of the house of detention those sitting in darkness.” (Compare [Luke 22:29](#))
2. [Isaiah 52:13 – 53:12](#) Prophecy concerning Jehovah's servant who was to carry the “sin of many people.” He is noted as being “crushed” and “pierced” for our transgression and errors. He is also noted as “severed from the land of the living ones.” (vs.8)

[Luke 1:26-33](#) “In her sixth month the angel Gabriel was sent forth from God to a city of Galilee named Nazareth, (27) to a virgin promised in marriage to a man named Joseph of David's house; and the name of the virgin was Mary. (28) And when he went in before her he said: ‘Good day, highly favored one, Jehovah is with you.’ (29) But she was deeply disturbed at the saying and began to reason out what sort of greeting this might be. (30) So the angel said to her: ‘Have no fear, Mary, for you have found favor with God; (31) and, look! you will conceive in your womb and give birth to a son, and you are to call his name Jesus. (32) This one will be great and will be called Son of the Most High; and Jehovah God will give him the throne of David his father, (33) and he will rule as king over the house of Jacob forever and there will be no end of his kingdom.’ “

**Jehovah (Yahweh) gives the nations to his Son, Jesus (Yahshua).** This passage will happen soon. This happens when the events of [Daniel 12:1](#) and [Revelation 11:15](#) occur.



The nations are admonished to “kiss” the son. And in so doing, they would be showing their submission.

Notice how in verse 2 of Psalms 2, that the kings of the earth have figuratively massed together as one against Jehovah and his anointed one. This time period refers to **Revelation 16:16** as “Har-Mageddon” or “Armageddon.” The nations have been misled into pitting themselves against the Almighty and His Anointed Son. However, the nations still have a chance to show submission as brought out at **Psalms 2:10-12**. (Compare the book of Jonah where the wicked city of Nineveh was given the opportunity to repent and be spared.)

By “kissing the son” the nations show servitude to Jehovah via Jesus because “the son” (Jesus) was placed (anointed) in the position by Jehovah. So, in reality it shows that there is nothing wrong with serving (also known as ministering or worshiping) Jehovah and Jesus at the same time. (Compare **1 Chronicles 27:1** where a total of 288,000 were ministering / serving to the king David. This word “ministering” has been translated from the Hebrew word “sharath” (Strong’s 8334) meaning “to attend as a menial or worshiper.” Compare **Ezekiel 20:32** where this word is also used to show worship to “wood and stone.” However, David did not receive sacred service as though he was Jehovah, but he was Jehovah’s anointed king for his people.)

**Psalms 2:1-12** “Why have the nations been in tumult and the national groups themselves kept muttering an empty thing? (2) The kings of the earth take their stand and high officials themselves have massed together as one Against Jehovah and against his anointed one, (3) [Saying:] ‘Let us tear their bands apart And cast their cords away from us!’ (4) The very One sitting in the heavens will laugh; Jehovah himself will hold them in derision. (5) At that time he will speak to them in his anger And in his hot displeasure he will disturb them, (6) [Saying:] ‘I, even I, have installed my king Upon Zion, my holy mountain.’ (7) Let me refer to the decree of Jehovah; He has said to me: ‘You are my son; I, today, I have become your father. (8) Ask of me, that I may give nations as your inheritance and the ends of the earth as your own possession. (9) You will break them with an iron scepter, as though a potter’s vessel you will dash them to pieces.’ (10) And now, O kings, exercise insight; Let yourselves be corrected, O judges of the earth. (11) Serve Jehovah with fear and be joyful with trembling. (12) Kiss the son, that he may not become incensed, And YOU may not perish [from] the way, For his anger flares up easily. Happy are all those taking refuge in him.”

### **Satan tries to tempt Jesus.**

This temptation would not have been a temptation if it was a lie.

Jesus did not have the authority or glory of the nations. It was not delivered to him at that time but apparently it was delivered to Satan by the Most High. This occurred before Satan sinned.

**Luke 4:5-8** “So he brought him up and showed him all the kingdoms of the inhabited earth in an instant of time; (6) and the Devil said to him: ‘I will give you all this authority and the glory of them, because it has been delivered to me, and to whomever I wish I give it. (7) You, therefore, if you do an act of worship before me, it will all be yours.’ (8) In reply Jesus said to him: ‘It is

written, “It is Jehovah your God you must worship, and it is to him alone you must render sacred service.” “ (Compare **Matthew 4:1-11**)

**Revelation 11:15**; “And the seventh angel blew his trumpet. And loud voices occurred in heaven, saying: ‘**The kingdom of the world did become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ, and he will rule as king forever and ever.**’ “

This is yet to happen, and it is explained in further detail later. See Daniel 7

This “kingdom of the world” is currently Satan’s, but it will become Jesus’ shortly. This point of time that is described here is specific on what happens before it and after it. But for now, the point is clear – Authority is passed to Jesus as referred to as his “Christ.”

**Revelation 1:1** “A Revelation by Jesus Christ, which God gave him, to show his slaves the things that must shortly take place...” Jesus received this “revelation” from God.

**Genesis 3:15** “And I shall put enmity between you and the woman and between your seed and her seed. He will bruise you in the head and you will bruise him in the heel.”

This is Jehovah talking to Satan about his seed and the woman’s (Eve) seed (offspring), Jesus. Jesus has already been bruised in the “heel” by being put to death in the first century. Satan has yet to be destroyed. This can also be viewed in a larger scale. That is, all those who side with Jehovah and all those who do not.

**Revelation 19:11-21** Here is mentioned the one who is seated upon a white horse and is called the “Word of God.” Also, a “sharp long sword” protrudes out of his mouth that he may “strike the nations with it.” He will also shepherd them. Upon his outer garment, he has a name written “King of kings and Lord of lords” This is the time where any people who do not submit to him are destroyed. (Compare Psalms 2 comments) This is “Harmageddon” or as some know it, “Armageddon.” This is also known as the “great evening meal of God.” (vs.17) This rider is Jesus. This is because of the descriptions and where this falls in the prophetic time-lines and prophesies.

**Revelation 21:1-4(CJB)** This is where it states that the “tent” of God is with mankind and it speaks of blessings such as death and mourning being done away with. This “tent” protects mankind. These are blessings brought by Jehovah through his appointed son and servant Jesus.

Then I saw **a new heaven and a new earth**,<sup>[a]</sup> for the old heaven and the old earth had passed away, and the sea was no longer there. <sup>2</sup> Also I saw the holy city, New Yerushalayim, coming down out of heaven from God, prepared like a bride beautifully dressed for her husband. <sup>3</sup> I heard a loud voice from the throne say, “See! God’s *Sh’khinah* is with mankind, **and he will live with them. They will be his people, and he himself, God-with-them, will be their God.**<sup>[b]</sup> <sup>4</sup> He will wipe away every tear from their eyes. There will no longer be any death; and there will no longer be any mourning, crying or pain; because the old order has passed away.”

**Jesus, the first to be resurrected, is victorious!** Compare **Isaiah 25:8**; **Psalms 44:23**; **Rev. 1:5-7**; **5:5, 9-12**







There are many other scriptures that talk of Jesus (Yahshua). Here are some of the principles and ways that Jehovah (Yahweh) is going to transfer the kingdom of the world to Jesus and what that entails. This kingdom transfer will be discussed in more detail later. Another example of a kingdom transfer is recorded at [Daniel 5:26-28](#).

Here are some scriptures that can be used with some of the above scriptures to show **when the Messiah was to appear on earth in the first century** and what he was to endure:

**Daniel 9:25** gives us a time-line in which to tell when the Messiah was to appear: “And you should know and have the insight [that] from the going forth of [the] word to restore and to rebuild Jerusalem until Messiah [the] Leader, there will be seven weeks, also sixty-two weeks. She will return and will be actually rebuilt, with a public square and moat, but in the straits of the times.”

1. This is part of a prophetic 70 weeks as mentioned in **verse 24**.
2. Jerusalem was desolate at the time of this delivered message to Daniel.
3. We know that it was not referring to literal human weeks because there was no Messiah appearing literally 69 weeks “from the going forth of [the] word to restore and to rebuild Jerusalem.”
4. The “going forth of [the] word to restore and to rebuild Jerusalem” is an interesting phrase. Because exactly when does “going forth of the word” start? I believe that people even in the first century did not exactly know. Because many were in anticipation of the Messiah, but it seemed that no one really knew the exact date. [Compare John 4:4-42](#) where the woman at the well told Jesus that the Messiah was coming. This could have been partly due to not having a clear definition of this term “going forth.” Was it when the order was given? Would that indicate a “going forth of the word?” Or was it when the order was in transport to Jerusalem or when it arrived there? We do know the approximate time the order was given and we have an idea on how long the order took to be delivered. In any case, it appears that this time period of 69 weeks started in or around 455 BCE.
5. How long is each “week?” And so when did he appear? Well, a week is 7 days long. So, one could say that the Messiah was to appear 483 (69\*7) prophetic days after the “going forth of the word to restore and rebuild Jerusalem.” Again, we know that these are not literal days because nothing of the sort happened back then. But if we apply the principle of “a day for a year” ([Ezekiel 4:6](#)) and adjust 1 year because there is no “zero” year then we end up with the year 29 CE. This is when Jesus was baptized by John. ([Luke 3:21](#)) And **Luke 3:22** it states; “and the holy spirit in bodily shape like a dove came down upon him, and a voice came out of heaven: “You are my Son, the beloved; I have approved you.” [Compare John 4:25-26](#)
6. In **Daniel 9:26** tells us that the Messiah would be cut off; “And after the sixty-two weeks Messiah will be cut off, with nothing for himself. And the city and the holy place the

people of a leader that is coming will bring to their ruin. And the end of it will be by the flood. And until [the] end there will be war; what is decided upon is desolations.”

7. This 62 weeks happens before the seven weeks. The time period of the prophesy totals “70 weeks.” Although verse 25 states the “seven” weeks first, verse 26 makes the order of the events clear.
8. **Daniel 9:27a** mentions; “And he must keep [the] covenant in force for the many for one week; and at the half of the week he will cause sacrifice and gift offering to cease.”
  1. This is a period of seven years but it talks about “sacrifice and gift offering to cease” in the middle of the week. This would correlate with the time of Jesus giving his life as a perfect ransom sacrifice – A bit more than three years since being baptized by John. Temple sacrifices were no longer needed because Jesus presented his blood and body as a perfect sacrifice. (Compare [Isaiah 53](#); [Luke 22:19-20](#))
  2. The end of this week correlates with God’s spirit being poured out upon Gentiles as recorded in [Acts 10:30-48](#). This was in agreement with [Amos 9:12](#) and other scriptures such as [Isaiah 56:1-7](#); [Ezekiel 47:21-23](#); compare [Isaiah 45:20-25](#). Compare also how literal circumcision was required in the Abrahamic covenant but Cornelius was a Gentile (Uncircumcised) and yet he was one of the first Gentiles to receive God’s spirit. This was the end of the “one week.” Compare [Acts 6:8](#); [Genesis 17:3-14](#)
  3. Some claim that this week is split in a way so that there is about a 2,000-year gap between the first and second parts. But this reasoning is not in harmony with the prophetic day of “a day for a year” ([Ezekiel 4:6](#)) for the entire vision. And it would conflict with other prophesies. So, there is no solid scriptural basis to split it up like that.
  4. This is a hotly contested passage among some. Regardless, if a teaching does not have solid scriptural evidence to back it up, it cannot be claimed to be solidly based upon God’s word. One could claim it to be a possibility but should not claim it to be certain. Only ones that are searching for their own righteousness will do that. They would not be searching for Jehovah’s righteousness. We need to be careful that we do not trust in a man’s word just because of who they are. But we need to remember to continually test teachings by using scripture. See [Should you test your beliefs?](#)

**Jesus was not just in the Almighty’s mind as non-existent as some believe but he existed with glory before coming to the earth:**

[Micah 5:2](#): Jesus’ origin is from “early times.”

But you, Bethlehem Ephrathah,  
being small among the clans of Judah,

out of you one will come out to me that is to be ruler in Israel;  
whose goings out are from of old, from ancient times.

**Luke 13:34**: Jesus wanted to protect Jerusalem as a hen protects her chicks, but they did not want it. He was talking about the distant past.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, you who kills the prophets and stones those who are sent to her! How often I wanted to gather your children together, like a hen gathers her own brood under her wings, and you refused!

**John 6:62**: Jesus was going to ascend to where he was before. He was not a thought.

Then what if you would see the Son of Man ascending to where he was before?

**John 8:42, 56-58(ASV)**: Jesus existed before Abraham.

<sup>42</sup> Jesus said unto them, If God were your Father, ye would love me: for I came forth and am come from God; for neither have I come of myself, but he sent me.

<sup>56</sup> Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day; and he saw it and was glad. <sup>57</sup> The Jews therefore said unto him, Thou art not yet fifty years old, and hast thou seen Abraham? <sup>58</sup> Jesus said unto them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Before Abraham was born, I am.

**John 16:7**: The terms “send” or to be “sent” does not mean that what is sent is from memory. Here Jesus sends “the comforter” to help his disciples. It does not say the Almighty was going to send himself or part of himself. It could be likened to a king sending an emissary who is his representative. The emissary is not the king but is on a mission from the king. This is brought up to confront the mislead idea that Jesus only existed in the Almighty’s mind before coming to the earth. Compare **Matthew 15:24**

**John 17:3-5, 18, 24**: Jesus was sent and had glory alongside God before the world was. It does not say that he was part of God such as only existing in the Almighty’s mind. What’s more glorious? A thought or reality?

**1 Corinthians 15:28**: In heaven, and after his death on earth, Jesus subjects himself to God. He doesn’t become part of God like in his mind just as he wasn’t just in God’s mind before he came to earth.

When all things have been subjected to him, then the Son will also himself be subjected to him who subjected all things to him, that God may be all in all.

**1 Corinthians 11:3**: Jesus’ head is God, as man’s head is Christ.

**Galatians 4:4**: God sent his Son to us to be under the Law.

But when the fullness of the time came, **God sent out his Son**, born to a woman, **born under the law**.

**Jesus had inherited (Adam’s curse) sinful flesh from his human mother and father, Mary, and Joseph, yet was sinless to the Law.**

Comments: Most Christians have been taught that Jesus (Yeshua) was physically perfect, and that Joseph had nothing to do with his birth. There are problems with these teachings. Did you know that [the original gospel of Matthew](#) stated that Joseph was Jesus’ father? Also, The Jews past down inheritance rights through the male side. How could Jesus (Yeshua) have legitimately inherited the kingly rule without Joseph?

[Matthew 1:1 \(WEB\):](#)

1 “The book of the genealogy of Jesus Christ, **the son of David**, the son of Abraham.”

[Luke 1:30-33 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>30</sup> The angel said to her, “Don’t be afraid, Mary, for you have found favor with God. <sup>31</sup> Behold, you will conceive in your womb and give birth to a son, and shall name him ‘Jesus.’ <sup>32</sup> He will be great and will be called the Son of the Most High. **The Lord God will give him the throne of his father David,** <sup>33</sup> and he will reign over the house of Jacob forever. There will be no end to his Kingdom.”

Matthew 21:1-9 (See also [Mark 11:7-11](#) and [Luke 19:28-38](#)) shows us how there was no dispute regarding his right to rule as a descendant of king David. If there was any doubt, why isn’t there any efforts written in the New Testament to explain how Christ was in the line of king David, if his only father was Yahweh? Why would Matthew have male lineage showing his right to rule but leave out Joseph? It doesn’t make sense, the teaching that Christ was born of a virgin. It also contradicts the above scriptures, which show that Jesus (Yeshua) had Joseph as a father and Yahweh.

[Matthew 21:1-9 \(WEB\):](#)

21 When they came near to Jerusalem and came to Bethsphage, to the Mount of Olives, then Jesus sent two disciples, <sup>2</sup> saying to them, “Go into the village that is opposite you, and immediately you will find a donkey tied, and a colt with her. Untie them and bring them to me. <sup>3</sup> If anyone says anything to you, you shall say, ‘The Lord needs them,’ and immediately he will send them.”

<sup>4</sup> All this was done that it might be fulfilled which was spoken through the prophet, saying,

<sup>5</sup> “Tell the daughter of Zion,  
behold, your King comes to you,  
humble, and riding on a donkey,  
on a colt, the foal of a donkey.” [Zechariah 9:9](#)

<sup>6</sup> The disciples went and did just as Jesus commanded them, <sup>7</sup> and brought the donkey and the colt and laid their clothes on them; and he sat on them. <sup>8</sup> A very great multitude spread their clothes on the road. Others cut branches from the trees and spread them on the road. <sup>9</sup> The multitudes who went in front of him, and those who followed, kept shouting, “**Hosanna to the**

**son of David!** Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord! Hosanna in the highest!” [Psalm 118:26](#)

[Mark 11:7-10 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>7</sup> They brought the young donkey to Jesus, and threw their garments on it, and Jesus sat on it. <sup>8</sup> Many spread their garments on the way, and others were cutting down branches from the trees, and spreading them on the road. <sup>9</sup> Those who went in front, and those who followed, cried out, “Hosanna!<sup>[a]</sup> Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord! Psalm <sup>10</sup> **Blessed is the kingdom of our father David that is coming in the name of the Lord!** Hosanna in the highest!”

**How could Jesus (Yeshua) nail sin to the stake (cross) if he was physically perfect?** Some believe that Yeshua is Yahweh so couldn't have inherited imperfection. But that belief is false.

[Romans 8:3 \(WEB\)](#): <sup>3</sup> For what the law couldn't do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God did, sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh and for sin, he condemned sin in the flesh;

[2 Corinthians 5:21 \(WEB\)](#): <sup>21</sup> For him who knew no sin he made to be sin on our behalf; so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.

How could he be like his brothers in every way if he was physically perfect? He couldn't. This gives us even more appreciation for his suffering, understanding, and more appreciation for his father's wisdom!

How could he be physically perfect, with an imperfect mother (as most believe)? Some would say that Jesus is God Almighty (which he is not) and that by becoming human it erases any imperfection. But if that was true, why not have both Jacob and Mary his parents, solidifying his inheritance to the throne? The answer is simple. God Almighty, the Father, sent his son to be in the offspring of Joseph and Mary and naturally inherited sin and death from Adam and the legal kingship through Joseph. When it came to the Mosaic Law, Jesus (Yeshua) was perfectly obedient, the only human to do so. Following his heavenly father's will, he willingly sacrificed himself for mankind. He sacrificed himself for the sins of mankind. He approached his Father in the heavens with the value of perfect obedience to death. It was at this time that his father fulfilled the oath to make him a priest in the manner of Melchizedek. Christ had conquered death. The Law paved the way for someone to obey perfectly and that someone was Christ. It was a legal opportunity. There was no way to legally establish someone righteous from the days of Adam to Moses. The Law brought forth many ways to transgress and ways to offer sacrifices for atoning for sins. Everyone needed atonement (sacrifice) for sins, except Christ. As Paul mentioned, Christ was the “Last Adam” in the sense that Christ had legally and undeniably undone the hold of the curse (wage) of imperfection/sin brought forth by the act of disobedience of Adam. One act of disobedience against one act of perfect obedience. Where the one act of disobedience sent mankind into sin and death, one act of obedience provides mankind opportunity for everlasting life. This is how mankind's sins have been forgiven.

[Hebrews 2:14-18 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>14</sup> Since then the children have shared in flesh and blood, he also himself in the same way partook of the same, that through death he might bring to nothing him who had the power of death, that is, the devil, <sup>15</sup> and might deliver all of them who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage. <sup>16</sup> For most certainly, he doesn't give help to angels, but he gives help to the offspring of Abraham. <sup>17</sup> Therefore he was obligated in all things to be made like his brothers, that he might become a merciful and faithful high priest in things pertaining to God, to make atonement for the sins of the people. <sup>18</sup> For in that he himself has suffered being tempted, he is able to help those who are tempted.

[Hebrews 4:14-16 \(NIV\):](#)

<sup>14</sup> Therefore, since we have a great high priest who has ascended into heaven, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold firmly to the faith we profess. <sup>15</sup> For we do not have a high priest who is unable to empathize with our weaknesses, but we have one who has been tempted in every way, just as we are—yet he did not sin. <sup>16</sup> Let us then approach God's throne of grace with confidence, so that we may receive mercy and find grace to help us in our time of need.

[Hebrews 5:1-10 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>5</sup> For every high priest, being taken from among men, is appointed for men in things pertaining to God, that he may offer both gifts and sacrifices for sins. <sup>2</sup> The high priest can deal gently with those who are ignorant and going astray, because he himself is also surrounded with weakness. <sup>3</sup> Because of this, he must offer sacrifices for sins for the people, as well as for himself. <sup>4</sup> Nobody takes this honor on himself, but he is called by God, just like Aaron was. <sup>5</sup> So also Christ didn't glorify himself to be made a high priest, but it was he who said to him,

“You are my Son.

Today I have become your father.” [Psalm 2:7](#)

<sup>6</sup> As he says also in another place,

“You are a priest forever,

after the order of Melchizedek.” [Psalm 110:4](#)

<sup>7</sup> He, in the days of his flesh, having offered up prayers and petitions with strong crying and tears to him who was able to save him from death, and having been heard for his godly fear, <sup>8</sup> though he was a Son, yet learned obedience by the things which he suffered. <sup>9</sup> Having been made perfect, he became to all of those who obey him the author of eternal salvation, <sup>10</sup> named by God a high priest after the order of Melchizedek.

[Hebrews 7:26-28 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>26</sup> For such a high priest was fitting for us: holy, guiltless, undefiled, separated from sinners, and made higher than the heavens; <sup>27</sup> who doesn't need, like those high priests, to offer up sacrifices daily, first for his own sins, and then for the sins of the people. For he did this once for all, when

he offered up himself. <sup>28</sup> For the law appoints men as high priests who have weakness, but the word of the oath which came after the law appoints a Son forever who has been perfected.

[John 1:29 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>29</sup> The next day, he saw Jesus coming to him, and said, “Behold, the Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world!

[John 1:34 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>34</sup> I have seen, and have testified that this is the Son of God.”

[1 Peter 1:18-19 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>18</sup> knowing that you were redeemed, not with corruptible things, with silver or gold, from the useless way of life handed down from your fathers, <sup>19</sup> but with precious blood, as of a lamb without blemish or spot, the blood of Christ,

[1 Peter 2:22 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>22</sup> who didn’t sin, “neither was deceit found in his mouth.” [Isaiah 53:9](#)

[Exodus 12:5 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>5</sup> Your lamb shall be without defect, a male a year old. You shall take it from the sheep or from the goats.

[John 10:7-18 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>7</sup> Jesus therefore said to them again, “Most certainly, I tell you, I am the sheep’s door. <sup>8</sup> All who came before me are thieves and robbers, but the sheep didn’t listen to them. <sup>9</sup> I am the door. If anyone enters in by me, he will be saved, and will go in and go out, and will find pasture. <sup>10</sup> The thief only comes to steal, kill, and destroy. I came that they may have life, and may have it abundantly. <sup>11</sup> I am the good shepherd. [Isaiah 40:11](#); [Ezekiel 34:11-12,15,22](#) The good shepherd lays down his life for the sheep. <sup>12</sup> He who is a hired hand, and not a shepherd, who doesn’t own the sheep, sees the wolf coming, leaves the sheep, and flees. The wolf snatches the sheep, and scatters them. <sup>13</sup> The hired hand flees because he is a hired hand, and doesn’t care for the sheep. <sup>14</sup> I am the good shepherd. I know my own, and I’m known by my own; <sup>15</sup> even as the Father knows me, and I know the Father. I lay down my life for the sheep. <sup>16</sup> I have other sheep, which are not of this fold. [Isaiah 56:8](#) I must bring them also, and they will hear my voice. They will become one flock with one shepherd. <sup>17</sup> Therefore the Father loves me, because I lay down my life, [Isaiah 53:7-8](#) that I may take it again. <sup>18</sup> No one takes it away from me, but I lay it down by myself. I have power to lay it down, and I have power to take it again. I received this commandment from my Father.”

[Matthew 5:17-18 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>17</sup> “Don’t think that I came to destroy the law or the prophets. I didn’t come to destroy, but to fulfill. <sup>18</sup> For most certainly, I tell you, until heaven and earth pass away, not even one smallest letter or one tiny pen stroke shall in any way pass away from the law, until all things are



accomplished.” **Compare [John 19:30 \(CJB\)](#):** <sup>30</sup> After Yeshua had taken the wine, he said, “It is accomplished!” And, letting his head droop, he delivered up his spirit.

[John 3:16-17 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>16</sup> For God so loved the world, that he gave his one and only Son, that whoever believes in him should not perish, but have eternal life. <sup>17</sup> For God didn’t send his Son into the world to judge the world, but that the world should be saved through him.

[Romans 5:7-8 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>7</sup> For one will hardly die for a righteous man. Yet perhaps for a good person someone would even dare to die. <sup>8</sup> But God commends his own love toward us, in that while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us.

[Romans 5:12-17 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>12</sup> Therefore as sin entered into the world through one man, and death through sin; so death passed to all men, because all sinned. <sup>13</sup> For until the law, sin was in the world; but sin is not charged when there is no law. <sup>14</sup> Nevertheless death reigned from Adam until Moses, even over those whose sins weren’t like Adam’s disobedience, who is a foreshadowing of him who was to come. <sup>15</sup> But the free gift isn’t like the trespass. For if by the trespass of the one the many died, much more did the grace of God, and the gift by the grace of the one man, Jesus Christ, abound to the many. <sup>16</sup> The gift is not as through one who sinned; for the judgment came by one to condemnation, but the free gift came of many trespasses to justification. <sup>17</sup> For if by the trespass of the one, death reigned through the one; so much more will those who receive the abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness reign in life through the one, Jesus Christ.

[Romans 5:18-21 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>18</sup> So then as through one trespass, all men were condemned; even so through one act of righteousness, all men were justified to life. <sup>19</sup> For as through the one man’s disobedience many were made sinners, even so through the obedience of the one, many will be made righteous. <sup>20</sup> The law came in that the trespass might abound; but where sin abounded, grace abounded more exceedingly; <sup>21</sup> that as sin reigned in death, even so grace might reign through righteousness to eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.

[Romans 6:8-10 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>8</sup> But if we died with Christ, we believe that we will also live with him; <sup>9</sup> knowing that Christ, being raised from the dead, dies no more. Death no longer has dominion over him! <sup>10</sup> For the death that he died, he died to sin one time; but the life that he lives, he lives to God.

[Hebrews 9:11-15 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>11</sup> But Christ having come as a high priest of the coming good things, through the greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this creation, <sup>12</sup> nor yet through the blood of goats and calves, but through his own blood, entered in once for all into the Holy Place, having obtained eternal redemption. <sup>13</sup> For if the blood of goats and bulls, and the



ashes of a heifer sprinkling those who have been defiled, sanctify to the cleanness of the flesh, <sup>14</sup> how much more will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without defect to God, cleanse your conscience from dead works to serve the living God? <sup>15</sup> For this reason he is the mediator of a new covenant, since a death has occurred for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first covenant, that those who have been called may receive the promise of the eternal inheritance.

[Hebrews 9:24-28 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>24</sup> For Christ hasn't entered into holy places made with hands, which are representations of the true, but into heaven itself, now to appear in the presence of God for us; <sup>25</sup> nor yet that he should offer himself often, as the high priest enters into the holy place year by year with blood not his own, <sup>26</sup> or else he must have suffered often since the foundation of the world. But now once at the end of the ages, he has been revealed to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself. <sup>27</sup> Inasmuch as it is appointed for men to die once, and after this, judgment, <sup>28</sup> so Christ also, having been offered once to bear the sins of many, will appear a second time, without sin, to those who are eagerly waiting for him for salvation.

[1 Timothy 2:5-6 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>5</sup> For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus, <sup>6</sup> who gave himself as a ransom for all, the testimony in its own times,

[1 Corinthians 15:21-22 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>21</sup> For since death came by man, the resurrection of the dead also came by man. <sup>22</sup> For as in Adam all die, so also in Christ all will be made alive.

[1 Corinthians 15:45-46 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>45</sup> So also it is written, "The first man, Adam, became a living soul." [Genesis 2:7](#) The last Adam became a life-giving spirit. <sup>46</sup> However that which is spiritual isn't first, but that which is natural, then that which is spiritual.

[Philippians 2:5-11](#): Jesus emptied himself and took the form of a man.

<sup>5</sup> Have this in your mind, which was also in Christ Jesus, <sup>6</sup> who, existing in the form of God, didn't consider equality with God a thing to be grasped, <sup>7</sup> but emptied himself, taking the form of a servant, being made in the likeness of men. <sup>8</sup> And being found in human form, he humbled himself, becoming obedient to the point of death, yes, the death of the cross. <sup>9</sup> Therefore God also highly exalted him, and gave to him the name which is above every name, <sup>10</sup> that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of those in heaven, those on earth, and those under the earth, <sup>11</sup> and that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.

[Revelation 1:1; 3:14; Colossians 1:15-17; John 1:1-3,10](#): \*See [John 1:1c](#) about John 1:1, for clarification that Jesus is a god, not God. Jesus is rendered as **the firstborn of all creation**.

### Colossians 1:15-17(WEB):

<sup>15</sup> He is the image of the invisible God, **the firstborn of all creation**. <sup>16</sup> For by him all things were created in the heavens and on the earth, visible things and invisible things, whether thrones or dominions or principalities or powers. All things have been created through him and for him. <sup>17</sup> He is before all things, and in him all things are held together.

### Hebrews 1(WEB):

1 God, having in the past spoken to the fathers through the prophets at many times and in various ways, <sup>2</sup> has at the end of these days spoken to us by his Son, whom he appointed heir of all things, through whom also he made the worlds. <sup>3</sup> His Son is the radiance of his glory, the very image of his substance, and upholding all things by the word of his power, who, when he had by himself purified us of our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high, <sup>4</sup> having become as much better than the angels as the more excellent name he has inherited is better than theirs. <sup>5</sup> For to which of the angels did he say at any time,

“You are my Son.

Today I have become your father?” [Psalm 2:7](#)

and again,

“I will be to him a Father,

and he will be to me a Son?” [2 Samuel 7:14](#); [1 Chronicles 17:13](#)

<sup>6</sup> When he again brings in **the firstborn** into the world he says, “Let all the angels of God worship him.” [Deuteronomy 32:43](#) LXX <sup>7</sup> Of the angels he says,

“He makes his angels winds,

and his servants a flame of fire.” [Psalm 104:4](#)

<sup>8</sup> But of the Son he says,

“Your throne, O God, is forever and ever.

The scepter of uprightness is the scepter of your Kingdom.

<sup>9</sup> You have loved righteousness and hated iniquity;

therefore God, your God, has anointed you with the oil of gladness above your fellows.” [Psalm 45:6-7](#)

<sup>10</sup> And,

“You, Lord, in the beginning, laid the foundation of the earth.

The heavens are the works of your hands.

<sup>11</sup> They will perish, but you continue.

They all will grow old like a garment does.

<sup>12</sup> You will roll them up like a mantle,  
and they will be changed;

but you are the same.  
Your years won't fail." [Psalm 102:25-27](#)

<sup>13</sup> But which of the angels has he told at any time,

“Sit at my right hand,  
until I make your enemies the footstool of your feet?” [Psalm 110:1](#)

<sup>14</sup> Aren't they all serving spirits, sent out to do service for the sake of those who will inherit salvation?

Compare Isaiah 53:4 with Matthew 8:16-17:

[Isaiah 53:4 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>4</sup> Surely he has borne our sickness  
and carried our suffering;  
yet we considered him plagued,  
struck by God, and afflicted.

[Matthew 8:16-17 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>16</sup> When evening came, they brought to him many possessed with demons. He cast out the spirits with a word, and healed all who were sick, <sup>17</sup> that it might be fulfilled which was spoken through Isaiah the prophet, saying, “He took our infirmities and bore our diseases.”

**Commonly mistranslated:**

**John 1:1** See [John 1:1c](#)

[Isaiah 9:6,7](#)

Isaiah 7:14 [The oldest manuscripts use the term “young maiden” rather than “virgin”](#)

Compare: [The original gospel of Matthew](#)

## Who is Satan?

Some may wonder, “Why would anyone want to know things about Satan?” If one desires to be effective against an enemy, it is good to know as much about him as possible. But the important thing is to get your information from the scriptures. If Jehovah had this information recorded, there must have been a reason. He would not have had something dangerous written in the scriptures. By researching this information, it also gives us an opportunity to understand many passages in the bible more clearly – Especially prophesy for our time.

**Genesis 3:15** “And I shall put enmity between you and the woman and between your seed and her seed. He will bruise you in the head and you will bruise him in the heel.”

This is Jehovah talking about Satan and Jesus. Jesus has already been bruised in the “heel” by being put to death in the first century. Satan has yet to be destroyed. This prophesy can also be viewed on a larger scale. That is, all those who side with Jehovah and all those who do not.

**Luke 4:5-8** “So he brought him up and showed him all the kingdoms of the inhabited earth in an instant of time; (6) and **the Devil said to him: ‘I will give you all this authority and the glory of them, because it has been delivered to me, and to whomever I wish I give it. (7) You, therefore, if you do an act of worship before me, it will all be yours.’ (8) In reply Jesus said to him: ‘It is written, “It is Jehovah your God you must worship, and it is to him alone you must render sacred service.” ‘ ‘ (Compare [Matthew 4:1-11](#))**

Satan tries to tempt Jesus. All Jesus has to do is just perform one act of worship and then Satan will give all these kingdoms of the earth to Jesus! Satan has this authority, and it was delivered to him. It could have been only delivered to him by Jehovah. No one else could have delivered it to him.

**2 Corinthians 4:3-4** “If, now, the good news we declare is in fact veiled, it is veiled among those who are perishing, (4) among whom **the god of this system of things** has blinded the minds of the unbelievers, that the illumination of the glorious good news about the Christ, who is the image of God, might not shine through.”

**The “god of this system of things” is Satan.** He certainly does not want mankind to turn to God.

**Additional scriptures that show that Satan is real and has had authority given to him:**

[John 12:31 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>31</sup> Now is the judgment of this world. Now the prince of this world will be cast out.

[John 14:30 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>30</sup> I will no more speak much with you, for the prince of the world comes, and he has nothing in me.

[John 16:11 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>11</sup> about judgment, because the prince of this world has been judged.

The “kingdom of this world” becomes the “kingdom of our Lord and his Christ” at [Revelation 11:15 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>15</sup> The seventh angel sounded, and great voices in heaven followed, saying, “The kingdom of the world has become the Kingdom of our Lord, and of his Christ. He will reign forever and ever!”

**Ezekiel 28:12b-15** “You are sealing up a pattern, full of wisdom and perfect in beauty. (13) In Eden, the garden of God, you proved to be. Every precious stone was your covering, ruby, topaz and jasper; chrysolite, onyx and jade; sapphire, turquoise and emerald; and of gold was the workmanship of your settings and your sockets in you. In the day of your being created they were made ready. (14) You are the anointed cherub that is covering, and I have set On the holy mountain of God you proved to be. In the midst of fiery stones you walked about. (15) You were faultless in your ways from the day of your being created until unrighteousness was found in you.”

Although this was a dirge concerning the king of Tyre, (vs.12a) it is referring to Satan having a similar attitude. The king of Tyre did not exist in the Garden of Eden nor was he ever perfect.

Notice how this anointed cherub was “covering” and in the garden of Eden. Translations render this many ways, but the principle thought from the word “covering” is protection. Satan was given authority and was charged to protect Adam and Eve – Perhaps the entire garden or earth and their offspring. Similarly, the word “tent” is used to describe protection for man by God’s kingdom arrangement in [Revelation 21:3\(ISV\)](#). This would help in understanding why Satan received his authority of the kingdoms of man as mentioned in [Luke 4:5-7](#). Satan received his commission from Jehovah before he sinned. ([Ezekiel 28:14](#)) So it could not have been received from Adam and Eve by their sinning as some incorrectly believe.

[Job chapters 1 & 2](#) show Satan charging that humans only serve God for what he gives them. So, Jehovah allows Satan to test his servant Job but Satan is not allowed to kill Job. So, what does Satan do? He strips Job of everything that he has – his children, servants, wealth, and health. And even his wife puts pressure on him to curse God and die! But Job maintains his integrity to Jehovah and Jehovah rewards him. But this account shows how Satan does not seem to care for mankind’s well-being. There is no indication that he felt regret in killing Job’s children or servants. The results of this test of Job’s faith in God is in stark contrast to Adam’s testing. Adam was perfect and Job was not. Adam also listened to his wife in being disloyal to God. ([Genesis 3:17](#)) But Job did not listen to his wife to “curse” God and die. ([Job 2:9-10](#)) Job was also not an Israelite but an “oriental” from the East. (Job 1:1-3; 30:30)

[2 Corinthians 11:13-15](#) “For such men are false apostles, deceitful workers, transforming themselves into apostles of Christ. (14) And no wonder, for Satan himself keeps transforming himself into an angel of light. (15) It is therefore nothing great if his ministers also keep transforming themselves into ministers of righteousness. But their end shall be according to their works.”

This shows us that Satan has ones that minister to him, and they pretend to be righteous but they are false and deceitful. Anyone who spreads falsehood would be ministering (a.k.a. worshipping) to Satan whether they knew it or not. (Compare [Luke 12:42-48](#))

[1 John 5:19](#) “The whole world is lying in the power of the wicked one.”

[1 John 3:10](#) “The children of God and the children of the Devil are evident by this fact: Everyone who does not carry on righteousness does not originate with God, neither does he who does not love his brother.”

Although ones may do bad things does not mean that they can’t turn around. In fact, Jehovah does not desire the wicked to be destroyed but to turn from doing bad to doing good. ([Ezekiel 18:21-22](#))

[Zechariah 3:1-3](#): Satan still has access to the heavens at this referred-to time. This is just before he is “hurled to the earth.” ([Revelation 12:7-12](#))

[Revelation 12:7-12](#) “And war broke out in heaven: Michael and his angels battled with the dragon, and the dragon and its angels battled (8) but it did not prevail, neither was a place found for them any longer in heaven. (9) So down the great dragon was hurled, the original serpent, the one called Devil and Satan, who is misleading the entire inhabited earth; he was hurled down to the earth, and his angels were hurled down with him.”

At his time, Satan misleads the entire inhabited earth.

This hurling has not happened yet. But I believe it will take place very soon. Compare the chapter on when Jesus comes.

[John 8:44](#) “YOU are from your father the devil, and YOU wish to do the desires of your father. That one was a manslayer when he began, and he did not stand fast in the truth, because truth is not in him. When he speaks the lie, he speaks according to his own disposition, because he is a liar and the father of [the lie].”

Some believe (like the Jehovah’s Witnesses) that Satan has good intentions for mankind. And that he is trying to create a government to rival what God could do for mankind. They claim that a question was raised in the Garden of Eden that was a challenge to God’s sovereignty. The alleged challenge / question was that Satan claimed that he could rule man better than God. And that Jehovah is allowing time for wickedness to show the universe that Satan was wrong. This is a falsehood! The answer to this question was answered shortly after Adam and Eve sinned. They were punished, were to die, and were kicked out of God’s Garden. Everyone alive at that time (angels and humans) absolutely knew that man could never achieve what he had lost. There was no question to be answered! And if Satan had good intentions for mankind, he would have helped Adam and Eve and their offspring as much as he could, including eating of the tree of life before Adam and Eve were kicked out of the garden. But he didn’t. Jesus believed that Satan was real as he stated that Satan is a manslayer. ([John 8:44](#)) A manslayer does not try to help man.

Some believe that Satan does not exist. But that is a falsehood too! Just by examining the scriptures presented here, one can see that Satan is real just as Jesus is real. But the biggest difference between the two is that Satan seeks his own will, but Jesus seeks his Father's will.

**Satan's actions are based upon greed, but Jesus' actions are based upon love.**

## Who is Abraham?

Abraham listened to God – Not to men or even himself. Abraham was blessed by God for his listening to him. **In fact, Abraham was promised that from his “seed” (offspring) the nations would bless themselves for his listening to God.** He was also told that his seed would become like the countless stars of the heavens. Compare [Genesis 22:15-18](#) and [Genesis 17:13](#) where even foreigners were allowed to be part of the covenant. (The thought of his seed taking possession of the gate of his enemies as mentioned in Genesis 22:17, can be taken in a literal way when the Hebrews conquered nations and/or with the climax of Jesus (Jesus was born a Hebrew (A descendent of Abraham)) conquering his enemies who refuse to submit as mentioned in Psalms 2 – Jesus was always obedient to God whereas the nation Israel, as a whole was not. This climax will happen when God’s kingdom begins its rule over the Earth, as mentioned in [Daniel 2:44](#), [Revelation 11:15](#), [Revelation 21:1-5](#))

This “seed” is also proved in the gospel by Luke as being God’s Son Jesus – **Luke 3:23-38**. Notice how Israel’s ancient king David is in the family line, in verse 31. Abraham is mentioned in verse 34.

See “The Right of Jesus to Rule” in the chapter, [\*The Secrets of Jesus Returning\*](#).

### [Genesis 17 \(WEB\):](#)

17 When Abram was ninety-nine years old, Yahweh appeared to Abram and said to him, “I am God Almighty. Walk before me and be blameless. <sup>2</sup> I will make my covenant between me and you, and will multiply you exceedingly.”

<sup>3</sup> Abram fell on his face. God talked with him, saying, <sup>4</sup> “As for me, behold, my covenant is with you. You will be the father of a multitude of nations. <sup>5</sup> Your name will no more be called Abram, but your name will be Abraham; for I have made you the father of a multitude of nations. <sup>6</sup> I will make you exceedingly fruitful, and I will make nations of you. Kings will come out of you. <sup>7</sup> I will establish my covenant between me and you and your offspring after you throughout their generations for an everlasting covenant, to be a God to you and to your offspring after you. <sup>8</sup> I will give to you, and to your offspring after you, the land where you are traveling, all the land of Canaan, for an everlasting possession. I will be their God.”

<sup>9</sup> God said to Abraham, “As for you, you shall keep my covenant, you and your offspring after you throughout their generations. <sup>10</sup> This is my covenant, which you shall keep, between me and you and your offspring after you. Every male among you shall be circumcised. <sup>11</sup> You shall be circumcised in the flesh of your foreskin. It will be a token of the covenant between me and you. <sup>12</sup> He who is eight days old shall be circumcised among you, every male throughout your generations, he who is born in the house, or bought with money from any foreigner who is not of your offspring. <sup>13</sup> He who is born in your house, and he who is bought with your money, must be circumcised. My covenant shall be in your flesh for an everlasting covenant. <sup>14</sup> The uncircumcised male who is not circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin, that soul shall be cut off from his people. He has broken my covenant.”



<sup>15</sup> God said to Abraham, “As for Sarai your wife, you shall not call her name Sarai, but her name shall be Sarah. <sup>16</sup> I will bless her, and moreover I will give you a son by her. Yes, I will bless her, and she will be a mother of nations. Kings of peoples will come from her.”

<sup>17</sup> Then Abraham fell on his face, and laughed, and said in his heart, “Will a child be born to him who is one hundred years old? Will Sarah, who is ninety years old, give birth?” <sup>18</sup> Abraham said to God, “Oh that Ishmael might live before you!”

<sup>19</sup> God said, “No, but Sarah, your wife, will bear you a son. You shall call his name Isaac.<sup>[a]</sup> I will establish my covenant with him for an everlasting covenant for his offspring after him. <sup>20</sup> As for Ishmael, I have heard you. Behold, I have blessed him, and will make him fruitful, and will multiply him exceedingly. He will become the father of twelve princes, and I will make him a great nation. <sup>21</sup> But I will establish my covenant with Isaac, whom Sarah will bear to you at this set time next year.”

<sup>22</sup> When he finished talking with him, God went up from Abraham. <sup>23</sup> Abraham took Ishmael his son, all who were born in his house, and all who were bought with his money: every male among the men of Abraham’s house, and circumcised the flesh of their foreskin in the same day, as God had said to him. <sup>24</sup> Abraham was ninety-nine years old when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin. <sup>25</sup> Ishmael, his son, was thirteen years old when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin. <sup>26</sup> In the same day both Abraham and Ishmael, his son, were circumcised. <sup>27</sup> All the men of his house, those born in the house, and those bought with money from a foreigner, were circumcised with him.

### [Genesis 22 \(WEB\):](#)

22 After these things, God tested Abraham, and said to him, “Abraham!”

He said, “Here I am.”

<sup>2</sup> He said, “Now take your son, your only son, Isaac, whom you love, and go into the land of Moriah. Offer him there as a burnt offering on one of the mountains which I will tell you of.”

<sup>3</sup> Abraham rose early in the morning, and saddled his donkey; and took two of his young men with him, and Isaac his son. He split the wood for the burnt offering, and rose up, and went to the place of which God had told him. <sup>4</sup> On the third day Abraham lifted up his eyes, and saw the place far off. <sup>5</sup> Abraham said to his young men, “Stay here with the donkey. The boy and I will go over there. We will worship, and come back to you.” <sup>6</sup> Abraham took the wood of the burnt offering and laid it on Isaac his son. He took in his hand the fire and the knife. They both went together. <sup>7</sup> Isaac spoke to Abraham his father, and said, “My father?”

He said, “Here I am, my son.”

He said, “Here is the fire and the wood, but where is the lamb for a burnt offering?”

<sup>8</sup> Abraham said, “God will provide himself the lamb for a burnt offering, my son.” So they both went together. <sup>9</sup> They came to the place which God had told him of. Abraham built the altar there, and laid the wood in order, bound Isaac his son, and laid him on the altar, on the wood. <sup>10</sup> Abraham stretched out his hand, and took the knife to kill his son.

<sup>11</sup> Yahweh’s angel called to him out of the sky, and said, “Abraham, Abraham!”

He said, “Here I am.”

<sup>12</sup> He said, “Don’t lay your hand on the boy or do anything to him. For now I know that you fear God, since you have not withheld your son, your only son, from me.”



<sup>13</sup> Abraham lifted up his eyes, and looked, and saw that behind him was a ram caught in the thicket by his horns. Abraham went and took the ram, and offered him up for a burnt offering

instead of his son. <sup>14</sup> Abraham called the name of that place “Yahweh Will Provide”.<sup>[a]</sup> As it is said to this day, “On Yahweh’s mountain, it will be provided.”

<sup>15</sup> Yahweh’s angel called to Abraham a second time out of the sky, <sup>16</sup> and said, “I have sworn by myself,’ says Yahweh, ‘because you have done this thing, and have not withheld your son, your only son, <sup>17</sup> that I will bless you greatly, and I will multiply your offspring greatly like the stars of the heavens, and like the sand which is on the seashore. Your offspring will possess the gate of his enemies. <sup>18</sup> All the nations of the earth will be blessed by your offspring, because you have obeyed my voice.”

<sup>19</sup> So Abraham returned to his young men, and they rose up and went together to Beersheba. Abraham lived at Beersheba.

**Because of Abraham’s obedience and the covenant with Yahweh, blessings will be bestowed upon mankind, with God’s kingdom ruling with Jesus as the appointed king. Revelation 21:1-4 (CJB):**

21 Then I saw **a new heaven and a new earth**, for the old heaven and the old earth had passed away, and the sea was no longer there. <sup>2</sup> Also I saw the holy city, New Yerushalayim, coming down out of heaven from God, prepared like a bride beautifully dressed for her husband. <sup>3</sup> I heard a loud voice from the throne say, “See! God’s *Sh’khinah* is with mankind, **and he will live with them. They will be his people, and he himself, God-with-them, will be their God.** <sup>4</sup> He will wipe away every tear from their eyes. There will no longer be any death; and there will no longer be any mourning, crying or pain; because the old order has passed away.”

## Is there life after death?

**There is life after death, just not life in death.**

See the chapter on [The soul and spirit](#)

[Ecclesiastes 9:5-10](#) shows us that there is no consciousness in death. When Jesus was on earth, he stated that his friend Lazarus had gone to sleep. Jesus' disciples did not understand so Jesus made it plain that their friend Lazarus had died. – [John 11:11-15](#). Lazarus was a friend of Jesus yet he did not “go to heaven” but was simply asleep in death, as Jesus said.

Jesus brought Lazarus back to life as an example of things to come. – [John 11:4, 17-44](#)! Notice how Martha told Jesus that she believed that he would rise on the “last day,” at John 11:24. Jesus even taught that the good would be resurrected (would rise) at the same time as the wicked, in [John 5:28-29](#). Compare that with the prophecy in [Daniel 12:1-2](#) where there is a resurrection of the righteous AND wicked when God's kingdom begins ruling ON the earth as shown in [Revelation 21:1-4](#). Yes, death is emptied. So, there is the glory of God! The wicked are given the chance to change. God does not want to destroy them. He wants them to turn around – [Ezekiel 33:11](#)

**Ecclesiastes 9:5-10 (NIV).**

<sup>5</sup> For the living know that they will die,  
but the dead know nothing;  
they have no further reward,  
and even their name is forgotten.

<sup>6</sup> Their love, their hate  
and their jealousy have long since vanished;  
never again will they have a part  
in anything that happens under the sun.

<sup>7</sup> Go, eat your food with gladness, and drink your wine with a joyful heart, for God has already approved what you do. <sup>8</sup> Always be clothed in white, and always anoint your head with oil. <sup>9</sup> Enjoy life with your wife, whom you love, all the days of this meaningless life that God has given you under the sun—all your meaningless days. For this is your lot in life and in your toilsome labor under the sun. <sup>10</sup> Whatever your hand finds to do, do it with all your might, for in the realm of the dead, where you are going, there is neither working nor planning nor knowledge nor wisdom.”

**John 11:11-15 (CEB);**

<sup>11</sup> He continued, “Our friend Lazarus is sleeping, but I am going in order to wake him up.”

<sup>12</sup> The disciples said, “Lord, if he's sleeping, he will get well.” <sup>13</sup> They thought Jesus meant that Lazarus was in a deep sleep, but Jesus had spoken about Lazarus' death.

<sup>14</sup> Jesus told them plainly, “Lazarus has died. <sup>15</sup> For your sakes, I’m glad I wasn’t there so that you can believe. Let’s go to him.”

**Daniel 12:1-2 (RSV).**

“At that time shall arise Michael, the great prince who has charge of your people. And there shall be a time of trouble, such as never has been since there was a nation till that time; but at that time your people shall be delivered, every one whose name shall be found written in the book. <sup>2</sup> And many of those who sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt.



## Is Michael, Jesus?

**The book of Enoch was treated as authentic, in the first and second centuries. It doesn't conflict with true teachings. Interestingly, it talks of Michael as a powerful angel. It also talks of Christ as the son of man! They're shown to be two different beings in the same passage. If this is the case, that means that Christ is not Michael but Michael is a strong angel that works very closely under the son of man, Yeshua (Christ)! See Comments on *The book of Enoch*.**

**There are parallels between Jesus' sayings and Michael's action mentioned at Daniel 12:1-2.**

The period of time that Daniel 12:1-2 pertains to is when the king of the north is finally and decisively destroyed, as shown in the last verse of chapter 11. There's a good chance that it is by Michael. Daniel 12:1 is a continuation of the end of chapter 11, which contains struggles between the kings of the north and south, including the destruction of the king of the north. Once Michael takes a stand for God's people, the resurrection of the righteous and unrighteous begins. Interestingly, as 12:2 shows, Daniel's people (God's people) are not delivered until after Michael takes a stand for his people. I personally believe that because God's people were in danger AND had straightened their worship, Michael intervenes and delivers. Compare [Christ's Bride](#)

The NETS (New English Translation of the Septuagint) has two translations of **Daniel 12:1,2** which talks about Michael, the tribulation, the deliverance of God's people, and resurrection of the righteous and unrighteous:

The NETS OG (Old Greek) renders the passage as:

“And at that hour Michael, the great angel who stands over the sons of your people, will pass by. That is a day of affliction, which will be such as has not occurred since they were born until that day. And on that day the whole people will be exalted, whoever is found inscribed in the book. (2) And many of those who sleep in the flat of the earth will arise, some to everlasting life but others to shame and others to dispersion [and contempt] everlasting.”

The NETS TH (Theodotion) renders the passage as:

“And at that time Michael, the great ruler who stands over the sons of your people, will arise. And **there will be a time of affliction such as had not occurred since a nation first came into existence until that time.** And at that time your people will be delivered, everyone who is written in the book. (2) And **many of those who sleep in a mound of earth will be awakened, these to everlasting life and those to shame and everlasting contempt.**”

[Daniel 12:1-2 \(WEB\);](#)

12 “At that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince who stands for the children of your people; and **there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time: and at that time your people shall be delivered**, everyone who shall be found written in the book. <sup>2</sup> **Many of those who sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt.**

With the above, **compare Matthew 24:3,21** (The Interlinear Bible);

“...The disciples came to Him privately, saying, Tell us, when will these things be? And **What is the sign of your coming and of the end of the age?** ... (21) For there will be **great affliction, such as has not happened from the beginning of the world until now; no, nor ever will be.**”

**Compare [1 Thessalonians 4:13-17 \(WEB\)](#):**

<sup>13</sup> But we don't want you to be ignorant, brothers, concerning those who have fallen asleep, so that you don't grieve like the rest, who have no hope. <sup>14</sup> For if we believe that Jesus died and rose again, even so God will bring with him those who have fallen asleep in Jesus. <sup>15</sup> For this we tell you by the word of the Lord, that we who are alive, who are left until the coming of the Lord, will in no way precede those who have fallen asleep. <sup>16</sup> For the Lord himself will descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel and with God's trumpet. The dead in Christ will rise first, <sup>17</sup> then we who are alive, who are left, will be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air. So, we will be with the Lord forever.

**Compare also what Jesus says about himself and the resurrection:**

[John 5:25-29 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>25</sup> Most certainly, I tell you, the hour comes, and now is, when **the dead will hear the Son of God's voice**; and those who hear will live. <sup>26</sup> For as the Father has life in himself, even so he gave to the Son also to have life in himself. <sup>27</sup> He also gave him authority to execute judgment, because he is a son of man. <sup>28</sup> Don't marvel at this, for **the hour comes, in which all that are in the tombs will hear his voice, <sup>29</sup> and will come out; those who have done good, to the resurrection of life; and those who have done evil, to the resurrection of judgment.**

[John 6:39-40 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>39</sup> This is the will of my Father who sent me, that of all he has given to me I should lose nothing, but should raise him up at the last day. <sup>40</sup> This is the will of the one who sent me, that everyone who sees the Son, and believes in him, should have eternal life; and I will raise him up at the last day.”

[John 6:44 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>44</sup> No one can come to me unless the Father who sent me draws him, and I will raise him up in the last day.

[John 6:54 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>54</sup> He who eats my flesh and drinks my blood has eternal life, and I will raise him up at the last day.

[John 12:48 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>48</sup> He who rejects me, and doesn't receive my sayings, has one who judges him. The word that I spoke, the same will judge him in the last day.

**See *Revelation* and look for chapter 12:7-9 picture.**

[Revelation 12:7-9 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>7</sup> There was war in the sky. Michael and his angels made war on the dragon. The dragon and his angels made war. <sup>8</sup> They didn't prevail. No place was found for them any more in heaven. <sup>9</sup> The great dragon was thrown down, the old serpent, he who is called the devil and Satan, the deceiver of the whole world. He was thrown down to the earth, and his angels were thrown down with him.



## Was Jesus (Yahshua/Yeshua) fully human?

The belief that the mother of Jesus not conceiving Jesus with Joseph stumbles many, especially Hebrews. Not only would this make Jesus half God but he wouldn't have the male side ancestry for King David's throne.

Some may say that Yahshua's mother Mary was of ancient king David's lineage and that is good enough. If that was the case, why does Matthew contain 100% male lineage lines leading to Joseph and not Mary? If Yahshua was the promised messiah and king of the Jews he would have to be in the lineage of Abraham and David by way of male decent. This lineage issue is paramount in order for Yahshua to have a solid claim for the throne of David. The paternal right is passed down on the male side. If Joseph was not Jesus' fleshly father, there would have been things written about it, explaining it. Enemies of Jesus would have used that against him. But it didn't happen because there was no "virgin birth" and Joseph was Jesus' biological father. Think about it. However, Jesus did claim to be the son of God and the son of man. His enemies used his claim to be the son of God against him to put him to death. This claim to be the son of God (Yahweh) was explained to a degree by Jesus and his disciples (See scriptures below). But they never said that Joseph was not his fleshly father or explained an "immaculate conception." Interestingly and with some parallel principles, Solomon, the son of David was also called a son of Yahweh. This was decreed by Yahweh himself. The nation did obeisance (worshipped) Solomon and Yahweh but reserved the sacred worship only for Yahweh – See [What does "the son" mean?](#)

We have 49 quotes to the earliest writing of the original gospel of Matthew by the "early church fathers." Many of these had shown that Joseph begat Jesus – Joseph was Jesus' fleshly father just as Mary was his fleshly mother. By examining the oldest manuscripts, we see that the virgin account (immaculate conception) was not originally present and the statement that Joseph begat Jesus was. (See [The Original Gospel of Matthew](#)) These false teachings have been protected by those who it would hurt to uncover. Can you imagine if the majority of "Christian" leaders came out and stated that there was no virgin Mary? These leaders fear man over the truth.

I would personally like to know if the Vatican or anyone else has copies of the original Hebrew Matthew or of the "lost" direct translations from it by the early church father Jerome. It would be an example of a "slave of Christ" burying or hiding valuable information that could be used to help millions, if not more. What do you think Yahweh (Jehovah) or Yahshua (Yeshua or Jesus) would think of this? If you have it, give it out for distribution!!

This information will upset many. Some may question the validity of the gospels and other writings. But just think of how Matthew was moved to write about the things he saw and experienced. He was writing about the Messiah, the son of Yahweh, the savior of the world! The truth is out there. It's part of the treasures of the kingdom of God. It's not easy to find. It takes effort and a good heart to sincerely look and dig for the truth. It has been hidden by the world. Yet, it is not too hard to find, and the rewards are everlasting!

There is no reason that Yahweh, the almighty, can't send forth his son to be born through a woman using both the flesh (DNA) of the man and woman. Who says that Yahweh can't do this? Who is wiser than the Almighty? Jesus was certainly a human with remarkable abilities. At 12 years of age, he appeared smarter and perhaps wiser than the religious leaders and called the temple his father's house ([Luke 2:39-52](#)). Later, as we all know, he performed many miracles, including raising the dead! Yes, he was fully human and had remarkable abilities with the backing of his spirit father, Yahweh, including being the first born from the dead and ascension to heaven.

See also [Who is the Son of the Almighty?](#)

**Here are some scriptures to consider:**

**[Genesis 49:10 \(WEB\);](#)**

The scepter will not depart from Judah,  
nor the ruler's staff from between his feet,  
until he comes to whom it belongs.  
The obedience of the peoples will be to him.

**[Isaiah 11:1 \(WEB\);](#)**

A shoot will come out of the stock of Jesse,  
and a branch out of his roots will bear fruit.

**[Numbers 1:18 \(WEB\);](#)**

They assembled all the congregation together on the first day of the second month; and they declared their ancestry by their families, by their fathers' houses, according to the number of the names, from twenty years old and upward, one by one.

**[Numbers 2:2 \(WEB\);](#)**

“The children of Israel shall encamp every man by his own standard, with the banners of their fathers' houses. They shall encamp around the Tent of Meeting at a distance from it.”

**[2 Samuel 7:8-16 \(WEB\);](#)**

<sup>8</sup> Now therefore tell my servant David this, ‘Yahweh of Armies says, “I took you from the sheep pen, from following the sheep, to be prince over my people, over Israel. <sup>9</sup> I have been with you wherever you went, and have cut off all your enemies from before you. I will make you a great name, like the name of the great ones who are in the earth. <sup>10</sup> I will appoint a place for my people Israel, and will plant them, that they may dwell in their own place, and be moved no more. The children of wickedness will not afflict them any more, as at the first, <sup>11</sup> and as from the day that I commanded judges to be over my people Israel. I will cause you to rest from all your enemies. Moreover Yahweh tells you that Yahweh will make you a house. <sup>12</sup> When your days are fulfilled, and you sleep with your fathers, I will set up your offspring after you, who will proceed out of

your body, and I will establish his kingdom. <sup>13</sup> He will build a house for my name, and I will establish the throne of his kingdom forever. <sup>14</sup> I will be his father, and he will be my son. If he commits iniquity, I will chasten him with the rod of men, and with the stripes of the children of men; <sup>15</sup> but my loving kindness will not depart from him, as I took it from Saul, whom I put away before you. <sup>16</sup> Your house and your kingdom will be made sure forever before you. Your throne will be established forever.”””

### **Matthew 21:1-11 (WEB);**

21 When they came near to Jerusalem and came to Bethsphage, to the Mount of Olives, then Jesus sent two disciples, <sup>2</sup> saying to them, “Go into the village that is opposite you, and immediately you will find a donkey tied, and a colt with her. Untie them and bring them to me. <sup>3</sup> If anyone says anything to you, you shall say, ‘The Lord needs them,’ and immediately he will send them.”

<sup>4</sup> All this was done that it might be fulfilled which was spoken through the prophet, saying,

<sup>5</sup> “Tell the daughter of Zion,  
behold, your King comes to you,  
humble, and riding on a donkey,  
on a colt, the foal of a donkey.” [Zechariah 9:9](#)

<sup>6</sup> The disciples went and did just as Jesus commanded them, <sup>7</sup> and brought the donkey and the colt and laid their clothes on them; and he sat on them. <sup>8</sup> A very great multitude spread their clothes on the road. Others cut branches from the trees and spread them on the road. <sup>9</sup> The multitudes who went in front of him, and those who followed, kept shouting, “Hosanna<sup>[b]</sup> to the son of David! Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord! Hosanna in the highest!” [Psalm 118:26](#)

<sup>10</sup> When he had come into Jerusalem, all the city was stirred up, saying, “Who is this?”

<sup>11</sup> The multitudes said, “This is the prophet, Jesus, from Nazareth of Galilee.”

<sup>12</sup> Jesus entered into the temple of God and drove out all of those who sold and bought in the temple, and overthrew the money changers’ tables and the seats of those who sold the doves. <sup>13</sup> He said to them, “It is written, ‘My house shall be called a house of prayer,’ [Isaiah 56:7](#) but you have made it a den of robbers!” [Jeremiah 7:11](#)

<sup>14</sup> The lame and the blind came to him in the temple, and he healed them. <sup>15</sup> But when the chief priests and the scribes saw the wonderful things that he did, and the children who were crying in the temple and saying, “Hosanna to the son of David!” they were indignant, <sup>16</sup> and said to him, “Do you hear what these are saying?”

Jesus said to them, “Yes. Did you never read, ‘Out of the mouth of children and nursing babies, you have perfected praise?’” [Psalm 8:2](#)

**Jesus (Yahshua) was sent from the spirit realm to be born under the Mosaic Law and inherit the right to rule:**

**Galatians 4:4 (WEB);**

But when the fullness of the time came, God sent out his Son, born to a woman, born under the law

**Colossians 1:15 (WEB);**

He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of all creation.

**Revelation 1:1 (WEB);**

This is the Revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave him to show to his servants the things which must happen soon, which he sent and made known by his angel to his servant, John,

**Revelation 1:18 (WEB);**

I was dead, and behold, I am alive forever and ever. Amen. I have the keys of Death and of Hades

**Revelation 3:14 (WEB);**

“To the angel of the assembly in Laodicea write:

“The Amen, the Faithful and True Witness, the Beginning of God’s creation, says these things:

**Mark 10:45 (WEB); (Jesus’ words)**

For the Son of Man also came not to be served, but to serve, and to give his life as a ransom for many.”

**John 5:25-27 (WEB); (Jesus’ words)**

<sup>25</sup> Most certainly I tell you, the hour comes, and now is, when the dead will hear the Son of God’s voice; and those who hear will live. <sup>26</sup> For as the Father has life in himself, even so he gave to the Son also to have life in himself. <sup>27</sup> He also gave him authority to execute judgment, because he is a son of man.

**John 6:35-46 (WEB); (Jesus’ words)**

<sup>35</sup> Jesus said to them, “I am the bread of life. Whoever comes to me will not be hungry, and whoever believes in me will never be thirsty. <sup>36</sup> But I told you that you have seen me, and yet you don’t believe. <sup>37</sup> All those whom the Father gives me will come to me. He who comes to me I will in no way throw out. <sup>38</sup> For I have come down from heaven, not to do my own will, but the will of him who sent me. <sup>39</sup> This is the will of my Father who sent me, that of all he has given to me I should lose nothing, but should raise him up at the last day. <sup>40</sup> This is the will of the one who sent me, that everyone who sees the Son, and believes in him, should have eternal life; and I will raise him up at the last day.”

<sup>41</sup> The Jews therefore murmured concerning him, because he said, “I am the bread which came down out of heaven.” <sup>42</sup> They said, “Isn’t this Jesus, the son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know? How then does he say, ‘I have come down out of heaven?’”

<sup>43</sup> Therefore Jesus answered them, “Don’t murmur among yourselves. <sup>44</sup> No one can come to me unless the Father who sent me draws him, and I will raise him up in the last day. <sup>45</sup> It is written in the prophets, ‘They will all be taught by God.’ [Isaiah 54:13](#) Therefore everyone who hears from the Father and has learned, comes to me. <sup>46</sup> Not that anyone has seen the Father, except he who is from God. He has seen the Father.

## Bible Names and Their Meanings

The name most used in the original writings is the creator's name, the Father's, Yahweh. It is written in whole or in part, around 6,000 times. Yet, most translations have substituted the name for the title "LORD," following Jewish superstition that to write the divine name was too dangerous. It is thought by some that the divine name was originally included in the New Testament, especially where it quoted from the Old Testament. However, the practice of replacing the divine name (Yahweh, a.k.a. the tetragrammaton), in all scripture, with the title "Lord" gained momentum in the second or third century A.D. (George Howard of the University of Georgia, in *Journal of Biblical Literature*, Vol. 96, 1977, p.63).

Just think if you were the author of a book and someone replaced your name. How would you feel? Yahweh, wants his name to be remembered/memorialized among the nations as shown below: (This has been copied from the chapter "How God's kingdom will be as in ancient times")

Some translations have put the divine name back in the New Testament where it is quoting from the Old Testament, and it contains the divine name. But most have not. However, some use all uppercase LORD to signify the divine name, as most do in the Old Testament – See Matthew 22:44 below. Most retain an abbreviated form of the divine name from the Hebrew scriptures, Yah, as part of a Greek expression (a.k.a. [hallelujah](#) meaning to praise Yah (or Jah)) in Revelation 19:1,3-4,6. Compare this with Psalms 135:1-3:

### [Revelation 19:1,3-4,6 \(WEB\):](#)

19 After these things I heard something like a loud voice of a great multitude in heaven, saying, "Hallelujah! Salvation, power, and glory belong to our God;

<sup>3</sup> A second said, "Hallelujah! Her smoke goes up forever and ever." <sup>4</sup> The twenty-four elders and the four living creatures fell down and worshiped God who sits on the throne, saying, "Amen! Hallelujah!"

<sup>6</sup> I heard something like the voice of a great multitude, and like the voice of many waters, and like the voice of mighty thunders, saying, "Hallelujah! For the Lord our God, the Almighty, reigns!

### [Psalms 135:1-3 \(WEB\):](#)

Praise Yah!

Praise Yahweh's name!

Praise him, you servants of Yahweh,

<sup>2</sup> you who stand in Yahweh's house,  
in the courts of our God's house.

<sup>3</sup> Praise Yah, for Yahweh is good.

Sing praises to his name, for that is pleasant.



[Matthew 22:44 \(KJV\)](#):

<sup>44</sup> The LORD said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand, till I make thine enemies thy footstool?

[Psalms 110:1 \(WEB\)](#):

Yahweh says to my Lord, “Sit at my right hand,  
until I make your enemies your footstool for your feet.”

[Malachi 1:11](#) states that Yahweh will make his name great among the nations. This purpose was reflected in the prayer that Jesus gave as an example to his disciples at [Matthew 6:9](#), to sanctify his Father’s name. Yahweh himself stated that his name should be a memorial, to be remembered among the nations, at [Exodus 3:15 \(WEB\)](#) ; “God said moreover to Moses, “You shall tell the children of Israel this, ‘Yahweh, the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, has sent me to you.’ This is my name forever, and this is my memorial to all generations.” In contrast, Yahweh stated that the names of other gods should not even be mentioned, at [Exodus 23:13 \(WEB\)](#); “Be careful to do all things that I have said to you; and don’t invoke the name of other gods or even let them be heard out of your mouth.”

It is interesting to look at the meanings of many bible names and find deeper meaning. As an example, a deeper scriptural understanding can be found by looking at the meaning of Israel’s second king’s name, David. The meaning of the name, David, in Hebrew, means “beloved.” God also used the word “beloved,” regarding Jesus, when Jesus was baptized:

[Luke 3:21,22 \(YLT\)](#):

<sup>21</sup> And it came to pass, in all the people being baptised, Jesus also being baptised, and praying, the heaven was opened,

<sup>22</sup> and the Holy Spirit came down in a bodily appearance, as if a dove, upon him, and a voice came out of heaven, saying, ‘Thou art My Son — the Beloved, in thee I did delight.’ “

This can be taken a step further with cross-comparing how people, in many instances, proclaimed Jesus to be “the son of David.” An excellent example is found at Matthew 21:9 where Jesus was riding into Jerusalem, mounted upon an ass, the crowds in front and behind him were loudly proclaiming it, with joy!

[Matthew 21:9 \(YLT\)](#):

<sup>9</sup> and the multitudes who were going before, and who were following, were crying, saying, ‘Hosanna to the Son of David, blessed is he who is coming in the name of the Lord; Hosanna in the highest.’ “

Of course, **things have to be taken into perspective when looking at the meanings of the names.** As an example, the meaning of the Hebrew name Abijah is: “My father is YAHWEH” and the meaning of the Hebrew name Abiel is: “God is my father.” This does not literally mean that Abijah or Abiel are Jesus, just because Jesus called God his Father many, many times ([Luke 10:21,22](#)).

**To hear the name of the Almighty, Yahweh, is different than knowing his name by experience.** The knowing of Yahweh naturally has different depths of understanding via experience.

Abraham knew of God's name Yahweh and was even given a promise from him. But Abraham did not know his name (His majestic power in action) as Moses and the Israelites would by seeing the ten plagues and being delivered from Egyptian bondage and to their promised land.

As brought out by the [Apologetics Press](#): "The expressions "to know the name of Jehovah" or simply "to know Jehovah" frequently **mean more than a mere awareness of His name and existence**. Rather, "to know" (from the Hebrew word *yada*) often means to learn by experience."

Compare [Genesis 15:7\(WEB\)](#) with [Exodus 6:2-3\(WEB\)](#). Both Abraham and Moses knew the name of the Almighty. But Moses had a much deeper awareness of his (Name) majesty by the acts of God.

I thought it to be most appropriate to start with the Almighty's name, Yahweh (Jehovah), as many names have it as part of their name.

**YAH or JAH**: an abbreviation of YAHWEH

**YAHWEH** ([The God of the Israelites](#)): "He Brings into Existence Whatever Exists" (a.k.a. Jehovah)

**ABIEL**: "God is my Father"

**ABIJAH**: "My father is Yahweh"

**ALVAH**: "his highness"

**AMARIAH**: "YAHWEH has said"

**AMMIEL**: "God is my kinsman"

**AMRAM**: "exalted nation"

**ANAIAH**: "YAHWEH has answered"

**ARIEL**: "lion of God"

**AZARIAH**: "YAHWEH has helped"

**AZAZIAH**: "YAHWEH is strong"

**AZRIEL**: "my help is God"

**BARAK**: "lightning"

**BENAIAH**: "YAHWEH has built"

**BETHUEL**: Possibly means "God destroys"

**BITHIAH**: "Daughter of YAHWEH"

DANIEL: “God is my judge”

DAVID: (Dawid): “Beloved.” God called Jesus beloved, when Jesus came up out of the water. See introductory comments.

DELALIAH: “YAHWEH has drawn up”

ELDAD: “God has loved”

ELIAKIM: “God rises”

ELIJAH : “My God is YAHWEH”

EMMANUEL (Same as IMMANUEL): “God is with us.” This name is given to Jesus. This is a statement. It does not mean that Jesus is God, no more than Ishmael or Eliakim is God. It is like the meaning of Ithiel; “God is with me” or the meaning of Jehu; “Yahweh is he.” Jehu is not Yahweh. **The meaning is simply a proclamation to the people.**

To further understand the meaning of Emmanuel (“God is with us”), it is good to look at the context of the places it is found in Isaiah and Matthew:

These two passages show that Jesus was this “Emmanuel”:

Isaiah 7:14 (NETS); “Therefore the Lord himself will give you a sign. Look, the virgin shall be with child and bear a son, and you shall call him Emmanouel.” This is talking about Jesus.

Matthew 1:21-23 (YLT); “<sup>21</sup> And she shall bring forth a son; and thou shalt call his name Jesus; for it is he that shall save his people from their sins. <sup>22</sup> Now all this is come to pass, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the Lord through the prophet, saying, <sup>23</sup> Behold, the virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Immanuel; which is, being interpreted, God with us.”

The next two occurrences are in Isaiah 8:8-10. Older manuscripts than the MS (Masoretic Text – Which most translations are based), such as the Greek Septuagint, do not include the name but the meaning, in verse 8. The Septuagint is around 1,000 years older than the MS. I am quoting from the (NETS) which I feel is a good compromise between the NRSV, the Greek Septuagint, and the spirit of the Hebrew language, of the day. In this case, I feel it is important to use these examples, to help bring out the true meaning of the phrase, “God is with us:”

Isaiah (Esaias) 8:8-10 (NETS);

“...God is with us. (9) Learn, you nations, and be defeated;

listen as far as the end of the earth;

be strong, and be defeated;

for if you become strong again, again you

shall be defeated!

(10) And whatever counsel you take, the Lord  
will scatter it,  
and whatever word you speak, it will not  
remain for you,  
because the Lord God is with us.”

In the two passages from Isaiah 8, the term “God is with us” is a statement indicating that the Lord God is supporting them to victory over their adversaries. There is no hidden or secret meaning. It is simple. The thought can be compared to today. Some who go to war with success and feel that their God was with them so that they were victorious. But in this case, it is talking about having the support of the true Almighty God, Yahweh. It is not saying that Yahweh was physically with them. So, when Jesus was born, it was a sure sign that Yahweh was with his people. Interestingly, John the baptizer, was to prepare the people for the arrival of the Messiah. This had to be done. It was prophesied. The people had to have the right attitude, to have God on their side. This thought is also shown in [Isaiah 8:13-14](#) (ASV):

<sup>13</sup> Jehovah of hosts, him shall ye sanctify; and let him be your fear, and let him be your dread. <sup>14</sup> And he shall be for a sanctuary...”

[EZEKIEL](#): “God will strengthen”

[GABRIEL](#): “Strong God,” “God is my strongman,” “God’s hero.”

I found it interesting how this name had so many different translated meanings.

[GEDALIAH](#): “YAHWEH is great”

[HANANIAH](#): “YAHWEH is gracious”

[HAZAEEL](#): “God sees”

[HEZEKIAH](#): “YAHWEH strengthens”

[HILLEL](#): “Praise”

[HODIAH](#): “majesty of YAHWEH”

[HOSANNA](#): “deliver us” – This name was cried out when Jesus was entering Jerusalem, upon a colt. Of course, it did not mean that Jesus was the person Hosanna of old. The principle of the meaning is the important thing. [Matthew 21:5-9](#) (YLT):

<sup>5</sup> ‘Tell ye the daughter of Zion, Lo, thy king doth come to thee, meek, and mounted on an ass, and a colt, a foal of a beast of burden.’

<sup>6</sup> And the disciples having gone and having done as Jesus commanded them,

<sup>7</sup> brought the ass and the colt, and did put on them their garments, and set [him] upon them;

<sup>8</sup> and the very great multitude spread their own garments in the way, and others were cutting branches from the trees, and were strewing in the way,

<sup>9</sup> and the multitudes who were going before, and who were following, were crying, saying, 'Hosanna to the Son of David, blessed is he who is coming in the name of the Lord; Hosanna in the highest.'

HOSHEA: "Salvation"

ISAIAH: "YAHWEH is salvation."

ISHMAEL: "God will hear." This is another good example of where the meaning is a statement. It does not mean that Ishmael is God.

ISRAEL: "God contends." Jacob wrestled with an angel and would not let it leave until the angel blessed him. After receiving the blessing, Jacob is given this new name "Israel" ([Genesis 32:22-28](#)). This is a good example how a name receives a meaning – By the actions of the person.

ITHIEL: "God is with me"

JAHLEEL: "God waits"

JECONIAH: "YAHWEH will establish"

JEDIDIAH: "Beloved of YAHWEH"

JEHOIAKIM: "Raised by YAHWEH"

JEHORAM: "Exalted by YAHWEH"

JEHU: "YAHWEH is he"

JEREMIAH: "YAHWEH will exalt"

JERIAH: "Taught by YAHWEH"

JESUS: A contracted form of Joshua. See YESHUA

JOAB: "YAHWEH is father"

JOASH: "Fire of YAHWEH"

JOEL: "YAHWEH is God"

JOSHUA: "YAHWEH is salvation"

JOTHAM: "YAHWEH is perfect"

MALACHI: "My messenger" or "My angel"

MATTANIAH: "Gift of YAHWEH"

MEDAD: "Love"

MEHETABEL: “God makes happy”

MICAIAH: “Who is like YAHWEH?”

MICHAEL: “Who is like God?”

NEHEMIAH: “YAHWEH comforts”

NERIAH: “Lamp of YAHWEH”

OBADIAH: “Serving YAHWEH”

SERAI AH: “Yahweh is ruler”

URIAH: “YAHWEH is my light”

UZZIAH: “My power is Yahweh”

YESHUA: “To deliver/rescue/save” (Jesus Christ)

ZEBADIAH: “Yahweh has bestowed”

ZECHARIAH: “Yahweh remembers”

ZEDEKIAH: “Justice of Yahweh”

ZURIEL: “My rock is God”



## **The word, “name” can denote authority.**

The Greek word (#3686) can denote many things. Not only can it denote the name of a person or thing but can also denote authority given. As an example, we are familiar with the phrase, “In the name of the law...” This denotes authority.

Here are some scriptures to help clarify not only the authority that Yeshua (Jesus Christ) was given, but also his relationship with his Father, Yahweh.

### **Philippians 2:5-11 (WEB);**

5 Have this in your mind, which was also in Christ Jesus, 6 who, existing in the form of God, didn't consider equality with God a thing to be grasped, 7 but emptied himself, taking the form of a servant, being made in the likeness of men. 8 And being found in human form, he humbled himself, becoming obedient to death, yes, the death of the cross. 9 Therefore God also highly exalted him, and gave to him the name which is above every name; 10 that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of those in heaven, those on earth, and those under the earth, 11 and that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.

### **Ephesians 1:20-22 (WEB);**

20 which he worked in Christ, when he raised him from the dead, and made him to sit at his right hand in the heavenly places, 21 far above all rule, and authority, and power, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this age, but also in that which is to come. 22 He put all things in subjection under his feet, and gave him to be head over all things for the assembly,

### **1 Corinthians 15:28 (WEB);**

28 When all things have been subjected to him, then the Son will also himself be subjected to him who subjected all things to him, that God may be all in all.

### **Jesus has a God:**

### **Mark 15:34 (WEB);**

34 At the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, “Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani?” which is, being interpreted, “My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?”

### **1 Corinthians 11:3 (WEB);**

3 But I would have you know that the head of every man is Christ, and the head of the woman is the man, and the head of Christ is God.

### **Rev. 1:1 (WEB);**

1 This is the Revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave him to show to his servants the things which must happen soon, which he sent and made known by his angel to his servant, John,

### **Revelation 3:2 (WEB);**

2 Wake up, and keep the things that remain, which you were about to throw away, for I have found no works of yours perfected before my God.

## Alpha and Omega

There are arguments that this term, “Alpha and Omega” is a title-name that is used by both Jesus (Yeshua) and Jehovah (Yahweh). So, some conclude that they must be the same being. But is that so? Others strongly disagree, for various reasons. This paper investigates, in detail, the time and events of each occurrence of the phrase. This helps to put the fire out concerning this “hotly” contested phrase with the cool refreshing water of truth.

**Alpha is the first letter in the Greek alphabet.**

**Omega is the last letter in the Greek alphabet.**

Translations are: (NIV, KJV)

- Revelation 1:8 “I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.”
- **(Revelation 1:11)** As in the King James Version; “I am the Alpha and Omega, the First and the Last...” However, this phrase **is not here in the older manuscripts. It had been added.** Thus, most up to date translations are correct to not include it.
- Revelation 21:5-7 “He who was seated on the throne said, “I am making everything new!” Then he said, “Write this down, for these words are trustworthy and true.” 6 He said to me: “It is done. I am the Alpha and Omega, the Beginning and the End... 7 He who overcomes will inherit all this, and I will be his God and he will be my Son.”
- Revelation 22:12-13 “Behold, I am coming soon! My reward is with me, and I will give to everyone according to what he has done. 13 I am the Alpha and Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End.”

### **What did the stating of the first and last letters signify, in ancient times?**

The NIV Cultural Backgrounds Study Bible footnote for Revelation 1:8 and in conjunction Rev. 21:6 and 22:13; “The Alpha and Omega...the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet... (some Jewish writers did the same with the first and last letters of the Hebrew alphabet, [Aleph and Taw]).

When the first and last letters were used by Jewish writers, in a similar manner, it denoted the entirety of the subject or action at hand. From the beginning of the subject to the end of the subject.

- As an example, before Jesus was born from Mary, it could have been truthfully stated that the Messiah was coming and that he would fulfill prophesy, from A to Z (regarding his time on earth). From start to finish. From beginning to end. Even Jesus himself proclaimed when he had fulfilled all the needed prophesy concerning his time on earth at John 19:30, “When he received the drink, Jesus said, “It is finished.” With that, he bowed his head and gave up his spirit.” From that aspect, Jesus fulfilled all prophesy, from

beginning to end, concerning his time on earth until his death. Just because Jesus did this, does not mean he is the Almighty. It just means he thoroughly completed his task at hand. From beginning to end.

- It can be said, with 100% certainty, that when Jesus comes again, the remaining prophesies will be fulfilled, from A to Z. From start to finish. From beginning to end.

### **What time-periods do the statements “come/coming” apply that include the phrase “Alpha and Omega?”**

Interestingly, **only Revelation 1:8 and Revelation 22:12-13 use wording to denote coming:**

- Revelation 1:8 “I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.”
- Revelation 22:12-13 “Behold, I am coming soon! My reward is with me, and I will give to everyone according to what he has done. 13 I am the Alpha and Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End.”
- **These two verses simply** are statements made to the apostle John at the end of the first century. They **apply to that point in time:** The “coming” has yet to happen.

The time-period that the words at Revelation 21:5-8 apply is *after* the coming! This is very evident in the surrounding verses. Notice the carrying out of judgments in verse 8:

- **Revelation 21:2-3** “I saw the Holy City, the New Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God, prepared as a bride beautifully dressed for her husband. 3 And I heard a loud voice from the throne saying, “Now the dwelling of God is with men, and he will live with them. They will be his people, and God himself will be with them and be their God.”
- **Revelation 21:5-7** “He who was seated on the throne said, “I am making everything new!” Then he said, “Write this down, for these words are trustworthy and true.” 6 He said to me: “It is done. I am the Alpha and Omega, the Beginning and the End... 7 He who overcomes will inherit all this, and I will be his God and he will be my Son.”
- **Revelation 21:8** “But the cowardly, the unbelieving, the vile, the murderers, the sexually immoral, those who practice magic arts, the idolaters and all liars – their place will be in the fiery lake of burning sulfur. This is the second death.”

### **The time periods before Jesus comes and after he is here are foretold in Malachi 3:**

[Malachi 3:1-5](#) “See, I will send my messenger, who will prepare the way before me. Then suddenly the Lord you are seeking will come to his temple; the messenger of the covenant, whom you desire, will come,” says [Yahweh] the LORD Almighty. 2 But who can endure the day of his coming? Who can stand when he appears? For he will be like a refiner’s fire or a launderer’s soap. 3 He will sit as a refiner and purifier of silver, he will purify the Levites and refine them like gold and silver. Then the LORD [Yahweh] will have men who will bring

offerings in righteousness, 4 and the offerings of Judah and Jerusalem will be acceptable to the LORD [Yahweh], as in days gone by, as in former years. 5 “So I will come near to you for judgement. I will be quick to testify against sorcerers, adulterers and perjurers, against those who defraud laborers of their wages, who oppress the widows and the fatherless, and deprive aliens of justice, but do not fear me,” says the LORD [Yahweh] Almighty.

- Notice in verse 1, “Suddenly the Lord you are seeking will come to his temple.” This reflects what Jesus prophesied about his followers. They would not be expecting him, at the time of his coming. Matthew 24:44 “So you must also be ready, because the Son of Man will come at an hour when you do not expect him.” Compare Matthew 24:36-51; Luke 12:35-48. (Interesting side point...For anyone who claims to know the date or time of Jesus’ coming to his temple is a false prophet. The symbolic temple is cleansed first. This takes about 3.5 years. Then when their worship is cleansed/straightened, he turns his attention to the nations. This is when he appears with his angels to do a separating work.)
- Malachi 3:1 brings out that the Lord that they are seeking will arrive suddenly. This Lord is Jesus. It is Yahweh who sends him to judge His people.
- Malachi 3:2-3 Denotes a time of cleansing when Jesus comes. This will be a time of straightening one’s worship as mentioned in Daniel 11:33-35. After the straightening, Michael (Jesus) “Stands up” and the resurrection also begins. This point in time is found also at Revelation 11:15. As Daniel 12:11 mentions, this cleansing lasts for about 3.5 years. Compare Revelation 11:1-3; Their worship is purified to be acceptable to Yahweh, as mentioned in verse 4.
- Notice Malachi 3:5 where this judging method is from Yahweh. Jesus (Yeshua) is acting in Yahweh’s behalf.

Jesus and Yahweh are two different entities yet unified in purpose.

### Who is stating “Alpha and Omega” in each occurrence?

As mentioned earlier, to state the first and last letter of the alphabet was to drive a point home. Whatever was being talked about was sure to happen or did happen. Either Yahweh or Jesus could use this method to drive a point home. It does not mean that just because they use the same method that they are the same being.

- **Revelation 1:8** “I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” – This denotes Yahweh. He alone is the Almighty. [Ps. 83:18](#); [Exodus 6:3](#)
- **Revelation 22:12-13** “Behold, I am coming soon! My reward is with me, and I will give to everyone according to what he has done. 13 I am the Alpha and Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End.” – At first, this sounds like it could be Jesus speaking here. He does not claim to be the Almighty. Yet, we see at Malachi 3, that he is sent by Yahweh to cleanse God’s people so that they are to be acceptable to him. He is sent with Yahweh’s authority, in this matter. It does appear that verses 12-15 most likely

are from Yahweh. Malachi 3:2-4 shows Jesus judging and refining God's people under Yahweh's direction. The question is, is verse 5 showing Yahweh judging directly or is it indirectly through his Son? Does it matter? Revelation 21:23 states that Yahweh and Jesus (the Lamb of God) are New Jerusalem's "temple." Verse 24 states that Yahweh is its light and Jesus is its lamp. They are working together. Revelation 11:15 describes the change of rulership of the world to God's kingdom as; "The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ, and he will reign for ever and ever." Jesus and his Father Yahweh will rule together, [similar to the days of old](#). Jesus rules under his Father as shown in Psalms 110:1 and Psalms 2.

- **Revelation 21:5-7** "He who was seated on the throne said, "I am making everything new!" Then he said, "Write this down, for these words are trustworthy and true." 6 He said to me: "It is done. I am the Alpha and Omega, the Beginning and the End... 7 He who overcomes will inherit all this, and I will be his God and he will be my Son." – This God would be Yahweh. He is the one who has the "sons." Jesus has "brothers." Compare when Yahweh spoke to king David as recorded in 1 [Chronicles 28:6 \(WEB\)](#); He said to me, 'Solomon, your son, shall build my house and my courts; for **I have chosen him to be my son, and I will be his father.**
- The term "the first and the last" at **Revelation 22:12-13** is referenced by many to Isaiah 44:6; 41:4; 48:12. However, **the NETS** (New English Translation of the Septuagint) translates these passages as:
  - Isaiah 41:4 "... I, God, am first, and for the things that are coming, I am."
  - Isaiah 44:6 "... I am first, and I am after these things; besides me there is no god."
  - Isaiah 48:12 "... I am the first, and I am forever."

## Who can be rightfully called, “god,” or “God?”

Some doctrines that have been taught over centuries have incorrectly taught that Jesus (Yeshua) is his father (Yahweh). Most of this is because of teaching and not testing doctrine. Falsehood creeps in and confuses and blinds millions if not billions of people from finding the truth. The remedy is found in the scriptures which show how the multiple ways that the title, “God” is used. [But to truly understand, one needs to be ready to listen to God and not man.](#) Are you ready?

**The word “God” denotes authority given to someone or something such as a false god. However, there’s only one Almighty God, Yahweh.**

Do you think that it would be proper to call Moses, God? How about calling [others of ancient Israel who judged Israel](#), such as Deborah, Gideon, Jephthah, or Samson, gods? Believe it or not, [the Almighty](#) did and it is recorded for us in scripture ([Psalms 82:1-6](#)). These ones had authority given them, from Jehovah. They represented qualities of the Almighty in different ways.

Moses represented Jehovah to Pharaoh, as God, in [Exodus 7:1 \(DARBY\)](#), and [judged Israel Exodus 18:13](#)

Exodus 7:1:

7 And Jehovah said to Moses, See, I have made thee God to Pharaoh; and Aaron thy brother shall be thy prophet.

Exodus 18:13:

<sup>13</sup> On the next day, Moses sat to judge the people, and the people stood around Moses from the morning to the evening.

Psalms 82:1-6:

82 God presides in the great assembly.

He judges among the gods.

<sup>2</sup> “How long will you judge unjustly,  
and show partiality to the wicked?” Selah.

<sup>3</sup> “Defend the weak, the poor, and the fatherless.  
Maintain the rights of the poor and oppressed.

<sup>4</sup> Rescue the weak and needy.  
Deliver them out of the hand of the wicked.”

<sup>5</sup> They don’t know, neither do they understand.  
They walk back and forth in darkness.

All the foundations of the earth are shaken.



<sup>6</sup> I said, “You are gods,  
all of you are sons of the Most High.

[Deborah was a prophet of Jehovah and judged Israel](#)

[Gideon was a military leader and prophet of Jehovah who judged Israel](#)

[Jephthah was a military leader who judged Israel](#)

[Samson was given immense strength from Jehovah and judged Israel](#)

Jesus referred to this fact, that Yahweh made humans “gods” as a defense, when his enemies tried to find fault with him, to put him to death. The entire account is at John 10:22-39. Jesus’ scriptural defense is found at John 10:34-36 (in bold). Keep in mind, at that moment in time, Jesus had recently opened the eyes of a man born blind ([John 9:1-34](#)), stated that he had been before Abraham ([John 8:57-59 \(WE\)](#)), told the [Pharisees](#) (Religious leaders) that their Father was the Devil ([John 8:44](#)), stated that he was the light of the world ([John 8:12](#)), that he was from the realms above ([John 8:23](#)), and that [he and his Father are one](#) (John 10:30). Jesus’ reply to their accusation was simple. [Jesus referred to Psalms 82:1-6 where humans such as judges or others that have authority from the Almighty over others are referred to as “gods”](#) (John 10:34).

[John 10:22-39 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>22</sup> It was the Feast of the Dedication at Jerusalem. <sup>23</sup> It was winter, and Jesus was walking in the temple, in Solomon’s porch. <sup>24</sup> The Jews therefore came around him and said to him, “How long will you hold us in suspense? If you are the Christ, tell us plainly.”

<sup>25</sup> Jesus answered them, “I told you, and you don’t believe. The works that I do in my Father’s name, these testify about me. <sup>26</sup> But you don’t believe, because you are not of my sheep, as I told you. <sup>27</sup> My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me. <sup>28</sup> I give eternal life to them. They will never perish, and no one will snatch them out of my hand. <sup>29</sup> My Father, who has given them to me, is greater than all. No one is able to snatch them out of my Father’s hand. <sup>30</sup> I and the Father are one.”

<sup>31</sup> Therefore Jews took up stones again to stone him. <sup>32</sup> Jesus answered them, “I have shown you many good works from my Father. For which of those works do you stone me?”

<sup>33</sup> The Jews answered him, “We don’t stone you for a good work, but for blasphemy: because you, being a man, make yourself God.”

<sup>34</sup> **Jesus answered them, “Isn’t it written in your law, ‘I said, you are gods?’ <sup>35</sup> If he called them gods, to whom the word of God came (and the Scripture can’t be broken), <sup>36</sup> do you say of him whom the Father sanctified and sent into the world, ‘You blaspheme,’ because I said, ‘I am the Son of God?’ <sup>37</sup> If I don’t do the works of my Father, don’t believe me. <sup>38</sup> But if I do them, though you don’t believe me, believe the works; that you may know and believe that the Father is in me, and I in the Father.”**

<sup>39</sup> They sought again to seize him, and he went out of their hand.”

The religious leaders picked up stones, to stone Jesus. They accused him of blasphemy. They accused him of making himself “**a god**” (NWT); “**God**” (NIV) (John 10:33).

There is a lot of contention on how John 10:33 should be translated. That is why I presented both translations (NWT/NIV). It does not matter much either way. The judges who judged Israel, included Moses, who was made by Yahweh (Jehovah) to be, “**God to Pharaoh**” (With a capital G). In any case, Jesus set their thoughts straight by also reiterating what they most likely heard before, that Jesus said that he was “the Son of God,” in verse 36. Jesus’ enemies could not have thought that he called himself “God,” as if the Almighty. If Jesus’ enemies would have heard Jesus state that he was God Almighty, for a certainty, they would have brought that as a charge worthy of death, in front of Pilate. Rather of charging Jesus as saying that, Christ’s enemies told Pilate that Jesus “made himself the Son of God.” (John 19:6-7) They did not say that he made himself, “The Father,” or anything else. Jesus made it simple and clear that he had a father many times, in this passage in verses 25, 29-30, 32, 37-38.

#### [John 19:6-7 \(WEB\);](#)

“<sup>6</sup> When therefore the chief priests and the officers saw him, they shouted, saying, “Crucify! Crucify!”

Pilate said to them, “Take him yourselves, and crucify him, for I find no basis for a charge against him.”

<sup>7</sup> The Jews answered him, “We have a law, and by our law he ought to die, because **he made himself the Son of God.**” ‘

The ones who judged Ancient Israel and derived their authority from the Almighty, were also called “sons of the Most High,” in Psalms 82:6. Moses, in Deuteronomy 33:1 (DARBY) is called “the man of God.” In comparison, **just because Jesus said that he was the Son of God, did not make him anymore the Almighty than the “gods, sons of the Most High” spoken about in Psalms 82:6. You are either someone or you are not.** However, Jesus was able to reflect his Father’s qualities on a grander scale.

#### [Psalms 82 \(RSV\):](#)

God has taken his place in the divine council;

in the midst of the gods he holds judgment:

<sup>2</sup> “How long will you judge unjustly  
and show partiality to the wicked? *Selah*

<sup>3</sup> Give justice to the weak and the fatherless;  
maintain the right of the afflicted and the destitute.

<sup>4</sup> Rescue the weak and the needy;  
deliver them from the hand of the wicked.”

<sup>5</sup> They have neither knowledge nor understanding,  
they walk about in darkness;  
all the foundations of the earth are shaken.

<sup>6</sup> I say, “**You are gods,  
sons of the Most High, all of you;**  
<sup>7</sup> nevertheless, you shall die like men,  
and fall like any prince.”

<sup>8</sup> Arise, O God, judge the earth;  
for to thee belong all the nations!

**The Almighty, Yahweh even made Moses, as God,** when he sent him to Pharaoh:

[Exodus 7:1 \(ASV\);](#)

“And Jehovah said unto Moses, See, **I have made thee as God to Pharaoh;** and Aaron thy brother shall be thy prophet.”

**Just because Moses was made as God to Pharaoh, by the Almighty, does not make Moses the Almighty. Moses was Yahweh’s (Jehovah’s) representative (Exodus 7:1) and was given authority by him.**

**Likewise, it can be proper to refer to Jesus (Yeshua) as God, but not Almighty God. He has authority given to him from the Father, the Almighty, over others, and was sent by him to be his representative (John 5:42-44, John 17:8). But just as it is in Moses’ case, that does not make him the Almighty.**

[John 5:42-44 \(TPT\);](#)

“<sup>42</sup> for I know what kind of people you really are, and I can see that the love of God has found no home in you. <sup>43</sup> **I have come to represent my Father,** yet you refuse to embrace me in faith. But when someone comes in their own name and with their own agenda, you readily accept him. <sup>44</sup> Of course you’re unable to believe in me. For you live for the praises of others and not for the praise that comes from **the only true God.**”

The phrase “the only true God” denotes the Almighty. There are other gods, as this article shows. Even the Almighty (Yahweh/Jehovah) himself called some humans “gods,” as mentioned in this article. He didn’t make a mistake.

[John 5:42-44 \(TLB\);](#)

“<sup>42</sup> “Your approval or disapproval means nothing to me, for as I know so well, you don’t have God’s love within you. <sup>43</sup> I know, because **I have come to you representing my Father** and you refuse to welcome me, though you readily enough receive those who aren’t sent from him, but represent only themselves! <sup>44</sup> No wonder you can’t believe! For you gladly honor each other, but you don’t care about the honor that comes from the only God!”

[John 17:8 \(TPT\);](#)

“And the very words you gave to me to speak  
I have passed on to them.

They have received your words  
and *carry them in their hearts*.  
They are convinced that I have come from your presence,  
and they have fully believed that **you sent me to represent you.**”

John 17:8 (Interlinear Bible).

“For the words which You gave to Me, I have given to them. And they received, and truly knew that I came out from beside You; and they believed that **You sent Me.**”

**Thomas did nothing wrong when he referred to Jesus as his God.** Jesus had authority given him from the Almighty. [John 20:28 \(ASV\)](#); “Thomas answered and said unto him, My Lord and my God.” This did not mean that Jesus was the Almighty any more than Moses or any of the gods referred to in Psalms 82:6.

**Satan is called a god**, in [2 Corinthians 4:4](#). His authority could have only been given to him by the Almighty. His authority had to have been real, in order for him to tempt Jesus ([Luke 4:5-7](#), [John 14:30](#)).

**2 Corinthians 4:4 (WEB);**

“<sup>4</sup> in whom the god of this world has blinded the minds of the unbelieving, that the light of the Good News of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God, should not dawn on them.”

**Luke 4:5-7 (WEB);**

<sup>5</sup> The devil, leading him up on a high mountain, showed him all the kingdoms of the world in a moment of time. <sup>6</sup> The devil said to him, “I will give you all this authority, and their glory, for it has been delivered to me; and I give it to whomever I want. <sup>7</sup> If you therefore will worship before me, it will all be yours.” ‘

**John 14:30 (WEB);**

“<sup>30</sup> I will no more speak much with you, for the prince of the world comes, and he has nothing in me.” Denoting Satan’s authority.

**[John chapter 20 \(WEB\):](#)**

(Bold added for study points)

20 Now on the first day of the week, Mary Magdalene went early, while it was still dark, to the tomb, and saw the stone taken away from the tomb. <sup>2</sup> Therefore she ran and came to Simon Peter and to the other disciple whom Jesus loved, and said to them, “They have taken away the Lord out of the tomb, and we don’t know where they have laid him!”

<sup>3</sup> Therefore Peter and the other disciple went out, and they went toward the tomb. <sup>4</sup> They both ran together. The other disciple outran Peter, and came to the tomb first. <sup>5</sup> Stooping and looking in, he saw the linen cloths lying, yet he didn’t enter in. <sup>6</sup> Then Simon Peter came, following him, and entered into the tomb. He saw the linen cloths lying, <sup>7</sup> and the

cloth that had been on his head, not lying with the linen cloths, but rolled up in a place by itself.<sup>8</sup> So then the other disciple who came first to the tomb also entered in, and he saw and believed.<sup>9</sup> For as yet they didn't know the Scripture, that he must rise from the dead.<sup>10</sup> So the disciples went away again to their own homes.

<sup>11</sup> But Mary was standing outside at the tomb weeping. So as she wept, she stooped and looked into the tomb,<sup>12</sup> and she saw two angels in white sitting, one at the head, and one at the feet, where the body of Jesus had lain.<sup>13</sup> They asked her, "Woman, why are you weeping?"

She said to them, "Because they have taken away my Lord, and I don't know where they have laid him."<sup>14</sup> When she had said this, she turned around and saw Jesus standing, and didn't know that it was Jesus.

<sup>15</sup> Jesus said to her, "Woman, why are you weeping? Who are you looking for?"

She, supposing him to be the gardener, said to him, "Sir, if you have carried him away, tell me where you have laid him, and I will take him away."

<sup>16</sup> Jesus said to her, "Mary."

She turned and said to him, "Rabboni!" which is to say, "Teacher!"

<sup>17</sup> Jesus said to her, "Don't hold me, for I haven't yet ascended to my Father; but go to my brothers and tell them, **'I am ascending to my Father and your Father, to my God and your God.'**"

<sup>18</sup> Mary Magdalene came and told the disciples that she had seen the Lord, and that he had said these things to her.<sup>19</sup> When therefore it was evening on that day, the first day of the week, and when the doors were locked where the disciples were assembled, for fear of the Jews, Jesus came and stood in the middle, and said to them, "Peace be to you."

<sup>20</sup> When he had said this, he showed them his hands and his side. The disciples therefore were glad when they saw the Lord.<sup>21</sup> Jesus therefore said to them again, "Peace be to you. **As the Father has sent me, even so I send you.**"<sup>22</sup> When he had said this, he breathed on them, and said to them, "Receive the Holy Spirit!<sup>23</sup> If you forgive anyone's sins, they have been forgiven them. If you retain anyone's sins, they have been retained."

<sup>24</sup> But Thomas, one of the twelve, called Didymus, wasn't with them when Jesus came.<sup>25</sup> The other disciples therefore said to him, "We have seen the Lord!"

But he said to them, "Unless I see in his hands the print of the nails, put my finger into the print of the nails, and put my hand into his side, I will not believe."

<sup>26</sup> After eight days again his disciples were inside and Thomas was with them. Jesus came, the doors being locked, and stood in the middle, and said, "Peace be to you."<sup>27</sup> Then he said to Thomas, "Reach here your finger, and see my hands. Reach here your hand, and put it into my side. Don't be unbelieving, but believing."

<sup>28</sup> **Thomas answered him, “My Lord and my God!”**

<sup>29</sup> Jesus said to him, “Because you have seen me, you have believed. Blessed are those who have not seen, and have believed.”

<sup>30</sup> Therefore Jesus did many other signs in the presence of his disciples, which are not written in this book; <sup>31</sup> but these are written, that you may believe that **Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God**, and that believing you may have life in his name.

Comments regarding the above passage from John 20:

- It can't be simpler than that. Jesus (Yeshua) is the son of God (The Almighty). It is similar to the Father (Yahweh) making Solomon a son of his, as mentioned by king David, at [1 Chronicles 28:5-7 \(WEB\)](#): <sup>5</sup> Of all my sons (for Yahweh has given me many sons), **he has chosen Solomon my son to sit on the throne of Yahweh's kingdom** over Israel. <sup>6</sup> He said to me, ‘Solomon, your son, shall build my house and my courts; for **I have chosen him to be my son, and I will be his father.** <sup>7</sup> I will establish his kingdom forever if he continues to do my commandments and my ordinances, as it is today.’ Just as Solomon was not Yahweh the Almighty, neither is Yeshua (Jesus).
- Notice the parallel thoughts of Jesus identifying his father and God as his disciple's. The resurrected Jesus (Yeshua) says he has a God, who would be the father, Yahweh. Jesus does not claim to be the Almighty, his father and the father of the disciples. As shown above, even humans were given great authority from Yahweh and referred to as gods by Yahweh. See verse 28.
- Compare [Revelation 3:12 \(WEB\)](#) where Christ states that he has a God four times in just one verse:
- “He who overcomes, I will make him a pillar in the temple of **my God**, and he will go out from there no more. I will write on him the name of **my God** and the name of the city of **my God**, the new Jerusalem, which comes down out of heaven from my **God**, and my own new name.”
- Compare [Hebrews 1:8-9 \(WEB\)](#):
- <sup>8</sup> But of the Son he says,
- “Your throne, O God, is forever and ever.  
The scepter of uprightness is the scepter of your Kingdom.  
<sup>9</sup> You have loved righteousness and hated iniquity;  
**therefore God, your God**, has anointed you with the oil of gladness above your fellows.” [Psalm 45:6-7](#)
- Jesus (Yeshua) uses his authority to send his disciples (vs.21). He also shows that as he was sent, he's sending his disciples. This shows that he is not Almighty any more than his disciples are literally him.
- Thomas didn't mean that Jesus (Yeshua) was the Almighty. But he did acknowledge his authority over him by calling him, “my God.”

- This also shows levels of authority. As verse 17 showed Jesus acknowledging that he has a God, Thomas did the same. This did not mean Thomas was Jesus any more than Jesus was Yahweh. It simply implied levels of authority.

**Humans and the devil have been called “gods” or “God.” They all had a measure of authority over others, from the Almighty. There is only one Almighty God mentioned in scripture, [Yahweh](#) (Jehovah).**



## Isaiah 9:6-7: Who is this, “Mighty God?”

**Isaiah 9:6-7** Is viewed by many Christians as a prophesy directly pointing to Jesus’ birth (See end comments). In reality, it is not talking about Jesus’ birth, but is referring to King Hezekiah, in ancient Jerusalem. The actual birth that is mentioned is in the past tense. However, it does not rule out the possibility that this passage could prefigure Jesus. But there are errors. The errors are mainly due to miss-translation. The “titles” in this passage are actually one long title or name, according to Hebrew.

There are a lot of thoughts that go both ways. It’s important not to get too frustrated. It is not critical. But it is good to understand [how the word “god” is used in many Hebrew names](#).

Follow the links for detailed information:

[Comprehensive paper](#)

[Video by Rabbi Tovia Singer – About 3 minutes](#)

[Video by Rabbi Tovia Singer – Detailed – About 26 minutes](#)

[The titles/names mentioned in Isaiah 9:6 are actually one title](#)

**The correct translation is past tense**, as seen in the NETS and Tanakh (1985):

**Isaiah 9:6-7 (NETS);**

“Because a child was born for us,  
a son also given to us,  
whose sovereignty was upon his shoulder,  
and *he is* named Messenger of Great Counsel,  
for I will bring peace upon the rulers, peace and health to him.

(7) His sovereignty is great,  
and his peace has no boundary  
upon the throne of Daud and his kingdom,  
to make it prosper and to uphold it  
with righteousness and judgement  
from this time onward and forevermore.

The zeal of the Lord Sabaoth will do these things.”

**Isaiah 9:6-7 (vs.5-6; TANAKH);**

“For a child has been born to us,  
A son has been given us.  
And authority has settled on his shoulders.  
He *has been* named  
‘The Mighty God is planning grace;  
The Eternal Father, a peaceable ruler’ –  
(6) In token of abundant authority  
And of peace without limit  
Upon David’s throne and kingdom,  
That it might be firmly established  
In justice and equity  
Now and evermore.  
The zeal of the LORD of Hosts  
Shall bring this to pass.”

**Compare Isaiah 9:6-7 (NWT 1984)**

“For there has been a child born to us, there has been a son given to us; and the princely rule will come to be upon his shoulder. And his name *will be* called Wonderful Counselor, Mighty God, Eternal Father, Prince of Peace. To the abundance of the priestly rule and to peace there will be no end, upon the throne of David and upon his kingdom in order to establish it firmly and to sustain it by means of justice and by means of righteousness, from now on and to time indefinite. The very zeal of Jehovah of armies will do this.”

This is huge for those who think that this passage is *directly* referring to Jesus, when in reality, it is speaking of king Hezekiah. It is a popular passage. No matter how it is translated, **King Hezekiah could be in some way indirectly prefiguring Jesus**, in this passage. But it is not talked about in this way from the writings in the first century that we have.

In the historical account, Jerusalem was surrounded by the huge Assyrian army of 185,000 men. Defeat looked certain. But through Hezekiah’s guidance and reliance on Jehovah, Jerusalem was saved. The Assyrian army was defeated by Jehovah’s angel, overnight. Compare that with what is said will happen to the king of the north, just before his certain defeat. He goes to wage war, in a rage, apparently to finish off God’s people. It is at this time that, he is soundly defeated. This very well could be from Michael (Jesus) who stands up in behalf of God’s people, at this time. ([Daniel 11:44-12:1](#)) That is the beginning of the establishment of God’s kingdom.

## When Jesus states that he and his father are one, what does that mean?

There are many people who have different answers to this question. Some answers are very complex, some not. The truth is usually simple. However, a con-artist will be a cunning liar. He will attempt to persuade his victims with what sounds like a believable but complex story that is interwoven with bits of truth. However, the true answers are usually the simplest. Don't take my word for it. Let us see how **Jesus prayed about this**, in a simple manner, to his Father:

[John 17:21 \(WEB\)](#);

“<sup>20</sup> Not for these only do I pray, but for those also who believe in me through their word, <sup>21</sup> **that they may all be one; even as you, Father, are in me, and I in you, that they also may be one in us**; that the world may believe that you sent me.”

To “**all be one**,” denotes unity. The phrases, “**in me**,” “**in you**,” “**in us**,” or “**one in**,” also denote unity among the Father, Christ, and true followers. They have the same objective and beliefs. It can be taken a step farther by saying that once they all would have the spirit of God, this would greatly assist them in their “**oneness**” with Christ and his Father:

[John 14:15-17 \(WEB\)](#);

“<sup>15</sup> If you love me, keep my commandments. <sup>16</sup> I will pray to the Father, and he will give you another Counselor, that he may be with you forever,— <sup>17</sup> the Spirit of truth, whom the world can't receive; for it doesn't see him, neither knows him. You know him, for he lives with you, and *will be in you*.” Italics and bold added.

Notice that this “Spirit of Truth” was “living” with Jesus' disciples but yet had to be in them. This is because Jesus had God's spirit. Notice verse 25 shows how it would come to them:

[John 14:25-26 \(WEB\)](#);

“<sup>25</sup> I have said these things to you, while still living with you. <sup>26</sup> But the Counselor, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, he will teach you all things, and will remind you of all that I said to you.”

Some say that because Jesus said that he was, “in the Father” and that “the Father was in him,” that would denote that somehow they were of the same entity. That is incorrect and confuses many, because it is not based upon logical reasoning. Jesus prayed that his followers be “in them,” also ([John 14:17](#)). The true followers are not some mysterious part of the Father and neither is Jesus. The truth is usually simple and straight forward. Unity is prayed about here, between Christ, The Father (Yahweh), and true followers. To have God's Spirit, only made the unity stronger.

Comparing other scriptures that use similar wording, helps clarify thoughts:

[John 14:19-20 \(WEB\)](#);

“<sup>19</sup> Yet a little while, and the world will see me no more; but you will see me. Because I live, you will live also. <sup>20</sup> In that day you will know that **I am in my Father, and you in me, and I in you.**”

[John 14:10-11 \(WEB\)](#);

“<sup>10</sup> Don’t you believe that I am **in** the Father, and the Father **in** me? The words that I tell you, I speak not from myself; but the Father who lives in me does his works. <sup>11</sup> Believe me that I am **in** the Father, and the Father **in** me; or else believe me for the very works’ sake.”

Just as John 14:20 shows, Jesus’ followers were “**in**” him just as he was “**in**” his Father. That could not be literal but **spiritual unity**.

**However, Jesus did have “the Spirit of God.”** John the baptizer had testified that he saw God’s Spirit, as a dove, come down and remain with (or in) Jesus. He also exclaimed that Jesus was God’s chosen one, God’s Lamb, to take away the sins of the world ([John 1:32-34](#); [Luke 3:21-22](#); [Matthew 3:16-17](#); [Mark 1:9-11](#)). This did not mean that Jesus had a literal dove on him. He had the Spirit of God settle on (or in) him.

Notice the phrase, “the Father who lives in me does his works.” The statement, “lives in” denotes the spirit of his Father in him. This does not literally mean that “the Father” is Jesus, but it is figurative. As an example, in [Matthew 12:43-45](#), the man is called a “house” from which an unclean spirit went out of and came back to dwell. Just because the man had an unclean spirit living in him, did not mean that he was the unclean spirit. But it is not hard to imagine how that unclean spirit could cause him to act! Conversely, Jesus had God’s spirit in him. It is no wonder why he did what he did! But it did not mean that he was his Father. It did not mean that God was literally in Jesus either. This spirit is a force from the Almighty. Jesus prayed for God’s Spirit to be with his disciples too. This goes to show that [God’s Spirit](#) is not an individual but a force. Some things are personified in scripture too. The quality of wisdom is personified, as a woman, in [Proverbs 8](#). Jerusalem was personified, by Jesus, in [Luke 19:41-44](#), referencing [Zechariah 9:9](#). Like today, people give names to ships and refer to them by name or “she.” Just because something is personified, does not mean that they are a real being. Would it be too far of a stretch of the imagination to think that Jesus could have personified God’s Spirit? Although it is not written, imagine if Jesus told his disciples that they would receive Wisdom and that she would greatly help them? This is just an example of personification.

[John 15:4 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>4</sup> **Remain in me, and I in you.** As the branch can’t bear fruit by itself unless it remains in the vine, so neither can you, unless you remain in me.

## What does “God the Father” mean?

Jesus prayed to him, called out to him, and even taught his disciples to make his name holy, and called his Father their Father. Jesus also said that he was sent by his Father and received glory from him, which Jesus gave to his disciples. When Jesus stated that the father of the Pharisees was the Devil, this shows the term is used in a spiritual way along with a literal way. Just as the Pharisees were not their figurative father, the Devil, Jesus was not his Father, as some think.

### [John 17 \(WEB\);](#)

17 Jesus said these things, and lifting up his eyes to heaven, he said, “**Father**, the time has come. Glorify your Son, that your Son may also glorify you; <sup>2</sup> even as you gave him authority over all flesh, he will give eternal life to all whom you have given him. <sup>3</sup> This is eternal life, that they should know you, **the only true God**, and him whom you sent, Jesus Christ. <sup>4</sup> I glorified you on the earth. **I have accomplished the work which you have given me to do.** <sup>5</sup> Now, **Father**, glorify me with your own self with the glory which I had with you before the world existed. <sup>6</sup> I revealed your name to the people whom you have given me out of the world. They were yours, and you have given them to me. They have kept your word. <sup>7</sup> Now they have known that all things whatever you have given me are from you, <sup>8</sup> for the words which you have given me I have given to them, and they received them, and knew for sure that I came from you, and **they have believed that you sent me.** <sup>9</sup> I pray for them. I don’t pray for the world, but for those whom you have given me, for they are yours. <sup>10</sup> All things that are mine are yours, and yours are mine, and I am glorified in them. <sup>11</sup> I am no more in the world, but these are in the world, and **I am coming to you. Holy Father**, keep them through your name which you have given me, that they may be one, even as we are. <sup>12</sup> While I was with them in the world, I kept them in your name. Those whom you have given me I have kept. None of them is lost, except the son of destruction, that the Scripture might be fulfilled. <sup>13</sup> But now I come to you, and I say these things in the world, that they may have my joy made full in themselves. <sup>14</sup> I have given them your word. The world hated them, because they are not of the world, even as I am not of the world. <sup>15</sup> I pray not that you would take them from the world, but that you would keep them from the evil one. <sup>16</sup> They are not of the world even as I am not of the world. <sup>17</sup> Sanctify them in your truth. Your word is truth. <sup>18</sup> **As you sent me into the world, even so I have sent them into the world.** <sup>19</sup> For their sakes I sanctify myself, that they themselves also may be sanctified in truth. <sup>20</sup> Not for these only do I pray, but for those also who believe in me through their word, <sup>21</sup> that they may all be one; [even as you, Father, are in me, and I in you, that they also may be one in us](#); that the world may believe that you sent me. <sup>22</sup> **The glory which you have given me, I have given to them;** that they may be one, even as we are one; <sup>23</sup> I in them, and you in me, that they may be perfected into one; that the world may know that you sent me, and loved them, even as you loved me. <sup>24</sup> **Father**, I desire that they also whom you have given me be with me where I am, that they may see my glory, which you have given me, for you loved me before the foundation of the world. <sup>25</sup> **Righteous Father**, the world hasn’t known you, but

I knew you; and these knew that **you sent me**.<sup>26</sup> I made known to them your name, and will make it known; that the love with which you loved me may be in them, and I in them.”

[Luke 23:46 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>46</sup> Jesus, crying with a loud voice, said, “**Father**, into your hands I commit my spirit!” Having said this, he breathed his last.

[Matthew 6:9-10 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>9</sup> Pray like this: ‘**Our Father** in heaven, may your name be kept holy.<sup>10</sup> Let your Kingdom come. Let your will be done, as in heaven, so on earth.

Just with these few verses, it is rather easy to see that **this is a Father-Son relationship**. They are two different individuals. Jesus is not the Father. He would not pray to himself or call out to himself. He taught his followers to pray to the Father, not him. **Jesus made it clear that the Father is Yahweh and that he is the Messiah:**

**Jesus questioned his disciples who they thought he was. Peter said, “The Messiah.”**

[Mark 8:29-30 \(NIV\);](#)

<sup>29</sup> “But what about you?” he asked. “Who do you say I am?”

Peter answered, “You are the Messiah.”

<sup>30</sup> Jesus warned them not to tell anyone about him.

**Jesus, when talking to woman at the well, openly revealed that he was the Messiah:**

[John 4:25-26 \(NIV\);](#)

<sup>25</sup> The woman said, “I know that Messiah” (called Christ) “is coming. When he comes, he will explain everything to us.”

<sup>26</sup> Then Jesus declared, “I, the one speaking to you—I am he.”

**When Jesus questioned the Pharisees at Matthew 23:41-45, he identified the Father of the Messiah as Yahweh, and the Lord of king David, as the Messiah.** Jesus quoted this psalm of ancient king David recorded at Psalms 110:1. In the original or even the slightly older manuscripts, the first occurrence of the title “Lord” is actually Yahweh. Some translations use the English translation, Jehovah, some use Yahweh. Other translations will capitalize “LORD” to indicate that this is the Almighty God, Yahweh (Psalms 83:18). The Psalms originally have the name of the Almighty hundreds of times. It was man thoughts to remove it, not the Almighty’s. He had it placed there in the first place.

[Psalms 83:18 \(KJV\);](#)

<sup>18</sup> That men may know that thou, whose name alone is Jehovah, art the most high over all the earth.

[Psalm 100:1 \(DARBY\)](#) Notice placement of the Divine name;

110 Jehovah said unto my Lord, Sit at my right hand, until I put thine enemies [as] footstool of thy feet.

[Matthew 23:41-45 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>41</sup> Now while the Pharisees were gathered together, Jesus asked them a question, <sup>42</sup> saying, “What do you think of the Christ? Whose son is he?”

They said to him, “Of David.”

<sup>43</sup> He said to them, “How then does David in the Spirit call him Lord, saying,

<sup>44</sup> ‘The Lord said to my Lord,  
sit on my right hand,  
until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet’? [Psalm 110:1](#)

<sup>45</sup> “If then David calls him Lord, how is he his son?”

Notice the relationships here. Jesus asked the Pharisees who the father of the Messiah was. Jesus then says that King David, speaking by the spirit, called the Messiah “Lord.” Jesus identifies the “Lord,” in Psalms 110:1 as the Messiah and the Lord of King David.

[Psalm 110:1 WEB](#)

**Yahweh** says to my Lord, “Sit at my right hand, until I make your enemies your footstool for your...”

The blindness of the Pharisees is all too evident. If they said that “Yahweh” (Or the LORD) was the father of the Messiah, they would have been in harmony of Psalms 100:1. But then they would have found themselves in a position to have to seriously consider Jesus claiming to be the Son of God and the Messiah. Even the demons could see that. But the Pharisees could not see it. They did not want to see it. Jesus called their father the Devil ([John 8:44](#)). **This term “father” takes on a figurative meaning.**

[John 10:39-41 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>39</sup> Jesus said, “I came into this world for judgment, that those who don’t see may see; and that those who see may become blind.”

<sup>40</sup> Those of the Pharisees who were with him heard these things, and said to him, “Are we also blind?”

<sup>41</sup> Jesus said to them, “If you were blind, you would have no sin; but now you say, ‘We see.’ Therefore your sin remains.



[John 8:44 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>44</sup> You are of **your father, the devil**, and you want to do the desires of your father. He was a murderer from the beginning, and doesn't stand in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaks a lie, he speaks on his own; for **he is a liar, and its father**.

## What is the “Holy Spirit?”

This can be contentious issue with some, as they have been taught that the “Holy Spirit” is a person or perhaps part of a hard to understand “triune manifestation of God himself.” But that is not the case.

Again, the truth is usually straight forward and not complex. Things that are supposed to be simple to understand are made out to be hard to understand when someone is trying to push their thought, when it really does not fit – They try to make it fit. They try to glorify themselves rather than God. Trust in God not man.

Making the very long answer short, **the Holy Spirit is a tool of the Almighty God, Yahweh.** It is sometimes personified, as wisdom is in [Proverbs 8](#). But the overwhelming evidence shows that it is not a person but a force of Yahweh’s.

Just as [Jesus had God’s spirit](#), it did not mean that he was The Most High God, Yahweh.

[John 1:32 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>32</sup> John testified, saying, “I have seen the **Spirit descending like a dove** out of heaven, and it remained on him.

**When the 120 disciples gathered together and received the Holy Spirit, they received special powers from God. They did not become God.**

[Acts 2:1-4 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>2</sup> Now when the day of Pentecost had come, they were all with one accord in one place. <sup>2</sup> Suddenly there came from the sky a sound like the rushing of a mighty wind, and it filled all the house where they were sitting. <sup>3</sup> **Tongues like fire** appeared and were distributed to them, and one sat on each of them. <sup>4</sup> **They were all filled with the Holy Spirit**, and began to speak with other languages, as the Spirit gave them the ability to speak.

When **King David spoke, by means of the Holy Spirit**, it did not mean he was the Almighty, but was directed by God’s Spirit.

[Acts 1:15-16;20 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>15</sup> In these days, Peter stood up in the middle of the disciples (and the number of names was about one hundred twenty), and said, <sup>16</sup> “Brothers, it was necessary that this Scripture should be fulfilled, which **the Holy Spirit spoke before by the mouth of David concerning Judas**, who was guide to those who took Jesus.

<sup>20</sup> For it is written in the book of Psalms,

‘Let his habitation be made desolate.

Let no one dwell therein;’

and,

‘Let another take his office.’

### **Others that had Holy Spirit:**

**John the baptizer**, from birth, [Luke 1:15 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>15</sup> For he will be great in the sight of the Lord, and he will drink no wine nor strong drink. He will be filled with the Holy Spirit, even from his mother’s womb.

**Mary**, mother Jesus, [Luke 1:35 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>35</sup> The angel answered her, “The Holy Spirit will come on you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you. Therefore also the holy one who is born from you will be called the Son of God.

**Elizabeth**, John’s mother, [Luke 1:41 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>41</sup> When Elizabeth heard Mary’s greeting, the baby leaped in her womb, and Elizabeth was filled with the Holy Spirit.

**Zechariah**, John’s father, [Luke 1:67 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>67</sup> His father, Zacharias, was filled with the Holy Spirit, and prophesied, saying,

**Jesus himself stated that a saying against the Son of man would be forgiven, but a saying against the holy spirit would not be forgiven. This shows that Jesus and the Holy Spirit are not the same.**

[Luke 12:10 \(WEB\)](#);

**<sup>10</sup> Everyone who speaks a word against the Son of Man will be forgiven, but those who blaspheme against the Holy Spirit will not be forgiven.**

I am glad to have stumbled across a couple of pages that carry the same thoughts, about this subject, as I do. I can only recommend these pages, as I do not agree with other teachings of these groups, especially with prophesy. But it is up to each person to do their own research, to find the hidden treasure of God.

<https://www.ucg.org/bible-study-tools/booklets/is-god-a-trinity/is-the-holy-spirit-a-person>

[https://www.jw.org/en/publications/magazines/g200607/Is-the-Holy-Spirit-a-Person/#?insight\[search\\_id\]=dfb15187-d21f-4a73-9368-b7a3fd0612e2&insight\[search\\_result\\_index\]=0](https://www.jw.org/en/publications/magazines/g200607/Is-the-Holy-Spirit-a-Person/#?insight[search_id]=dfb15187-d21f-4a73-9368-b7a3fd0612e2&insight[search_result_index]=0)

## What does “the Son” mean?

Perhaps it would be best to start to say what it does not mean. It does not mean that the Son is part of the Father. **Jesus showed us** this many times by using the same term with the religious leaders, the Pharisees. Jesus stated that their father was the Devil and that they do the works of their father. Jesus knew that the Devil was not their fleshly father but their spiritual father. Just as the Pharisees were not a literal part of their father, Jesus was not a literal part of his father but his Son. The Pharisees were sons of the Devil. Interesting how even the “lie” has the Devil as it’s father. **The “Lie” was personified by Jesus as being a son of the Devil too.** So, **just because someone is “the Son” or “a son” of someone, does not mean that they are literally.**

[John 8:44 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>44</sup> You are of your father, the devil, and you want to do the desires of your father. He was a murderer from the beginning, and doesn’t stand in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaks a lie, he speaks on his own; for he is a liar, and its father.

To see an explanation of the relationship between the father and Son see [“the Father”](#) page.

**Jesus told others that he is the Messiah (Christ), Son of God, and Son of Man.**

[John 10:36 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>36</sup> do you say of him whom the Father sanctified and sent into the world, ‘You blaspheme,’ because I said, ‘**I am the Son of God?**’

[John 9:35-37 \(NIV\);](#)

<sup>35</sup> Jesus heard that they had thrown him out, and when he found him, he said, “Do you believe in **the Son of Man?**”

<sup>36</sup> “Who is he, sir?” the man asked. “Tell me so that I may believe in him.”

<sup>37</sup> Jesus said, “You have now seen him; in fact, he is the one speaking with you.”

[John 4:25-26 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>25</sup> The woman said to him, “I know that **Messiah** comes, he who is called **Christ**. When he has come, he will declare to us all things.”

<sup>26</sup> Jesus said to her, “**I am he**, the one who speaks to you.”

**Even Jesus’ enemies used his words as an excuse to have him killed.** Before Pilate, **they exclaimed that** because **Jesus made himself the Son of God**, he was liable to death. They used the worst charge against him. If Jesus ever claimed or if his enemies thought that Jesus was claiming to be God, they certainly would have used that as a charge against him.

[John 19:7 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>7</sup>The Jews answered him, “We have a law, and by our law he ought to die, because he made himself **the Son of God.**”

**Jesus showed his adversaries that the Messiah (the Son of Man, the Son of God) was not the Almighty God, Yahweh.**

From [“the Father”](#) page:

**Jesus made it clear that the Father is Yahweh and that he is the Messiah:**

**Jesus questioned his disciples who they thought he was. Peter said, “The Messiah.”**

[Mark 8:29-30 \(NIV\);](#)

<sup>29</sup> “But what about you?” he asked. “Who do you say I am?”

Peter answered, “You are the Messiah.”

<sup>30</sup> Jesus warned them not to tell anyone about him.

**Jesus, when talking to the woman at the well, openly revealed that he was the Messiah (Christ):**

[John 4:25-26 \(NIV\);](#)

<sup>25</sup> The woman said, “I know that **Messiah**” (called **Christ**) “is coming. When he comes, he will explain everything to us.”

<sup>26</sup> Then **Jesus declared**, “I, the one speaking to you—I **am he.**”

**When Jesus questioned the Pharisees at Matthew 23:41-45, he identified the Father of the Messiah as Yahweh, and the Lord of king David, as the Messiah.** Jesus quoted this psalm of ancient king David recorded at Psalms 110:1. In the original or even the slightly older manuscripts, the first occurrence of the title “Lord,” in Psalms 110:1, is actually Yahweh. Some translations use the English version of God’s name, Jehovah, some use Yahweh. Other translations will capitalize “LORD” to indicate that this is the Almighty God, Yahweh (Psalms 83:18). The Psalms originally have the name of the Almighty hundreds of times. It was man thoughts to remove it, not the Almighty’s. He had it placed there in the first place.

[Psalms 83:18 \(KJV\);](#)

men may know that thou, whose name alone is Jehovah, art the most high over all the earth.

[Psalm 100:1 \(DARBY\)](#) Notice placement of the Divine name;

110 Jehovah said unto my Lord, Sit at my right hand, until I put thine enemies [as] footstool of thy feet.

[Matthew 23:41-45 \(NIV\);](#)

<sup>41</sup> While the Pharisees were gathered together, Jesus asked them,<sup>42</sup> “What do you think about the Messiah? Whose son is he?”

“The son of David,” they replied.

<sup>43</sup> He said to them, “How is it then that David, speaking by the Spirit, calls him ‘Lord’? For he says,

<sup>44</sup> “The Lord [Yahweh] said to my Lord:  
“Sit at my right hand  
until I put your enemies  
under your feet.”

<sup>45</sup> If then David calls him ‘Lord,’ how can he be his son?” – Italics added to reflect original wording of Psalms 110:1.

Notice the relationships here. Jesus asked the Pharisees who the father of the Messiah was. Jesus then says that King David, speaking by the spirit, called the Messiah “Lord.” Jesus identifies the “Lord,” in Psalms 110:1 as the Messiah and the Lord of King David. Jesus was trying to show the proof that the Messiah’s Father was not David but Yahweh, in a spiritual sense.

There are numerous records of people calling Jesus, “the Son of God,” with the exception of those who were supposed to be versed in the Law, the Pharisees. Even demons being cast out would proclaim that he was the “Son of God,” “Holy One of God,” or “Son of the Most High God” (Mark 5:7-8). Jesus even called himself the Son of God in John 10:36. This did not mean that he was the Most High God. [People could be called Gods](#). Just because people can be called God, does not mean that they are the Most High God, Jehovah.

[Mark 5:7-8 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>7</sup> and crying out with a loud voice, he said, “What have I to do with you, Jesus, you **Son of the Most High God**? I adjure you by God, don’t torment me.” <sup>8</sup> For he said to him, “Come out of the man, you unclean spirit!”

[Luke 4:33-34,41 \(CJB\)](#);

<sup>33</sup> In the synagogue there was a man who had an unclean demonic spirit, who shouted in a loud voice, <sup>34</sup> “Yaah! What do you want with us, [Yeshua](#) from Natzeret? Have you come to destroy us? I know who you are — **the Holy One of God!**”

<sup>41</sup> also demons came out of many, crying, “**You are the Son of God!**” But, rebuking them, he did not permit them to say that **they knew he was the Messiah**.

[John 10:36 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>36</sup> do you say of him whom the Father sanctified and sent into the world, ‘You blaspheme,’ because I said, ‘**I am the Son of God?**’

Interestingly, **Yahweh made Solomon a son of his**, when Solomon started to rule as Yahweh’s anointed one, as king of Israel.

Through Nathan, the prophet, Yahweh told king David that one of David’s sons would build a house for him and that Yahweh would become his father and Solomon would become his son:

[1 Chronicles 17:13; 22:7-10 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>13</sup> **I will be his father, and he will be my son.** I will not take my loving kindness away from him, as I took it from him that was before you;

<sup>7</sup> David said to Solomon his son, “As for me, it was in my heart to build a house to the name of Yahweh my God. <sup>8</sup> But Yahweh’s word came to me, saying, ‘You have shed blood abundantly, and have made great wars. You shall not build a house to my name, because you have shed much blood on the earth in my sight. <sup>9</sup> Behold, a son shall be born to you, who shall be a man of peace. I will give him rest from all his enemies all around; for his name shall be **Solomon**, and I will give peace and quietness to Israel in his days. <sup>10</sup> He shall build a house for my name; and **he will be my son, and I will be his father**; and I will establish the throne of his kingdom over Israel for ever.’

**Compare the above with when Yahweh gives his Anointed One the nations** as an inheritance and he (Jesus) starts to rule:

[Psalms 2:2-8 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>2</sup> **The kings of the earth take a stand,  
and the rulers take counsel together,  
against Yahweh, and against his Anointed,** saying,

<sup>3</sup> “Let’s break their bonds apart,  
and cast their cords from us.”

<sup>4</sup> He who sits in the heavens will laugh.  
The Lord will have them in derision.

<sup>5</sup> Then he will speak to them in his anger,  
and terrify them in his wrath:

<sup>6</sup> “Yet I have set my King on my holy hill of Zion.”

<sup>7</sup> I will tell of the decree.

**Yahweh said to me, “You are my son.  
Today I have become your father.**

**<sup>8</sup> Ask of me, and I will give the nations for your inheritance,  
the uttermost parts of the earth for your possession.**

See the chapter on the term, “I AM.”

**In conclusion, Jesus (Yeshua) is the Son of the Most High, Yahweh (Jehovah).**



## **John 1:1c – “the Word was God” or “the Word was a god?”**

This page will tackle the most controversial verse, among “Christian” groups today. That is, is Jesus God Almighty? Should the end of John 1:1, when talking about Jesus, refer to Jesus as “God” or “a god?”

Most translators, today, feel that John 1:1 should be translated like the following:

[John 1:1 \(WEB\);](#)

1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, **and the Word was God.**

However, there is a noticeable discrepancy with the [New World Translation and a few other translations](#) ;

[John 1:1 \(NWT\);](#)

1 In the beginning, the Word was, and the Word was with God, **and the Word was a god.**

Translators that support the idea that Jesus IS Almighty God, or a part of him, one way or another, push the “was God” translation. Translators that feel that Jesus is subordinate to God, favor the “was a God.”

Let’s make what could be a very long research paper simple:

One of the oldest translations directly from the Greek Scriptures is a **Sahidic Coptic translation**. This is a relatively recent researched translation. Due to the structure of the language, it is possible to come to a more correct understanding of how John 1:1 should be translated:

**“And the Word was with the God, and the Word was a god.”**

**Here are some references, about the Sahidic Coptic translation:**

[John One The Coptic Evidence \(Solomon Landers, September 2006\)](#)

This paper also comments on John 1:18: “A modern translation of the Coptic of John 1:18 is ‘No one has ever seen God at all.

The god who is the only Son in the bosom of his Father is the one who has explained him’ ” [Compare: Who can be rightfully called, “god” or “God?”](#)

Other links:

[What Sahidic Coptic John 1:1 Really Says](#)

[Sahidic Coptic Translation of John 1:1](#)

[Translating Sahidic Coptic John 1:1](#)

## What about the term, “I AM?”

### Misconceptions (“I AM”):

**John 8:58** is often translated with the end as: “I AM.” This is an ill-attempt to try to show that Jesus is the Almighty God. In Exodus 3:14-15, many translations use “I AM,” in reference to [Yahweh](#). But are any of these thoughts, correct? Keep in mind that Jesus was answering his critics, the Pharisees, about that he existed before Abraham. This was not a discussion concerning his identity, such as found at [John 10:24](#).

#### [John 8:58 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>58</sup> Jesus said to them, “Most certainly, I tell you, before Abraham came into existence, I AM.” The footnote shows that the end can be translated as “I am.”

#### [John 8:58 \(TPT\);](#)

<sup>58</sup> Jesus said to them, “**I give you this eternal truth: I have existed long before Abraham was born, for I AM!**” Footnotes: Proper English grammar would be, “Before Abraham was born, I Was.”

#### John 8:58 (The Emphatic Diaglott);

US said to them, “Indeed, I assure you, Before Abraham was born, I am he.

#### [Exodus 3:14-15 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>14</sup> God said to Moses, “I AM WHO I AM,” and he said, “You shall tell the children of Israel this: ‘**I AM has sent me to you.**’” <sup>15</sup> God said moreover to Moses, “You shall tell the children of Israel this, ‘**Yahweh, the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, has sent me to you.**’ This is my name forever, and this is my memorial to all generations.

### By using some of the oldest sources, we can easily come to a better understanding of this.

The Greek Septuagint has its beginning almost 1000 years earlier than the MS (Masoretic) text. The MS is the basis for most of the English Translations. The Sahidic Coptic translations are about 700 years older than the MS.

#### [John 8:58 \(Sahidic Coptic\);](#)

“Before Abraham comes into existence, I (am) in existence.” – Sahidic Coptic

“Before Abraham was, *I have been.*” — Sinaitic Palimpsest

“Before ever Abraham came to be, *I was.*” — Curetonian Version

“Before Abraham existed, *I was.*” — Peshitta Version

“Before Abraham was born, *I was.*” — George M. Lamsa’s English version

Exodus 3:14 (NETS).

And God said to Moses, “I am The One Who Is.” And he said, “Thus shall you say to the sons of Israel, ‘**The One Who Is** has sent me to you.’”

Exodus 3:14 (Septuagint by Brenton).

And God spoke to Moses, saying, I am THE BEING; and he said, thus shall ye say to the children of Israel, **THE BEING** has sent me to you.

[Exodus 3:14 \(TORAH\);](#)

God said to Moses, “Ehyeh asher ehyeh (I will be what I will be),” and He said, “So shall you say to the children of Israel, ‘**Ehyeh (I will be)** has sent me to you.’”

**Simply put, the translators that attempt to put the two passages together are misconstruing things to fit their teachings. They seek man’s guidance, not the Almighty’s.**

Someone, talking to a trinitarian, could bring out that the apostle Paul stated at 1 Cor. 15:10, “I am what I am.” They could claim that if Christ is calling himself God by saying, “I am” what about Paul? Of course, the trinitarian would boldly say that Paul was talking about himself, what Paul does. That’s the point. Back in Exodus 3:14-15, Yahweh was talking about himself. The term “I am” denotes a reputation perceived or to be perceived. It is not the spelling of the literal name.

**A name denotes reputation not just spelling.**

Just as a famous sports star has a literal name, their reputation is what they are famous for.

## What does it mean to worship, and can someone worship more than one person?

**Abraham** was given a promise from the Almighty God, that if Abraham walked in his ways, he would bless Abraham greatly. Abraham did just so. Abraham showed what true worship to God means, to obey. Worship without obedience is false worship. This wasn't a slave/master relationship. Abraham could do whatever he wanted, but he chose to follow the Almighty God.

There are other aspects to the Hebrew and Greek words, involving worship, that will be covered later.

[Genesis 22:15-18 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>15</sup> Yahweh's angel called to Abraham a second time out of the sky, <sup>16</sup> and said, "I have sworn by myself, says Yahweh, because you have done this thing, and have not withheld your son, your only son, <sup>17</sup> that I will bless you greatly, and I will multiply your offspring greatly like the stars of the heavens, and like the sand which is on the seashore. Your offspring will possess the gate of his enemies. <sup>18</sup> All the nations of the earth will be blessed by your offspring, **because you have obeyed my voice.**"

**Wise king Solomon**, of ancient Israel, had riches and glory beyond compare. He knew that these things are vanity, they don't last, and they do not amass God's favor (Ecclesiastes). Yet, Solomon summed things up, concerning what does last and is important to God, **to obey the king and God.**

[Ecclesiastes 8:2 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>2</sup> I say, "Keep the king's command!" because of the oath to God.

[Ecclesiastes 12:8, 13-14 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>8</sup> "Vanity of vanities," says the Preacher.  
"All is vanity!"

<sup>13</sup> This is the end of the matter. All has been heard. Fear God, and keep his commandments; for this is the whole duty of man. <sup>14</sup> For God will bring every work into judgment, with every hidden thing, whether it is good, or whether it is evil.

When king Solomon was officially made king, **officials swore oaths of loyalty to the king and** because the king was on God's throne, **to God.** They bowed down their heads and prostrated themselves before God and the king. This is an act of worship, meaning loyalty, which means obedience.

[1 Chronicles 29:20-23 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>20</sup> Then David said to all the assembly, "Now bless Yahweh your God!"

**All the assembly blessed Yahweh, the God of their fathers, and bowed down their heads and prostrated themselves before Yahweh and the king.** <sup>21</sup> They sacrificed sacrifices to Yahweh, and offered burnt offerings to Yahweh, on the next day after that day, even one thousand bulls, one thousand rams, and one thousand lambs, with their drink offerings and sacrifices in abundance for all Israel, <sup>22</sup> and ate and drank before Yahweh on that day with great gladness. They made Solomon the son of David king the second time, and anointed him before Yahweh to be prince, and Zadok to be priest.

<sup>23</sup> **Then Solomon sat on the throne of Yahweh as king** instead of David his father, and prospered; and all Israel obeyed him.

[1 Chronicles 29:20-23 \(ASV\);](#)

<sup>20</sup> And David said to all the assembly, Now bless Jehovah your God. And **all the assembly blessed Jehovah, the God of their fathers, and bowed down their heads, and worshiped Jehovah, and the king.** <sup>21</sup> And they sacrificed sacrifices unto Jehovah, and offered burnt-offerings unto Jehovah, on the morrow after that day, even a thousand bullocks, a thousand rams, and a thousand lambs, with their drink-offerings, and sacrifices in abundance for all Israel, <sup>22</sup> and did eat and drink before Jehovah on that day with great gladness.

And they made Solomon the son of David king the second time, and anointed him unto Jehovah to be prince [or leader], and Zadok to be priest. <sup>23</sup> Then Solomon sat on the throne of Jehovah as king instead of David his father, and prospered; and all Israel obeyed him. (Footnote added to verse 22)

**Compare** [Revelation 5:11-14 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>11</sup> I saw, and I heard something like a voice of many angels around the throne, the living creatures, and the elders; and the number of them was ten thousands of ten thousands, and thousands of thousands; <sup>12</sup> saying with a loud voice, “Worthy is the Lamb who has been killed **to receive** the power, wealth, wisdom, strength, honor, glory, and blessing!”

<sup>13</sup> I heard every created thing which is in heaven, on the earth, under the earth, on the sea, and everything in them, saying, “**To him who sits on the throne, and to the Lamb** be the blessing, the honor, the glory, and the dominion, forever and ever! Amen!”

<sup>14</sup> The four living creatures said, “Amen!” **The elders fell down and worshiped.**

In this case, it is the Almighty on the throne and the Lamb picturing Jesus. But they are both worshiped. This is an oath to loyally serve them.

**It is very noteworthy to see that in Revelation 7:11-12 that there are groups, in heaven, that fall on their faces and proclaim blessings to God, in an act of sacred worship to God. The Lamb is not included here and is never called God.**

[Revelation 7:11-12 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>11</sup> All the angels were standing around the throne, the elders, and the four living creatures; and they fell on their faces before his throne, and worshiped God, <sup>12</sup> saying, “Amen! Blessing, glory, wisdom, thanksgiving, honor, power, and might, be **to our God** forever and ever! Amen.”

**Compare** [1 Chronicles 29:10-12 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>10</sup> Therefore David blessed Yahweh before all the assembly; and David said, “You are blessed, Yahweh, the God of Israel our father, forever and ever. <sup>11</sup> Yours, Yahweh, is the greatness, the power, the glory, the victory, and the majesty! For all that is in the heavens and in the earth is yours. Yours is the kingdom, Yahweh, and you are exalted as head above all. <sup>12</sup> Both riches and honor come from you, and you rule over all! In your hand is power and might! It is in your hand to make great, and to give strength to all!

**This helps to come to a clearer understanding of when the Devil tempted Jesus.** The Devil offered Jesus all the kingdoms of the world, for just one act of worship (Luke 4:1-8)! This would have meant that Jesus would have had to swear loyalty to the Devil!

When Jesus responds, he corrects the Devil by saying that he should be serving his God, which he is not doing. Jesus does not discredit the scriptures that tell of ones worshiping God and the king, such as in 1 Chronicles 29:21-23, as shown above. That is because it is worship based upon obedience. **Yahweh installed the king to act as leader for Yahweh’s people. They are supposed to obey the king. This is what Yahweh wants.** Jesus’ response to the Devil could have very well included worship that only belonged to the Father, Yahweh. But for sure, Jesus said it had to deal with servitude, which would have meant loyalty.

[Luke 4:1-2;5-8 \(WEB\)](#);

Jesus, full of the Holy Spirit, returned from the Jordan, and was led by the Spirit into the wilderness <sup>2</sup> for forty days, being tempted by the devil. He ate nothing in those days. Afterward, when they were completed, he was hungry.

<sup>5</sup> The devil, leading him up on a high mountain, showed him all the kingdoms of the world in a moment of time. <sup>6</sup> The devil said to him, “I will give you all this authority, and their glory, for it has been delivered to me; and I give it to whomever I want. <sup>7</sup> If you therefore will worship before me, it will all be yours.”

<sup>8</sup> Jesus answered him, “Get behind me Satan! For it is written, ‘**You shall worship the Lord your God, and you shall serve him only.**’”

In our future, **The Almighty will want the nations to submit to his Son**, by symbolically “kissing” the Son of God. This is an action of showing loyalty and obedience. Yahweh, at that time, gives the nations to his Son, as an inheritance.

[Psalms 2:1-12 \(WEB\)](#);

Why do the nations rage,  
and the peoples plot a vain thing?

<sup>2</sup> The kings of the earth take a stand,  
 and the rulers take counsel together,  
 against Yahweh, and against his Anointed, saying,  
<sup>3</sup> “Let’s break their bonds apart,  
 and cast their cords from us.”  
<sup>4</sup> He who sits in the heavens will laugh.  
 The Lord will have them in derision.  
<sup>5</sup> Then he will speak to them in his anger,  
 and terrify them in his wrath:  
<sup>6</sup> “Yet I have set my King on my holy hill of Zion.”  
<sup>7</sup> I will tell of the decree.  
**Yahweh said to me, “You are my son.  
 Today I have become your father.**  
<sup>8</sup> Ask of me, and I will give the nations for your inheritance,  
 the uttermost parts of the earth for your possession.  
<sup>9</sup> You shall break them with a rod of iron.  
 You shall dash them in pieces like a potter’s vessel.”  
<sup>10</sup> Now therefore be wise, you kings.  
 Be instructed, you judges of the earth.  
<sup>11</sup> **Serve Yahweh with fear,**  
 and rejoice with trembling.  
<sup>12</sup> **Give sincere homage to the Son,** lest he be angry, and you perish on the way,  
 for his wrath will soon be kindled.  
 Blessed are all those who take refuge in him.

[Psalms 2:12 \(ASV\);](#)

**(12) Kiss the son,** lest he be angry, and ye perish in the way,  
 For his wrath will soon be kindled.  
 Blessed are all they that take refuge in him.

**So just as it was in king David and Solomon’s time. It is correct to show worship (of loyalty) to the Anointed king, Jesus, and to the one who placed him there, the Almighty God, Yahweh. However, only sacred worship (for example: praise) toward the Most High God, goes to the Almighty, Yahweh.**

**There are other accounts that deal with forms of “worship.”** For instance, Daniel was shown worship from the king of Babylon, for showing him the power of God. It was not showing Daniel to be God but that the king was showing homage to Daniel. This would be a showing of **special respect shown publicly.**

[Daniel 2:46 \(RSV\);](#)

<sup>46</sup> Then King Nebuchadnezzar fell upon his face, and **did homage** to Daniel, and commanded that an offering and incense be offered up to him.



[Daniel 2:46 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>46</sup> Then the king Nebuchadnezzar fell on his face, **and worshiped** Daniel, and commanded that they should offer an offering and sweet odors to him.

[Daniel 2:46 \(YLT\);](#)

<sup>46</sup> Then hath king Nebuchadnezzar fallen on his face, and to Daniel **he hath done obeisance**, and present, and sweet things, he hath said to pour out to him.

**The wise men who located Jesus did the same:**

[Matthew 2:11 \(DARBY\);](#)

<sup>11</sup> And having come into the house they saw the little child with Mary his mother, **and falling down did him homage**. And having opened their treasures, they offered to him gifts, gold, and frankincense, and myrrh.

[Matthew 2:11 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>11</sup> They came into the house and saw the young child with Mary, his mother, and **they fell down and worshiped him**. Opening their treasures, they offered to him gifts: gold, frankincense, and myrrh.

[Matthew 2:11 \(YLT\);](#)

<sup>11</sup> and having come to the house, they found the child with Mary his mother, and **having fallen down they bowed to him**, and having opened their treasures, they presented to him gifts, gold, and frankincense, and myrrh,

***Vine's Expository Dictionary of Biblical Words (1985) mentions:***

p.295 TO WORSHIP (Hebrew 7812);

“to worship, prostrate oneself, bow down”

p. 686 WORSHIP (Verb and Noun), WORSHIPING (Greek 4352 (most frequent));

“to make obeisance, do reverence to”; Matt.2:2 (to Christ), Matt. 4:10 (to God), Matt. 18:26 (to a man), Acts 7:43 (to idols)

Notes: The worship of God is nowhere defined in Scripture.

## **How Yahweh is shown to be the Lord and Father of Jesus (Yeshua) by Jesus and his apostles**

Jesus identified himself as the Messiah, before his death and resurrection. Later, it will be shown that his apostles identify Jesus' place to be next to his Lord, Yahweh (Jehovah). The apostles did this after his resurrection and ascension to heaven.

From "[the Father](#)" page:

**Jesus made it clear that the Father is Yahweh and that he is the Messiah:**

**Jesus questioned his disciples who they thought he was. Peter said, "The Messiah."**

[Mark 8:29-30 \(NIV\)](#);

<sup>29</sup> "But what about you?" he asked. "Who do you say I am?"

Peter answered, "You are the Messiah."

<sup>30</sup> Jesus warned them not to tell anyone about him.

**Jesus, when talking to the woman at the well, openly revealed that he was the Messiah (Christ):**

[John 4:25-26 \(NIV\)](#);

<sup>25</sup> The woman said, "I know that **Messiah**" (called **Christ**) "is coming. When he comes, he will explain everything to us."

<sup>26</sup> Then **Jesus declared**, "I, the one speaking to you—I **am he**."

**When Jesus questioned the Pharisees at Matthew 23:41-45, he identified the Father of the Messiah as Yahweh, and the Lord of king David, as the Messiah.** Jesus quoted this psalm of ancient king David recorded at Psalms 110:1. In the original or even the slightly older manuscripts, the first occurrence of the title "Lord," in Psalms 110:1, is actually Yahweh. Some translations use the English version of God's name, Jehovah, some use Yahweh. Other translations will capitalize "LORD" to indicate that this is the Almighty God, Yahweh (Psalms 83:18). The Psalms originally have the name of the Almighty hundreds of times. It was man's thoughts to remove it, not the Almighty's. He had it placed there in the first place.

[Psalms 83:18 \(KJV\)](#);

<sup>18</sup> That men may know that thou, whose name alone is Jehovah, art the most high over all the earth.

[Psalm 100:1 \(DARBY\)](#) Notice placement of the Divine name;

110 Jehovah said unto my Lord, Sit at my right hand, until I put thine enemies [as] footstool of thy feet.

[Matthew 23:41-45 \(NIV\);](#)

<sup>41</sup> While the Pharisees were gathered together, Jesus asked them,<sup>42</sup> “What do you think about the Messiah? Whose son is he?”

“The son of David,” they replied.

<sup>43</sup> He said to them, “How is it then that David, speaking by the Spirit, calls him ‘Lord’? For he says,

<sup>44</sup> “‘The Lord [Yahweh] said to my Lord:

“Sit at my right hand  
until I put your enemies  
under your feet.””

<sup>45</sup> If then David calls him ‘Lord,’ how can he be his son?” – Italics added to reflect original wording of Psalms 110:1.

Notice the relationships here. Jesus asked the Pharisees who the father of the Messiah was. Jesus then says that King David, speaking by the spirit, called the Messiah “Lord.” Jesus identifies the “Lord,” in Psalms 110:1 as the Messiah and the Lord of King David. Jesus was trying to show the proof that the Messiah’s Father was not David but Yahweh, in a spiritual sense.

**Yeshua (Jesus), long after being resurrected, says that he has a God four times in one verse!**

[Revelation 3:12 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>12</sup> He who overcomes, I will make him a pillar in the temple of my God, and he will go out from there no more. I will write on him the name of my God and the name of the city of my God, the new Jerusalem, which comes down out of heaven from my God, and my own new name.

**Jesus identified his father to be Yahweh and his apostles explained further, as shown in the writings:**

The Apostle Peter attested to the identity of Jesus, in the Hebrew scriptures, as having Yahweh as Jesus’ Lord, and Jesus as David’s Lord. He used the same example that Jesus used that is shown above and is brought out in Psalms 110:1. Remember, that as shown above, the first occurrence of “Lord,” in Psalms 110:1 is Yahweh, the God of Abraham.

Here in Acts chapter two, Peter explains to people in Jerusalem, what they are seeing. Disciples of Christ had just been given the gift of the holy spirit and were speaking in foreign languages of people visiting Jerusalem, telling them of Christ. Some, when they heard them speaking in foreign tongues, thought that they could be drunk. Peter rises and explains what they are seeing and in so doing, also goes further in identifying Jesus in the Hebrew scriptures. Keep in mind that the original Hebrew scriptures had the name of the Almighty, Yahweh, rather than the title “Lord.”

[Acts 2:14-42 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>14</sup> But Peter, standing up with the eleven, lifted up his voice, and spoke out to them, “You men of Judea, and all you who dwell at Jerusalem, let this be known to you, and listen to my words. <sup>15</sup> For these aren’t drunken, as you suppose, seeing it is only the third hour of the day. <sup>16</sup> But this is what has been spoken through the prophet Joel:

<sup>17</sup> ‘It will be in the last days, says God,  
that I will pour out my Spirit on all flesh.  
Your sons and your daughters will prophesy.  
Your young men will see visions.  
Your old men will dream dreams.

<sup>18</sup> Yes, and on my servants and on my handmaidens in those days,  
I will pour out my Spirit, and they will prophesy.

<sup>19</sup> I will show wonders in the sky above,  
and signs on the earth beneath;  
blood, and fire, and billows of smoke.

<sup>20</sup> The sun will be turned into darkness,  
and the moon into blood,  
before the great and glorious day of the Lord comes.

<sup>21</sup> It will be that whoever will call on the name of the Lord will be saved.’

<sup>22</sup> “Men of Israel, hear these words! **Jesus of Nazareth**, a man approved by God to you by mighty works and wonders and signs which God did by him among you, even as you yourselves know, <sup>23</sup> him, being delivered up by the determined counsel and foreknowledge of God, you have taken by the hand of lawless men, crucified and killed; <sup>24</sup> whom God raised up, having freed him from the agony of death, because it was not possible that he should be held by it. <sup>25</sup> **For David says concerning him,**

‘I saw the Lord always before my face,  
For he is on my right hand, that I should not be moved.

<sup>26</sup> Therefore my heart was glad, and my tongue rejoiced.  
Moreover my flesh also will dwell in hope;

<sup>27</sup> because you will not leave my soul in Hades,  
neither will you allow your Holy One to see decay.

<sup>28</sup> You made known to me the ways of life.  
You will make me full of gladness with your presence.’

<sup>29</sup> “Brothers, I may tell you freely of the patriarch David, that he both died and was buried, and his tomb is with us to this day. <sup>30</sup> Therefore, being a prophet, and knowing that God had sworn with an oath to him that of the fruit of his body, according to the flesh, he would raise up the Christ to sit on his throne, <sup>31</sup> he foreseeing this spoke about the resurrection of the Christ, that neither was his soul left in Hades, nor did his flesh see decay. <sup>32</sup> **This Jesus God raised up, to which we all are witnesses.** <sup>33</sup> **Being therefore exalted by the right hand of God,** and having received from the Father the promise of

the Holy Spirit, he has poured out this, which you now see and hear. <sup>34</sup> For **David didn't ascend into the heavens, but he says himself,**

**'The Lord said to my Lord, "Sit by my right hand,  
<sup>35</sup> until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet.'"**

<sup>36</sup> **"Let all the house of Israel therefore know certainly that God has made him both Lord and Christ, this Jesus whom you crucified."**

<sup>37</sup> Now when they heard this, they were cut to the heart, and said to Peter and the rest of the apostles, "Brothers, what shall we do?"

<sup>38</sup> Peter said to them, "Repent, and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of sins, and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. <sup>39</sup> For the promise is to you, and to your children, and to all who are far off, even as many as the Lord our God will call to himself." <sup>40</sup> With many other words he testified, and exhorted them, saying, "Save yourselves from this crooked generation!"

<sup>41</sup> Then those who gladly received his word were baptized. There were added that day about three thousand souls. <sup>42</sup> They continued steadfastly in the apostles' teaching and fellowship, in the breaking of bread, and prayer.

Here are the Hebrew passages quoted by Peter, from above, that refer to Jesus:

[Psalms 16:8-11 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>8</sup> I have set Yahweh always before me.  
Because he is at my right hand, I shall not be moved.  
<sup>9</sup> Therefore my heart is glad, and my tongue rejoices.  
My body shall also dwell in safety.  
<sup>10</sup> For you will not leave my soul in Sheol,  
neither will you allow your holy one to see corruption.  
<sup>11</sup> You will show me the path of life.  
In your presence is fullness of joy.  
In your right hand there are pleasures forever more.

[Psalms 110:1 \(WEB\);](#)

Yahweh says to my Lord, "Sit at my right hand,  
until I make your enemies your footstool for your feet."

**Peter, in Acts chapters 3 and 5, again identifies Jesus as the servant of Yahweh. This is after Jesus was resurrected and ascended to heaven.**

[Acts 3:13-15 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>13</sup> **The God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, the God of our fathers, has glorified his Servant Jesus,** whom you delivered up, and denied in the presence of Pilate, when he had determined to release him. <sup>14</sup> But you denied the Holy and Righteous One, and asked

for a murderer to be granted to you, <sup>15</sup> and killed the Prince of life, whom God raised from the dead, to which we are witnesses.

[Acts 5:30-32 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>30</sup> **The God of our fathers raised up Jesus**, whom you killed, hanging him on a tree. <sup>31</sup> God exalted him with his right hand to be a Prince and a Savior, to give repentance to Israel, and remission of sins. <sup>32</sup> We are His witnesses of these things; and so also is the Holy Spirit, whom God has given to those who obey him.” (Compare Acts 3:13)

**Paul in 1 Corinthians 15:20-28 refers to Psalms 8:1-9 and helps to clarify Jesus’ Father as Yahweh, as it is written in the original writings:**

[1 Corinthians 15:20-28 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>20</sup> **But now Christ has been raised from the dead.** He became the first fruits of those who are asleep. <sup>21</sup> For since death came by man, the resurrection of the dead also came by man. <sup>22</sup> For as in Adam all die, so also in Christ all will be made alive. <sup>23</sup> But each in his own order: Christ the first fruits, then those who are Christ’s, at his coming. <sup>24</sup> Then the end comes, when **he will deliver up the Kingdom to God, even the Father; when he will have abolished all rule and all authority and power.** <sup>25</sup> **For he must reign until he has put all his enemies under his feet.** <sup>26</sup> The last enemy that will be abolished is death. <sup>27</sup> For, **“He put all things in subjection under his feet.”** But when he says, “All things are put in subjection”, it is evident that he is excepted who subjected all things to him. <sup>28</sup> **When all things have been subjected to him, then the Son will also himself be subjected to him who subjected all things to him,** that God may be all in all.

[Psalms 8:1-9 \(WEB\);](#)

Yahweh, our Lord, how majestic is your name in all the earth,  
who has set your glory above the heavens!  
<sup>2</sup> From the lips of babes and infants you have established strength,  
because of your adversaries, that you might silence the enemy and the avenger.  
<sup>3</sup> When I consider your heavens, the work of your fingers,  
the moon and the stars, which you have ordained;  
<sup>4</sup> what is man, that you think of him?  
What is the son of man, that you care for him?  
<sup>5</sup> For you have made him a little lower than God,  
and crowned him with glory and honor.  
<sup>6</sup> **You make him ruler over the works of your hands.**  
**You have put all things under his feet:**  
<sup>7</sup> All sheep and cattle,  
yes, and the animals of the field,  
<sup>8</sup> The birds of the sky, the fish of the sea,  
and whatever passes through the paths of the seas.

<sup>9</sup>Yahweh, our Lord,  
how majestic is your name in all the earth!

**Thus, Jesus himself along with Peter and Paul, identifies Jesus' Lord and Father as Yahweh, in the Hebrew scriptures.**



## **Yahweh, Yeshua, and the Holy Spirit – Differences through time**

**The following scriptures show how Yahweh (Jehovah), Yeshua (Jesus), and the Holy Spirit are different through time. This helps people to recognize false beliefs. The truth is usually simple. Falsehood is usually twisted and complicated reasoning. May Yahweh help guide you, in your quest for his truth.**

**Yeshua (Jesus) stated that whoever speaks against the Son of Man, it would be forgiven. In contrast, Yeshua also stated that whoever is to speak against the Holy Spirit, they would not be forgiven, in this age (now) or the one to come (Yeshua's reign). This clearly shows that Yeshua and the Holy Spirit are not the same entity.**

[Matthew 12:32 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>32</sup> Whoever speaks a word against the Son of Man, it will be forgiven him; but whoever speaks against the Holy Spirit, it will not be forgiven him, either in this age, or in that which is to come.

**It is clear that Yahweh, the father, and Yeshua, the Son, have different levels of authority.**

Yeshua is given authority over the earth in [Psalms 2 \(WEB\)](#):

Why do the nations rage,  
and the peoples plot a vain thing?  
<sup>2</sup> The kings of the earth take a stand,  
and the rulers take counsel together,  
against Yahweh, and against his Anointed, saying,  
<sup>3</sup> "Let's break their bonds apart,  
and cast their cords from us."  
<sup>4</sup> He who sits in the heavens will laugh.  
The Lord will have them in derision.  
<sup>5</sup> Then he will speak to them in his anger,  
and terrify them in his wrath:  
<sup>6</sup> "Yet I have set my King on my holy hill of Zion."  
<sup>7</sup> I will tell of the decree:  
Yahweh said to me, "You are my son.  
Today I have become your father.  
<sup>8</sup> Ask of me, and I will give the nations for your inheritance,  
the uttermost parts of the earth for your possession.  
<sup>9</sup> You shall break them with a rod of iron.  
You shall dash them in pieces like a potter's vessel."  
<sup>10</sup> Now therefore be wise, you kings.  
Be instructed, you judges of the earth.

- <sup>11</sup> Serve Yahweh with fear,  
and rejoice with trembling.
- <sup>12</sup> Give sincere homage to the Son, lest he be angry, and you perish on the way,  
for his wrath will soon be kindled.  
Blessed are all those who take refuge in him.

Compare [Psalms 110 \(WEB\)](#):

- Yahweh says to my Lord, “Sit at my right hand,  
until I make your enemies your footstool for your feet.”
- <sup>2</sup> Yahweh will send out the rod of your strength out of Zion.  
Rule among your enemies.
- <sup>3</sup> Your people offer themselves willingly in the day of your power, in holy array.  
Out of the womb of the morning, you have the dew of your youth.
- <sup>4</sup> Yahweh has sworn, and will not change his mind:  
“You are a priest forever in the order of Melchizedek.”
- <sup>5</sup> The Lord is at your right hand.  
He will crush kings in the day of his wrath.
- <sup>6</sup> He will judge among the nations.  
He will heap up dead bodies.  
He will crush the ruler of the whole earth.
- <sup>7</sup> He will drink of the brook on the way;  
therefore he will lift up his head.

**Yeshua (Jesus) hands over the kingdom to Yahweh (his father) and shows his subjection to him at [1 Corinthians 15:24-28 \(WEB\)](#):**

<sup>24</sup> Then the end comes, when he will deliver up the Kingdom to God, even the Father, when he will have abolished all rule and all authority and power. <sup>25</sup> For he must reign until he has put all his enemies under his feet. <sup>26</sup> The last enemy that will be abolished is death. <sup>27</sup> For, “He put all things in subjection under his feet.” [Psalm 8:6](#) But when he says, “All things are put in subjection”, it is evident that he is excepted who subjected all things to him. <sup>28</sup> When all things have been subjected to him, then the Son will also himself be subjected to him who subjected all things to him, that God may be all in all.

**Before his death, Yeshua (Jesus) prays to his Father to glorify him as he had before. This prayer also helps to explain what Yeshua meant when he talked about being one with his father and his disciples at [John 17 \(WEB\)](#):**

Jesus said these things, then lifting up his eyes to heaven, he said, “Father, the time has come. Glorify your Son, that your Son may also glorify you; <sup>2</sup> even as you gave him authority over all flesh, so he will give eternal life to all whom you have given him. <sup>3</sup> This is eternal life, that they should know you, the only true God, and him whom you sent, Jesus Christ. <sup>4</sup> I glorified you on the earth. I have accomplished the work which you have given me to do. <sup>5</sup> Now, Father, glorify me with your own self with the glory which I had with you before the world existed. <sup>6</sup> I revealed your name to the people whom you have

given me out of the world. They were yours, and you have given them to me. They have kept your word. <sup>7</sup> Now they have known that all things whatever you have given me are from you, <sup>8</sup> for the words which you have given me I have given to them, and they received them, and knew for sure that I came from you. They have believed that you sent me. <sup>9</sup> I pray for them. I don't pray for the world, but for those whom you have given me, for they are yours. <sup>10</sup> All things that are mine are yours, and yours are mine, and I am glorified in them. <sup>11</sup> I am no more in the world, but these are in the world, and I am coming to you. Holy Father, keep them through your name which you have given me, that they may be one, even as we are. <sup>12</sup> While I was with them in the world, I kept them in your name. I have kept those whom you have given me. None of them is lost except the son of destruction, that the Scripture might be fulfilled. <sup>13</sup> But now I come to you, and I say these things in the world, that they may have my joy made full in themselves. <sup>14</sup> I have given them your word. The world hated them, because they are not of the world, even as I am not of the world. <sup>15</sup> I pray not that you would take them from the world, but that you would keep them from the evil one. <sup>16</sup> They are not of the world even as I am not of the world. <sup>17</sup> Sanctify them in your truth. Your word is truth. [Psalm 119:142](#) <sup>18</sup> As you sent me into the world, even so I have sent them into the world. <sup>19</sup> For their sakes I sanctify myself, that they themselves also may be sanctified in truth. <sup>20</sup> Not for these only do I pray, but for those also who will believe in me through their word, <sup>21</sup> that they may all be one; even as you, Father, are in me, and I in you, that they also may be one in us; that the world may believe that you sent me. <sup>22</sup> The glory which you have given me, I have given to them; that they may be one, even as we are one; <sup>23</sup> I in them, and you in me, that they may be perfected into one; that the world may know that you sent me and loved them, even as you loved me. <sup>24</sup> Father, I desire that they also whom you have given me be with me where I am, that they may see my glory, which you have given me, for you loved me before the foundation of the world. <sup>25</sup> Righteous Father, the world hasn't known you, but I knew you; and these knew that you sent me. <sup>26</sup> I made known to them your name, and will make it known; that the love with which you loved me may be in them, and I in them."

**Yeshua (Jesus) plainly states that the Father sent him, is greater than he is, and that he takes commands from him at [John 14:23-31 \(WEB\)](#) – Bold mine):**

<sup>23</sup> Jesus answered him, "If a man loves me, he will keep my word. My Father will love him, and we will come to him, and make our home with him. <sup>24</sup> He who doesn't love me doesn't keep my words. The word which you hear isn't mine, but **the Father's who sent me.** <sup>25</sup> I have said these things to you while still living with you. <sup>26</sup> But the Counselor, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, will teach you all things, and will remind you of all that I said to you. <sup>27</sup> Peace I leave with you. My peace I give to you; not as the world gives, I give to you. Don't let your heart be troubled, neither let it be fearful. <sup>28</sup> You heard how I told you, 'I go away, and I come to you.' If you loved me, you would have rejoiced, because I said 'I am going to my Father,' **for the Father is greater than I.** <sup>29</sup> Now I have told you before it happens so that when it happens, you may believe. <sup>30</sup> I will no more speak much with you, for the prince of the world comes, and he

has nothing in me. <sup>31</sup> But that the world may know that I love the Father, and **as the Father commanded me, even so I do.** Arise, let's go from here.

**Yeshua explains what it means to have the father in oneself. Some mistakenly believe that because Yeshua stated that the father was in him that they are the same being. However, Jesus clarifies this by showing his followers that they will “be in Yeshua and he will be in them” [John 14:9-20 \(WEB – Bold mine\)](#):**

<sup>9</sup> Jesus said to him, “Have I been with you such a long time, and do you not know me, Philip? He who has seen me has seen the Father. How do you say, ‘Show us the Father?’” <sup>10</sup> Don’t you believe that **I am in the Father, and the Father in me?** The words that I tell you, I speak not from myself; but **the Father who lives in me does his works.** <sup>11</sup> Believe me that I am in the Father, and the Father in me; or else believe me for the very works’ sake. <sup>12</sup> Most certainly I tell you, he who believes in me, the works that I do, he will do also; and he will do greater works than these, because I am going to my Father. <sup>13</sup> Whatever you will ask in my name, I will do it, that the Father may be glorified in the Son. <sup>14</sup> If you will ask anything in my name, I will do it. <sup>15</sup> If you love me, keep my commandments. <sup>16</sup> **I will pray to the Father, and he will give you another Counselor, that he may be with you forever: <sup>17</sup> the Spirit of truth,** whom the world can’t receive; for it doesn’t see him and doesn’t know him. **You know him, for he lives with you, and will be in you.** <sup>18</sup> I will not leave you orphans. I will come to you. <sup>19</sup> Yet a little while, and the world will see me no more; but you will see me. Because I live, you will live also. <sup>20</sup> In that day **you will know that I am in my Father, and you in me, and I in you.**

**Yeshua stated that he and his disciples had a God in [John 20:17 \(WEB – Bold mine\)](#):**

<sup>17</sup> Jesus said to her, “Don’t hold me, for I haven’t yet ascended to my Father; but go to my brothers and tell them, ‘I am ascending to my Father and your Father, **to my God and your God.**’”

## Who are Christ's Brothers?

These are ones who will serve with Christ in his kingdom as kings and priests. It can also be extended to all those who side with Christ.

### [Revelation 5:9-10 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>9</sup> They sang a new song, saying,  
“You are worthy to take the book  
and to open its seals:  
for you were killed,  
and bought us for God with your blood  
out of every tribe, language, people, and nation,  
<sup>10</sup> and made us kings and priests to our God,  
and we will reign on the earth.”

### [Romans 8:14-17 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>14</sup> For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, these are children of God. <sup>15</sup> For you didn't receive the spirit of bondage again to fear, but you received the Spirit of adoption, by whom we cry, “Abba! Father!”

<sup>16</sup> The Spirit himself testifies with our spirit that we are children of God; <sup>17</sup> and if children, then heirs: heirs of God and joint heirs with Christ, if indeed we suffer with him, that we may also be glorified with him.

**Notice in Romans 8 that even Christ is a joint heir and that there's only one Father.**

## Revelations from the Original Gospel of Matthew (OGM)

The search for the truth of God's kingdom is not easy. As Jesus illustrated, it is a hidden treasure. With any hidden treasure, it can take much effort to sort through what are false leads and what are true leads.

It is no different with what many call the "New Testament." Many believe that they are free from error. That is what makes the search for God's truth difficult. As time goes on, spurious words and passages have been added to bolster support for certain teachings of men. Eventually, these added words become viewed by most as from God, whereas in reality, they are from men.

An example of this in the Old Testament (Hebrew Scriptures) is the removal of the divine name of the Almighty, Yahweh. This is also known as the tetragrammaton, four Hebrew letters. This name occurs almost 7,000 times yet was removed because of teaching of men. Hebrew religious leaders misapplied scripture, to their own desire, and replaced the divine name with a title, "LORD," which is not a personal name as "Yahweh" is.

Just as meddling has happened with the Hebrew scriptures, it has with the New Testament. This is no reason to give fear to the thought that the truth cannot be found. It still can. Even Issac Newton, one of the most brilliant men of a couple hundred years ago, knew of God's divine name and neither did he give sway to doctrines of the church such as the trinity. But it took effort. He wrote more on scripture than he did on mathematics or physics.

When we find something that contradicts our current beliefs, what should we do? Pray for guidance and courage to keep searching and understanding.

Just because we come across evidence that strongly challenges current understanding does not mean we disregard it. If we are seeking truth, we do not stop but continue until we can come to a better understanding.

**Here are some examples of spurious (added) texts. Texts added to support doctrines of men. These have been added. They are not in the oldest manuscripts:**

[1 John 5:7-8 \(KJV\);](#)

<sup>7</sup> For there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one.

<sup>8</sup> And there are three that bear witness in earth, the Spirit, and the water, and the blood: and these three agree in one.

[Comments from Bible.org](#)

[Comments from UCG.org](#)

[John 5:4 \(KJV\);](#)

<sup>4</sup> For an angel went down at a certain season into the pool, and troubled the water: whosoever then first after the troubling of the water stepped in was made whole of whatsoever disease he had.

[Comments on John 5:4](#)

[Mark 16:9-20 \(KJV\);](#)

<sup>9</sup> Now when Jesus was risen early the first day of the week, he appeared first to Mary Magdalene, out of whom he had cast seven devils.

<sup>10</sup> And she went and told them that had been with him, as they mourned and wept.

<sup>11</sup> And they, when they had heard that he was alive, and had been seen of her, believed not.

<sup>12</sup> After that he appeared in another form unto two of them, as they walked, and went into the country.

<sup>13</sup> And they went and told it unto the residue: neither believed they them.

<sup>14</sup> Afterward he appeared unto the eleven as they sat at meat, and upbraided them with their unbelief and hardness of heart, because they believed not them which had seen him after he was risen.

<sup>15</sup> And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

<sup>16</sup> He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned.

<sup>17</sup> And these signs shall follow them that believe; In my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues;

<sup>18</sup> They shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover.

<sup>19</sup> So then after the Lord had spoken unto them, he was received up into heaven, and sat on the right hand of God.

<sup>20</sup> And they went forth, and preached every where, the Lord working with them, and confirming the word with signs following. Amen.

[Comments from NIV](#)

**From these examples, it can be argued that, generally speaking, the oldest manuscripts have authority over the newer. It was from examining the older manuscripts that the true and false texts became apparent. When one studies about the original gospel of Matthew written by Matthew, in Hebrew, many things get clarified.**



**Many misinterpretations and additions in the gospel of Matthew have been protected from scrutiny for many years. Just as the Pharisees protected their teachings from scrutiny, in the first century, religious institutions of our day have done the same.**

**I highly recommend the reading of a few books which help in clearing up misinterpretations in Matthew by taking into consideration information that we have on the original gospel of Matthew which predates any Greek translation:**

- ***The Original Gospel of Matthew Volumes 1-4, (2014) by Standford Rives Esq***
  - Jesus did not say to obey the Pharisees who sit in Moses' seat (Matthew 23:1-3). In the original Matthew, Jesus states to obey "him" Moses, in whose seat they sat.
  - Jesus did not say that some standing there would see the Son of Man coming in His kingdom before they died. Rather, in the original Matthew Jesus stated that some would see the kingdom of the Son of Man come before they died. More is explained in the book.
  - The prophesy of the 30 pieces of silver is correctly said to come from Zechariah, in the original Matthew, not from Jeremiah, as most believe today.
  - The original Matthew clarifies Jesus' lineage through the fleshly line of David, with no virgin birth. This solidifies his claim to the kingdom of David. (My comment on this is that there is no reason that Jesus could not have two fathers including a spiritual pre-existence.)
- ***The Hebrew Yeshua vs. the Greek Jesus (2006) by Nehemia Gordon***
  - This book provides excellent insight to the Pharisee life and excellent understanding of the true meaning of Matthew 23:1-3 (Moses' seat) and other passages in Matthew. Basically it shows us that the true meaning from the original Hebrew is that Jesus was saying to listen to Moses but not those who claim to have his authority. More about this is below.

**How do we know that the original book of Matthew was written in the Hebrew language and by Matthew?**

- The early "church fathers" mentioned it and quoted from the Hebrew Matthew 49 times, as mentioned in *The Original Gospel of Matthew Volume 1, (2014) by Standford Rives Esq. page 1.* They viewed it as the original work of Matthew in the Hebrew language, especially the church father Jerome.

**Was Mary a virgin?**

- Referencing the church fathers' comments about the Hebrew Matthew, it originally stated that Joseph begat Jesus. There was no virgin account (immaculate conception). Some would argue that it was prophesied from Isaiah 7:14 that she was to be a virgin. However, the oldest manuscripts of Isaiah (Dead Sea Scrolls) do not say "virgin" but "young woman." Some feel that due to the structure of the Hebrew language, a translator of the

Septuagint could have made a simple mistake and translated it as “virgin.” This is starting to become more generally accepted because the proof is strong. Questions are existing about the chronology and virgin account’s canonicity.

### **What was the “Moses’ seat” and did Jesus tell his followers to follow the Pharisees?**

- Matthew 23:1-3 (WEB) states, “Then Jesus spoke to the multitudes and to his disciples, <sup>2</sup> saying, “The scribes and the Pharisees sit on Moses’ seat. <sup>3</sup> All things therefore whatever they tell you to observe, observe and do, but don’t do their works; for they say, and don’t do.” This passage seems contradictory and needs clarification. The book, *The Hebrew Yeshua vs. the Greek Jesus* by Nehemia Gordon on page 48 shows that this passage should read, from Hebrew, “2. The Pharisees and sages sit upon the seat of Moses. 3. Therefore, all that **he [Moses]** says to you, diligently do, but according to **their [The Pharisees and sages]** reforms (takanot) and their precedents (ma’asim) do not do, because they talk but they do not do.” Brackets have been inserted.

**Matthew 28:19**– This did not originally contain the trinitarian formula to baptize in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost before 340AD, seventeen direct quotes from Matthew 28:19 by the “church fathers” omit the trinitarian baptismal formula, stating to baptize in Jesus’ name only. See *The Original Gospel of Matthew Volume 2*, (2014) by Standford Rives Esq. page 137-140.

**Matthew 5:4** Commonly states that, “Happy (Blessed) are those who **morn** since they will be comforted.” However, the original Matthew states that, “Happy (Blessed) are those who **wait** since they will be comforted.”

OGM vol. 2 by Standford Rives. Esq p. 39 shows Hebrew versions (Munster) of Matthew that contains the name of YHWH (Yahweh the Almighty) at Matt. 1:20, 22, 24; 2:19; 3:3; 4:4, 7, 10; 5:33; 21:9, 42; 22:44; 23:39; 27:10; and 28:2. Matthew 13:55 also states Joseph being a black smith rather than a carpenter. It also brings out, what was essentially the Gospel of Luke (Marcion 144 AD) apparently did not have the first three chapters that we have today. (p.21 ref.30)

## The Soul and Spirit

**The soul dies.** The thought that the soul does not die goes back a long, long time and it too is a teaching of man that is not supported by the Bible. Some may take a few scriptures out of context to try to make people believe that there is a “hell” or that the soul lives on but that is not the case. If one looks up the word “soul” in a concordance (such as for the King James Version) one will see where the word is used and that it is used hundreds of times. By examining each occurrence, one will see that the soul is mortal and that when someone dies, they are asleep:

[Daniel 12:2](#). When [Michael](#) stands up:

“And there will be many of those asleep in the ground of dust who will wake up..” This will happen to those good and bad.

[Daniel 12:13 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>13</sup> “But go your way until the end; for you will rest, and will stand in your inheritance at the end of the days.”

[John 5:28-29\(WEB\)](#). Jesus prophesied, as did Daniel, that there would be a resurrection of both the righteous and unrighteous:

<sup>28</sup> Don’t marvel at this, for the hour comes in which all who are in the tombs will hear his voice, <sup>29</sup> and will come out; those who have done good, to the resurrection of life; and those who have done evil, to the resurrection of judgment.

[Ecclesiastes 9:5-10](#); [12:1-7](#) (WEB): talk about growing old and then when one dies:

<sup>5</sup> For the living know that they will die, but **the dead don’t know anything**, neither do they have any more a reward; for their memory is forgotten. <sup>6</sup> Also their love, their hatred, and their envy has perished long ago; neither do they any longer have a portion forever in anything that is done under the sun.

<sup>7</sup> Go your way—eat your bread with joy, and drink your wine with a merry heart; for God has already accepted your works. <sup>8</sup> Let your garments be always white, and don’t let your head lack oil. <sup>9</sup> Live joyfully with the wife whom you love all the days of your life of vanity, which he has given you under the sun, all your days of vanity, for that is your portion in life, and in your labor in which you labor under the sun. <sup>10</sup> Whatever your hand finds to do, do it with your might; for there is no work, nor plan, nor knowledge, nor wisdom, in Sheol,<sup>[a]</sup> where you are going.

The footnote for Sheol states that Sheol is the place of the dead.

[Ecclesiastes 12:1-7 \(WEB\)](#):

**12** Remember also your Creator in the days of your youth,

before the evil days come, and the years draw near,  
when you will say, "I have no pleasure in them;"  
<sup>2</sup> Before the sun, the light, the moon, and the stars are darkened,  
and the clouds return after the rain;  
<sup>3</sup> in the day when the keepers of the house shall tremble,  
and the strong men shall bow themselves,  
and the grinders cease because they are few,  
and those who look out of the windows are darkened,  
<sup>4</sup> and the doors shall be shut in the street;  
when the sound of the grinding is low,  
and one shall rise up at the voice of a bird,  
and all the daughters of music shall be brought low;  
<sup>5</sup> yes, they shall be afraid of heights,  
and terrors will be on the way;  
and the almond tree shall blossom,  
and the grasshopper shall be a burden,  
and desire shall fail;  
because man goes to his everlasting home,  
and the mourners go about the streets:  
<sup>6</sup> before the silver cord is severed,  
or the golden bowl is broken,  
or the pitcher is broken at the spring,  
or the wheel broken at the cistern,  
<sup>7</sup> **and the dust returns to the earth as it was,  
and the spirit returns to God who gave it.**

[Genesis 3:19](#)

"In the sweat of your face you will eat bread until you return to the ground, for out of it you were taken. For dust you are and to dust you will return."

[Isaiah 26:19](#)

"Your dead ones will live. A corpse of mine – they will rise up. Awake and cry out joyfully, YOU residents in the dust!"

[1 Corinthians 15:6 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>6</sup> Then he appeared to over five hundred brothers at once, most of whom remain until now, but some have also fallen asleep.

[1 Corinthians 15:18 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>18</sup> Then they also who are fallen asleep in Christ have perished.

**See John 11:1-44 at the end of this article.**

It is interesting how Israel's first human king Saul had a "Witch of Endor... bring up" the deceased prophet Samuel ([1 Samuel 28:3-25](#)). Is it possible for the dead to be awoken in spirit form or was it a spirit pretending to be Saul? It seems that either way is possible. Verse 15 and 19 show that this could really be Samuel, awoken from sleep in death. However, Yahweh (Jehovah) hates divination! Don't mess with spiritism to find yourself involved with something that the Almighty hates. ([Deuteronomy 18:9-12](#); [Leviticus 19:26,31](#); [20:27](#)) By the way, Saul did die the next day...

Deuteronomy 18:9-12 (WEB):

<sup>9</sup> When you have come into the land which Yahweh your God gives you, you shall not learn to imitate the abominations of those nations. <sup>10</sup> There shall not be found with you anyone who makes his son or his daughter to pass through the fire, one who uses divination, one who tells fortunes, or an enchanter, or a sorcerer, <sup>11</sup> or a charmer, or someone who consults with a familiar spirit, or a wizard, or a necromancer. <sup>12</sup> For whoever does these things is an abomination to Yahweh. Because of these abominations, Yahweh your God drives them out from before you.

When someone ceases to live, they are asleep in death. It is permanent for us humans, but God can and will resurrect those ones, in time, when his Kingdom reigns!

### **The Spirit:**

The spirit and soul together make a living soul. The soul is "the dust." The spirit is the active force to make the "dust" alive. This is evident with the Genesis account, regarding the creation of Adam. He was made from the dust, and because he disobeyed Yahweh, was to return to the dust from which he came. God breathed in the spirit of life. This is part of God's active force, the spirit. Once someone dies, their living soul becomes a dead soul because the spirit of God ("life force") has returned to God.

Interestingly, Jesus, close to death, cried out to his Father (Yahweh). He died and his spirit went back to his Father. Shortly after, he was brought back to life and appeared many times to his followers. Before he left them, he stated that he had not yet ascended to the Father.

People of the Mormon faith are taught that individuals live in heaven and then are born on earth. Depending on how good they are determines what "level" of "heaven" they go to, once they die on earth. There are so many things wrong with this teaching! The Bible makes no such claim! Remember that **God told Adam where he came from and where he was going – The dust.** God has a plan for all those asleep in the dust. They will be brought back to life, on Earth, when his kingdom reigns over all nations. It is no wonder that this following of Joseph Smith have their own book of Mormon. They hold it above the Bible. They use the argument that the scriptures are too old to be accurate. But that is not true! We have the Greek Septuagint and the Dead Sea Scrolls dated to just before Jesus' birth. We also have parts of the New Testament going back to around 100 AD. Upon comparing the differences, only minor changes are shown. Many of the changes deal with misspelling. When a con-artist faces scrutiny, he will try to discredit those looking into things, rather than welcoming scrutiny. Certainly, with their prophets

by their side, the Mormon hierarchy should be confident in welcoming scrutiny. But they don't. So, who do you believe, God or man? Like a con-artist, those shepherds use the thought that God's word is inaccurate and not to be fully trusted. Then they point to themselves as the ones to be trusted.

Do not be misled, test everything, and trust God above man!

**Notice how Christ likened death to sleeping in the account of Lazarus being raised from the dead:**

[John 11:1-44 \(WEB\)](#):

11 Now a certain man was sick, Lazarus from Bethany, of the village of Mary and her sister, Martha. <sup>2</sup> It was that Mary who had anointed the Lord with ointment and wiped his feet with her hair, whose brother, Lazarus, was sick. <sup>3</sup> The sisters therefore sent to him, saying, "Lord, behold, he for whom you have great affection is sick." <sup>4</sup> But when Jesus heard it, he said, "This sickness is not to death, but for the glory of God, that God's Son may be glorified by it." <sup>5</sup> Now Jesus loved Martha, and her sister, and Lazarus. <sup>6</sup> When therefore he heard that he was sick, he stayed two days in the place where he was. <sup>7</sup> Then after this he said to the disciples, "Let's go into Judea again."

<sup>8</sup> The disciples asked him, "Rabbi, the Jews were just trying to stone you. Are you going there again?"

<sup>9</sup> Jesus answered, "Aren't there twelve hours of daylight? If a man walks in the day, he doesn't stumble, because he sees the light of this world. <sup>10</sup> But if a man walks in the night, he stumbles, because the light isn't in him." <sup>11</sup> He said these things, and after that, he said to them, "Our friend, Lazarus, has fallen asleep, but I am going so that I may awake him out of sleep."

<sup>12</sup> The disciples therefore said, "Lord, if he has fallen asleep, he will recover."

<sup>13</sup> Now Jesus had spoken of his death, but they thought that he spoke of taking rest in sleep. <sup>14</sup> So Jesus said to them plainly then, "Lazarus is dead. <sup>15</sup> I am glad for your sakes that I was not there, so that you may believe. Nevertheless, let's go to him."

<sup>16</sup> Thomas therefore, who is called Didymus,<sup>[a]</sup> said to his fellow disciples, "Let's go also, that we may die with him."

<sup>17</sup> So when Jesus came, he found that he had been in the tomb four days already. <sup>18</sup> Now Bethany was near Jerusalem, about fifteen stadia<sup>[b]</sup> away. <sup>19</sup> Many of the Jews had joined the women around Martha and Mary, to console them concerning their brother. <sup>20</sup> Then when Martha heard that Jesus was coming, she went and met him, but Mary stayed in the house. <sup>21</sup> Therefore Martha said to Jesus, "Lord, if you would have been here, my brother wouldn't have died. <sup>22</sup> Even now I know that whatever you ask of God, God will give you." <sup>23</sup> Jesus said to her, "Your brother will rise again."

<sup>24</sup> Martha said to him, "I know that he will rise again in the resurrection at the last day."

<sup>25</sup> Jesus said to her, “I am the resurrection and the life. He who believes in me will still live, even if he dies. <sup>26</sup> Whoever lives and believes in me will never die. Do you believe this?”

<sup>27</sup> She said to him, “Yes, Lord. I have come to believe that you are the Christ, God’s Son, he who comes into the world.”

<sup>28</sup> When she had said this, she went away and called Mary, her sister, secretly, saying, “The Teacher is here and is calling you.”

<sup>29</sup> When she heard this, she arose quickly and went to him. <sup>30</sup> Now Jesus had not yet come into the village, but was in the place where Martha met him. <sup>31</sup> Then the Jews who were with her in the house and were consoling her, when they saw Mary, that she rose up quickly and went out, followed her, saying, “She is going to the tomb to weep there.” <sup>32</sup> Therefore when Mary came to where Jesus was and saw him, she fell down at his feet, saying to him, “Lord, if you would have been here, my brother wouldn’t have died.”

<sup>33</sup> When Jesus therefore saw her weeping, and the Jews weeping who came with her, he groaned in the spirit, and was troubled, <sup>34</sup> and said, “Where have you laid him?”

They told him, “Lord, come and see.”

<sup>35</sup> Jesus wept.

<sup>36</sup> The Jews therefore said, “See how much affection he had for him!” <sup>37</sup> Some of them said, “Couldn’t this man, who opened the eyes of him who was blind, have also kept this man from dying?”

<sup>38</sup> Jesus therefore, again groaning in himself, came to the tomb. Now it was a cave, and a stone lay against it. <sup>39</sup> Jesus said, “Take away the stone.”

Martha, the sister of him who was dead, said to him, “Lord, by this time there is a stench, for he has been dead four days.”

<sup>40</sup> Jesus said to her, “Didn’t I tell you that if you believed, you would see God’s glory?”

<sup>41</sup> So they took away the stone from the place where the dead man was lying. <sup>[e]</sup> Jesus lifted up his eyes, and said, “Father, I thank you that you listened to me. <sup>42</sup> I know that you always listen to me, but because of the multitude standing around I said this, that they may believe that you sent me.” <sup>43</sup> When he had said this, he cried with a loud voice, “Lazarus, come out!”

<sup>44</sup> He who was dead came out, bound hand and foot with wrappings, and his face was wrapped around with a cloth.

Jesus said to them, “Free him, and let him go.”

## The Resurrection of the Good and Bad

The resurrection of the righteous and wicked is mentioned by Jesus at John 5:28-29 and by the prophet Daniel at Daniel 12:2.

To see about the state of the dead see: [The Soul and Spirit](#)

If we go by the surrounding timeline of events in Daniel, the resurrection happens after the standing up of Michael (Many believe that [Michael is Jesus \(Yeshua\)](#)) and the destruction of the king of the north. This is a time when the knowledge of Yahweh becomes abundant. This would also correlate to after the destruction of the opposers of God's (Yahweh's) incoming kingdom rule, as mentioned in Revelation 19:11-21, [Daniel 2](#), and [Psalms 2](#). See [What happens with Jesus' coming?](#)

It is important to remember that Yahweh doesn't delight in the destruction of the wicked, as mentioned in Ezekiel 18. He desires the bad to turn to doing good – To be saved. This appears to be a primary reason for those asleep in death, to be brought back to life – To learn about Yahweh and turn around to doing good. The good will naturally receive rewards, as the end of Daniel (Daniel 12:13) shows us by what is told to Daniel.

Interestingly, Isaiah 65 indicates that someone could be 100 years old yet appear as a child and Revelation 21 shows how previous death is done away with upon the arrival of God's kingdom.

Regarding those resurrected who choose a wicked course over a righteous one, it appears that if they do not die during Christ's day of Judgement, they probably will at the end of the 1,000 years with a final test as mentioned in Revelation 20:7-10. There's no resurrection from that type of death as symbolized in Revelation as a lake of fire. The devil and his angels are tormented by knowing that their future will be permanent destruction, as symbolized by the lake of fire, and are doing everything in their power to drag humanity down with them.

There should be no fear for a truly righteous one to think that they would turn to practicing evil and lose Yahweh's favor. So much is based upon the heart condition. One will follow their true heart. This will be evident in one's actions over a course of time. There's tremendous wisdom in Jesus' simple yet strong words to love God and neighbor at Matthew 22:37-39.

### [John 5:21 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>21</sup> For as the Father raises the dead and gives them life, even so the Son also gives life to whom he desires.

### [John 2:19-21 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>19</sup> Jesus answered them, "Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up."

<sup>20</sup> The Jews therefore said, "It took forty-six years to build this temple! Will you raise it up in three days?" <sup>21</sup> But he spoke of the temple of his body.



### **John 10:17-18 (WEB):**

<sup>17</sup> Therefore the Father loves me, because I lay down my life, [Isaiah 53:7-8](#) that I may take it again. <sup>18</sup> No one takes it away from me, but I lay it down by myself. I have power to lay it down, and I have power to take it again. I received this commandment from my Father.”

This is an interesting passage. Apparently, Christ had the authority to raise himself. But the command from him had to come before he died. The dead are “asleep, unconscious.” How long before Lazarus came back to life did Christ have to say the words? The power to raise the dead seems to be not restricted by time of command.

### **Acts 26:23 (WEB):**

<sup>23</sup> how the Christ must suffer, and how, by the resurrection of the dead, he would be first to proclaim light both to these people and to the Gentiles.”

### **Ezekiel 18:21-23 (WEB):**

<sup>21</sup> “But if the wicked turns from all his sins that he has committed, and keeps all my statutes, and does that which is lawful and right, he shall surely live. He shall not die. <sup>22</sup> None of his transgressions that he has committed will be remembered against him. In his righteousness that he has done, he shall live. <sup>23</sup> Have I any pleasure in the death of the wicked?” says the Lord Yahweh; “and not rather that he should return from his way, and live?”

### **John 5:28-29 (WEB):**

<sup>28</sup> Don’t marvel at this, for the hour comes in which all who are in the tombs will hear his voice, <sup>29</sup> and will come out; those who have done good, to the resurrection of life; and those who have done evil, to the resurrection of judgment.

### **Daniel 11:45-12:4 (WEB):**

<sup>45</sup> He will plant the tents of his palace between the sea and the glorious holy mountain; yet he will come to his end, and no one will help him.

**12** “At that time Michael will stand up, the great prince who stands for the children of your people; and there will be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time. At that time your people will be delivered, everyone who is found written in the book. <sup>2</sup> Many of those who sleep in the dust of the earth will awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt. <sup>3</sup> Those who are wise will shine as the brightness of the expanse. Those who turn many to righteousness will shine as the stars forever and ever. <sup>4</sup> But you, Daniel, shut up the words, and seal the book, even to the time of the end. Many will run back and forth, and knowledge will be increased.”

**Daniel 12:13 (WEB):**

<sup>13</sup> “But go your way until the end; for you will rest, and will stand in your inheritance at the end of the days.”

**Isaiah 65:20 (ASV):**

<sup>20</sup> There shall be no more thence an infant of days, nor an old man that hath not filled his days; for the child shall die a hundred years old, and the sinner being a hundred years old shall be accursed.

**Revelation 21:2-4 (WEB):**

<sup>2</sup> I saw the holy city, New Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God, prepared like a bride adorned for her husband. <sup>3</sup> I heard a loud voice out of heaven saying, “Behold, God’s dwelling is with people, and he will dwell with them, and they will be his people, and God himself will be with them as their God. <sup>4</sup> He will wipe away every tear from their eyes. Death will be no more; neither will there be mourning, nor crying, nor pain, any more. The first things have passed away.”

**Revelation 20:7-10 (WEB):**

<sup>7</sup> And after the thousand years, Satan will be released from his prison, <sup>8</sup> and he will come out to deceive the nations which are in the four corners of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together to the war; the number of whom is as the sand of the sea. <sup>9</sup> They went up over the width of the earth, and surrounded the camp of the saints, and the beloved city. Fire came down out of heaven from God and devoured them. <sup>10</sup> The devil who deceived them was thrown into the lake of fire and sulfur, where the beast and the false prophet are also. They will be tormented day and night forever and ever.

**Matthew 22:37-39 (WEB):**

<sup>37</sup> Jesus said to him, “‘You shall love the Lord your God with all your heart, with all your soul, and with all your mind.’ (Deuteronomy 6:5) <sup>38</sup> This is the first and great commandment. <sup>39</sup> A second likewise is this, ‘You shall love your neighbor as yourself.’ (Leviticus 19:18)

## Blessings Under the Kingdom of God

**It is a blessing to serve Yahweh and his Son Yeshua. There is no greater work.** There are different ways that someone can help. There are teachers, evangelizers, organizers, donors, and other ways that people can contribute to the furthering of Yahweh's work. As the first century disciples of Yeshua were told, we must do the same. Making disciples of Yeshua requires some type of effort. In the least, talking to others of the good news of the kingdom. The sincere efforts will not be forgotten, and people will be rewarded by God.

Here is some encouragement found in [Psalms 37 \(WEB\)](#) that reminds us that Yahweh will not forget the righteous and that the wicked will soon be no more:

- 37 Don't fret because of evildoers,  
neither be envious against those who work unrighteousness.
- <sup>2</sup> For they shall soon be cut down like the grass,  
and wither like the green herb.
- <sup>3</sup> Trust in Yahweh, and do good.  
Dwell in the land, and enjoy safe pasture.
- <sup>4</sup> Also delight yourself in Yahweh,  
and he will give you the desires of your heart.
- <sup>5</sup> Commit your way to Yahweh.  
Trust also in him, and he will do this:
- <sup>6</sup> he will make your righteousness shine out like light,  
and your justice as the noon day sun.
- <sup>7</sup> Rest in Yahweh, and wait patiently for him.  
Don't fret because of him who prospers in his way,  
because of the man who makes wicked plots happen.
- <sup>8</sup> Cease from anger, and forsake wrath.  
Don't fret; it leads only to evildoing.
- <sup>9</sup> For evildoers shall be cut off,  
but those who wait for Yahweh shall inherit the land.
- <sup>10</sup> For yet a little while, and the wicked will be no more.  
Yes, though you look for his place, he isn't there.
- <sup>11</sup> But the humble shall inherit the land,  
and shall delight themselves in the abundance of peace.
- <sup>12</sup> The wicked plots against the just,  
and gnashes at him with his teeth.
- <sup>13</sup> The Lord will laugh at him,  
for he sees that his day is coming.
- <sup>14</sup> The wicked have drawn out the sword, and have bent their bow,  
to cast down the poor and needy,  
to kill those who are upright on the path.
- <sup>15</sup> Their sword shall enter into their own heart.

- Their bows shall be broken.
- <sup>16</sup> Better is a little that the righteous has,  
than the abundance of many wicked.
- <sup>17</sup> For the arms of the wicked shall be broken,  
but Yahweh upholds the righteous.
- <sup>18</sup> Yahweh knows the days of the perfect.  
Their inheritance shall be forever.
- <sup>19</sup> They shall not be disappointed in the time of evil.  
In the days of famine they shall be satisfied.
- <sup>20</sup> But the wicked shall perish.  
The enemies of Yahweh shall be like the beauty of the fields.  
They will vanish—  
vanish like smoke.
- <sup>21</sup> The wicked borrow, and don't pay back,  
but the righteous give generously.
- <sup>22</sup> For such as are blessed by him shall inherit the land.  
Those who are cursed by him shall be cut off.
- <sup>23</sup> A man's steps are established by Yahweh.  
He delights in his way.
- <sup>24</sup> Though he stumble, he shall not fall,  
for Yahweh holds him up with his hand.
- <sup>25</sup> I have been young, and now am old,  
yet I have not seen the righteous forsaken,  
nor his children begging for bread.
- <sup>26</sup> All day long he deals graciously, and lends.  
His offspring is blessed.
- <sup>27</sup> Depart from evil, and do good.  
Live securely forever.
- <sup>28</sup> For Yahweh loves justice,  
and doesn't forsake his saints.  
They are preserved forever,  
but the children of the wicked shall be cut off.
- <sup>29</sup> The righteous shall inherit the land,  
and live in it forever.
- <sup>30</sup> The mouth of the righteous talks of wisdom.  
His tongue speaks justice.
- <sup>31</sup> The law of his God is in his heart.  
None of his steps shall slide.
- <sup>32</sup> The wicked watch the righteous,  
and seek to kill him.
- <sup>33</sup> Yahweh will not leave him in his hand,  
nor condemn him when he is judged.

- <sup>34</sup> Wait for Yahweh, and keep his way,  
and he will exalt you to inherit the land.  
When the wicked are cut off, you shall see it.
- <sup>35</sup> I have seen the wicked in great power,  
spreading himself like a green tree in its native soil.
- <sup>36</sup> But he passed away, and behold, he was not.  
Yes, I sought him, but he could not be found.
- <sup>37</sup> Mark the perfect man, and see the upright,  
for there is a future for the man of peace.
- <sup>38</sup> As for transgressors, they shall be destroyed together.  
The future of the wicked shall be cut off.
- <sup>39</sup> But the salvation of the righteous is from Yahweh.  
He is their stronghold in the time of trouble.
- <sup>40</sup> Yahweh helps them and rescues them.  
He rescues them from the wicked and saves them,  
because they have taken refuge in him.

**Upon the arrival of God's kingdom, other blessings will be bestowed upon the earth.**

**The resurrection of the good and bad, under the kingdom.** See the link to see how Daniel 12 and Yeshua's words in John 5 speak of this. Can you imagine meeting those who have died who are dear to you?

**Death from old age is wiped out.**

**Isaiah 25:8 (WEB):**

He has swallowed up death forever! The Lord Yahweh will wipe away tears from off all faces. He will take the reproach of his people away from off all the earth, for Yahweh has spoken it.

**Revelation 21:3-4 (WEB):**

<sup>3</sup> I heard a loud voice out of heaven saying, "Behold, God's dwelling is with people, and he will dwell with them, and they will be his people, and God himself will be with them as their God. <sup>4</sup> He will wipe away every tear from their eyes. Death will be no more; neither will there be mourning, nor crying, nor pain, any more. The first things have passed away."

**Good people inheriting a paradise earth. Sickness done away with.**

[Psalms 37:29 \(WEB\):](#)

The righteous shall inherit the land,  
and live in it forever.

[Matthew 5:5 \(WEB\):](#)

Blessed are the gentle,  
for they shall inherit the earth

[Isaiah 33:24 \(WEB\):](#)

**The inhabitant won't say, "I am sick."**  
The people who dwell therein will be forgiven their iniquity.

[Isaiah 35 \(WEB\):](#)

35 The wilderness and the dry land will be glad.  
**The desert will** rejoice and blossom like a rose.

<sup>2</sup> It will **blossom abundantly**,  
and rejoice even with joy and singing.  
Lebanon's glory will be given to it,  
the excellence of Carmel and Sharon.

**They will see Yahweh's glory,  
the excellence of our God.**

<sup>3</sup> **Strengthen the weak hands,  
and make the feeble knees firm.**

<sup>4</sup> Tell those who have a fearful heart, "Be strong!  
Don't be afraid!

Behold, your God will come with vengeance, God's retribution.  
He will come and save you.

<sup>5</sup> **Then the eyes of the blind will be opened,  
and the ears of the deaf will be unstopped.**

<sup>6</sup> **Then the lame man will leap like a deer,  
and the tongue of the mute will sing;  
for waters will break out in the wilderness,  
and streams in the desert.**

<sup>7</sup> **The burning sand will become a pool,  
and the thirsty ground springs of water.**

**Grass with reeds and rushes will be in the habitation of jackals, where they lay.**

<sup>8</sup> A highway will be there, a road,  
and it will be called "The Holy Way".

The unclean shall not pass over it,  
but it will be for those who walk in the Way.

Wicked fools shall not go there.

<sup>9</sup>No lion will be there,  
nor will any ravenous animal go up on it.  
They will not be found there;  
but the redeemed will walk there.

<sup>10</sup>**Then Yahweh's ransomed ones will return,  
and come with singing to Zion;  
and everlasting joy will be on their heads.  
They will obtain gladness and joy,  
and sorrow and sighing will flee away.**" (Bold inserted)

**Yeshua (Descendant of Jesse) judges righteously and an abundance of peace, security, and food among animals and mankind**

[Isaiah 11:1-9 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>11</sup>A shoot will come out of the stock of Jesse,  
and a branch out of his roots will bear fruit.

<sup>2</sup>Yahweh's Spirit will rest on him:  
the spirit of wisdom and understanding,  
the spirit of counsel and might,  
the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of Yahweh.

<sup>3</sup>His delight will be in the fear of Yahweh.

He will not judge by the sight of his eyes,  
neither decide by the hearing of his ears;

<sup>4</sup>but he will judge the poor with righteousness,  
and decide with equity for the humble of the earth.

He will strike the earth with the rod of his mouth;  
and with the breath of his lips he will kill the wicked.

<sup>5</sup>Righteousness will be the belt of his waist,  
and faithfulness the belt of his waist.

<sup>6</sup>The wolf will live with the lamb,  
and the leopard will lie down with the young goat,  
the calf, the young lion, and the fattened calf together;  
and a little child will lead them.

<sup>7</sup>The cow and the bear will graze.  
Their young ones will lie down together.

The lion will eat straw like the ox.

<sup>8</sup>The nursing child will play near a cobra's hole,  
and the weaned child will put his hand on the viper's den.

<sup>9</sup>They will not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain;  
for the earth will be full of the knowledge of Yahweh,  
as the waters cover the sea.

[Psalms 72 \(WEB\):](#)

- 72 God, give the king your justice;  
your righteousness to the royal son.
- <sup>2</sup> He will judge your people with righteousness,  
and your poor with justice.
- <sup>3</sup> The mountains shall bring prosperity to the people.  
The hills bring the fruit of righteousness.
- <sup>4</sup> He will judge the poor of the people.  
He will save the children of the needy,  
and will break the oppressor in pieces.
- <sup>5</sup> They shall fear you while the sun endures;  
and as long as the moon, throughout all generations.
- <sup>6</sup> He will come down like rain on the mown grass,  
as showers that water the earth.
- <sup>7</sup> In his days, the righteous shall flourish,  
and abundance of peace, until the moon is no more.
- <sup>8</sup> He shall have dominion also from sea to sea,  
from the River to the ends of the earth.
- <sup>9</sup> Those who dwell in the wilderness shall bow before him.  
His enemies shall lick the dust.
- <sup>10</sup> The kings of Tarshish and of the islands will bring tribute.  
The kings of Sheba and Seba shall offer gifts.
- <sup>11</sup> Yes, all kings shall fall down before him.  
All nations shall serve him.
- <sup>12</sup> For he will deliver the needy when he cries;  
the poor, who has no helper.
- <sup>13</sup> He will have pity on the poor and needy.  
He will save the souls of the needy.
- <sup>14</sup> He will redeem their soul from oppression and violence.  
Their blood will be precious in his sight.
- <sup>15</sup> They shall live, and to him shall be given of the gold of Sheba.  
Men shall pray for him continually.  
They shall bless him all day long.
- <sup>16</sup> Abundance of grain shall be throughout the land.  
Its fruit sways like Lebanon.  
Let it flourish, thriving like the grass of the field.
- <sup>17</sup> His name endures forever.  
His name continues as long as the sun.  
Men shall be blessed by him.  
All nations will call him blessed.
- <sup>18</sup> Praise be to Yahweh God, the God of Israel,  
who alone does marvelous deeds.



<sup>19</sup> Blessed be his glorious name forever!  
Let the whole earth be filled with his glory!  
Amen and amen.

<sup>20</sup> This ends the prayers by David, the son of Jesse.

[Psalms 67 \(WEB\):](#)

May God be merciful to us, bless us,  
and cause his face to shine on us. Selah.  
<sup>2</sup> That your way may be known on earth,  
and your salvation among all nations,  
<sup>3</sup> let the peoples praise you, God.  
Let all the peoples praise you.  
<sup>4</sup> Oh let the nations be glad and sing for joy,  
for you will judge the peoples with equity,  
and govern the nations on earth. Selah.  
<sup>5</sup> Let the peoples praise you, God.  
Let all the peoples praise you.  
<sup>6</sup> The earth has yielded its increase.  
God, even our own God, will bless us.  
<sup>7</sup> God will bless us.  
All the ends of the earth shall fear him.

[Psalms 46:8-11 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>8</sup> Come, see Yahweh's works,  
what desolations he has made in the earth.  
<sup>9</sup> He makes wars cease to the end of the earth.  
He breaks the bow, and shatters the spear.  
He burns the chariots in the fire.  
<sup>10</sup> "Be still, and know that I am God.  
I will be exalted among the nations.  
I will be exalted in the earth."  
<sup>11</sup> Yahweh of Armies is with us.  
The God of Jacob is our refuge.

## How God's kingdom will be as it was in ancient times, 24 elders, and white robes

We know many things about [God's incoming kingdom](#), as brought out in this site. The arrival of the kingdom will be as no other time in human history. Malachi 3 comments that certain facets of God's arrival will mirror ancient times. Before going into this, **let's review some basics of God's incoming kingdom:**

The prophetic book of [Daniel](#) has much to say about the kingdom. A basic theme about God's kingdom is that it will conquer all other kingdoms and will have no end. Under the kingdom, those dead will be brought back to life.

[Daniel 2:44 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>44</sup> In the days of those kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom which shall never be destroyed, nor shall its sovereignty be left to another people; but it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand forever.

Compare [Revelation 11:15 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>15</sup> The seventh angel sounded, and great voices in heaven followed, saying, "The kingdom of the world has become the Kingdom of our Lord, and of his Christ. He will reign forever and ever!"

[Daniel 12:1-2 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>12</sup> "At that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince who stands for the children of your people; and there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time: and at that time your people shall be delivered, everyone who shall be found written in the book. <sup>2</sup> Many of those who sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt.

Jesus also taught his followers to pray for its arrival, in [Matthew 6:9-10 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>9</sup> Pray like this: 'Our Father in heaven, may your name be kept holy. <sup>10</sup> Let your Kingdom come. Let your will be done, as in heaven, so on earth.

Jesus also spoke of the resurrection as mentioned in Daniel 12:1-2, at [John 5:28-29 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>28</sup> Don't marvel at this, for the hour comes, in which all that are in the tombs will hear his voice, <sup>29</sup> and will come out; those who have done good, to the resurrection of life; and those who have done evil, to the resurrection of judgment.

Revelation also speaks of the resurrection at [Revelation 20:13 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>13</sup> The sea gave up the dead who were in it. Death and Hades gave up the dead who were in them. They were judged, each one according to his works.

## Regarding ways how God's kingdom will reflect things from days of old:

Look for:

- Yahweh's name being glorified.
- 288,000 (144,000×2) serving the king
- 24 princes (Elders) serving the king.
- The glory of the temple
- The purity of worship (Also illustrated by "white robes")

Malachi 1:11 states that Yahweh will make his name great among the nations. This purpose was reflected in the prayer that Jesus gave as an example to his disciples at Matthew 6:9, to sanctify his Father's name. Yahweh himself stated that his name should be a memorial, to be remembered among the nations, at [Exodus 3:15 \(WEB\)](#); "God said moreover to Moses, "You shall tell the children of Israel this, 'Yahweh, the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, has sent me to you.' This is my name forever, and this is my memorial to all generations." In contrast, Yahweh stated that the names of other gods should not even be mentioned, at [Exodus 23:13 \(WEB\)](#); "Be careful to do all things that I have said to you; and don't invoke the name of other gods or even let them be heard out of your mouth."

Malachi chapter 3:1-4 sets the stage of God's incoming kingdom. As mentioned in Daniel 11:35 and Revelation 11:1-2, God's people must undergo a "cleansing" (Whitening / Straightening) because their worship is not acceptable to Yahweh. Their worship is straightened (measurable) and tested within an approximate 3.5-year period.

[Malachi 3:1-4 \(WEB\)](#);

3 "Behold, I send my messenger, and he will prepare the way before me; and the Lord, whom you seek, will suddenly come to his temple; and the messenger of the covenant, whom you desire, behold, he comes!" says Yahweh of Armies. <sup>2</sup> "But who can endure the day of his coming? And who will stand when he appears? For he is like a refiner's fire, and like launderer's soap; <sup>3</sup> and he will sit as a refiner and purifier of silver, and he will purify the sons of Levi, and refine them as gold and silver; and they shall offer to Yahweh offerings in righteousness. <sup>4</sup> Then **the offering of Judah and Jerusalem will be pleasant to Yahweh, as in the days of old, and as in ancient years.**

[Daniel 11:35 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>35</sup> Some of those who are wise shall fall, to refine them, and to purify, and to make them white, even to the time of the end; because it is yet for the time appointed.

[Revelation 11:1-2 \(WEB\)](#);

11 A reed like a rod was given to me. Someone said, "Rise, and measure God's temple, and the altar, and those who worship in it. <sup>2</sup> Leave out the court which is outside of the

temple, **and don't measure it**, for it has been given to the nations. They will tread the holy city under foot for forty-two months.

**Now that the time frame of Malachi 3 is established, in what ways is Malachi 3:4 fulfilled?**

[Malachi 3:4 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>4</sup> Then the offering of Judah and Jerusalem will be pleasant to Yahweh, as in the days of old, and as in ancient years.

In the days of old, King David ruled as Yahweh's anointed king. King David was the most famous king of Israel, followed by his son, Solomon.

Interestingly, **king David had 288,000 who ministered to him**. This was done by 12 groups of 24,000 each. [This 288,000 is a literal number and is reflected in Revelation](#), as two groups of 144,000 each. One group has already proven their true integrity, from the early disciples. These ones were persecuted by the "king of the north," of the time period. The next group of 144,000 will need their worship "straightened" or "whitened," to be found acceptable to Yahweh. Once these two groups are brought together, as Christ's figurative "Bride," in Revelation, God's kingdom begins its rule, over the nations.

**Certainly, one of the most glorious events of the ancient kingdom of Israel was the coronation of Solomon, David's son.** These were spectacular times. King David was told by Yahweh that Solomon would continue his reign, and that Yahweh would make Solomon his son, and would make his reign a successful and peaceful one.

Of particular interest is how **everyone, in the kingdom, worshiped Solomon and Yahweh. However, only sacred worship was shown to Yahweh.** Thus, this event shows us different meanings of "worship."

[1 Chronicles 22:5-10 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>5</sup> David said, "Solomon my son is young and tender, and the house that is to be built for Yahweh must be exceedingly magnificent, of fame and of glory throughout all countries. I will therefore make preparation for it." So, David prepared abundantly before his death. <sup>6</sup> Then he called for Solomon his son, and commanded him to build a house for Yahweh, the God of Israel. <sup>7</sup> David said to Solomon his son, "As for me, it was in my heart to build a house to the name of Yahweh my God. <sup>8</sup> But Yahweh's word came to me, saying, 'You have shed blood abundantly, and have made great wars. You shall not build a house to my name, because you have shed much blood on the earth in my sight. <sup>9</sup> Behold, a son shall be born to you, who shall be a man of peace. I will give him rest from all his enemies all around; for his name shall be Solomon, and I will give peace and quietness to Israel in his days. <sup>10</sup> **He shall build a house for my name; and he will be my son, and I will be his father; and I will establish the throne of his kingdom over Israel forever.'**

[1 Chronicles 29:1-25 \(ASV\);](#)

29 And David the king said unto all the assembly, Solomon my son, whom alone God hath chosen, is yet young and tender, and the work is great; for the palace is not for man, but for Jehovah God. <sup>2</sup> Now I have prepared with all my might for the house of my God the gold for the *things of gold*, and the silver for the *things of silver*, and the brass for the *things of brass*, the iron for the *things of iron*, and wood for the *things of wood*; onyx stones, and *stones* to be set, stones for inlaid work, and of divers colors, and all manner of precious stones, and marble stones in abundance. <sup>3</sup> Moreover also, because I have set my affection on the house of my God, seeing that I have a treasure of mine own of gold and silver, I give it unto the house of my God, over and above all that I have prepared for the holy house, <sup>4</sup> even three thousand talents of gold, of the gold of Ophir, and seven thousand talents of refined silver, wherewith to overlay the walls of the houses; <sup>5</sup> of gold for the *things of gold*, and of silver for the *things of silver*, and for all manner of work *to be made* by the hands of artificers. Who then offereth willingly to consecrate himself this day unto Jehovah?

<sup>6</sup> **Then the princes of the fathers' houses, and the princes of the tribes of Israel,** and the captains of thousands and of hundreds, with the rulers over the king's work, offered willingly; <sup>7</sup> and they gave for the service of the house of God of gold five thousand talents and ten thousand darics, and of silver ten thousand talents, and of brass eighteen thousand talents, and of iron a hundred thousand talents. <sup>8</sup> And they with whom *precious* stones were found gave them to the treasure of the house of Jehovah, under the hand of Jehiel the Gershonite. <sup>9</sup> Then the people rejoiced, for that they offered willingly, because with a perfect heart they offered willingly to Jehovah: and David the king also rejoiced with great joy.

<sup>10</sup> **Wherefore David blessed Jehovah before all the assembly; and David said, Blessed be thou, O Jehovah, the God of Israel our father, for ever and ever.** <sup>11</sup> **Thine, O Jehovah, is the greatness, and the power, and the glory, and the victory, and the majesty: for all that is in the heavens and in the earth is thine; thine is the kingdom, O Jehovah, and thou art exalted as head above all.** <sup>12</sup> **Both riches and honor come of thee, and thou rulest over all; and in thy hand is power and might; and in thy hand it is to make great, and to give strength unto all.** <sup>13</sup> **Now therefore, our God, we thank thee, and praise thy glorious name.** <sup>14</sup> But who am I, and what is my people, that we should be able to offer so willingly after this sort? for all things come of thee, and of thine own have we given thee. <sup>15</sup> For we are strangers before thee, and sojourners, as all our fathers were: our days on the earth are as a shadow, and there is no abiding. <sup>16</sup> O Jehovah our God, all this store that we have prepared to build thee a house for thy holy name cometh of thy hand, and is all thine own. <sup>17</sup> I know also, my God, that thou triest the heart, and hast pleasure in uprightness. As for me, in the uprightness of my heart I have willingly offered all these things: and now have I seen with joy thy people, that are present here, offer willingly unto thee. <sup>18</sup> O Jehovah, the God of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Israel, our fathers, keep this for ever in the imagination of the thoughts of the heart of thy people, and prepare their heart unto thee; <sup>19</sup> and give unto Solomon my son a perfect

heart, to keep thy commandments, thy testimonies, and thy statutes, and to do all these things, and to build the palace, for which I have made provision.

<sup>20</sup> **And David said to all the assembly, Now bless Jehovah your God. And all the assembly blessed Jehovah, the God of their fathers, and bowed down their heads, and worshipped Jehovah, and the king.** <sup>21</sup> And they sacrificed sacrifices unto Jehovah, and offered burnt-offerings unto Jehovah, on the morrow after that day, even a thousand bullocks, a thousand rams, and a thousand lambs, with their drink-offerings, and sacrifices in abundance for all Israel, <sup>22</sup> and did eat and drink before Jehovah on that day with great gladness.

And they made Solomon the son of David king the second time, and anointed him unto Jehovah to be prince, and Zadok to be priest. <sup>23</sup> Then Solomon sat on the throne of Jehovah as king instead of David his father, and prospered; and all Israel obeyed him. <sup>24</sup> **And all the princes, and the mighty men, and all the sons likewise of king David, submitted themselves unto Solomon the king.** <sup>25</sup> **And Jehovah magnified Solomon exceedingly in the sight of all Israel,** and bestowed upon him such royal majesty as had not been on any king before him in Israel.

*Now compare this with Revelation.*

In both of the following passages, the meaning of “worship” is similar in use as it is used in the above passages from 1 Chronicles 29. Worship, meaning homage, is due Yahweh (Jehovah) and his appointed king. But only sacred worship is due Yahweh. Revealingly, in the following passages, nowhere does it say to worship the Lamb (Jesus) alone.

[Revelation 5:12-14 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>12</sup> saying with a loud voice, “Worthy is the Lamb who has been killed **to receive** the power, wealth, wisdom, strength, honor, glory, and blessing!”

<sup>13</sup> I heard every created thing which is in heaven, on the earth, under the earth, on the sea, and everything in them, saying, “**To him who sits on the throne, and to the Lamb be the blessing, the honor, the glory, and the dominion, forever and ever! Amen!**”

<sup>14</sup> The four living creatures said, “Amen!” The elders fell down and *worshipped*.

[Revelation 7:12 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>10</sup> They cried with a loud voice, saying, “Salvation be to our God, who sits on the throne, and to the Lamb!”

<sup>11</sup> All the angels were standing around the throne, the elders, and the four living creatures; and they fell on their faces before his throne, and *worshipped God*, <sup>12</sup> saying, “Amen! Blessing, glory, wisdom, thanksgiving, honor, power, and might, be to our God forever and ever! Amen.”

**Who could the 24 elders represent?**

Going back to ancient Israel, in [1 Chronicles 28:1 \(ASV\)](#), David gathered important people to hear his message of what he was going to do regarding his son Solomon and the temple to be built. The first two groups mentioned are of 12 princes each for a total of 24 princes. The princes of Israel and the princes of the tribes. **These two groups are explained earlier, in 1 Chronicles 27.** 1 Chronicles 27:1-15 talk about the **12 princes of the paternal houses** (which have 288,000 in all) **and the princes of Israel** (tribes) in verses 16-22. These ancient high officials could easily be and probably are represented as the 24 elders mentioned in Revelation. – Compare 1 Chronicles 29:6 (ASV) above.

#### [1 Chronicles 28:1 \(WEB\):](#)

28 David assembled all the **princes** of Israel, the **princes** of the tribes, the captains of the companies who served the king by division, the captains of thousands, the captains of hundreds, and the rulers over all the substance and possessions of the king and of his sons, with the officers and the mighty men, even all the mighty men of valor, to Jerusalem.

#### [1 Chronicles 27:1-15 \(WYC\):](#)

27 Forsooth the sons of Israel by their number, the princes of families, the tribunes, and centurions, and prefects, that ministered to the king by their companies *of knights*, entering in and going out by each month in the year, were sovereigns, each by himself, upon four and twenty thousand. (Now the number of Israelites, that is, the leaders of the families, and the tribunes, and the centurions, and the prefects, who served the king with their companies *of horsemen*, coming in and going out each month of the year, was twenty-four thousand in each company, *or division*.)

<sup>2</sup> Jashobeam, the son of Zabdiel, was sovereign of the first company in the first month, and under him *were* four and twenty thousand; (Jashobeam, the son of Zabdiel, was the leader of the first company in the first month, and under him *were* twenty-four thousand;)

<sup>3</sup> of the sons of Pharez, *was* the prince of all [the] princes in the host, in the first month. (of the sons of Perez, *he was* the leader of all the leaders in the army, in the first month.)

<sup>4</sup> Dodai (the) Ahohite had the company of the second month, and after himself *he had* another man, Mikloth by name, that governed a part of the host of four and twenty thousand. (Dodai the Ahohite led the second company in the second month, and *he had* another man, named Mikloth, who helped him govern his division of twenty-four thousand./And Eleazar, the son of Dodai the Ahohite, led the second company in the second month, and he governed his division of twenty-four thousand.)

<sup>5</sup> And Benaiah, the son of Jehoiada, the priest, was duke of the third company in the third month, and four and twenty thousand *were* in his parting; (And Benaiah, the son of Jehoiada, the priest, was the leader of the third company in the third month, and twenty-four thousand *were* in his division;)

<sup>6</sup> that is Benaiah, the strongest man among (the) thirty, and above (the) thirty; and Ammizabad, his son, was sovereign of his company (after him). (this is Benaiah, the strongest man among The Thirty, and he *was* a leader of The Thirty; and his son Ammizabad was the leader of his company after him.)

<sup>7</sup> In the fourth month, the fourth *prince was* Asahel, the brother of Joab, and Zebadiah, his son, (was the leader) after him, and four and twenty thousand *were* in his company.

<sup>8</sup> In the fifth month, the fifth *prince was* Shamhuth (the) Izrahite, and four and twenty thousand *were* in his company.

<sup>9</sup> In the sixth month, the sixth *prince was* Ira, the son of Ikkesh, (the) Tekoite, and four and twenty thousand *were* in his company.

<sup>10</sup> In the seventh month, the seventh *prince was* Helez (the) Pelonite, of the sons of Ephraim, [and] four and twenty thousand *were* in his company.

<sup>11</sup> In the eighth month, the eighth *prince was* Sibbecai (the) Hushathite, of the generation of Zarhites (of the sons of Zareh), and four and twenty thousand *were* in his company.

<sup>12</sup> In the ninth month, the ninth *prince was* Abiezer (the) Anetothite, of the generation of Benjamin (of the sons of Benjamin), and four and twenty thousand *were* in his company.

<sup>13</sup> In the tenth month, the tenth *prince was* Maharai, and he *was* (a) Netophathite, of the generation of Zarhites (of the sons of Zareh), and four and twenty thousand *were* in his company.

<sup>14</sup> In the eleventh month, the eleventh *prince was* Benaiah (the) Pirathonite, of the sons of Ephraim, and four and twenty thousand *were* in his company.

<sup>15</sup> In the twelfth month, the **twelfth *prince was*** Heldai (the) Netophathite, of the generation of Othniel (of the sons of Othniel), and four and twenty thousand *were* in his company.

#### [1 Chronicles 27:16-22 \(WYC\):](#)

<sup>16</sup> Forsooth ***these were the sovereigns of the lineages of Israel*** (And *these* were the rulers of the tribes of Israel); duke Eliezer, the son of Zichri, *was sovereign* to Reubenites; duke Shephatiah, the son of Maachah, *was sovereign* to Simeonites;

<sup>17</sup> Hashabiah, the son of Kemuel, *was sovereign* to the Levites; Zadok *was sovereign* to Aaronites;

<sup>18</sup> Elihu, the brother of David, *was sovereign* to the lineage of Judah (Elihu, David's brother, *was the ruler* of the tribe of Judah); Omri, the son of Michael, *was sovereign* to Issacharites.

<sup>19</sup> Ishmaiah, the son of Obadiah, *was sovereign* to Zebulunites; Jerimoth, the son of Azriel, *was sovereign* to Naphtalites;



<sup>20</sup> Hoshea, the son of Azaziah, *was sovereign* to the sons of Ephraim; Joel, the son of Pedaiiah, *was sovereign* to the half lineage of Manasseh (Joel, the son of Pedaiiah, *was the ruler* of the western half of the tribe of Manasseh);

<sup>21</sup> and Iddo, the son of Zechariah, *was sovereign* to the (other) half lineage of Manasseh in Gilead; and Jaasiel, the son of Abner, *was sovereign* to Benjamin; (and Iddo, the son of Zechariah, *was the ruler* of the eastern half of the tribe of Manasseh in Gilead; and Jaasiel, the son of Abner, *was the ruler* of Benjamin;)

<sup>22</sup> and Azareel, the son of Jeroham, *was sovereign* to Dan; **these were the princes** of the sons of Israel. (and Azareel, the son of Jeroham, *was the ruler* of Dan; *these were* the leaders of the Israelites.)

### **White robes. What do they represent and who wears them?**

White robes are worn by different groups.

White robes indicate that someone's worship is clean (unadulterated, straight, measurable) toward Yahweh. In the following passages, Yahweh has his people cleansed of polluted worship or for those who he finds already clean, he gives the robes to right away. People of the nations who submit to Christ's rule whiten their own robes. This term is used for those who will rule with Christ (two groups of 144,000 = 288,000) and the "great crowd" (the nations).

[Daniel 11:32-35](#) depicts a time of whitening (cleansing/made spotless/straightening) for God's people during the second and last onslaught from the king of the north, in our near future. In this instance, it is the second group of 144,000. See [Christ's Bride...](#)

[Malachi 3:1-3 \(WEB\)](#) Depicts a time when Yahweh's messenger will refine certain ones:

3 "Behold, I send my messenger, and he will prepare the way before me; and the Lord, whom you seek, will suddenly come to his temple; and the messenger of the covenant, whom you desire, behold, he comes!" says Yahweh of Armies. <sup>2</sup>"But who can endure the day of his coming? And who will stand when he appears? For he is like a refiner's fire, and like launderers' soap; <sup>3</sup> and he will sit as a refiner and purifier of silver, and he will purify the sons of Levi, and refine them as gold and silver; and they shall offer to Yahweh offerings in righteousness.

### **White robes for Christ's 288,000:**

Revelation 6:11 a white robe was given to them. Compare Zechariah 3

[Revelation 6:11 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>11</sup> A long white robe was given to each of them. They were told that they should rest yet for a while, until their fellow servants and their brothers, who would also be killed even as they were, should complete their course.

This is speaking of the first group from the first century that were persecuted by the king of the north, at that time. Yahweh found their worship pure. They needed no whitening. But their

brothers must endure a whitening period of 3.5 years. This is for our day. See [Christ's bride – Apostasy – And The Great Crowd](#)

### [Zechariah 3 \(WEB\):](#)

3 He showed me Joshua the high priest standing before Yahweh's angel, and Satan standing at his right hand to be his adversary. <sup>2</sup> Yahweh said to Satan, "Yahweh rebuke you, Satan! Yes, Yahweh who has chosen Jerusalem rebuke you! Isn't this a burning stick plucked out of the fire?"

<sup>3</sup> Now Joshua was clothed with filthy garments, and was standing before the angel. <sup>4</sup> He answered and spoke to those who stood before him, saying, "Take the filthy garments off him." To him he said, "Behold, I have caused your iniquity to pass from you, and I will clothe you with rich clothing."

<sup>5</sup> I said, "Let them set a clean turban on his head."

So they set a clean turban on his head, and clothed him; and Yahweh's angel was standing by. <sup>6</sup> Yahweh's angel protested to Joshua, saying, <sup>7</sup> "Yahweh of Armies says: 'If you will walk in my ways, and if you will follow my instructions, then you also shall judge my house, and shall also keep my courts, and I will give you a place of access among these who stand by. <sup>8</sup> Hear now, Joshua the high priest, you and your fellows who sit before you; for they are men who are a sign: for, behold, I will bring out my servant, the Branch. <sup>9</sup> For, behold, the stone that I have set before Joshua; on one stone are seven eyes: behold, I will engrave its engraving,' says Yahweh of Armies, 'and I will remove the iniquity of that land in one day. <sup>10</sup> In that day,' says Yahweh of Armies, 'you will invite every man his neighbor under the vine and under the fig tree.'"

### **White robes for everyone else who submits to Christ's rule:**

Revelation 7:9 – The unnumbered great crowd (multitude)

### [Revelation 7:9 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>9</sup> After these things I looked, and behold, a great multitude, which no man could count, out of every nation and of all tribes, peoples, and languages, standing before the throne and before the Lamb, dressed in white robes, with palm branches in their hands.

It should be noted that the word "before" does not have to mean in heaven. Revelation 21:1-4 shows that God's kingdom comes down to the earth.

### [Revelation 21:1-4 \(CEB\):](#)

21 Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the former heaven and the former earth had passed away, and the sea was no more. <sup>2</sup> I saw the holy city, New Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God, made ready as a bride beautifully dressed for her husband. <sup>3</sup> I heard a loud voice from the throne say, "Look! God's dwelling is here with humankind. He will dwell with them, and they will be his peoples. God himself will be with them as their God. <sup>4</sup> He will wipe away every tear from their eyes. Death will be no

more. There will be no mourning, crying, or pain anymore, for the former things have passed away.”

### **The nations (The great crowd) whiten their own robes to enter the holy city**

#### Revelation 22:14 (NIV):

<sup>14</sup> “Blessed are those who wash their robes, that they may have the right to the tree of life and may go through the gates into the city.

This would apply to all who attain the white robe status.

#### Revelation 15:14 (NIV):

<sup>4</sup> Who will not fear you, Lord,  
and bring glory to your name?  
For you alone are holy.  
All nations will come  
and worship before you,  
for your righteous acts have been revealed

#### Revelation 21:24-27 (NIV):

<sup>24</sup> The nations will walk by its light, and the kings of the earth will bring their splendor into it. <sup>25</sup> On no day will its gates ever be shut, for there will be no night there. <sup>26</sup> The glory and honor of the nations will be brought into it. <sup>27</sup> Nothing impure will ever enter it, nor will anyone who does what is shameful or deceitful, but only those whose names are written in the Lamb’s book of life.

### **The parallels of glory of the ancient temple and the New Jerusalem:**

Just as the ancient temple had glorious materials in abundance, the New Jerusalem does too. Notice how things are measurable (straight), their worship is acceptable to God. **Compare 1 Chronicles 29:1-9 (above) and Revelation 21:10-21 (WEB);**

<sup>10</sup> He carried me away in the Spirit to a great and high mountain, and showed me the holy city, Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God, <sup>11</sup> having the glory of God. Her light was like a most precious stone, as if it were a jasper stone, clear as crystal; <sup>12</sup> having a great and high wall; having twelve gates, and at the gates twelve angels; and names written on them, which are the names of the twelve tribes of the children of Israel. <sup>13</sup> On the east were three gates; and on the north three gates; and on the south three gates; and on the west three gates. <sup>14</sup> The wall of the city had twelve foundations, and on them twelve names of the twelve Apostles of the Lamb. <sup>15</sup> He who spoke with me had for a measure a golden reed to measure the city, its gates, and its walls. <sup>16</sup> The city is square, and its length is as great as its width. He measured the city with the reed, twelve thousand twelve stadia. Its length, width, and height are equal. <sup>17</sup> Its wall is one hundred forty-four cubits, by the measure of a man, that is, of an angel. <sup>18</sup> The construction of its wall was

jasper. The city was pure gold, like pure glass. <sup>19</sup> The foundations of the city's wall were adorned with all kinds of precious stones. The first foundation was jasper; the second, sapphire; the third, chalcedony; the fourth, emerald; <sup>20</sup> the fifth, sardonyx; the sixth, sardius; the seventh, chrysolite; the eighth, beryl; the ninth, topaz; the tenth, chrysoprase; the eleventh, jacinth; and the twelfth, amethyst. <sup>21</sup> The twelve gates were twelve pearls. Each one of the gates was made of one pearl. The street of the city was pure gold, like transparent glass.

# The Secrets of Jesus Returning!



## How we can know when Jesus is coming quickly?

Of all the exciting events in human history, it would be impossible to find something as climactic or as exciting as [Jesus arriving](#) with power and glory and what happens after that! People from all ages have been looking toward this event and have wondered when it will happen. Exciting events will unfold with the ushering in of God's kingdom. Old age, sickness, death, wars, and



pain will be things of the past! Even ones who have died in the past will be brought back to life! These are, for a certainty, things impossible for man to do but not for our creator!

Luckily, Jesus himself gave his followers clues as to when he would come back. Drawing on illustrations and prophesy, he taught his followers to look for signs that would tell them that he would be near. It is a purpose of this paper to help sincere ones to understand not only where Jesus drew prophesy from but to discern the prophesies and the time periods to which they pertain.

It takes the right attitude to be successful in searching for the hidden treasure of the Kingdom of God. The right attitude is the one tool that is indispensable in the quest for this treasure! If someone does not have the right attitude, they will be blindly looking for it in vain. Or they will foolishly believe that they already have it when they don't. They will not be able to understand. But with the right attitude, the eyes of understanding will open with the treasure in view!

Will we be ready when Jesus knocks at our door?

### **The Right Attitude is Needed**



- Love of God is essential. At [Mark 12:41-44](#), Jesus observes a poor widow dropping only a couple of small coins into the temple treasury chest, but many rich people were dropping many coins. Yet, Jesus pointed out that the widow gave more. She gave her whole living, due to the depth of her love for God. In contrast, the rich only gave out of their surplus.

- Lovers of God are lovers of truth. ([Deut. 32:1-4](#); [Ps. 31:5](#); [John 4:24](#))
- A lover of God continually seeks truth with the understanding that past beliefs may have to change with new insight from scriptures. ([Deut. 43:3](#); [Proverbs 4:18](#))
- A lover of God will not make excuses to keep from checking his or her understanding of scripture. Especially, when sincerely asked about beliefs or when teaching others. ([1 Pet. 3:15](#))
- No one should be afraid or ignorant in testing their faith or what they hear. And no one should keep others from doing the same. In fact, in [2 Cor. 13:5,6](#), the apostle Paul encouraged others to test their faith, and so should we. [Acts 17:11,12](#) tells of people in the City of Berea being commended for carefully examining the scriptures daily, checking to see if what they were being told was true. And in the Apostle John's vision in [Revelation 2:2](#), the congregation in Ephesus was commended by Christ for putting to the test men who claimed to be apostles and found them to be liars.
- Love of neighbor is essential. Jesus taught that one must love God and his neighbor. In Luke 10:25-37, a man who was versed in the law asked Jesus who was his neighbor. Jesus answered by giving the following allegory: A man was traveling from Jerusalem to Jericho and fell among robbers who left him left half-dead on the side of a road. A priest traveling on the road sees him and crosses to the other side to avoid him. A Levite does the same. Yet, a Samaritan saw him and was moved with compassion. He bound up his wounds, took him to an inn and paid for his recovery. The injured man very well could have been a Jew. Traditionally, Samaritans and Jews had little to no dealings with each other. Jesus drove the point that the Samaritan acted neighborly to the injured man. Jesus then asked the man who was versed in the law, "Who made himself a neighbor to the injured man?" The man replied that the one who acted mercifully. Jesus said to him to go his way and be doing the same.



Our neighbors are all around us, no matter where we are or who they may be. Love is essential.



## The Right of Yeshua (Jesus) to Rule

- Abraham (Abram) was a Hebrew who lived thousands of years ago. He did everything that God asked of him. As time went on, God adopted him as his friend and promised him that he would become a father to many nations and peoples as numerous as the stars of heaven. And that by means of his seed (offspring), all nations would bless themselves



because he listened to God. ([Gen. 15:5](#); [17:1-27](#); [22:15-18](#))

- Abraham was adopted by God as his friend, and he knew of God's name ([Genesis 15:7 WEB](#)). However, Yahweh did not reveal a greater extent of the power of his name and his promises until the days of Moses ([Exodus 6:2-3 WEB](#)) – See [Bible names and their meanings](#). Getting to know someone and especially seeing what they can do are important steps in developing a personal relationship with someone.
- Jesus even taught his followers to pray for the sanctification of his Father's name in [Matthew 6:9-13](#) – Compare [Daniel 2:20](#) ; [Ezekiel 36:23](#). The sanctification of God's name not only includes the fulfillment of his will but also [the use of his name](#) as he originally intended. How can it be used by people if it is removed from their sight? Simply put, let no man change what God has written. Almighty God has every right to do as he pleases. Soon, all nations will get to know Yahweh's name through seeing his actions. No man can tell God what to do. It was Almighty God who had man created. Man did not create the Almighty.





- Another right of Jesus to rule is his human ancestry. The ancestry of Jesus shows that he was born as a Hebrew and his ancestors included the ancient Israelite king David and the patriarch Abraham. ([Luke 3:23-38](#)) See the chapter on *Who is the Son of the Almighty* to see how Jacob and Mary were both his human parents.
- Jesus is the appointed king from multiple standpoints. [Matthew 21:4-9](#) is the account of Jesus riding on a colt into Jerusalem, as it was prophesied. People, including children,



were heralding him as the Son of King David, coming to rule in God's name! People were cutting down palm branches and waving them. They were laying their garments down, in front of him, because they knew he was royalty. ([Psalms 2](#); [22:16](#); [110:1](#); [Isaiah 9:6-7](#); [42:1-7](#); [9:9](#); [Luke 1:26-33](#); [Revelation 11:15](#))



- Jesus is the figurative King David, Israel’s most famous king. Ezekiel was written long after the death of the literal King David but speaks of a figurative King David to rule in the future – [Ezekiel 34:23-31](#); [37:24-25](#).
- Jesus is the Messiah. ([Daniel 9:25-27](#); [John 8:42, 56-58](#); [Gal. 4:4](#); [Phil. 2:5,8](#); [1 Cor. 11:3](#))
- Jesus is also prefigured as a “Righteous sprout (branch) of David” to inherit the earth. ([Jer.23:5](#); [Ps.2](#); [110:1-2](#))



The Almighty handing his son a scepter to rule the earth – Psalms 2; 110:1,2.



## Discerning the Secrets of the Kingdom of God



- Jesus spoke of things that would happen before he came back in power and he referred to prophesy in Daniel and Isaiah. ([Matt. 13:11-50](#); [24:1-22](#); [Mark 13](#); [Luke 21:5-36](#))
- Jesus spoke of Daniel as a prophet and incorporated much of Daniel's prophesy in his explanations of what was going to happen around the time of his coming. If Jesus believed Daniel's prophesy to be true, followers of Jesus should too. ([Matthew 24:15](#))
- The term "gentile" means non-Jewish and the term "Gentile times" or "appointed times of the nations" indicates times of Gentile rule over man ([Luke 21:24](#)). The lineage of Jews shows that they are Hebrews as Abraham was.
- Jesus stated to his disciples to look for signs, not dates, to discern when certain things were going to happen. In fact, when Jesus was on earth, and was exiting the temple in Jerusalem, his disciples wanted to show him all the glorious buildings and gifts to God in the area. But Jesus told them that all the glorious buildings around them would be torn



down. Not a stone upon a stone would be left. Later, on the Mount of Olives, his disciples asked him when these things would occur and what would be the sign of his coming including “the end of the age.” Some bible translations use the phrase “end of the world.” However, it is not the end of the world but the end of a time period or “age.” It is the end of the rule of Gentile kings. ([Matt. 24:1-3](#))



- In Matthew 24:32-41, Jesus gave an example of using a sign. He used the example of a fig tree. He mentioned that when one sees the branch growing tender and putting forth leaves, it is a sign that summer is near. Likewise, when someone would discern the signs of the prophets, one would know that the Son of man is near. Discerning the signs is key, not dates.

**Two prophetic accounts in Daniel 2 and 10-12, share the theme that Gentile rule comes to a decisive end and God’s kingdom begins ruling. To understand these two accounts is another key component to unlocking many secrets of the coming of God’s Kingdom.**



## The Crushing of a Statue and the Making of a Mountain – Daniel 2



**In Daniel chapter 2**, Daniel interprets a dream of the king of Babylon. The dream is of an amazing and large statue, made of different elements, all in the shape of a man. This statue represents Gentile kings from the head of gold to the feet made of iron and moist clay. The king of Babylon was represented by the head of gold. Then there is a stone cut out of a mountain, not by man. This stone strikes the feet of the statue and the entire statue is crushed and becomes like chaff being blown away with the wind. The stone that crushed the statue becomes a large mountain and fills the earth.

1. The stone is God's kingdom. It is to rule mankind forever. The time period of Gentile rule is finished. Jesus spoke of this finite time period as "The times of the Gentiles," in

Luke 21:24 (KJV). It is evident that it is referring to the end of an era or as some would say, “a time period.” But it is certainly not the end of the world. – [Psalms 2; 110:1](#); [Daniel 2 \\*Notice verse 44; 17:22-24](#); [Ecc. 1:4](#); “The earth remains forever.”

2. The statue represents Gentile rule, as explained in [Daniel 2:36-43](#).
3. The instance of the crushing of the statue and the setting up of God’s kingdom corresponds with the instance of the handing of the kingdom of the “world” over to the Lord and his Christ. – [Dan.2:28,35,44](#); [Rev.11:15](#).
4. Jesus taught his followers to pray for God’s kingdom to come in [Matthew 6:9-13](#).

## **Jerusalem, Wars, and the Standing up of Michael – Daniel 10-12**

In these chapters, we find two major time periods of warfare between the kings of the North and south. There are hundreds of years between these two major wars, dealing with Jerusalem. The struggles culminate with the end of the king of the North and the beginning of God’s kingdom rule with Michael standing up! The “daughter of womankind” who was thrown down in the first century by Rome and the “king of the south” are one in the same, Jerusalem (Dan. 11:13-17). Many believe that Michael is another name for Jesus.

Rome was given authority to tear down the daughter of womankind and this happened around 66-70AD. – Reference “The Great Revolt” for more information on this first of two major wars between the kings of the North and south that is mentioned in part at [Dan. 11:9-18](#).

Who the king of the North is, concerning the second conquering of Jerusalem mentioned in [Daniel 11:21-31](#), has yet to be realized. We do not know who he is yet (as of October 22, 2023) but he will cause Israel to lose the old city of Jerusalem AND he will occupy it, in some form. Diplomacy occurs but both sides will be lying. He leaves and after a little while, the king of the North goes back for war again but this time he meets his end as Michael stands up in behalf of Daniel’s people. It’s from the point in time when the revealed king of the North conquers Israel AND occupies the old city of Jerusalem when the clock starts counting down to Christ’s return. It happens 1,290 days from that point in time! There will be tribulation for God’s literal and spiritual people. The greatest tribulation is between the 1,290 day and the 1,335<sup>th</sup> day. This is when Yahweh (Jehovah) turns his attention to the nations. They have approximately 45 days to show repentance and submission to Christ else perish. This is Armageddon. It is interesting how Jesus mentioned how he was going to come from the sunrise in power and glory. Compare [Isaiah 41:2; 59:19](#); [Matthew 24:27](#); and [Rev. 16:12](#) with [Dan.11:44-45; 12:1](#). It is at this time that God’s kingdom begins establishing itself. Daniel, Revelation, and the sayings of Christ are harmonious. See other chapters for more details.

Daniel chapters 10 through 12 are continuous. This is shown by the smooth transition from chapter 10 into 11 and the logical transition from chapter 11 into 12.







## The first period of warfare between the king of the North and Jerusalem

- The king of the North who was to desolate Jerusalem in the first century and mentioned in [Daniel 11:15-17](#) was Rome of the first century.
- [Daniel 11:17](#) depicts the destruction of Jerusalem (aka “Daughter of womankind”) in the first century. She no longer continued to be his (The king of the North) because she was ruined (Torn down like a building was completely ruined) and basically no longer existed. She was not occupied by the king of the North in any manner other than to promote her destruction ([Dan.11:16](#)). But she is occupied, by the “placing of the abomination that causes desolation,” in the second struggle between her and the king of the North, as mentioned in verse 31.
- There are many scriptures that denote Jerusalem as “she.” – [Lamentations 1:8,18](#); [Ez. 26:2](#); Dan. 9:25 (NWT 1984); “She will return and actually be rebuilt.”
- [Daniel 11:19,20](#) depicts the king of the North who ruined Jerusalem in the first century (70AD Rome) as “fading away.” He is not conquered in war. This is in stark contrast with the one who takes his place in the future as the king of the North. In the future war, which will be talked about next, the king of the North meets his certain end, as mentioned in verse [45 of Daniel 11](#).

## The second and final period of warfare between the king of the North and Jerusalem

- The “constant [feature]” (aka “continual sacrifice”) mentioned at Daniel 11:31 is referring to Jerusalem where sacrifices were to be held continually as noted at [Numbers 4:16](#); [29:6](#). The phrase “continual sacrifice” is located at [Dan. 8:11-13](#); [11:31](#); [12:11](#) (NIV); [Heb. 10:1](#). Interestingly, the only thing left of the old temple’s destruction is what is called the “wailing wall” or “Western wall” where many people pray. This wall is part of the old foundation of the old temple. Could this be removed by the future king of the North? Time will tell if it has a part in prophesy or not ([Dan.11:31](#)).
- Symbolic phrases in [Daniel 11:31](#) such as; “the sanctuary,” “the fortress,” and “continual sacrifice,” could only be referring to Jerusalem.
- [Daniel 12:1-2](#) denotes the beginning of the rule of God’s kingdom on earth with:
  - The standing (rising) up of “Michael”
  - A time of distress ([Revelation 11:11-19](#))
  - Everyone who is written down in the book, of Daniel’s people, will escape ([Rev. 7:3-4](#)) and Daniel 12:12.
  - A resurrection of people to either indefinitely lasting life or abhorrence. ([Matt. 24:21](#); [Mark 13:19](#)) Compare [John 5:28-29](#) where Jesus talks about a resurrection of people to either life or judgement.

- The king of the North comes to his abrupt end in warfare as mentioned in [Dan. 11:41-44](#). This abrupt end is in stark contrast with the king of the North in the first century where Rome played its part and gradually faded away ([Dan. 11:19-20](#)).
- The event of the king of the North coming to his end as mentioned in [11:41-44](#) marks the beginning of Michael standing up as mentioned in [Dan. 12:1](#). That denotes the beginning of God's kingdom ruling over the earth. Due to the fact that Daniel 12:1 is a continuation of Chapter 11 and "Michael stands up" very well could mean that Jesus (Michael) fights for God's people. This would strike awesome fear in all the nations of the earth. Time will tell. [Revelation 11:11-13](#) shows us where the nations become frightened as God's people are rescued.
- The "disgusting thing that is causing desolation" as mentioned in [Daniel 11:31](#) is the same "creature" that Jesus mentioned in [Matthew 24:15](#); "Therefore, when you catch sight of the disgusting thing that causes desolation, as spoken of through Daniel the prophet, standing in a holy place, (let the reader use discernment,) then let those in Judea begin fleeing to the mountains." Discernment would be needed. This is why Jesus stressed to this disciples to "keep on the watch!" ([Mark 13:37](#)) No one can know the day or the hour but someone can discern the signs, if they are looking and know what to look for!
- **Discerning the signs...**

Jesus mentions in [Matthew 24:15](#) for the reader to have discernment. This primarily refers to the ability to identify the symbolic "abomination that causes desolation" as mentioned in Daniel 11 and the urgency it applies. Prophecy in Daniel is given mostly in signs and that is why no one would know the day or the hour. People who are discerning would look for signs mentioned in Daniel ([Dan. 12:9-10](#)). In our case, it would be the setting up of the "abomination that causes desolation" in the city of Jerusalem. Just as the literal city of Jerusalem, in the first century, was symbolized in [Daniel 11:13-17](#), the literal city will find its role again in [Daniel 11:31](#), in the future.



- The messenger talking to Daniel, in [Dan. 12:7](#), answers Daniel’s question; “What will be the final part of these things?” by stating; “And from the time that the constant [feature] has been removed and there has been a placing of the disgusting thing that is causing desolation, there will be 1,290 days. Happy is the one who is keeping in expectation and who arrives at the 1,335 days!” – [Daniel 11:31](#); [12:8,11-12](#). Some may think that the setting up of the abomination is a statue. They don’t realize that the abomination is the king of the North, just as it was in the first century. The abomination (king of the North) is established in old Jerusalem.

---

**October 22, 2023, comment:**

With the uproar in Israel and the world, people are rightfully anxious and wondering what the future will bring? Is this the final time of struggle between the king of the North (A.K.A. Abomination that causes desolation) and God’s people? We have to wait to see about a couple of identifiers (signs):

This may have already happened: **Israel is invaded when it doesn’t suspect it.** (Daniel 11:21) . This was done by Hamas on October 7, 2023.

**Israel loses through intrigue.** Probably meaning a multitude of schemes (Daniel 11:21, 25)

**With only a few people will the king of the North come to power** (Dan. 11:23). I personally had seen on a news interview (CBS?) with someone close to Hamas that the reason Israel was caught off guard is because the number of high officials in Hamas who knew of the plan could be counted on one hand. This doesn’t mean that Hamas is the king of the North but it’s actions could allow the king to be revealed. Time will tell.

**An overwhelming army is swept away and a high official (“prince of the covenant”) is killed. This would be Israel’s.** (Daniel 11:22)

**The winner occupies the old city of Jerusalem.** (Daniel 11:31)

**The king of the North subdues 3 other kings and acts against God’s people for three and a half times (3.5 years)** (Daniel 7:24-25)

The king of the North is contemptible and who has not been given the honor of royalty (Dan. 11:21)

- 
- Interestingly, the disciples of Jesus basically asked the same question of him that Daniel asked the messenger in [Matthew 24:3](#); [Mark 13:4](#); [Luke 21:7](#)



- Jesus mentions that there will be false Christs that will stumble many, during this time, as recorded in [Matthew 24:4-5](#); [Mark 13:6](#); and [Luke 21:8](#). This occurrence is also prophesied in this time period of 1,290 days mentioned in [Daniel 11:32-35](#) where the allowed purpose of this stumbling is to whiten and cleanse Daniel's people. There is stumbling mentioned in [Daniel 11:14](#), of Daniel's people, but this is not for the same purpose as it is in verses 32-35.
- Jesus mentions that he who endures will be saved in [Matthew 24:13](#); [Mark 13:13](#); and [Luke 21:19](#).
- Jesus mentions the importance to keep on the watch! ([Matthew 24:42](#); [Mark 13:32-37](#); [Luke 21:34-36](#))
- To endure and keep on the watch are emphasized in [Daniel 12:12](#) which literally begins with and reads; "O the happiness of the one keeping in expectation and arrives at the one thousand three hundred and thirty-five days!" This is the 45 days that are after the 1,290 days. [This 45 days includes](#) the raising of the last group of 144,000 brothers of Christ, Christ's angels separating the wicked from the good (the wicked destroyed), the good news heralded by God's angel in midheaven, the resurrection of the good and bad, and more.
- Known famously as, "The Beatitudes." Jesus mentions at [Matthew 5:3-12](#) how the righteous will be blessed:



- **Matthew 5:3-12 (WEB):**  
<sup>3</sup>“Blessed are the poor in spirit,  
for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven. [Isaiah 57:15](#); [66:2](#)  
<sup>4</sup>Blessed are those who mourn,  
for they shall be comforted. [Isaiah 61:2](#); [66:10,13](#)

- <sup>5</sup> Blessed are the gentle,  
for they shall inherit the earth.<sup>1</sup> [Psalm 37:11](#)
- <sup>6</sup> Blessed are those who hunger and thirst for righteousness,  
for they shall be filled.
- <sup>7</sup> Blessed are the merciful,  
for they shall obtain mercy.
- <sup>8</sup> Blessed are the pure in heart,  
for they shall see God.
- <sup>9</sup> Blessed are the peacemakers,  
for they shall be called children of God.
- <sup>10</sup> Blessed are those who have been persecuted for righteousness' sake,  
for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven.
- <sup>11</sup> "Blessed are you when people reproach you, persecute you, and say all kinds of evil against you falsely, for my sake. <sup>12</sup> Rejoice, and be exceedingly glad, for great is your reward in heaven. For that is how they persecuted the prophets who were before you.

When Jesus was talking to his disciples about the "conclusion of the system of things," he was referring, in large part, to two different time periods that the king of the North was to war against Jerusalem. If the first period of war was tangible, why wouldn't the second one be too? Both are dealing with the real physical city. The signs to watch out for relied on the one physical thing that would be able to be identified throughout the ages from Daniel's time to our day – The old city of Jerusalem. Just as the first period of war was real between Jerusalem and the king of the North played by Rome, the second period of war will be real too between Jerusalem and the future role-player of the king of the North.

Jesus showed how God's people would undergo suffering by the king of the North before the arrival of the kingdom in [Matt. 24:9-10](#); [Mark 13:9,12-13](#); [Luke 21:12-17](#). This is shown in [Daniel 11:32-35](#) and [Revelation 11:2](#).

- [Daniel 12:7](#) shows that the suffering and whitening/cleansing would last for 3.5 times (3.5 years).
- Part of the suffering would involve the court system, as brought out by Jesus in [Matthew 24:9](#); [Mark 13:9](#); and [Luke 21:12-15](#)
- The king of the North who is also illustrated as a "horn," in Daniel chapter 7, uses the legal system as one of his tools against God's people. [Daniel 7:25](#) states; "And he will speak even words against the Most High, and he will harass continually the holy ones themselves of the Supreme One. And he will intend to change times and law, and they will be given into his hand for a time, and times and half a time."
  - [Dan. 7:26](#) – The horn (king of the North) has his rulership taken away and he is destroyed. Compare [Dan.11:45](#)
  - Notice in [Dan. 7:25](#), the three and a half times that God's people will be given into the "horn's" (king of the North) hand. This is the same occurrence as in [Daniel 12:7](#), "It will be for an appointed time, appointed times and a half."

- [Daniel 12:1](#) mentions how God's people who are written down in the book are saved, after the destruction of the king of the North, as mentioned in the previous verse. This event is also recorded in [Daniel 7:26-27](#) where the "horn" is judged and destroyed; "And the kingdom and the rulerships and the grandeur of the kingdoms under all the heavens were given to the people who are the holy ones of the Supreme One. Their kingdom is an indefinitely lasting kingdom, and all the rulerships will serve and obey even them."

\*\*\* EXTRA INFORMATION \*\*\*

See [When is Jesus' coming and arrival?](#)

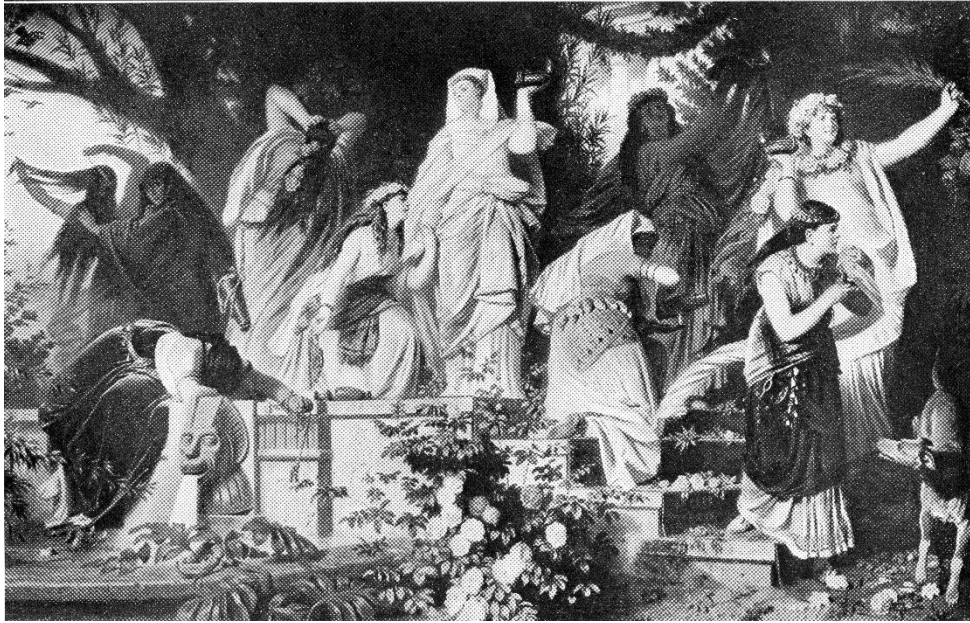
See [Understanding the difference between the coming and the arrival of the kingdom of God](#)

The need for God's people to be cleansed is evident in [Daniel 11:35](#). This lasts for about 3.5 years. God's people who need to be straightened (aka cleansed or whitened) are illustrated as the courtyard of the temple in [Rev. 11:2](#). Here the courtyard is immeasurable, as it is with crooked things. Only after it goes through tribulation (and cleansing) for 3.5 years does it figuratively become straight. Now things can be measured in glory as seen in [Revelation 21:10-21](#). Compare [Zech. 2:1-13](#). Notice that even the broad way was transparent as glass, denoting the purity of their worship.

There are two separate groups of 144,000 for a total of 288,000 mentioned in Revelation. The first group was tried by the first advent of the king of the North (Rome), in the first century. They proved themselves worthy to receive the kingdom. The second group is found to be not worthy. They are handed over to the nations. They undergo a time of tribulation and cleansing/whitening as mentioned in [Daniel 11:35](#).

- In ancient Israel, hundreds of years before Jesus was born, there were 288,000 total who served King David as ministers, as mentioned in 1 Chronicles 27:1 ([AMPC](#)) ([GNT](#)) ([GW](#)) ([WYC](#)). This prefigured the 288,000 serving Christ as his "Bride" in Revelation. These 288,000 who serve Jesus as kings and priests ([Rev. 5:9-10](#)) are comprised of two groups, of 144,000 each and are from two different time periods. Both groups, are persecuted by whoever plays the part of the king of the North for that time period.
- The first group of 144,000 is mentioned in [Revelation 6:9-11](#) and have died faithfully. The second group of 144,000 has yet to be cleansed and is described in [Revelation 7:1-8](#). Interestingly, this fits Jesus illustration known as the "ten virgins" found at [Matthew 25:1-13](#). Half of the group is wise and take extra oil for their lamps. The other group does not. Both groups fall asleep. Then in the middle of the night, there is a cry that the bridegroom is here! They need to go to meet him. The lamps are needed. The wise brought extra oil with them but the foolish are out of oil and must go away to others to buy oil. In the meantime, the bridegroom arrives, and those wise virgins are allowed in. When the foolish arrive at the door, it is too late. They are not allowed in. Jesus reminds his followers to keep on the watch! ([Matthew 24:44](#))





- Toward the end of the 3.5 years of tribulation, the second group is found to be whitened. Together, this beautifully refined group of 288,000 will reign with Christ as kings and priests over the earth. This is symbolized as a marriage between the lamb and this refined group (his wife) in [Revelation 19:6-9](#). This group is made up from every tribe, language, people, and nation. – [Revelation 5:9-10](#); [Isa. 56:1-7](#); [Ez. 47:21-23](#); [Amos 9:11-12](#); [Acts 10:30-48](#); [15:14-18](#); [Rom. 11:25-26](#).
- Additional information can be found at [thetrueway.xyz](http://thetrueway.xyz) . The topic of [Alpha and Omega](#) touches on the time period of before and after God's kingdom comes! See [How God's kingdom will be..](#) and [Christ's Bride...](#) for more detailed information regarding more parallels of how God's incoming kingdom will parallel the ancient kingdom.

**May you be blessed as you sincerely search for the hidden treasures of God's Kingdom!**

## Powerful Women of Revelation and Related Secrets Concerning the “Time of the End.”

Many wonder about the “last days” and what they will mean for mankind. Prophetic books such as Revelation, Isaiah, and Daniel, including the teachings of Jesus, have much to say on this. One of the most helpful keys in unlocking many of the sacred secrets regarding the last days is to understand the roles of the two primary women mentioned in Revelation. Revelation ties many prophecies together and can be very difficult to understand. However, understanding the meanings behind the two primary women can give someone a greater understanding of prophecy, not just in Revelation, and what is truly yet to come. The women are known by many names but primarily they go by, “Babylon The Great” and “New Jerusalem.”

If you have not done so already, this would be a good time to review the main players in this prophetic figurative story. Without a good understanding of the main players, it will be very difficult to understand the following prophetic passages. The main players include [The Almighty](#), [His Son Jesus](#), and the great opposer [Satan](#). There are sections at the end of this article which go over their identities in greater detail.

Basically speaking, each woman represents authority over the entire world of man. This authority is limited and given by the Almighty.

These two women are symbolic and have multiple identities, but their self-chosen roles remain constant. Although they both are supposed to be doing the Almighty’s will, only the latter one does. The first woman exists from the founding of mankind and takes on a selfish and destructive course, misleading the entire world of mankind away from the Almighty. This destructive and evil woman is removed and replaced with the second woman who, unlike the first woman, does God’s will and directs mankind straight to the Almighty, Yahweh. Due to the faithful course of the second woman, grand blessings are bestowed upon mankind including the literal earth.

The first woman is presently known as the kingdom of this world. She seethes in deceptive worship, just as the literal ancient city and world power known as Babylon the Great was. Not only is she known as Babylon the Great but also as The Great Prostitute and the Mother of Abominations, in Revelation. She has not been loyal to God but makes alliances with the kings of the earth to further her dark objectives in misleading the whole of mankind away from the Almighty. The one directing this evil woman is the great adversary to the Almighty, Satan himself. This woman is his primary tool for deceiving the world of mankind.

The key time of the destruction of the first woman and the placing of the second is brought out in prophetic passages in Revelation, Daniel, and Isaiah. Jesus referenced Daniel by name when talking about this critical time period (Matthew 24:15). Certainly, If Jesus put faith in the writings of Daniel, we should too.

1. Revelation 11:15 identifies this time as, “The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Messiah, and he will reign forever and ever.” (NIV)

2. Daniel 2:44 identifies this time as God's kingdom crushing and putting an end to Gentile rule, worldwide. Just as Satan uses religion as a powerful tool, so does the Almighty and his Son. This is when The Great Prostitute (AKA Babylon the Great) is destroyed and Christ and his "Bride Class" making up New Jerusalem begin their priestly rule. Unlike Babylon the Great, the Great Prostitute, the kingdom of God will have no end. It will endure forever.
  
3. Daniel brings out the time periods of tribulation for the literal city of Jerusalem by the hands of the king of the north, in Daniel chapter 11. This should not be confused with the figurative Jerusalem mentioned in Revelation, although the events with the literal city coincide with the beginning of the approximate 3.5-year tribulation. This is the second advent of the king of the north coming against her (Jerusalem). Both events were mentioned by Jesus as he referred to the writings of Daniel. The first advent was Rome (as the abomination for that time) conquering Jerusalem in the first century. This is brought out in Daniel 8 and 11:15-17. The second time along with the identity of the king of the north has yet to be realized. Daniel 11:1-12:12 shows that when the king of the north for our day captures and occupies the old city of Jerusalem, that will be the beginning of the approximate 3.5-year tribulation meant for cleansing God's people. But just as Jesus told his disciples to watch out for the event (sign) of literal Jerusalem being surrounded by the abomination (King of the north in the first century, which was Rome), it was a sign to signify events to watch out for and we need to do the same. For those who heeded Jesus' teaching to watch for the sign, in the first century, they got out of Jerusalem and spared themselves destruction. Daniel indicated how long the tribulation period, for our day, would last in literal days, in Daniel 12. However, there is no way to calculate the beginning date of the tribulation period mentioned in the latter half of Daniel 11. But as mentioned, there is a sign which involves the king of the north against Jerusalem that signifies the start. Unlike the first advent of the king of the north against Jerusalem resulting in destruction, the second results in him occupying it. Though it appears that many die in the struggle. It is critical to look for signs, not dates.

Isaiah 9:1-7 depict the worldwide gloom of the Great Prostitute as being removed by God directing his appointed one to the throne of David, Jesus. Opposers will be humbled.

Isaiah 25 depicts God's kingdom as destroying the shroud that envelopes all nations by bringing death to nothing.

1. Revelation 21:4; When New Jerusalem comes down out of heaven, it brings death to nothing. The Great Prostitute, Babylon the Great has been destroyed by this point in time, by the nations. God put it in their hearts to do this.
  
2. Daniel 12:1-2. Right after the destruction of the king of the north, Michael stands up and death is brought to nothing with the resurrection of the righteous and unrighteous.
  
3. In John 5:28-29, Jesus prophesied that the time was coming for the good and bad to be brought back to life. Death is done away with. It is emptied.

The destruction of Babylon the Great is thorough.

1. Isaiah 25:2 also depicts a fortified city being brought to ruin, to never again be rebuilt. This destruction brings respect and reverence from strong nations and is before blessings are bestowed for those who put their faith in God.
2. Revelation 17:15-18; 18:8-10, 21-24 depict a swift and thorough destruction of Babylon the Great. No light will ever come from her. She had misled all the nations. In contrast, light will continually emit from New Jerusalem, 24 hours a day. Nothing defiling will enter or leave. Those ruling as kings and priests with Christ will also shine like the stars as they lead people to righteousness. (Daniel 12:3, Rev. 5:9,10; 18:23; 20:4,5; 21:22-27; 22:5)
3. God puts it into the hearts of man to destroy Babylon the great. This happens over a 40-day period of time. Just like Nineva of old, they were told by Jonah that they only had 40 days to meet their destruction. But they repented and so were spared. So, the nations are told of the incoming kingdom of God, but they have to show repentance else be destroyed (Mal.4:5-6). The nations show repentance by destroying Babylon the Great, the Great Prostitute (false religion) which is the primary tool that Satan uses to mislead mankind. Thus, they spare destruction. Although, passages show many still oppose God's incoming kingdom to their own destruction.
  1. This time period is shown in Daniel 12:11-12 and Revelation 11:11-13; 14:6,7. This happens immediately before the kingdom of the world becomes the kingdom of "our Lord and his Messiah."
  2. Just as false religion, AKA Babylon the Great in Revelation, does not have a literal capital city, true religion, AKA New Jerusalem in Revelation, will most likely not. Compare in Daniel 2:35 where God's kingdom becomes a large mountain and fills the earth. This symbolizes the complete worldwide rulership of God's kingdom, not a literal city.
  3. Interestingly, in Revelation 11:1-2, much of the figurative Holy City of Jerusalem does not measure up and is given to the nations. It is not to be measured. This is for a straightening / cleansing work with righteousness in view as mentioned in Daniel 11:35. After the approximate 3.5 years of tribulation, the city is beautifully righteous. It has been straightened / cleansed. It is now able to be completely measured (Rev.21:15-21). This is in contrast with the figurative Babylon the Great, the Great Prostitute, in Revelation. God puts it into the hearts of people to utterly destroy her, never to return. (Rev.18:21-24)

Just as Satan's "Great Prostitute, Babylon the Great" does not have a literal city on earth, most likely, New Jerusalem will not either. In fact, Revelation 21:1-4 depicts New Jerusalem coming down out of heaven. They are both worldwide kingdoms, just at different times.

**The identities and time period of Babylon the Great, the Great Prostitute:**

Babylon the Great is not a literal city but it is the worldwide kingdom of false worship. Its fruit is a worldwide gloom that will only be removed with God's incoming kingdom. This gloom not only includes false teachings but death which we inherited from Adam. This "gloom" of falsehood is to be cleansed from chosen ones during the approximate 3.5-year tribulation, just before the destruction of the figurative Babylon the Great (Daniel 11:35; Mal. 3:1; 4:5-6; Isaiah 9:1-2; 25:1-9).

The worldwide kingdom of false worship is used by Satan to deceive mankind into working against the Almighty, Jehovah. How true are the words of Jesus at John 8:44 that Satan is a man-slayer. This started from the successful tempting of Adam and Eve into sinning against God. This would also be the beginning of the Babylon the Great mentioned in Revelation. This is all part of Satan's efforts to steer mankind away from the Almighty.

### **The identities and time period of New Jerusalem, the Bride of Christ:**

New Jerusalem, in Revelation, is not a literal city but the worldwide kingdom of pure worship. God's kingdom. Its fruitage is abundant blessings for mankind in righteousness including the earth.

Its light of righteousness will always shine, 24 hours a day. The truth will never be shrouded again – Revelation 21.

It is used by the Messiah (Jesus), under the direction of his father the Almighty, to lead people to the Almighty with worldwide blessings both literal and spiritual. Death is also done away with.

New Jerusalem rule exists from the moment that "The kingdom of the world becomes the kingdom of our Lord and his Christ." – Rev. 11:15

The Bride of Christ mentioned in Revelation is comprised of 288,000 individuals from all nations and tongues who have been tested fully and have straightened their worship to God. These ones will rule with Christ as kings and priests. See the section under [The Son of the Almighty](#) and [How God's kingdom...](#) for more detailed information.

Some incorrectly believe that Jerusalem is the Babylon the Great mentioned in Revelation, due to similar phrases found at Revelation 17:6 and 18:24 where it states that this woman, Babylon the Great, is drunk with the blood of saints and witnesses of Jesus. This is then compared with Jesus' statement concerning Jerusalem, when he was here on earth in the first century, that she (Jerusalem) had killed prophets and those who were sent to her (Luke 13:34; Matthew 23:37). However, in Revelation 17:18; 18:10, Babylon the Great is mentioned as the "Great City" that rules over the kings of the earth. Literal Jerusalem does not. Revelation 17:15 also describes the figurative Babylon the Great as sitting on the mighty Euphrates river. The ancient literal city of Babylon did, when it was a world power. But as described in verse 15, the river represents peoples, multitudes, and languages. The literal city of Jerusalem of today does not. Also, in Revelation 17:2, this figurative Babylon the Great has corrupted the kings of the earth and all the inhabitants have been made drunk by her actions. Literal Jerusalem does not hold sway to all the kings or inhabitants of the earth. Finally, in Revelation 17:18; 18:23-24, it mentions Babylon the Great as ruling over the kings of the earth, guilty of all those slaughtered on the earth, and guilty

of deceiving all nations by her sorcery. So, it is rather easy to see how the literal city of Jerusalem could not be the figurative city of Babylon the Great mentioned in Revelation. Only the empire of false religion fits this description, leading mankind away from the Almighty in gloom.



## The “Universal Issue” and Why Did God Kill in the Past?

God created and it was good. Satan, before he sinned, was assigned as a guardian cherub and was very beautiful in appearance. For his own greedy reasons, Satan wants man to die and desires to prove that humankind is irredeemable and not worth saving. Satan wants others to worship him, to their own detriment. However, because of Jehovah’s and Jesus’ love for humankind, they set up a redemption process for imperfect mankind. Not only a redemption process but it includes providing an earth where the righteous do not have to suffer at the hands of the wicked. This would take time ([Hebrews 2:14-15](#) / [John 12:31](#)) – Especially with the involvement of ill-intended spirit creatures and humans. This redemption process would need to be protected for the future of mankind.

Hebrews 2:14-15 (WEB):

<sup>14</sup> Since then the children have shared in flesh and blood, he also himself in the same way partook of the same, that through death he might bring to nothing him who had the power of death, that is, the devil, <sup>15</sup> and might deliver all of them who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage.

John 12:31 (WEB):

is the judgment of this world. Now the prince of this world will be cast out.

Jehovah’s promised works will be primarily sanctified by his Son and his kingdom arrangement ([2 Corinthians 1:19-20](#)). The conclusion of this process will allow unobstructed universal good for all remaining creatures made in God’s image. Jehovah’s works will be sanctified! **Can you imagine unobstructed good?**

*The universal issue, primarily being, the working out of God’s will. God is love and will not tolerate the wicked to oppress the righteous forever.*

### **How long should the creator allow the wicked to harm the good people?**

God is shown that he does not want anyone to die but wants the wicked to turn around. So what is God to do if a wicked person does not want to turn around and they harm a good person? What do humans do today to people who are considered a danger to society? They get locked up and in some areas of the world are killed. Sometimes attempts to rehabilitate them work and sometimes they don’t.

Some people say that capital punishment is bad and that it is wrong to kill. It is true that God had commanded in the 10 commandments that one should not kill. Jesus also stated that one should love their enemy. Jesus also stated that God is love. So, **why did God kill in the past?** I believe to start of answering this question that it is good to look a time that God refrained from killing.

**Nineveh.** In the book of Jonah we see that Jonah is commissioned to go to Nineveh and tell them that they will be overthrown in 40 days. Nineveh is full of violence and is huge. Jonah eventually proclaims this as he is walking through the huge city – It takes him a full day to walk through it. What happens? They all repent including the king! They do not want to perish. God sees that they turned back from their bad way and spares them! [Jonah 3](#)

This is a good example of God's mercy. In the future, when God's kingdom is established on earth, billions of people will be given the opportunity to repent and submit. Even those who have died in the past will be brought back to life to have the opportunity to choose which course to follow. Death of a human is not permanent with God as it is with humans. God can bring back the dead and give them another chance! See [Psalms 2](#), [Daniel 7:12](#); [12:2](#); [John 5:28-29](#); [Revelation 21:1-4](#); [Ezekiel 33:11](#)

**Noah's day.** [Genesis 6-8](#)

This is certainly an interesting passage and open to many different interpretations.

Offspring of materialized angels who made bodies for themselves were born from women. These were called by some as “Nephilim” or also known as “fellers of men.” Wickedness along with violence had become prevalent. Should God allow the few righteous that were left to perish at the hands of wicked ones? No. He provided a way for Noah and his family to escape!

Some people speculate that if the Nephilim were allowed to continue to grow in number, it may have resulted in the extinction of humans or in the least, the human race would be enslaved to them. Whether this is true or not is not critical but it does make one wonder. But it is true that they were “fellers of men!”

Keep in mind that only disobedient angels came to earth and had children from women. To disobey, to leave their assigned places is an action based upon greed. It was not loving their God, Yahweh. No wonder why the world was filled with violence! They were not here to help mankind but to use mankind for their own selfish ambitions.

**Sodom and Gomorrah.** [Genesis 18-19](#).

Abraham's nephew Lot and his wife and Lot's two daughters lived here. Abraham was told that God was going to bring destruction on the area due to the degree of wickedness. Abraham “negotiated” with God that perhaps it may not be destroyed even if 10 righteous people are found. It was agreed. Apparently, there were not even 10 righteous ones because it was destroyed. However, God saw to it that righteous Lot and his daughters escaped the destruction.

In the future, the full number will need to be filled regarding those chosen ones to rule with Christ. It is critical. The principle is set here. As long as the number is filled (144,000 from our time period) and they have straightened their worship, we will not have to worry about the earth (All flesh) being destroyed. [Malachi 4:5-6](#); . Sounds harsh but it is true. I have no doubt that it will be filled. See [Revelation 6:9-11](#).

Malachi 4:5-6 (NIV):

<sup>5</sup>“See, I will send the prophet Elijah to you before that great and dreadful day of the Lord comes. <sup>6</sup>He will turn the hearts of the parents to their children, and the hearts of the children to their parents; or else I will come and strike the land with total destruction.”

### **Israel conquering nations in the “Promised Land.” [Deuteronomy 6 – 7](#)**

There are a couple of reasons that Jehovah told them to annihilate these people. One is that they worshiped false Gods. A widespread form included the sacrificing children to false Gods! Israel was to destroy all false worship. Another reason is that Jehovah promised Abraham the land. Of course, the current residents could have fled and lived but for the most part that we know, they did not.

This sets a pattern that Jehovah does not tolerate false worship. In the future, false worship will not be tolerated when God’s kingdom arrives. It will be destroyed along with all who do not submit to his Son. The kingdom will bless mankind with no more sickness, no more death from old age, everyone having a home that can’t be taken away, an abundance of food and water, and a righteous judicial system. What kind of person would not want that?

#### **Patterns are set:**

Jehovah had to protect his redemption process for mankind since the fall of man in the Garden of Eden. This includes his promise to Abraham that all the nations of the world would be blessed because he listened to Jehovah and the redeeming value of his son’s (Jesus) sacrifice for mankind along with the establishment of God’s kingdom over the entire earth.

We can see a pattern that God does not tolerate false worship or violence as in the days of Noah. This pattern protects righteous worship and people from extermination or further wicked oppression.

[2 Peter 2:4-13](#) shows us that God has reserved ones for “the day of judgment” such as the ancient world of Noah’s day and Sodom and Gomorrah. God will bring these ones back to life, to be given another chance to turn around.

[2 Peter 3:9](#) Shows us that God wants everyone to turn around.

2 Peter 3:9(WEB):

<sup>9</sup>The Lord is not slow concerning his promise, as some count slowness; but he is patient with us, not wishing that anyone should perish, but that all should come to repentance.

Jesus talked about the resurrection of the righteous and unrighteous in [John 5:28-29](#). [Daniel 12:2](#) also speaks of this happening when God’s kingdom is set up here on earth.

Some people believe that humans must be perfect to please God or to be tested as to their integrity to God. However, Job gives us a lot to think about:

**Job was an Oriental.** He was considered by God to be blameless, upright, and a servant of God. He had a wife and children and was the greatest of the Orientals. In a heavenly assembly, before God, Satan accused Job of only serving God because of what he had. So, God allowed Satan to test Job. Satan took basically everything he owned including his good health and children! Job's wife told Job to curse God and die! But he did not. His integrity remained. Satan failed to prove his thought that the flesh was too weak and that the imperfect man Job would fail – But Job did not and was rewarded greatly! [Job 1,2,42](#)

**This goes to show that even imperfect people can please God!**

This is in stark contrast with the perfect man and woman Adam and Eve. Eve and Job's wife were deceived into sinning, but Adam and Job were not. Eve tempted Adam to sin against God by eating the forbidden fruit just as Job's wife tempted Job to curse God and die! The difference being, Adam listened to his wife, but Job did not! And both husbands knew what they were doing! [Genesis 2:7-3:24](#)

This had to be huge “slap in the face” to Satan! He was able to get perfect humans to sin against God, but this imperfect man Job remained faithful although he lost basically everything including his health!

This should give us comfort to realize that no matter our circumstances or race, we can please God!

## How Did Ones View Jesus When He Was on Earth?

People of all sorts had all kinds of views of Jesus when he was on earth. Some views were true, some were not. It should be of no surprise if Christ's followers today are sometimes viewed wrongly.

### [Matthew 11:19](#)

“The Son of man did come eating and drinking, still people say, ‘Look! A man gluttonous and given to drinking wine, a friend of tax collectors and sinners.’ “

### [Matthew 12:23](#)

“May this not perhaps be the Son of David?”

### [Matthew 16:13-17\(WEB\)](#)

<sup>13</sup> Now when Jesus came into the parts of Caesarea Philippi, he asked his disciples, saying, “Who do men say that I, the Son of Man, am?”

<sup>14</sup> They said, “Some say John the Baptizer, some, Elijah, and others, Jeremiah or one of the prophets.”

<sup>15</sup> He said to them, “But who do you say that I am?”

<sup>16</sup> Simon Peter answered, “You are the Christ, the Son of the living God.”

<sup>17</sup> Jesus answered him, “Blessed are you, Simon Bar Jonah, for flesh and blood has not revealed this to you, but my Father who is in heaven.

### [Matthew 21:9-11\(WEB\)](#)

<sup>9</sup> The multitudes who went in front of him, and those who followed, kept shouting, “Hosanna<sup>[a]</sup> to the son of David! Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord! Hosanna in the highest!” [Psalm 118:26](#)

<sup>10</sup> When he had come into Jerusalem, all the city was stirred up, saying, “Who is this?”

<sup>11</sup> The multitudes said, “This is the prophet, Jesus, from Nazareth of Galilee.”

[Mark 3:21](#) Some of Jesus' relatives thought that “He has gone out of his mind!”

[Mark 3:22](#) Others claimed that he expelled demons by means of the ruler of the demons.

[Mark 5:7\(WEB\)](#): A demon identifies Jesus: Compare [Matthew 8:29](#)

<sup>7</sup> and crying out with a loud voice, he said, “What have I to do with you, Jesus, you Son of the Most High God? I adjure you by God, don't torment me.”

[Mark 11:7-10\(WEB\)](#):

<sup>7</sup> They brought the young donkey to Jesus, and threw their garments on it, and Jesus sat on it. <sup>8</sup> Many spread their garments on the way, and others were cutting down branches from the trees, and spreading them on the road. <sup>9</sup> Those who went in front, and those who followed, cried out, “Hosanna!<sup>[a]</sup> Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord! [Psalm 118:25-26](#) <sup>10</sup> Blessed is the kingdom of our father David that is coming in the name of the Lord! Hosanna in the highest!”

#### **Luke 4:34, 41(WEB):**

<sup>34</sup> saying, “Ah! what have we to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth? Have you come to destroy us? I know who you are: the Holy One of God!”

<sup>41</sup> Demons also came out of many, crying out, and saying, “You are the Christ, the Son of God!” Rebuking them, he didn’t allow them to speak, because they knew that he was the Christ.

#### **John 1:29-34** Referring to John the Baptist:

“The next day he beheld Jesus coming toward him, and he said: ‘See, the Lamb of God that takes away the sin of the world!’ ... (34) ...and I have borne witness that this one is the Son of God.”

#### **John 1:41(WEB):**

<sup>41</sup> He first found his own brother, Simon, and said to him, “We have found the Messiah!” (which is, being interpreted, Christ<sup>[a]</sup>).

#### **John 1:49(WEB):**

<sup>49</sup> Nathanael answered him, “Rabbi, you are the Son of God! You are King of Israel!”

#### **John 3:1-2(WEB):**

<sup>3</sup> Now there was a man of the Pharisees named Nicodemus, a ruler of the Jews. <sup>2</sup> The same came to him by night, and said to him, “Rabbi, we know that you are a teacher come from God, for no one can do these signs that you do, unless God is with him.”

#### **John 3:27-36(WEB):** John the Baptist mentions:

<sup>27</sup> John answered, “A man can receive nothing unless it has been given him from heaven. <sup>28</sup> You yourselves testify that I said, ‘I am not the Christ,’ but, ‘I have been sent before him.’ <sup>29</sup> He who has the bride is the bridegroom; but the friend of the bridegroom, who stands and hears him, rejoices greatly because of the bridegroom’s voice. This, my joy, therefore is made full. <sup>30</sup> He must increase, but I must decrease. <sup>31</sup> He who comes from above is above all. He who is from the earth belongs to the earth and speaks of the earth. He who comes from heaven is above all. <sup>32</sup> What he has seen and heard, of that he testifies; and no one receives his witness. <sup>33</sup> He who has received his witness has set his seal to this, that God is true. <sup>34</sup> For he whom God has sent speaks the words of God; for God gives the Spirit without measure. <sup>35</sup> The Father loves the Son, and has given all



things into his hand. <sup>36</sup> One who believes in the Son has eternal life, but one who disobeys the Son won't see life, but the wrath of God remains on him."

#### **John 4:19,25-26(WEB):**

<sup>19</sup> The woman said to him, "Sir, I perceive that you are a prophet.

<sup>25</sup> The woman said to him, "I know that Messiah comes, he who is called Christ. When he has come, he will declare to us all things."

<sup>26</sup> Jesus said to her, "I am he, the one who speaks to you."

#### **John 4:42(WEB):**

<sup>42</sup> They said to the woman, "Now we believe, not because of your speaking; for we have heard for ourselves, and know that this is indeed the Christ, the Savior of the world."

#### **John 5:18(WEB):**

<sup>18</sup> For this cause therefore the Jews sought all the more to kill him, because he not only broke the Sabbath, but also called God his own Father, making himself equal with God.

It is good to notice how Jesus answers, in the following verses – Although this is a statement from Jesus (below), it is certain that others heard it.

#### **John 5:19-30(WEB):**

<sup>19</sup> Jesus therefore answered them, "Most certainly, I tell you, the Son can do nothing of himself, but what he sees the Father doing. For whatever things he does, these the Son also does likewise. <sup>20</sup> For the Father has affection for the Son, and shows him all things that he himself does. He will show him greater works than these, that you may marvel. <sup>21</sup> For as the Father raises the dead and gives them life, even so the Son also gives life to whom he desires. <sup>22</sup> For the Father judges no one, but he has given all judgment to the Son, <sup>23</sup> that all may honor the Son, even as they honor the Father. He who doesn't honor the Son doesn't honor the Father who sent him.

<sup>24</sup> "Most certainly I tell you, he who hears my word and believes him who sent me has eternal life, and doesn't come into judgment, but has passed out of death into life. <sup>25</sup> Most certainly I tell you, the hour comes, and now is, when the dead will hear the Son of God's voice; and those who hear will live. <sup>26</sup> For as the Father has life in himself, even so he gave to the Son also to have life in himself. <sup>27</sup> He also gave him authority to execute judgment, because he is a son of man. <sup>28</sup> Don't marvel at this, for the hour comes in which all who are in the tombs will hear his voice, <sup>29</sup> and will come out; those who have done good, to the resurrection of life; and those who have done evil, to the resurrection of judgment. <sup>30</sup> I can of myself do nothing. As I hear, I judge, and my judgment is righteous; because I don't seek my own will, but the will of my Father who sent me.

#### **John 7:1**

"The Jews were seeking to kill him."

### John 7:12

“And there was a lot of subdued talk about him among the crowds. Some would say: ‘He is a good man.’ Others would say: ‘He is not, but he misleads the crowd.’ “

### John 7:15-16, 20 (WEB):

<sup>15</sup> The Jews therefore marveled, saying, “How does this man know letters, having never been educated?”

<sup>16</sup> Jesus therefore answered them, “My teaching is not mine, but his who sent me.

<sup>20</sup> The multitude answered, “You have a demon! Who seeks to kill you?”

**The examples in John 7** show us how although Jesus was in their midst, many did not seek truth but sought out their own righteousness or understanding. The religious leaders and their devout followers felt that Jesus and his followers were in the wrong. But they based that upon their own understanding and did not desire to check the scriptures carefully or to even open their eyes to see what was happening right in front of them! Today, we hear different viewpoints, but we should be determined to put our complete trust in Yahweh and his scriptures – Not in man’s thoughts or books.

### Proverbs 3:5-6 (WEB):

<sup>5</sup> Trust in Yahweh with all your heart,  
and don’t lean on your own understanding.

<sup>6</sup> In all your ways acknowledge him,  
and he will make your paths straight.

### John 16:27-28 (WEB):

<sup>27</sup> for the Father himself loves you, because you have loved me, and have believed that I came from God. <sup>28</sup> I came from the Father and have come into the world. Again, I leave the world, and go to the Father.”

### John 17:18-21 (WEB):

<sup>18</sup> As you sent me into the world, even so I have sent them into the world. <sup>19</sup> For their sakes I sanctify myself, that they themselves also may be sanctified in truth. <sup>20</sup> Not for these only do I pray, but for those also who will believe in me through their word, <sup>21</sup> that they may all be one; even as you, Father, are in me, and I in you, that they also may be one in us; that the world may believe that you sent me.

## The Sacrifice of Christ (Yeshua/Jesus)

**A principal purpose of this paper is to help others to better understand why this sacrifice was needed and how it is a loving provision for humankind.**

See also [Who is the Son of the Almighty?](#)

The primary purposes for a sacrifice (Offering) are to please Yahweh and atone for sins.

Sacrifices have been recorded since the time of Cain and his brother Abel, sons of Adam and Eve. The account shows that some sacrifices are acceptable to Yahweh, and some aren't. Yahweh looked favorably upon Abel's sacrifice but not on Cain's. Cain allowed jealousy to drive him to kill Abel, over this.

[Genesis 4:3-5, 8 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>3</sup> As time passed, Cain brought an offering to Yahweh from the fruit of the ground. <sup>4</sup> Abel also brought some of the firstborn of his flock and of its fat. Yahweh respected Abel and his offering, <sup>5</sup> but he didn't respect Cain and his offering. Cain was very angry, and the expression on his face fell.

<sup>8</sup> Cain said to Abel, his brother, "Let's go into the field." While they were in the field, Cain rose up against Abel, his brother, and killed him.

Before the Mosaic Law was established, Yahweh asked Abraham to sacrifice his son Isaac. Abraham, a great man of faith, wondered why. He also supposed that Yahweh could raise his son from the dead. This was a great test of his faith in obedience, and he was about to follow through but at the last second Abraham was stopped and was given a ram to sacrifice in Isaac's place! A solemn covenant was established between God and Abraham, resulting in the prospect for future blessings for his offspring and all mankind. This act of sacrifice prefigured Yahweh sending forth his son to die as a righteous (fully legal or perfectly legal) sacrifice for sinful mankind. The word "righteous" means legally declared by law. The word "sinful" word means imperfect flesh, inherited from Adam. It can also mean breaking a law from Yahweh, as Adam did. A legal system from Yahweh had to be created to distinguish sin from sinless or "perfect." That is where the Mosaic Law comes into play. It was given to God's people. But no one could perfectly follow it. That is, until Christ came.

Principle things happened when Christ died.

He proved himself perfect in following the Law until death. This legally declared him righteous before God.

He nailed his imperfect flesh inherited from Adam to the stake, and died. He thus provided a non-revocable offering of perfect obedience to Yahweh, the Father.

Once the Mosaic Law was established by God toward his people, this set a legal precedent for sacrifices. This didn't exist before.

The establishment of the Law brought to light more transgressions, but it offered hope for God's people and the world of mankind.

Adam brought death upon himself and his offspring by disobeying God. When he ignored God's warning to not eat of the tree of knowledge of good and bad, he forfeited everlasting life along with the ability for himself or his descendants to eat of the tree of life. The tree of life was not forbidden for him to eat, until he sinned against God.

[Genesis 3 \(WEB\):](#)

Now the serpent was more subtle than any animal of the field which Yahweh God had made. He said to the woman, "Has God really said, 'You shall not eat of any tree of the garden'?"

<sup>2</sup> The woman said to the serpent, "We may eat fruit from the trees of the garden, <sup>3</sup> but not the fruit of the tree which is in the middle of the garden. God has said, 'You shall not eat of it. You shall not touch it, lest you die.'"

<sup>4</sup> The serpent said to the woman, "You won't really die, <sup>5</sup> for God knows that in the day you eat it, your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil."

<sup>6</sup> When the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was to be desired to make one wise, she took some of its fruit, and ate. Then she gave some to her husband with her, and he ate it, too. <sup>7</sup> Their eyes were opened, and they both knew that they were naked. They sewed fig leaves together, and made coverings for themselves. <sup>8</sup> They heard Yahweh God's voice walking in the garden in the cool of the day, and the man and his wife hid themselves from the presence of Yahweh God among the trees of the garden.

<sup>9</sup> Yahweh God called to the man, and said to him, "Where are you?"

<sup>10</sup> The man said, "I heard your voice in the garden, and I was afraid, because I was naked; so I hid myself."

<sup>11</sup> God said, "Who told you that you were naked? Have you eaten from the tree that I commanded you not to eat from?"

<sup>12</sup> The man said, "The woman whom you gave to be with me, she gave me fruit from the tree, and I ate it."

<sup>13</sup> Yahweh God said to the woman, "What have you done?"

The woman said, "The serpent deceived me, and I ate."

<sup>14</sup> Yahweh God said to the serpent,

“Because you have done this,  
you are cursed above all livestock,  
and above every animal of the field.

You shall go on your belly  
and you shall eat dust all the days of your life.

<sup>15</sup> I will put hostility between you and the woman,  
and between your offspring and her offspring.

He will bruise your head,  
and you will bruise his heel.”

<sup>16</sup> To the woman he said,

“I will greatly multiply your pain in childbirth.  
You will bear children in pain.

Your desire will be for your husband,  
and he will rule over you.”

<sup>17</sup> To Adam he said,

“Because you have listened to your wife’s voice,  
and have eaten from the tree,  
about which I commanded you, saying, ‘You shall not eat of it,’  
the ground is cursed for your sake.

You will eat from it with much labor all the days of your life.

<sup>18</sup> It will yield thorns and thistles to you;  
and you will eat the herb of the field.

<sup>19</sup> You will eat bread by the sweat of your face until you return to the ground,  
for you were taken out of it.

For you are dust,  
and you shall return to dust.”

<sup>20</sup> The man called his wife Eve because she would be the mother of all the living. <sup>21</sup> Yahweh God made garments of animal skins for Adam and for his wife, and clothed them.

<sup>22</sup> Yahweh God said, “Behold, the man has become like one of us, knowing good and evil. Now, lest he reach out his hand, and also take of the tree of life, and eat, and live forever—” <sup>23</sup> Therefore Yahweh God sent him out from the garden of Eden, to till the ground from which he was taken. <sup>24</sup> So he drove out the man; and he placed cherubim at the east of the garden of Eden, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to guard the way to the tree of life.

The Mosaic Law established a legal way to prove one’s obedience to God. However, no one was able to prove himself perfectly righteous by the Law. Because of this, sacrifices were needed, that is, until Christ died. Up until Christ’s death, sacrifices had to be made for transgressions against the Law, from the High Priest to the common folk. But now, Christ proved himself

righteous according to the Law. Christ had no need for sacrifice. He fulfilled the law perfectly. He proved his obedience, in stark contrast to Adam. Adam brought forth death to mankind through disobedience. Christ brought forth the opportunity of everlasting life to mankind through obedience. In this way, Christ conquered death, for mankind. This is how Yeshua (Christ) is referred to as the “last Adam.” Christ was able to open the way to undo the damage to mankind brought forth from Adam’s act of disobedience, by his perfect act of obedience.

Some would argue that Christ had to be perfect in flesh to find Yahweh’s favor. That is not true, imperfect Job did. Job set the precedent that someone with imperfect flesh could bring Yahweh’s favor through obedience. Adam was perfect in flesh. His wife urged him to disobey God and he listened, condemning mankind. In contrast, Job was imperfect in flesh, had undergone many sufferings, and had his wife urge him to curse God and die. But Job didn’t. Job set the precedent that even an imperfect person could remain loyal to God and have his favor.

**In Christ’s case, the matter was not of someone being physically perfect but rather if someone could be found righteous by God’s Mosaic Law – To be declared righteous by law. Being perfect or imperfect in flesh had nothing to do with it – It was being obedient or disobedient. That was key.**

To argue the point: How could Christ be physically perfect if his human parents were imperfect? Or, if you believe that Joseph had no part of Yeshua’s body, how could Yeshua be perfect with an imperfect mother? Of course, someone could say that God could make him perfect in flesh, but the Law didn’t require that. It is entirely possible and most probable that the heavenly son of Yahweh became a part of the fleshly imperfect child of Joseph and Mary, inheriting the Davidic lineage to be king and having the ability to nail imperfect flesh to the stake.

This is how it has been written:

That if he sinned, God would correct him. There are different types of sin. But sinning against the Law was not meant here.

#### [Hebrews 2:14-18 \(NIV\):](#)

<sup>14</sup> Since the children have flesh and blood, he too shared in their humanity so that by his death he might break the power of him who holds the power of death—that is, the devil—<sup>15</sup> and free those who all their lives were held in slavery by their fear of death. <sup>16</sup> For surely it is not angels he helps, but Abraham’s descendants. <sup>17</sup> **For this reason he had to be made like them, fully human in every way,** in order that he might become a merciful and faithful high priest in service to God, and that he might make atonement for the sins of the people. <sup>18</sup> Because he himself suffered when he was tempted, he is able to help those who are being tempted.

Once resurrected, Christ was to become a priest similar to the ancient priest of Yahweh, Melchizedek. Melchizedek was a righteous king and priest in Abraham’s time.

Interestingly, Christ is shown to be a sacrificial lamb in heaven. He’s able to use the value of his obedience to death, his sacrificial death, to atone for the sins of mankind, to redeem mankind.



There's good reason that John the baptizer called Yeshua "the Lamb of God to take away the sins of the world!" Also, just as the blood of the lamb on the door posts protected the firstborn of God's people by causing the angel of death to pass over (Act known as Passover) the homes of the obedient, the blood of God's lamb, Christ, is present to deliver his people from death.

Also, God's kingdom is shown to eliminate the death inherited from Adam. The leaves of trees of life are shown to be the curing of nations. Nations are shown to whiten their robes, concerning their worship to Yahweh and his Son who sits on his throne who acts as king and priest, with full authority.

## When is Jesus coming and arrival?

This page goes into details concerning the signs that Yeshua (Jesus) and Daniel mention.

The religious leaders of Jesus' day asked him when the kingdom of God would come (Luke 17:20). For details on this, please visit the [What happens with Jesus' coming, arrival, and the end of the age? page](#).

This is a huge question, but it is not impossible to answer. Although it is not possible to know the exact day or hour because of the way the book of Daniel is worded, one can come close with the information we have today. Simply put, the presented prophetic timelines are based upon multiple prophesies. A major key is to understand the book of Daniel. From there, everything fits together nicely. But do not take my word for it. Test these out by using scripture!

I highly recommend to everyone reading this to go over and study Daniel chapters 7 through 12. Once someone understands Daniel, just about everything falls into place.

The basic answer is given first. Then it is elaborated on with details and supporting evidence.

### Basic answer:

Jesus stated to his followers that when they would "see" these different things happening, they would know the time that they would be living in. As explained below, the earliest confirmation that we are in the end period of this system of things just before Jesus begins ruling on earth will be the combination of action of the "king of the north" causing Israel to lose the old city of Jerusalem and his occupying it. Or as we know it today "Old Jerusalem." Compare [Luke 21:29-32](#) and [Daniel 11:31 comments](#)

When the Nation of Israel loses the old city of Jerusalem and the "conqueror" occupies it, then we know that we are in an approximate 3.5-year period of tribulation – Especially for "God's people." It is at the end of this period when Jesus begins his rule in power here on Earth.

It is important to note that when Israel does lose old Jerusalem, it does not mean that the time period starts on that day. It can start a bit before or after that too. My best guess is that we would be a month into the time period by the time that Israel loses old Jerusalem. But it is **a guess** based upon probabilities and not given facts which I explain below. I also believe that is one reason why Jesus said that no one would know the day or the hour. The exact day or hour can't be positively deduced from the available scriptures. But we have the signs to look for to identify the time period. It is just as Jesus told his disciples to be aware of the sign of Jerusalem being surrounded in the first century – They had a sign to look for **not a date**. It is the same for our day, we need to know the sign to look for, not a date.

In the first century, the followers of Christ were not in Jerusalem when it was destroyed because they would have listened to him and would have already fled. Just because this happened to Jerusalem and those in her did not mean that their worship was acceptable to God. Same for our day. For Israel to lose the old city of Jerusalem today, it does not necessarily have to happen with

anyone dying. It could be done diplomatically. Or it can be done with (or include) a military struggle which can mean many deaths. ([Daniel 11:21 – 12:13](#))

This event can happen this year or in 25 years, who knows? But according to the scriptures in Daniel, it will happen. When it does, “Jesus will come shortly!”

### **Answer with details:**

The end of the book of Daniel talks about when Jesus ([Michael](#)) stands up. The righteous and wicked will be brought back to life. (**Daniel 12:1,2**)

**Daniel 11:21-45** speaks of struggles between the king of the north and the king of the south. But the king of the north sees his end when he is defeated by the king “out of the sun-rising and out of the north.” (**Daniel 11:44,45**) Could this be Jesus and/or another king? Only time will tell. But it would be fitting for Jesus to end the king of the north. It would show his power. Remember what Jesus said about the Son coming as lightning flashing from the East to the West with great power, upon his return. [Matthew 24:27-31](#). In any case, he does return suddenly and at the end of the king of the North.

The king of the north is described as “Over everyone he will magnify himself. But to the god of fortresses, in his position he will give glory.” (**Daniel 11:37,38**) He will also apportion the ground out for a price. (**Daniel 11:39**) But this happens after he succeeds in a struggle with the king of the south but before his (the king of the north) destruction. (**Daniel 11:24,28,36**)

Jerusalem (as Daniel would describe it) is “profaned” and “removed” from Israel by the “arms” of the king of the north. (**Daniel 11:31**) This could be literal or symbolic or both. It is interesting that Daniel gives no indication that it will only be “half” of the city but [Zechariah 14:2](#) uses the term “half.” They are both correct. But Zechariah is talking about “spiritual Jerusalem.” And the ones that undergo tribulation from the nations are the second group of the “Bride” of Christ that need cleansing because their worship is unworthy to Jehovah. One reason for this thought is because if Jehovah fights for his people as mentioned in **Zechariah 14:3**; Why would he let “half” of Jerusalem be pillaged if they were serving him properly? There is no “half” of any literal Jerusalem today serving him correctly. However, half may refer to the 144,000 brothers still here on earth, yet to be cleansed of impure worship. See [Christ’s Bride...](#)

### **Now to put this information together:**

This old city of Jerusalem is in what some call “East Jerusalem” today. Israel captured it back in the “six-day war” in June 1967. But now as time goes on, Israel is under increasing pressure to give this land back to the Palestinians. Whoever Israel loses this to, and he occupies it, this will be the last “king of the north” for our day.

**In a vision of Daniel recorded in chapter 12**, he sees a man speaking and asking:

“How long will it be to the end of the wonderful things?” It is answered in verse 7; “It will be for an appointed time, appointed times and a half. And as soon as there will have been a finishing of the dashing of the power of the holy people to pieces, all these things will come to their finish.”

Even Daniel did not understand this statement! So, he asks for clarification as mentioned in verse 8. His answer is given in the rest of the chapter through verse 12.

**Verse 9** “Go, Daniel, because the words are made secret and sealed up until the time of [the] end.”

This is also referred to at **Daniel 12:4**; “And as for you, O Daniel, make secret the words and seal up the book, until the time of [the] end. Many will rove about, and the [true] knowledge will become abundant.” This knowledge will become abundant during this time period. It was not abundant immediately before that.

**Verse 10** “Many will cleanse themselves and whiten themselves and will be refined. And the wicked ones will certainly act wickedly, and no wicked ones at all will understand; but the ones having insight will understand.”

This is also referred to at **Daniel 11:32-35** where we see some of those having insight will stumble because of themselves. We see a cleansing and a whitening also. In order to cleanse themselves the true knowledge has to be known.

**Verse 11** “And from the time that the constant [feature] has been removed and there has been a placing of the disgusting thing that is causing desolation, there will be one thousand two hundred and ninety days.”

This action is also found at **Daniel 11:31**

These 1,290 days can be the same as the three and a half times because three and a half years by the lunar calendar has an extra month (30 days) added. However, in this case the three and a half times (years) is actually referring to 1,260 days because of how other prophecies fit in with this passage. The 1,260 days is part of the 1,290 days. However, a discrepancy of 30 days is not much time, when considering the grand scheme of things. However, Daniel is very specific, in this length of time period.

The word “placing” is also translated as “set up” which can denote action. (As an example; Someone set up the feast. This would take a bit of time.) This makes it difficult to know exactly when this time period starts as it is described in **Daniel 11:31**. But it would have to include the king of the north occupation too.

**Verse 12** “Happy is the one who is keeping in expectation and who arrives at the one thousand three hundred and thirty-five days!”

These 1,335 days is concurrent with the 1,290 days. There is no room in the prophetic timelines between Daniel and Revelation for these times to run in series. The 1,290 days is part of the 1,335 days.

So, there are only 45 days (depending on how you look at it) after the 1,290 days to the 1,335th day. When this 1,335-day period is completed, this is when Michael (Jesus) stands up as mentioned in Daniel 12:1!

So, what is this 45-day gap? When one takes into consideration the time period and lessons learned that are mentioned in the bible book of Jonah and compare that with the prophetic timelines and events in Revelation, this is a time that is given to the nations to show repentance (as Nineveh did) and submission to Jesus. Any who do not repent perish but those who take refuge in him are saved. (**Psalms 2:10-12**)

**Verse 13** “And as for yourself, go toward the end; and you will rest, but you will stand up for your lot at the end of the days.”

We will be able to see Daniel as he is one who is among those raised up from being “asleep in the ground”! (**Daniel 12:2,13**)

This information is as accurate as I can possibly provide regarding identifying the time period just before Jesus stands up – Or as some would say, “His return in power to judge and bless mankind.”

It is important to realize that although this happens to the old city of Jerusalem, there are a multitude of prophetic passages that show there will be tribulation for some who claim to serve God. But they are not worshiping him correctly. Thus, their worship is “crooked” and deemed unmeasurable. This is a “whitening” and a “cleansing” time period, but it only lasts 3.5 years as mentioned in Revelation 11. It is imperative that their worship is straightened, or else no flesh would be saved. (Malachi 4:5,6) More of this is talked about further in the book.

## Understanding the difference between the coming and the arrival of the kingdom of God

**Yeshua (Jesus) was asked by Pharisees (religious leaders) when the kingdom of God would come, as recorded in Luke 17:20-21.**

His answer has been translated in different ways (See bottom page comments) that can lead to confusion. However, by carefully looking at his entire answer, it is possible to understand what he meant.

**Let's look at a simple summary of Yeshua's complete answer, in two different ways, to help get the true understanding (Luke 17:20-37):**

- The **coming** of God's kingdom is not observable. The **coming** of the flood in Noah's day was not observable. The **coming** of the fire and sulphur on Sodom was not observable.
- When God's kingdom arrives, justice is speedily executed and the wicked are killed. When the flood arrived, justice was speedily executed and the wicked were killed. When the fire and sulphur arrived, justice was speedily executed and the wicked were killed.
- When God's kingdom arrives, all will definitely know it has arrived. When the flood came, all involved definitely knew it had arrived. When the fire and sulphur came, all involved definitely knew it came.

**\*\* Or \*\***

- The **coming** of God's kingdom is not observable.
  - When God's kingdom arrives, justice is speedily executed. The wicked are killed.
    - Upon **arrival**, **all will definitely know** it has arrived.
- The **coming** of the flood in Noah's day was not observable.
  - When the flood arrived, justice was speedily executed. The wicked were killed.
    - Upon **arrival**, **all definitely knew** it had arrived.
- The **coming** of the fire and sulphur on Sodom was not observable.
  - When the fire and sulphur arrived, justice was speedily executed. The wicked were killed.
    - Upon **arrival**, **all definitely knew** it had arrived.



**Now, let's look at the account at [Luke 17:20-37 \(ISV\)](#):**

<sup>20</sup> Once Jesus was asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come. He answered them, “The kingdom of God is not coming with a visible display. <sup>21</sup> People won't be saying, ‘Look! Here it is!’ or ‘There it is!’ because now the kingdom of God is among you.”

<sup>22</sup> Then Jesus told the disciples, “The time will come during which you will long to see one of these days when the Son of Man is with you, but you won't see it. <sup>23</sup> People will say to you, ‘Look! There he is!’ or ‘Look! Here he is!’ But don't go and chase after him. <sup>24</sup> Because just as lightning flashes and shines from one end of the sky to the other, so will the Son of Man be in his time. <sup>25</sup> But first he must suffer a great deal and be rejected by those living today.

<sup>26</sup> “Just as it was in Noah's time, so it will be in the Son of Man's time. <sup>27</sup> People were eating, drinking, marrying, and being given in marriage right up to the day when Noah went into the ark. Then the flood came and destroyed all of them. <sup>28</sup> So it was in Lot's time. People were eating and drinking, buying and selling, planting and building. <sup>29</sup> But on the very day when Lot left Sodom, fire and sulfur rained down from heaven and destroyed all of them. <sup>30</sup> The day when the Son of Man is revealed will be like that.

<sup>31</sup> “The person who is on the housetop that day must not come down to get his belongings out of his house. The person in the field, too, must not turn back to what's left behind. <sup>32</sup> Remember Lot's wife! <sup>33</sup> Whoever tries to save his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life will preserve it. <sup>34</sup> I tell you, two will be seated on the same couch that night. The one will be taken, and the other will be left behind. <sup>35</sup> Two women will be grinding grain together. The one will be taken, and the other will be left behind.”

<sup>37</sup> Then they asked him, “Where, Lord, will this take place?”

He told them, “Wherever there's a corpse, that's where the vultures will gather.”

**Comments:**

1. **Verse 21;** “People won't be saying, ‘Look! Here it is!’ or ‘There it is!’ because now the kingdom of God is among you.”
  1. This is Jesus talking about how people will react once the kingdom arrives. Everyone will definitely know. That's why people will not have to show others that it is here. Jesus explains further in verse 24 that the arrival is like lightning that crosses the sky. He further explains that it will be like the flood in Noah's day and the fire and sulphur in Lot's Day. The arrival will be dramatic and will see justice executed.
  2. Misunderstandings have arisen due to not understanding the context. Some translations promote the thought that Jesus was saying that the kingdom was in the Pharisee's hearts or that the kingdom of God was in their midst, at the time. In a way, the kingdom was in their midst, as Jesus (Yeshua) was there and had the

spirit of God. But that was not what the Pharisees had asked about. They were asking about a future event.

2. **Verses 22-24;** <sup>22</sup> Then Jesus told the disciples, “The time will come during which you will long to see one of these days when the Son of Man is with you, but you won’t see it. <sup>23</sup> People will say to you, ‘Look! There he is!’ or ‘Look! Here he is!’ But don’t go and chase after him. <sup>24</sup> Because just as lightning flashes and shines from one end of the sky to the other, so will the Son of Man be in his time.”

1. Yeshua speaks of people yearning to see his return.
2. False teachers will claim that Yeshua is here, in one way or another and will try to mislead others. However, Jesus sets things straight by using the examples of lightening, the flood, and the fire and sulphur, to explain how everyone will definitely know when he arrives. **All will know.**

3. **Verses 26-30;** <sup>26</sup> “Just as it was in Noah’s time, so it will be in the Son of Man’s time. <sup>27</sup> People were eating, drinking, marrying, and being given in marriage right up to the day when Noah went into the ark. Then the flood came and destroyed all of them. <sup>28</sup> So it was in Lot’s time. People were eating and drinking, buying and selling, planting and building. <sup>29</sup> But on the very day when Lot left Sodom, fire and sulfur rained down from heaven and destroyed all of them. <sup>30</sup> The day when the Son of Man is revealed will be like that.

1. Notice how Jesus states that people were doing everyday things up to the day of the flood, in Noah’s day and up to the day that it rained fire and sulphur, in Lot’s Day. He used those examples to show that just as there was no visible warning back then, there would not be for the arrival of the kingdom of God. The arrival would be sudden and dramatic!
2. The nations will be caught off guard. However, Yeshua has left teachings to help his followers and additional signs to watch out for which are mentioned in Daniel. Just as the righteous were saved in Noah’s and Lot’s Day, there is the narrow path that is available for all to take, which leads to salvation. ([Matthew 7:14 AMP](#))

4. **Verses 31-37;** <sup>31</sup> “The person who is on the housetop that day must not come down to get his belongings out of his house. The person in the field, too, must not turn back to what’s left behind. <sup>32</sup> Remember Lot’s wife! <sup>33</sup> Whoever tries to save his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life will preserve it. <sup>34</sup> I tell you, two will be seated on the same couch that night. The one will be taken, and the other will be left behind. <sup>35</sup> Two women will be grinding grain together. The one will be taken, and the other will be left behind.”

<sup>37</sup> Then they asked him, “Where, Lord, will this take place?”

He told them, “Wherever there’s a corpse, that’s where the vultures will gather.”

1. It is a somber thought that many will be destroyed. However, many will be saved.

**The word translated “coming” or “presence” is a Greek word (parousia) that actually takes both meanings into one.** An example of this is to say that an owner of a store is on his way here to take care of business, once he arrives. We don't see him as he is coming but when he arrives, he does his business, and we see him.

1.

1. The book *Vine's Expository Dictionary of Biblical Words* defines it as: “parousia (...3952), lit., ‘a presence,’ *para*, ‘with,’ and *ousia*, ‘being’ (from *eimi*, ‘to be’), denotes both an ‘arrival’ and a consequent ‘presence with.’ For instance, in a papyrus letter a lady speaks of the necessity of her *parousia* in a place in order to attend to matters relating to her property there.”

### **Links to compare English translations of Luke 17:20 and 21:**

This is to show why it is very important to read Yeshua's (Jesus') entire answer.

[Luke 17:20 \(Multiple translations\)](#)

[Luke 17:21 \(Multiple translations\)](#)

**Compare:** [What happens with Jesus' coming , arrival, and the end of the age?](#)

**Compare:** [When is Jesus' coming and arrival?](#)

## What happens with Jesus' coming, arrival, and the end of the age?

Let's carefully examine what Jesus stated about this.

### [Matthew 24 \(WEB\)](#)

**\*\* Some translations use the word “presence” rather than “coming.”** Which should it be? Notes from *Vines* are below. However, Jesus already has shown us how to view it, with the above illustration in Matthew 24:37-39. **Jesus illustrated his arrival as the flood of Noah's day.** Not the time period just before it – That was when the flood was coming. The flood was not invisibly present (here) when the people were eating and drinking. In like manner, Jesus is not invisibly present when the people are eating and drinking. But when he does arrive, Jesus describes it as lightning where everyone will know his arrival. Just as everyone knew the sudden arrival of the flood. There is a real separating work that is done, in a quick manner. The wicked die. The righteous live. Just as one could say, back in Noah's day before the flood, that the flood of Noah's day was coming, most people didn't notice but eventually it arrived. Then they all noticed. Compare [Understanding the difference between the coming and the arrival of the kingdom of God](#)

**The word “presence” is able to be rendered either “presence” or “coming.”** It has been assigned the Greek word number 3952 by the *ABINGDON'S STRONG'S EXHAUSTIVE CONCORDANCE OF THE BIBLE* and is “parousia” partly defined as: “...phys. aspect: - coming, presence.”

**The book *Vine's Expository Dictionary of Biblical Words* defines it as:** “parousia (...,3952), lit., ‘a presence,’ *para*, ‘with,’ and *ousia*, ‘being’ (from *eimi*, ‘to be’), denotes both an ‘arrival’ and a consequent ‘presence with.’ For instance, in a papyrus letter a lady speaks of the necessity of her *parousia* in a place in order to attend to matters relating to her property there.”

### [Matthew 24:3-5\(WEB\):](#)

<sup>3</sup> As he sat on the Mount of Olives, the disciples came to him privately, saying, “Tell us, when will these things be? What is the sign of your coming, and of the end of the age?”

<sup>4</sup> Jesus answered them, “Be careful that no one leads you astray. <sup>5</sup> For many will come in my name, saying, ‘I am the Christ,’ and will lead many astray.

It is interesting that Jesus first of all tells them to look out for ones who mislead. We need to be diligent in seeking truth. We need to test our own beliefs too.

This question also asks about the end of the age. Basically meaning the end of the rule of man, the Gentiles, also known as the Gentile times. To see more on this, see [When is Jesus coming and arrival?](#)

### [Matthew 24:6-8\(WEB\):](#)

<sup>6</sup> You will hear of wars and rumors of wars. See that you aren't troubled, for all this must happen, but the end is not yet. <sup>7</sup> For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom; and there will be famines, plagues, and earthquakes in various places. <sup>8</sup> But all these things are the beginning of birth pains.

#### [Matthew 24:9\(WEB\):](#)

<sup>9</sup> “Then they will deliver you up to oppression and will kill you. You will be hated by all of the nations for my name's sake.

This happens in two time periods – See Revelation 11:3 Many will think that they are doing a good thing in God's eyes, but their actions are more based upon following men than a sincere desire to do what is right – Compare **Matthew 25:31-46**

#### [Matthew 24:10\(WEB\):](#)

<sup>10</sup> Then many will stumble, and will deliver up one another, and will hate one another.

Compare Isaiah 3:4; Jeremiah 13:14 ; Daniel 11:33-35; 12:10

#### [Matthew 24:11,12\(WEB\):](#)

<sup>11</sup> Many false prophets will arise and will lead many astray. <sup>12</sup> Because iniquity will be multiplied, the love of many will grow cold.

This “lawlessness” or “iniquity” can refer to those acting wickedly against those who strive for Jehovah's righteousness. These intense actions will be headed by the anti-Christ who is the abomination and the king of the north for our day. They are all one in the same, just different titles. Jesus and his disciples experienced some of this lawlessness by many of the spiritual shepherds of the time. Compare Isaiah 3:8; 9:13-17; 10:16-22; Jeremiah 9:2-3; Daniel 11:33-35 ; Revelation 11:2-3 ; 2 Timothy 3:1-7

**All the above verses mentioned in Matthew 24 can be applied to both time periods where there are struggles between the kings of the north and south, as mentioned in the book of Daniel.** The first occurrence has already happened but the second has not. See [Daniel 11-12](#) for more detailed information.

#### [Matthew 24:13\(WEB\):](#)

<sup>13</sup> But he who endures to the end will be saved.

This is especially important in the last 45 days. Compare with [Daniel 12:12](#) ; Matthew 24:22

#### [Matthew 24:14\(WEB\):](#)

<sup>14</sup> This Good News of the Kingdom will be preached in the whole world for a testimony to all the nations, and then the end will come.

The word “preached” can also be translated “be heralded.” (Ref. footnote) – **This is fully accomplished by Jehovah's direction through an angel in “midheaven”**– Many churches

claim to do this. But if they blaspheme God by teaching falsehood in his name, how could it be considered good? Compare Isaiah 66:19-20; Revelation 14:6-7

[Isaiah 66:19-20\(WEB\):](#)

<sup>19</sup>“I will set a sign among them, and I will send those who escape of them to the nations, to Tarshish, Pul, and Lud, who draw the bow, to Tubal and Javan, to far-away islands, who have not heard my fame, nor have seen my glory; and they shall declare my glory among the nations. <sup>20</sup> They shall bring all your brothers out of all the nations for an offering to Yahweh, on horses, in chariots, in litters, on mules, and on camels, to my holy mountain Jerusalem, says Yahweh, as the children of Israel bring their offering in a clean vessel into Yahweh’s house.

[Revelation 14:6-7\(WEB\):](#)

<sup>6</sup> I saw an angel flying in mid heaven, having an eternal Good News to proclaim to those who dwell on the earth, and to every nation, tribe, language, and people. <sup>7</sup> He said with a loud voice, “Fear the Lord, and give him glory; for the hour of his judgment has come. Worship him who made the heaven, the earth, the sea, and the springs of waters!”

[Matthew 24:15-22\(WEB\):](#)

<sup>15</sup> “When, therefore, you see the abomination of desolation, [Daniel 9:27](#); [11:31](#); [12:11](#) which was spoken of through Daniel the prophet, standing in the holy place (let the reader understand), <sup>16</sup> then let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains. <sup>17</sup> Let him who is on the housetop not go down to take out the things that are in his house. <sup>18</sup> Let him who is in the field not return back to get his clothes. <sup>19</sup> But woe to those who are with child and to nursing mothers in those days! <sup>20</sup> Pray that your flight will not be in the winter nor on a Sabbath, <sup>21</sup> for then there will be great suffering, such as has not been from the beginning of the world until now, no, nor ever will be. <sup>22</sup> Unless those days had been shortened, no flesh would have been saved. But for the sake of the chosen ones, those days will be shortened.

Here we see Jesus’ reference to Daniel and the literal city of Jerusalem. Daniel speaks of two different occasions of Jerusalem’s demise, at the hands of the king of the north but in two different time periods. One has occurred in the first century and the other has yet to happen. Compare comments for Daniel chapters 7, 8, and 11 . In verse 22 it makes mentions “on account of the chosen ones” Compare [Isaiah 64:5-12](#); [65:8-9](#) ; Lamentations; [Malachi 4:5-6](#)

[Matthew 24:23-27\(WEB\):](#)

<sup>23</sup> “Then if any man tells you, ‘Behold, here is the Christ!’ or, ‘There!’ don’t believe it. <sup>24</sup> For there will arise false christs, and false prophets, and they will show great signs and wonders, so as to lead astray, if possible, even the chosen ones.

<sup>25</sup> “Behold, I have told you beforehand.



<sup>26</sup> “If therefore they tell you, ‘Behold, he is in the wilderness,’ don’t go out; or ‘Behold, he is in the inner rooms,’ don’t believe it. <sup>27</sup> For as the lightning flashes from the east, and is seen even to the west, so will the coming of the Son of Man be.

This goes to show that there will be no question at all when Jesus arrives in power – It will be obvious to all. **Notice the illustration of lightning that it will be SEEN from east to west. There is no doubt! See [Understanding the difference between the coming and the arrival of the kingdom of God](#)**

#### **[Matthew 24:28\(WEB\):](#)**

<sup>28</sup> For wherever the carcass is, that is where the vultures<sup>[a]</sup> gather together.

This is the time of “the great evening meal of God.” Where there is a great harvest of the wicked and the harvesters are angels. A frightening and sobering time indeed. See [Luke 17:37](#); [Matthew 13:36-42, 47-50](#); [25:41-46](#); Revelation 19:11-21

#### **[Revelation 19:11-21\(WEB\):](#)**

<sup>11</sup> I saw the heaven opened, and behold, a white horse, and he who sat on it is called Faithful and True. In righteousness he judges and makes war. <sup>12</sup> His eyes are a flame of fire, and on his head are many crowns. He has names written and a name written which no one knows but he himself. <sup>13</sup> He is clothed in a garment sprinkled with blood. His name is called “The Word of God.” <sup>14</sup> The armies which are in heaven followed him on white horses, clothed in white, pure, fine linen. <sup>15</sup> Out of his mouth proceeds a sharp, double-edged sword, that with it he should strike the nations. He will rule them with an iron rod. [Psalm 2:9](#) He treads the wine press of the fierceness of the wrath of God, the Almighty. <sup>16</sup> He has on his garment and on his thigh a name written, “KING OF KINGS, AND LORD OF LORDS.”

<sup>17</sup> I saw an angel standing in the sun. He cried with a loud voice, saying to all the birds that fly in the sky, “Come! Be gathered together to the great supper of God,<sup>[a]</sup> <sup>18</sup> that you may eat the flesh of kings, the flesh of captains, the flesh of mighty men, and the flesh of horses and of those who sit on them, and the flesh of all men, both free and slave, small and great.” <sup>19</sup> I saw the beast, and the kings of the earth, and their armies, gathered together to make war against him who sat on the horse, and against his army. <sup>20</sup> The beast was taken, and with him the false prophet who worked the signs in his sight, with which he deceived those who had received the mark of the beast and those who worshiped his image. These two were thrown alive into the lake of fire that burns with sulfur. <sup>21</sup> The rest were killed with the sword of him who sat on the horse, the sword which came out of his mouth. So all the birds were filled with their flesh.

#### **[Matthew 13:36-42, 47-50\(WEB\):](#)**

<sup>36</sup> Then Jesus sent the multitudes away, and went into the house. His disciples came to him, saying, “Explain to us the parable of the darnel weeds of the field.”

<sup>37</sup> He answered them, “He who sows the good seed is the Son of Man, <sup>38</sup> the field is the world, the good seeds are the children of the Kingdom, and the darnel weeds are the children of the evil one. <sup>39</sup> The enemy who sowed them is the devil. The harvest is the end of the age, and the reapers are angels. <sup>40</sup> As therefore the darnel weeds are gathered up and burned with fire; so will it be at the end of this age. <sup>41</sup> The Son of Man will send out his angels, and they will gather out of his Kingdom all things that cause stumbling and those who do iniquity, <sup>42</sup> and will cast them into the furnace of fire. There will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

<sup>47</sup> “Again, the Kingdom of Heaven is like a dragnet that was cast into the sea and gathered some fish of every kind, <sup>48</sup> which, when it was filled, fishermen drew up on the beach. They sat down and gathered the good into containers, but the bad they threw away. <sup>49</sup> So will it be in the end of the world. The angels will come and separate the wicked from among the righteous, <sup>50</sup> and will cast them into the furnace of fire. There will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.”

**Matthew 24:29-31(WEB): (This elaborates on verses 27-28)**

<sup>29</sup> “But immediately after the suffering of those days, the sun will be darkened, the moon will not give its light, the stars will fall from the sky, and the powers of the heavens will be shaken; [Isaiah 13:10](#); [34:4](#) <sup>30</sup> and then the sign of the Son of Man will appear in the sky. Then all the tribes of the earth will mourn, and they will see the Son of Man coming on the clouds of the sky with power and great glory. <sup>31</sup> He will send out his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they will gather together his chosen ones from the four winds, from one end of the sky to the other.

This is the 45-day period where nations are given the chance to submit and show repentance by destroying all the other religions of the earth or fight. This is the destruction of Babylon the Great, the harlot in Revelation. The reaping of wicked by Christ’s angels may begin during this period. At the very beginning of this period, the second group of 144,000 are gathered to join their brothers for a total of 288,000 to fully make up [Christ’s bride](#). – compare [Daniel 12:11-12](#); [Revelation 11:11-13](#)

**Matthew 24:32-35(WEB):**

<sup>32</sup> “Now from the fig tree learn this parable: When its branch has now become tender and produces its leaves, you know that the summer is near. <sup>33</sup> Even so you also, when you see all these things, know that he is near, even at the doors. <sup>34</sup> Most certainly I tell you, this generation will not pass away until all these things are accomplished. <sup>35</sup> Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will not pass away.

Notice the phrase “he is near at the doors” denotes just before Michael stands up – [Daniel 12:1](#); [Revelation 11:14-15](#)

**The term “this generation”** means the end of the wicked generation when Jesus comes in power with his angels. It is the end of the age, just as the flood was the end of an age. See [This generation...](#)

### [Matthew 24:36\(WEB\):](#)

<sup>36</sup>“But no one knows of that day and hour, not even the angels of heaven, but my Father only.

Jesus never did give his disciples a date when Jerusalem would be destroyed or occupied – Only signs which were based upon scriptures in Daniel – And so it is for us today – See the book of Daniel chapters 7,8, and 11

### [Matthew 24:37-42\(WEB\):](#)

<sup>37</sup> As the days of Noah were, so will the coming of the Son of Man be. <sup>38</sup> For as in those days which were before the flood they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, until the day that Noah entered into the ship, <sup>39</sup> and they didn't know until the flood came and took them all away, so will the coming of the Son of Man be. <sup>40</sup> Then two men will be in the field: one will be taken and one will be left. <sup>41</sup> Two women will be grinding at the mill: one will be taken and one will be left. <sup>42</sup> Watch therefore, for you don't know in what hour your Lord comes.

This phrase “taken” is interesting and sometimes misunderstood. In this instance, those taken are reaped as weeds to be destroyed. Notice those who were mentioned who were taken back in Noah's day. Those taken away were the wicked. With this illustration, when the Son of man returns, those taken will also be the wicked. It is a solemn thing to wonder if about half the people on earth will end up being judged as wicked. Let's hope that there will be many more who side with Jesus. Here, in Jesus' illustration of the angels reaping, 50% are taken. – Compare above notes on [Matthew 13:36-42,47-50; 24:28; Luke 17:33-37](#)

### [Matthew 24:43-44\(WEB\):](#)

<sup>43</sup> But know this, that if the master of the house had known in what watch of the night the thief was coming, he would have watched, and would not have allowed his house to be broken into. <sup>44</sup> Therefore also be ready, for in an hour that you don't expect, the Son of Man will come.

How could it be that God's people would not expect his coming? If they all have left true worship even though they would deny it at the time. Compare Jeremiah 9:2,3; 23:11,12; Ezekiel 13:8-23

### [Matthew 24:45-47\(WEB\):](#)

<sup>45</sup> “Who then is the faithful and wise servant, whom his lord has set over his household, to give them their food in due season? <sup>46</sup> Blessed is that servant whom his lord finds doing so when he comes. <sup>47</sup> Most certainly I tell you that he will set him over all that he has.

This “[faithful and wise servant](#)” provides spiritual guidance based upon God's word possibly before and during this distressing time for God's people. This is probably the “Elijah” of our day. – See [Elijah](#)

### Matthew 24:48-51(WEB):

<sup>48</sup> But if that evil servant should say in his heart, ‘My lord is delaying his coming,’ <sup>49</sup> and begins to beat his fellow servants, and eat and drink with the drunkards, <sup>50</sup> the lord of that servant will come in a day when he doesn’t expect it and in an hour when he doesn’t know it, <sup>51</sup> and will cut him in pieces and appoint his portion with the hypocrites. That is where the weeping and grinding of teeth will be.

There are those who will desire to stick with their old polluted and unacceptable ways of worship. Like the Pharisees of old, they hold their ways above scrutiny from God’s word. See the chapter on groupthink. Compare Daniel 11:32 and Matthew 25:31-46 (below):

### Matthew 25:31-46(WEB):

<sup>31</sup> “But when the Son of Man comes in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then he will sit on the throne of his glory. <sup>32</sup> Before him all the nations will be gathered, and he will separate them one from another, as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats. <sup>33</sup> He will set the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on the left. <sup>34</sup> Then the King will tell those on his right hand, ‘Come, blessed of my Father, inherit the Kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world; <sup>35</sup> for I was hungry and you gave me food to eat. I was thirsty and you gave me drink. I was a stranger and you took me in. <sup>36</sup> I was naked and you clothed me. I was sick and you visited me. I was in prison and you came to me.’

<sup>37</sup> “Then the righteous will answer him, saying, ‘Lord, when did we see you hungry and feed you, or thirsty and give you a drink?’ <sup>38</sup> When did we see you as a stranger and take you in, or naked and clothe you? <sup>39</sup> When did we see you sick or in prison and come to you?’

<sup>40</sup> “The King will answer them, ‘Most certainly I tell you, because you did it to one of the least of these my brothers,<sup>[a]</sup> you did it to me.’ <sup>41</sup> Then he will say also to those on the left hand, ‘Depart from me, you cursed, into the eternal fire which is prepared for the devil and his angels; <sup>42</sup> for I was hungry, and you didn’t give me food to eat; I was thirsty, and you gave me no drink; <sup>43</sup> I was a stranger, and you didn’t take me in; naked, and you didn’t clothe me; sick, and in prison, and you didn’t visit me.’

<sup>44</sup> “Then they will also answer, saying, ‘Lord, when did we see you hungry, or thirsty, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in prison, and didn’t help you?’

<sup>45</sup> “Then he will answer them, saying, ‘Most certainly I tell you, because you didn’t do it to one of the least of these, you didn’t do it to me.’ <sup>46</sup> These will go away into eternal punishment, but the righteous into eternal life.”

**This shows that those who help Jesus’ brothers on the earth will be rewarded. However, those who don’t will “depart into everlasting cutting off.” This is the case even though both groups call Jesus “Lord.” It is important to see that those who don’t help is because they do not have love of God or neighbor. (Matthew 22:37-39)**

[Matthew 22:37-39\(WEB\)](#):

<sup>37</sup> Jesus said to him, “‘You shall love the Lord your God with all your heart, with all your soul, and with all your mind.’ [Deuteronomy 6:5](#) <sup>38</sup> This is the first and great commandment. <sup>39</sup> A second likewise is this, ‘You shall love your neighbor as yourself.’ [Leviticus 19:18](#)

To get even a greater understanding of what Jesus stated about this topic, see [Understanding the Difference Between the Coming and the Arrival of the Kingdom of God](#)

## “This generation will not pass away until...” (Matt. 24:34)

To get the true meaning of what is meant here, it is important to look at the context.

[Matthew 24:34-35\(WEB\)](#):

<sup>34</sup> Most certainly I tell you, this generation will not pass away until all these things are accomplished. <sup>35</sup> Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will not pass away.

**The term “pass away” has the meaning of to no longer exist.**

Looking at “Heaven and earth will **pass away**,” one can see that this is the end of the heaven and earth, **of the time period being talked about.**

Jesus references the days of Noah and how the flood came and took them (the wicked) away, in [Matthew 24:37-39\(WEB\)](#):

<sup>37</sup> As the days of Noah were, so will the coming of the Son of Man be. <sup>38</sup> For as in those days which were before the flood they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, until the day that Noah entered into the ship, <sup>39</sup> and they didn’t know until the flood came and **took them all away**, so will the coming of the Son of Man be.

The heavens and earth up to the flood were destroyed. But this symbolized the wicked. The physical earth and heavens remain. The wicked don’t. Second Peter 3:5-7, 10-13 helps us to understand this and shows us that the wicked will be taken away again (destroyed) when Jesus returns:

[2 Peter 3:5-7,10-13 \(WEB\)](#):

<sup>5</sup> For this they willfully forget that there were heavens from of old, and an earth formed out of water and amid water by the word of God, <sup>6</sup> by which means **the world that existed then**, being overflowed with water, **perished**. <sup>7</sup> But the heavens that exist now and the earth, by the same word have been stored up for fire, being reserved against the day of judgment and destruction of ungodly men.

<sup>10</sup> But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in which the heavens will pass away with a great noise, and the elements will be dissolved with fervent heat, and the earth and the works that are in it will be burned up. <sup>11</sup> Therefore since all these things will be destroyed like this, what kind of people ought you to be in holy living and godliness, <sup>12</sup> looking for and earnestly desiring the coming of the day of God, which will cause the burning heavens to be dissolved, and the elements will melt with fervent heat? <sup>13</sup> But, according to his promise, **we look for new heavens and a new earth, in which righteousness dwells.**

Jesus told his disciples that the angels would take the wicked away (reap them) and destroy them. Notice how Jesus likens this to **an end of an age**. The wicked generation of Noah’s day was destroyed and so it will be when Jesus returns.



[Matthew 13:36-42,49-50\(WEB\):](#)

<sup>36</sup> Then Jesus sent the multitudes away, and went into the house. His disciples came to him, saying, “Explain to us the **parable of the darnel weeds of the field.**”

<sup>37</sup> He answered them, “He who sows the good seed is the Son of Man, <sup>38</sup> the field is the world, **the good seeds are the children of the Kingdom**, and **the darnel weeds are the children of the evil one.** <sup>39</sup> The enemy who sowed them is the devil. **The harvest is the end of the age**, and **the reapers are angels.** <sup>40</sup> As therefore the darnel weeds are gathered up and burned with fire; so will it be at **the end of this age.** <sup>41</sup> **The Son of Man will send out his angels, and they will gather out of his Kingdom all things that cause stumbling and those who do iniquity,** <sup>42</sup> **and will cast them into the furnace of fire.** There will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.

<sup>49</sup> So will it be in the end of the world. The angels will come and separate the wicked from among the righteous, <sup>50</sup> and will cast them into the furnace of fire. There will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.”

Looking back at **Matthew 24:34-35**, we see that the term “pass away” means to cease to exist. We can easily see how the heavens and earth are figurative and easily agree that Jesus’ words would not pass away. What about the phrase “this generation will not pass away until...?” Is this talking about the disciples of Jesus back then or perhaps today?

<sup>34</sup> Most certainly I tell you, **this generation will not pass away until** all these things are accomplished. <sup>35</sup> **Heaven and earth will pass away**, but my words will not **pass away**.

**Could this be talking about Jesus’ disciples back then or today or both or something else?**

The phrase “will not pass away **until**” denotes that there is a time of passing away, like the passing away of the heaven and earth. We know that the wicked passed away in the flood of Noah’s day and were symbolized as, “the world that existed then.” Jesus explained that Noah’s generation went on living their lives **until** the flood came. So, it will be the same when Jesus comes. The wicked generation will be living their lives during this period of tribulation, **until** Jesus comes in power with his angels. The righteous are delivered. Those chosen to be part of the symbolic bride of Christ (the chosen ones) will be gathered by angels too as shown in [Matthew 24:31](#). The nations will be given the opportunity to submit to Jesus as shown in [Psalms 2](#). [Revelation 21:1-4](#) shows God’s kingdom coming down to earth to bestow blessings on righteous mankind.

Jesus mentioned many things that will befall his disciples in the previous verses. It would be fitting to say that those things would happen first. Just as Jesus referenced Daniel while explaining the end times to his disciples, Daniel had put things in order too. In Matthew 24:3, Jesus’ disciples asked him three questions. The last question was about “the end of the age.” The end of the age is not complete **until** all the things prophesied occur.

[Matthew 24:3\(WEB\):](#)

<sup>3</sup> As he sat on the Mount of Olives, the disciples came to him privately, saying, “Tell us, **when** will these things be? **What is the sign of your coming**, and of **the end of the age?**”

[Matthew 24:32-35\(MSG\):](#)

<sup>32-35</sup> “Take a lesson from the fig tree. From the moment you notice its buds form, the merest hint of green, you know summer’s just around the corner. So it is with you: When you see all these things, you’ll know he’s at the door. Don’t take this lightly. I’m not just saying this for some future generation, but for all of you. **This age continues until all these things take place.** Sky and earth will wear out; my words won’t wear out.

[Matthew 24:34-35\(TPT\):](#)

<sup>34</sup> I assure you, **the end of this age will not come until all I have spoken comes to pass.** <sup>35</sup> The earth and sky will wear out and fade away before one word I speak loses its power or fails to accomplish its purpose.”

In conclusion, the “generation” that will not pass away (until all the events that Jesus stated would have to happen first) is talking about the wicked people to be destroyed when Jesus comes in power with his angels. Jesus’ arrival in power is likened to the flood’s arrival in power. There was a dramatic separating work then and will be.

Compare: [Understanding the difference between the coming and arrival of the kingdom of God](#)

Compare: [What happens with Jesus’ coming, arrival, and the end of the age?](#)

## Christ's Bride, Apostasy, and the Great Crowd

Some may wonder why these subjects are put together in the same chapter. Understanding these subjects will help many to understand many prophecies for our day including many illustrations as told by Jesus. Believe it or not, these do go together, from a certain point of view. It also will help to review the page on [How God's kingdom will be as it was in ancient times, 24 elders, and white robes](#)

Here is the **simple explanation**: (scriptural references and further detail are given later)

Christ's "Bride" is made up of two groups of 144,000 humans for a total of 288,000 that have been "bought from the earth" and are from all nations. Twelve groups (Tribes) of 24,000 each.

Only after the two groups of 144,000 are accepted by Jehovah to rule with Jesus, does "New Jerusalem" "come down out of heaven." This is a literal number, for multiple reasons.

There is a point in time in which both groups are examined by Jehovah at the same time.

The first group is from long ago when they were persecuted in the first and possibly the second century. These ones worshiped correctly, for the most part. Thus, their worship was "straight" or "measurable" by Jehovah and they are accepted. They make up the part of the symbolic temple, altar, and people in it that are measurable in Revelation 11:1.

The second group is living today, and their worship is "crooked" and "not to be measured" by Jehovah. Thus, they are rejected by him. They are apostates and false prophets in Jehovah's eyes. But for most, they do not even realize it. They have fallen asleep, spiritually. That is because these ones professing to be followers of Christ and/or Jehovah follow human thinking rather than the scriptures. This group is "given to the nations" and they are abandoned by Jehovah. They suffer completely and greatly. Many no longer profess to be worshipers of Jehovah or even perhaps Jesus. There is a great cleansing that lasts about 3.5 years. Then those ones who have endured and have been "whitened" are accepted by Jehovah to be the second part of the "Bride of Christ." Then both groups serve as one to Jehovah and Jesus. This straightening or cleansing work is so important that if it was not accomplished, "the earth would be devoted to destruction."

When both groups become one, they will serve with Jesus as kings and priests over the earth. It will be a time of great rejoicing for the lovers of righteousness because there will be no tolerance of the wicked oppressing the righteous ones. Sickness will be gone. The dead will be resurrected. When both groups join as the Bride of Christ, they are illustrated as a perfect city with continuous worship. It is now worthy to be measured! (Revelation 21) Contrast that with Revelation 11:2 where they were not to be measured and were thrown to the nations. A cleansing (straightening) work had been done.

The "Great crowd" are not part of the "Bride" class but will still be invited to live right into the 1,000 year blessed reign of Christ. Others who oppose Christ or Jehovah will perish.

## Details:

### Concerning the number 288,000:

**1 Chronicles 27:1** Speaks of a total of 288,000 who were to minister to the king. Twenty-four thousand in each 12 divisions – One division for each month. (24,000 \* 12 = 288,000) Certainly we know that David was Jehovah's appointed king. So, it can be reasoned that those who were ministering to David were also ministering to Jehovah by supporting Jehovah's decisions. This is a literal number of people used in the past in the King's service. There was a total of 24 divisions. There will be 24 divisions in the future, ministering to Christ. Just as the divisions didn't have only the names of the twelve tribes of Israel, neither will the future divisions. These future divisions make up the symbolic bride of Christ, as mentioned in Revelation.

Just as it was a literal number, back in ancient Israel, it is a literal number in Revelation. Although Revelation was written in signs, some numbers in Revelation are literal. Such as the "seven congregations" or the "four" horsemen or the "four living creatures" or the "seven seals. Consider also at Revelation 5:9-10 where kings of the kingdom are from every nation.

**The first group of 144,000** is mentioned in different parts of Revelation and other books. It is also mentioned in illustrations and those will be brought out in more detail, later. **Some passages which identify this first group:**

#### **Revelation 6:9-11**

1. Here we see that these ones have died. (vs.9)
2. A white robe was given them. (vs.11)
3. They were told to rest a little while longer, until "the number was also filled also of their fellow slaves and their brothers who were about to be killed as they also had been."
4. So, this group by being given white robes were already accepted by Jehovah to be worthy to rule with Christ. They had conquered by being put fully to the test. Their worship was straight – It could be measured. Compare this with **Zechariah 3:1-7; 14:2** ("**half of the city**"); and the "ephah" mentioned at **Zechariah 5:6-11**.

At **Revelation 11:1** they are represented and able to be "measured" because their worship was straight. Contrast with vs. 2.

**Revelation 14:4** speaks of this group as the "firstfruits."

**Revelation 20:4b** speaks of them as "those executed with the ax."

**1 Corinthians 15:23** speaks of them as "the firstfruits." **vii.1 Thessalonians 4:16** speaks of them as "dead in union with Christ" and that they would rise first.

This first group is taken "away from the face of the serpent" for 3.5 years. So, they are not persecuted by it. **Revelation 12:14**

## **The second group of 144,000 are identified in:**

**Revelation 7:3-8** It is interesting that it tells us that they have been sealed but it does not say that they have died like their brothers in Revelation 6:11

**Zechariah 14:2c** “And half of the city must go forth into the exile.”

**Zechariah 5:6-11** The wicked “woman” is not accepted but thrown back. This is a very interesting verse, and it is translated many different ways. I favor the NWT but without the interjected word “[back].” It is also important to note that the term “midst” here does not mean in the middle, but it can mean next to. The “ephah” is mentioned above and it could represent the first group.

**Revelation 15:2** as “the glassy sea mingled with fire.” They were victorious against the wild beast and had just been fully tested. Because this testing just happened, it is like they were freshly refined or “mingled with fire.” This passage also mentions the first group as the “glassy sea”, but it is not mingled with fire. Translations render this passage multiple ways, but it does appear to talk about two separate “seas.” Of course, much of this is speculation. The “sea” could represent God’s spirit too, or something else. This is not critical to identify but it can be interesting to speculate about it.

**Revelation 11:2** as the courtyard that is not to be measured but to be given to the nations for 1,260 days. (vs.2,3) This is part of the “holy city”, but it is not accepted nor measured. Its worship is crooked. It is rejected by Jehovah. This is in stark contrast to the part of the city mentioned in verse 1. This city is to become the New Jerusalem but half of it needs to be whitened. A cleansing work is needed.

**Revelation 11:3-12** There are many renderings of this passage of the two witnesses. I am going to interject thoughts here because I find it difficult to explain verse 12 without explaining the previous verses. Basically, the “two witnesses” represent both groups but from two different time periods. They are also known as the two flocks of one-fold at **John 10:14-16**. Both groups “conquer” Satan’s “system” and serve as an everlasting witness that they proved faithful to Jehovah and his Son Jesus. And all the nations will know that because of the faithful course of “Christ’s Bride” and Jehovah’s mercy, Jehovah does not destroy “all flesh.” {Compare Isaiah 12:1,2; 14:1-7; 25:6-9. Matthew 10:18; Luke 21:12,13; Revelation 3:21; 12:17b. Compare Revelation 11:4 with Zechariah 4:11-14; Genesis 31:43-53 (especially vs.53 – Notice “pillar” and “bear witness”); Joshua 4:4-24 (especially verses 20-24) and Revelation 11:11 with Hosea 6:1-3. Compare Malachi 4:5,6, and Matthew 24:22 with the principle at Genesis 18:20-32 where if there were “enough” righteous men in Sodom and Gomorrah they would not have been destroyed.}

Both groups straighten their worship and have their sins forgiven and are approved by Jehovah. However, upon initial inspection, only the first group is prepared. The second group is not prepared and is given to the nations because their worship needs to be “straightened” (“purified”, “whitened”, “whitened”, “cleansed”) so it is “measurable.” Compare **Revelation 11:1,2** with **Revelation 21:9-22** where now nothing is “thrown out” but everything is

measurable; **Daniel 11:31-35; 12:7,11; Hosea 3:4,5**. Jesus also has a covenant with them. (**Luke 22:28-30**) And it is important for them to live up to it. I believe that the “Moses” represented those in the first century (and possibly the second) who conquered when Rome was persecuting Jesus’ followers. The “Elijah” would represent those today who straighten their worship and expose false religion. In this case, I do not believe that they (as a group) will see death as their brothers did as mentioned in **Revelation 6:11**. Although it does say that they are “killed” for three and a half days (**Revelation 11:9**). Jonah was “killed” symbolically in the big fish for three days. But **Revelation 11:11,12** shows that these ones would be observed by the nations to have God’s backing after their “being put to death” and that their enemies would hear a loud voice from heaven say “Come on up here” and they go “up.” Exactly how this happens, we will see. Recount how Elisha saw Elijah leave (“taken from” him) in the “fiery war chariot.” (**2 Kings 2:9-12**) But it might be more exciting than that – Such as changing in form in a “twinkling of an eye!” It is at this time that they join their brothers somehow and then the “Bride” is complete! – Compare **Ezekiel 37** where the “dry bones” represent the “witnesses” of Revelation being “killed.” For our day, it is mentioned in **Revelation 11:9**. Notice too (in **Ezekiel 37**) where God causes them to come to life – Compare **Revelation 11:11**. Notice the account of two sticks (In **Ezekiel**) becoming one just after the dry bones (spiritual Israel) come to life (verses 1-14) in verses 15-20. These two sticks represent the two witnesses from two different time periods finally coming together. This coming together is also mentioned as “two nations” and “two kingdoms” in verse 22. And notice in verse 24; Jehovah’s servant “David” to be king over them. Interesting too how Jehovah’s “tabernacle” will be over them (verse 27) and how verse 28 mentions “the nations will have to know that I, Jehovah, am sanctifying Israel when my sanctuary comes to be in the midst of them to time indefinite.” So, these actions bear witness to the nations and Jehovah’s “sanctuary comes to be in the midst of them to time indefinite.” Compare **Revelation 21:2-3**.

Is this the “Elijah” that Jesus spoke of as “Elijah, indeed, is coming and will restore all things” in **Matthew 17:1-13**? When Jesus spoke this, in verse 11, John the Baptist had already been killed. Although in the following verses he does talk about John the Baptist. In this case, in **Revelation 11**, it is mostly referring to works of similar nature of Elijah. Elijah was jealous for Jehovah because Jehovah’s people had turned aside. He also took the lead in exposing false worshipers. So, from a group action, I can say yes. Is there another individual who could act as an Elijah to turn Jehovah’s people to straighten their ways? It is an interesting question. The original Elijah of old was not of the priestly class. Time will tell. Compare **Malachi 4:5,6**.

**Revelation 14:12** Here the “holy ones” need to keep unblemished from the wild beast. They need to endure. Their brothers have already died and had been fully put to the test, so this passage is not talking about them.

**Revelation 20:4c** “and those who had worshiped neither the wild beast nor its image and who had not received the mark upon their forehead and upon their hand.” Again, their brothers who had already been fully tested are in heaven at this time (**Revelation 6:11**)



This is interesting because where their brothers were spoken of as killed by the ax, these ones are fully tested, not necessarily to death, but they needed to avoid contamination from the wild beast.

What might this “mark” be? Well, the beast is from Satan’s system. So, it could entail any form of support of a false doctrine or other opposition to Jehovah. In any case, it is extremely important to straighten one’s worship so that one is not “disapproved somehow.” (2 Corinthians 13:5) Also, Daniel 11:32 brings out that those who know their God will prevail.

**Daniel 11:35** This is about a cleansing and a whitening of God’s people. This time period is about 3.5 years before Jesus stands up. (Daniel 12:1,7) If they were worshiping God properly, there would be no reason for a cleansing or whitening.

Compare Malachi 4:5,6 where God states that if the straightening work was not done, the earth would be devoted to destruction. So, we should expect crookedness in worship toward Jehovah today. And this gives us even more reason to make sure that our own worship is straight and to help others. (2 Corinthians 13:5, Mark 12:30,31)

**Isaiah 9:13-17** God speaks of his people as “all apostates”

**Jeremiah 25:27-31** God speaks of starting with cleansing his temple before cleansing the nations.

**1 Corinthians 15:23(NWT)** “afterward those who belong to the Christ during his presence.” (WEB): <sup>23</sup> But each in his own order: Christ the first fruits, then those who are Christ’s, at his coming. See the page [What happens when Jesus comes?](#)

**1 Thessalonians 4:17** “We the living who are surviving will, together with them, be caught away in the clouds to meet the lord in the air..” The first group is talked about in the verse 16.

This entire group of 288,000 is taken from two different time periods, as [1 Thessalonians 4:13-17 \(NIV\)](#) helps to show. The time periods are identified in Daniel as separate instances where the king of the north conquers the old city of Jerusalem. In each instance, the king that represents the king of the north is different. and “ruins” or “profanes the sanctuary, the fortress.”

1. The first time period can be identified as when the king of the north of the first century (who fulfilled the destruction of Jerusalem) stumbles and falls and is not found. He is also mentioned as “broken, but not in anger nor in warfare.” (Daniel 11:19,20)  
Compare Daniel 9:26; Daniel 8:25 – These passages are all of Rome. Which is represented by a “horn” of Greece which is the “hairy he-goat” in Daniel 8:5-12. Here Rome destroys the temple in the first century. So, the first group is persecuted by Rome. This would not include a time period where Rome did not persecute Christians.
2. The second time period can be identified by the end of the king of the north for our day. It is abrupt and definite. Compare Daniel 7:24-26 and Daniel 11:44,45. But the king of the north still persecutes God’s people for a minimum of 3.5 years.

Compare **Daniel 11:30b-35** and **Daniel 7:25** with **Daniel 12:7**; **Revelation 11:2,3**. This time period is also identified as “the wild beast that ascends out of the abyss that will make war with them and conquer them.” (**Revelation 11:7**; **Daniel 12:7**) Satan’s king of the north is ready to actively persecute God’s people today. As mentioned, the term “God’s people” does not mean that their worship is acceptable to Jehovah. (See the chapter on illustrations by Jesus) However, I find it interesting that Satan would still persecute those ones who are not serving God acceptably. Perhaps it is because of God’s promise to Abraham and the thought that they could still turn to God and be readily accepted by him. Perhaps Satan himself does not know for sure who will be accepted by Jehovah, and he does not want to take chances. But we should be careful not to underestimate a spiritual creature that has most likely been in existence for billions of Earth years and is “higher” than humans.

The king of the north’s attitude is described as giving glory to the “god of fortresses” and “over everyone he will magnify himself.” (**Daniel 11:36,38**) A country does not have to be the biggest in order to accomplish this. But it seems that this “king of the north” gives more attention (not necessarily money) to military might than the king of the south. And possibly more attention to military might than the “rights” of his people. The king of the north also is just part of Satan’s authoritative system so other countries can be part of the king of the north and king of the south. Their actions, especially during the approximate 3.5-year tribulation period will show who is on what side. But it is for certain that at a minimum, one of the kings of the north will cause Israel to lose part – if not all the old city of Jerusalem in our day that they captured back in June 1967

The two time periods which the king of the north persecutes God’s people are still of the same world-wide system under Satan’s authority. See the page concerning Who is Satan?

### **Some of the benefits of their rulership over the earth:**

Revelation 5:9-10 shows us that Jesus “bought persons for God out of every tribe and tongue and people and nation, and you made them to be a kingdom and priests to our God, and they are to rule as kings over the earth.”

1. **Revelation 21** Shows New Jerusalem coming down out of heaven. It also shows how tears, death, pain, and outcries will be done away with! This chapter shows us that all of the city can be measured. None of it is thrown out! (Contrast with **Revelation 11:1,2**) It also has a symbolic temple (**Revelation 21:22**) and its light does not cease. (Jehovah’s knowledge)
2. **Daniel 12:2** Resurrection of those “asleep in the ground.”
3. **Isaiah 25:6-9** Death being done away with.
4. **Isaiah 35** No drought. Blind will see. Deaf will hear. Speechless one will cry out in gladness! This will be accomplished literally and figuratively.
5. **Isaiah 65:17-25** Paradise conditions. No tolerance of the wicked.

## The Great crowd who are not of the “Bride class.”

1. They will enjoy blessings under the kingdom rule. See above blessings.
2. They are given a chance to repent and show submission to Christ before he starts judging.
3. **Psalms 2:1-12** Notice how the kings are given a chance to “kiss” the Son? Thus, showing submission.
4. **Revelation 11:13** “The rest became frightened and gave glory to the God of heaven.” These were not God’s people but now they have a great change of heart from what they have seen. It reminds me of the book of Jonah where the city of Nineveh was told that they were going to be destroyed in 40 days. But from the king on down, they all began to put faith in God and repented and so Jehovah changed his mind and spared them. (Jonah 3)

The “great crowd” is mentioned at **Revelation 7:9-12**. This is a different group than of the 144,000 “Bride group” mentioned in verses 3-8 or of the total 288,000 as the complete “Bride.” Some attempt to say that these two groups (the 144,000 and the “great crowd”) are the same. But that is incorrect! They claim that verses 13-17 are talking about the great crowd rendering sacred service in his temple. And in so doing, they have to be of a priestly class. But that’s incorrect.

One could say that it could be talking about the 144,000 because once they were tested fully as their brothers were. They received “white robes” too. But this “great crowd” is a separate group that also worships God. Because at verse 12, they need to be led to “fountains of waters of life.” Also, the temple will not exist literally. **Revelation 21:22** states that there is not a temple in it (New Jerusalem) but that Jesus and Jehovah are the temple. Compare also what Jesus said to the “woman at the well.” (**John 4:19-26**) Jesus stated that the hour is coming in which ones would neither worship on that mountain or in Jerusalem but that “God is a spirit and those worshipping him must worship with spirit and truth.” (vs.24)

So, what about **rendering sacred service**? Well, how does one render sacred service to Satan today? They can do it by a simple form of opposition to Jehovah. It could be through false worship or practicing wickedness. The inverse would be true. One can render sacred service to Jehovah simply by upholding his ways and/or teaching others about him. Is it a sacred thing for a father to teach his children about God? Yes! Compare comments for **Revelation 15:2-4**.

**Revelation 15:2-4** We see that those who had been victorious from the beast and their brothers who had already been tested (I believe pictured by the “glassy seas”) singing saying “For all the nations will come and worship before you...”

These ones who are mentioned as those who “will come and worship before you” are not of these two groups in unity that are singing. Because they are already worshipping. It shows that those not of the “Bride” can worship too.

See the part concerning [white robes](#), for more information

Joseph and Mary went in the temple to present Jesus to Jehovah, was that not a form of worship? (Luke 2:22-35)

**Jesus mentions that the temple** “will be called a house of prayer for all the nations.” (Mark 11:15-17)

**Isaiah 55:4,5** “Look! As a witness to the national groups I have given him, as a leader and commander to the national groups. (5) Look! A nation that you do not know you will call, and those of a nation who have not known you will run even to you” This passage shows that all nations will be blessed by Jehovah’s arrangement.

**Ones who oppose Jesus’ reign will perish.**

**Revelation 19:11-21** This is Jesus’ warring against any who oppose him. It is a great war. However, it is good to remember that there will be survivors:

**Psalms 2:12** states that “Happy are those taking refuge in him” (God’s Son)

**Isaiah 45:20-25** Shows that all those “from the nations” and “all YOU at the ends of the earth” who turn to Jehovah will be saved.

**The 288,000 of the “Bride of Christ” are from all nations.** They are not all Hebrew.

**Revelation 5:9,10** shows us that Jesus “bought persons for God **out of every tribe and tongue and people and nation**, and you made them to be a kingdom and priests to our God, and they are to rule as kings over the earth.”

This offer of a covenant was made to the Jews who were Jesus’ disciples as noted in **Luke 22:28-30**. (It is different from the “new covenant” in verse 20 which was for forgiveness of sins) In this account it also speaks of the 12 tribes of Israel. So one might conclude that it is literal. However, scriptures show that the “alien resident” could become just like a natural Jew such as **Ezekiel 47:21-23**; “And YOU must apportion this land to yourselves, to the twelve tribes of Israel. (22) And it must occur that YOU should allot it for inheritance to yourselves and to the alien residents who are residing as aliens in your midst, who have become father to sons in the midst of YOU. And they must become to YOU like a native among the sons of Israel. With YOU people they will fall [by lot] into an inheritance in the midst of the tribes of Israel. (23) And it must occur that in the tribe with which the alien resident has taken up residence as an alien, there is where YOU should give his inheritance...”

**Romans 11:25,26** “That a dulling of sensibilities has happened in part to Israel until the full number of people of the nations has come in (26) and in this manner all Israel will be saved...”

**Isaiah 56:1-7** “(3) And let not the foreigner that has joined himself to Jehovah say, ‘Without doubt Jehovah will divide me off from his people.’ Neither let the eunuch say, ‘Look! I am a dry tree.’ (4) For this is what Jehovah has said to the eunuchs that keep my sabbaths and that have chosen what I have delighted in and that are laying hold of my covenant: (5) ‘I will even give to them in my house and within my walls a monument and a name, something better than sons and daughters. A name to time indefinite I shall give them, one that will not be cut off. (6) And the foreigners that have joined themselves to Jehovah to minister to him and to love the name of Jehovah, in order to become servants to him, all those keeping the sabbath in order not to profane it and laying hold of my covenant, (7) I will also bring them to my holy mountain and make them rejoice inside my house of prayer. Their whole burnt offerings and their sacrifices will be for acceptance upon my altar. For my own house will be called even a house of prayer for all the peoples.”

It is interesting how this can be applied to the nations and his servants who minister to him. Compare **1 Chronicles 27:1** where there are 288,000 who are assigned to minister to the king. Although there were only 288,000 assigned to do this, the rest of the nations still received blessings.

The “sabbaths” and “holy mountain” are symbolic but refer to working righteousness in the earth. The kingdom of God is illustrated in **Daniel 2:35** as a “mountain” that fills “the whole earth.” This “kingdom of God” is also shown in **Daniel 2:44** as subduing all other kingdoms and “will stand to times indefinite.”

**Amos 9:11,12** “In that day I shall raise up the booth of David that is fallen and I shall certainly repair their breaches. And its ruins I shall raise up, and I shall certainly build it up as in the days of long ago, (12) to the end that they may take possession of what is left remaining of Edom, and all the nations upon whom my name has been called.”

**Daniel 9:27** This covenant that was discontinued is apparently the Abrahamic covenant where Jehovah favored Israel as his nation. See scriptures below.

**Acts 10:30-48** Cornelius (a Gentile, non-Israelite, of “the nations”) has a vision. (vs.30-33) Peter states: “For a certainty I perceive that God is not partial, but in every nation the man that fears him and works righteousness is acceptable to him.” Talking about Jesus, Peter states that Jesus is “Lord of all” (vs 36) and that “everyone putting faith in him gets forgiveness of sins through his name.” And in verses 44-48 we see that even those who were not circumcised received the free gift of the holy spirit.”

**Acts 15:14-18** “God for the first time turned his attention to the nations to take out of them a people for his name...” It then refers to **Amos 9:11,12** and possibly **Isaiah 45:20-25**.

The bible does not say positively if Cornelius or those hearing the word (Acts 10: 44-45) were not circumcised – But it strongly implies it. This can be deduced by the fact that there is made

specific mention of those faithful ones who came with Peter as being circumcised. Circumcision is an issue here. But now the free gift of God's spirit is shown to be given to all the nations. Circumcised or not.

Job was not an Israelite and most likely not circumcised. Yet, his faith in God was great. He was fully tested by Satan and maintained his integrity to Yahweh. He was considered Jehovah's servant and upright. (Job 1:8; 2:3)

Jesus became amazed about the faith of an "army officer" who was Roman. (**Matthew 8:10-13 WEB**):

<sup>10</sup> When Jesus heard this, he was amazed and said to those following him, "Truly I tell you, I have not found anyone in Israel with such great faith. <sup>11</sup> I say to you that many will come from the east and the west, and will take their places at the feast with Abraham, Isaac and Jacob in the kingdom of heaven. <sup>12</sup> But the subjects of the kingdom will be thrown outside, into the darkness, where there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth."

<sup>13</sup> Then Jesus said to the centurion, "Go! Let it be done just as you believed it would." And his servant was healed at that moment.

**Daniel 12:7** talks of the "finishing of the power of the holy people to pieces" just before Jesus stands up (**Daniel 12:1**) So, who would this be?

Although Daniel refers to God's people undergoing tribulation by the king of the north and the wild beast, we know that in 70 CE when Jerusalem was destroyed, any followers of Christ were not in Jerusalem. Because they would have listened to him and would have "fled to the mountains." But the followers of Christ were still persecuted by the "beast." Some were killed. It will be the same for those living today. We will see a sign regarding Jerusalem (the old city) being taken from Israel by the king of the north, but we will see the same abomination (Different name) persecuting those who claim to be Christ's brothers.

So, is this dashing of the power of the holy ones talking about the natural Jews or spiritual? It could be both. It was that way in the first century so it will probably be that way in our near future. It will include the ones who need to straighten their worship and undergo "sackcloth" for the 3.5 years. (**Revelation 11:3**) Daniel states that those who know their God will prevail. (**Daniel 11:32**) Jesus prevailed. He conquered. He was fully tested and maintained his integrity to Jehovah.

Some claim that because they use Almighty God's name "Jehovah" (or other) that they are specially in line for his blessings such as ruling with his Son. Although it is proper and a good thing to use his name, I disagree with the thought that just because one uses it, it identifies them as being a true worshiper of him. If that was true, the demons could use it and be saved but, that is far from truth.

**Isaiah 48:1-2 (WEB):**

48 “Hear this, house of Jacob,  
you who are called by the name of Israel,  
and have come out of the waters of Judah.  
You swear by Yahweh’s name,  
and make mention of the God of Israel,  
but not in truth, nor in righteousness—  
<sup>2</sup> for they call themselves citizens of the holy city,  
and rely on the God of Israel;  
Yahweh of Armies is his name.

**Matthew 23:33** “Serpents, offspring of vipers..” Jesus likened those scribes and Pharisees to these. And these were the religious leaders of Israel!

**Matthew 8:10-13** – See above.

**Isaiah 66:2,5 (WEB):**

<sup>2</sup> For my hand has made all these things,  
and so all these things came to be,” says Yahweh:  
“but I will look to this man,  
even to he who is poor and of a contrite spirit,  
and who trembles at my word.

<sup>5</sup> Hear Yahweh’s word,  
you who tremble at his word:  
“Your brothers who hate you,  
who cast you out for my name’s sake, have said,  
‘Let Yahweh be glorified,  
that we may see your joy;’  
but it is those who shall be disappointed.

Ones who do not “tremble” at God’s word hate and “exclude” those who do tremble (to show great respect) at it. Yet, both groups use his name.

This is a very encouraging passage for those who show respect of Jehovah’s word. Because it shows that God will show his rejoicing toward those who properly tremble at his word! What a blessing! But the others are put to shame. Compare [Daniel 12:3](#)

**(WEB):**

<sup>3</sup> Those who are wise will shine as the brightness of the expanse. Those who turn many to righteousness will shine as the stars forever and ever.



**Matthew 25:31-46 (WEB)**: Shows an illustration where there are two groups that could help Christ's brothers. Both groups call Jesus "Lord." Yet, only one group is viewed as "righteous", and they go into "everlasting life." The other group departs "into everlasting cutting-off."

<sup>31</sup> "But when the Son of Man comes in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then he will sit on the throne of his glory. <sup>32</sup> Before him all the nations will be gathered, and he will separate them one from another, as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats. <sup>33</sup> He will set the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on the left. <sup>34</sup> Then the King will tell those on his right hand, 'Come, blessed of my Father, inherit the Kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world; <sup>35</sup> for I was hungry and you gave me food to eat. I was thirsty and you gave me drink. I was a stranger and you took me in. <sup>36</sup> I was naked and you clothed me. I was sick and you visited me. I was in prison and you came to me.'

<sup>37</sup> "Then the righteous will answer him, saying, 'Lord, when did we see you hungry and feed you, or thirsty and give you a drink? <sup>38</sup> When did we see you as a stranger and take you in, or naked and clothe you? <sup>39</sup> When did we see you sick or in prison and come to you?'

<sup>40</sup> "The King will answer them, 'Most certainly I tell you, because you did it to one of the least of these my brothers, you did it to me.' <sup>41</sup> Then he will say also to those on the left hand, 'Depart from me, you cursed, into the eternal fire which is prepared for the devil and his angels; <sup>42</sup> for I was hungry, and you didn't give me food to eat; I was thirsty, and you gave me no drink; <sup>43</sup> I was a stranger, and you didn't take me in; naked, and you didn't clothe me; sick, and in prison, and you didn't visit me.'

<sup>44</sup> "Then they will also answer, saying, 'Lord, when did we see you hungry, or thirsty, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in prison, and didn't help you?'

<sup>45</sup> "Then he will answer them, saying, 'Most certainly I tell you, because you didn't do it to one of the least of these, you didn't do it to me.' <sup>46</sup> These will go away into eternal punishment, but the righteous into eternal life."

## The Faithful and Discreet Slave

### What does the Bible say about the “faithful and discreet slave” regarding [Jesus’ return](#)?

This term is used in illustrations by Jesus:

Matthew 24:45-47 (NIV); “Who then is the faithful and wise servant, whom the master has put in charge of the servants in his household to give them their food at the proper time? <sup>46</sup> It will be good for that servant whose master finds him doing so when he returns. <sup>47</sup> Truly I tell you, he will put him in charge of all his possessions.” The New World Translation renders the term as, “the faithful and discreet slave.”

Mark 13:34-37(NIV); “It’s like a man going away: He leaves his house and puts his servants in charge, each with their assigned task, and tells the one at the door to keep watch.<sup>35</sup> “Therefore keep watch because you do not know when the owner of the house will come back—whether in the evening, or at midnight, or when the rooster crows, or at dawn. <sup>36</sup> If he comes suddenly, do not let him find you sleeping.<sup>37</sup> What I say to you, I say to everyone: ‘Watch!’”

Luke 12:35-48; “Be dressed ready for service and keep your lamps burning, <sup>36</sup> like servants waiting for their master to return from a wedding banquet, so that when he comes and knocks they can immediately open the door for him. <sup>37</sup> It will be good for those servants whose master finds them watching when he comes. Truly I tell you, he will dress himself to serve, will have them recline at the table and will come and wait on them. <sup>38</sup> It will be good for those servants whose master finds them ready, even if he comes in the middle of the night or toward daybreak. <sup>39</sup> But understand this: If the owner of the house had known at what hour the thief was coming, he would not have let his house be broken into. <sup>40</sup> You also must be ready, because the Son of Man will come at an hour when you do not expect him.” <sup>41</sup> Peter asked, “Lord, are you telling this parable to us, or to everyone?” <sup>42</sup> The Lord answered, “Who then is the faithful and wise manager, whom the master puts in charge of his servants to give them their food allowance at the proper time? <sup>43</sup> It will be good for that servant whom the master finds doing so when he returns. <sup>44</sup> Truly I tell you, he will put him in charge of all his possessions. <sup>45</sup> But suppose the servant says to himself, ‘My master is taking a long time in coming,’ and he then begins to beat the other servants, both men and women, and to eat and drink and get drunk. <sup>46</sup> The master of that servant will come on a day when he does not expect him and at an hour he is not aware of. He will cut him to pieces and assign him a place with the unbelievers. <sup>47</sup> “The servant who knows the master’s will and does not get ready or does not do what the master wants will be beaten with many blows.<sup>48</sup> But the one who does not know and does things deserving punishment will be beaten with few blows. From everyone who has been given much, much will be demanded; and from the one who has been entrusted with much, much more will be asked.

Simply put, the faithful servant does the will of the master. In stark contrast, the “wicked servant” does not do the will of the master and persecutes those who do the master’s will.

Another notable thing is that *neither servant knows when his master is going to return*. (Mark 13:35, Luke 12:40)

It is evident that *when Jesus does return*, his faithful servants and even his disloyal servants will not be expecting it. That is why he encourages his servants to “keep on the watch!” (Mark 13:37, Luke 12:40)

Malachi chapter 3 discusses [the Lord’s return](#). Notice the word “suddenly” and how he comes to have to do a purifying work. He purifies God’s people so that their worship will be acceptable to the Almighty.

Malachi 3:1-4; “I will send my messenger, who will prepare the way before me. Then [suddenly the Lord you are seeking will come](#) to his temple; the messenger of the covenant, whom you desire, will come,” says the Lord Almighty. <sup>2</sup> But who can endure the day of his coming? Who can stand when he appears? For he will be like a refiner’s fire or a launderer’s soap. <sup>3</sup> He will sit as a refiner and purifier of silver; he will purify the Levites and refine them like gold and silver. Then the Lord will have men who will bring offerings in righteousness, <sup>4</sup> and the offerings of Judah and Jerusalem will be acceptable to the Lord, as in days gone by, as in former years”

Jesus stated that no one knew the day or hour of his return, other than his Father. Matthew 24:36; “But about that day or hour no one knows, not even the angels in heaven, nor the Son, but only the Father.”

As shown earlier, Jesus had shown that his followers would not know the date of his return, until it happened. However, Jesus did allude to *signs* from the book of Daniel to show when the time was near.

Matthew 24:15; “So when you see standing in the holy place ‘the abomination that causes desolation,’ spoken of through the prophet Daniel—let the reader understand—”

Matthew 24:32-34; “Now learn this lesson from the fig tree: As soon as its twigs get tender and its leaves come out, you know that summer is near. <sup>33</sup> Even so, when you see all these things, you know that it is near, right at the door. <sup>34</sup> Truly I tell you, [this generation will certainly not pass away until all these things have happened.](#)”

Anyone to claim to know the date of Jesus’ return, ahead of time, is false. Examples:

The “[Great Disappointment](#)” in the mid 1800’s had thousands expecting Jesus to return. When it did not happen, many turned to the thought that their belief had more to do with heaven than earth.

[Harold Camping](#) prophesied Jesus return to be in 2012. When it did not manifest, he claimed it to have a spiritual significance rather than a physical one. Finally, he admitted it was wrong to claim to know the “day or hour.”

[Charles Taze Russell](#) predicted the incoming of God's kingdom, marking the end of the "gentile times" in October of 1914. When it did not happen, the Bible Students which became known as Jehovah's Witnesses, stated that the prophesy dealt with Jesus beginning his rule in heaven but not yet on earth. Yet, they still claim he came, but in a spiritual sense. Their translation is noted to have the word "presence" in many locations where Jesus was talking about the signs from Daniel and of his coming. Matthew 24:3; "the sign of your *presence*" (NWT). Most translations use the word "coming." Notably, Jesus stated to not believe ones that said Jesus was here, when he was not. Matthew 24:23-26 (NWT); "Then if anyone says to you, 'Look! Here is the Christ,' or, 'There!' do not believe it. <sup>24</sup> For false Christs and false prophets will arise and will perform great signs and wonders so as to mislead, if possible, even the chosen ones. <sup>25</sup> Look! I have forewarned you. <sup>26</sup> Therefore, if people say to you, 'Look! He is in the wilderness,' do not go out; 'Look! He is in the inner rooms,' do not believe it. <sup>27</sup> For just as the lightning comes out of the east and *shines* over to the west, so the presence [(NWT)] of the Son of man will be."

So according to the NWT with the Witnesses' doctrine, Jesus is here in presence. Yet, Jesus himself warned his followers about people claiming that he was here, when he was not. Strangely enough, the Jehovah's Witnesses not only believe he is here but is coming again. That begs the question, "How can Jesus come again if he is already here?" The Witnesses say that they predicted that Jesus would be here since 1914. However, Jesus himself foretold that his followers would not know the day or hour of his coming until he arrived. So how could Charles Russell, the founder of the modern day Jehovah's Witnesses, or anyone else, know it ahead of time? They simply couldn't. However, as Jesus mentioned, there are signs to watch out for and by observing those signs, one can know that he is near! – Not present but near!

Matthew 24:27 as noted above denotes that everyone will know when Jesus is coming, according to the NIV; "For as lightning that comes from the east *is visible* even in the west, so will be the coming of the Son of Man." ***This is a visible occurrence.*** Compare [Revelation 6:12-17](#); [11:11-15](#); [Daniel 12:1-2](#).

May we all be diligent in watching out for the signs of Jesus' return and help others to straighten their worship to God!

## Kingdom Illustrations by Jesus

I highly recommend to review the two pages, [When is Jesus coming?](#), and [What Happens When Jesus Comes?](#) to help understand the following illustrations.

**Matthew 13:24-30** “Another illustration he set before them, saying: ‘The kingdom of the heavens has become like a man that sowed fine seed in his field. (25) While men were sleeping, his enemy came and over sowed weeds in among the wheat, and left. (26) When the blade sprouted and produced fruit, then the weeds appeared also. (27) So the slaves of the householder came up and said to him, “Master, did you not sow fine seed in your field? How, then, does it come to have weeds?” (28) He said to them, “An enemy, a man, did this.” They said to him, “Do you want us, then, to go out and collect them?” (29) He said, “No; that by chance, while collecting the weeds, YOU uproot the wheat with them. (30) Let both grow together until the harvest; and in the harvest season I will tell the reapers, First collect the weeds and bind them in bundles to burn them up, then go to gathering the wheat into my storehouse.” ‘ “

This is explained in **verses 36-43** “And his disciples came to him and said: ‘Explain to us the illustration of the weeds in the field.’ (37) In response he said: ‘The sower of the fine seed is the Son of man; (38) the field is the world; as for the fine seed, these are the sons of the kingdom; but the weeds are the sons of the wicked one, (39) and the enemy that sowed them is the Devil. The harvest is a conclusion of a system of things, and the reapers are angels. (40) Therefore, just as weeds are collected and burned with fire, so it will be in the conclusion of the system of things. (41) The Son of man will send forth his angels, and they will collect out from his kingdom all things that cause stumbling and persons who are doing lawlessness, (42) and they will pitch them into the fiery furnace. There is where weeping and the gnashing of teeth will be. (43) At that time the righteous ones will shine as brightly as the sun in the kingdom of their Father..’ “

This time period starts as mentioned in **Daniel 12:1**. “Michael” (Jesus) stands up and cleanses the earth of wicked ones. This is also recorded in **Revelation 19:11-21**. Notice the time correlation with **Daniel 12:3** regarding those righteous ones shining brightly.

Another lesson we can get from this is that we need to be sure we are submitting to Jesus and constantly testing our faith so that we might not be disapproved somehow. (**2 Corinthians 13:5**)

This happens immediately after the transfer of the kingdom of the world from Satan to Jesus. Compare **Revelation 11:15** and see the chapter on *Who is Satan?*

Compare **Matthew 13:47-50**

**Matthew 13:44-46** Jesus illustrates, “‘The kingdom of the heavens is like a treasure hidden in the field, which a man found and hid; and for the joy he has he goes and sells what things he has and buys the field. (45) Again the kingdom of the heavens is like a traveling merchant seeking fine pearls. (46) Upon finding one pearl of high value, away he went and promptly sold all the things he had and bought it.’ “

Can we give up all the things we have for the kingdom? Not just material things but what about personal relationships? Something to think about.

**Matthew 19:29** “And everyone that has left houses or brothers or sisters or father or mother or children or lands for the sake of my name will receive many times more and will inherit everlasting life.”

**Luke 17:32,33** “REMEMBER the wife of Lot. (33) Whoever seeks to keep his soul safe for himself will lose it, but whoever loses it will preserve it alive.”

What did Lot’s wife want? Most likely she thought she wanted something and she turned around. But the angels were specific: “Escape”, “do not stand still”, and “do not look behind you.” **Lot’s wife did not listen. Will we?** Will we call on Jesus’ name when the time comes? What will our attitude be at that time? Do possessions own us?

Will we put our faith in Jesus or man? Some may hide in shelters but that will not help. Angels are the “reapers.” Only those who side with Jesus will survive. (Matthew 13:36-43)

**Joel 2:32** “And it must occur that everyone who calls on the name of Jehovah will get away safe..” Jesus comes in his Father’s name. See the chapter on *How did ones view Jesus when he was here on earth?*

**Matthew 20:1-16** Jesus illustrates, “For the kingdom of the heavens is like a man, a householder, who went out early in the morning to hire workers for his vineyard. (2) When he had agreed with the workers for a denarius a day, he sent them forth into his vineyard. (3) Going out also about the third hour, he saw others standing unemployed in the marketplace; (4) and to those he said, “YOU also, go into the vineyard, and whatever is just I will give YOU.” (5) So off they went. Again he went out about the sixth and the ninth hour and did likewise. (6) Finally, about the eleventh hour he went out and found others standing, and he said to them, “Why have YOU been standing here all day unemployed?” (7) They said to him, “Because nobody has hired us.” He said to them, “YOU too go into the vineyard.” (8) When it became evening, the master of the vineyard said to his man in charge, “Call the workers and pay them their wages, proceeding from the last to the first.” (9) When the eleventh-hour men came, they each received a denarius. (10) So, when the first came, they concluded they would receive more; but they also received pay at the rate of a denarius. (11) On receiving it they began to murmur against the householder (12) and said, “These last put in one hour’s work; still you made them equal to us who bore the burden of the day and the burning heat!” (13) But in reply to one of them he said, “Fellow, I do you no wrong. You agreed with me for a denarius, did you not? (14) Take what is yours and go. I want to give this last one the same as to you. (15) Is it not lawful for me to do what I want with my own things? Or is you eye wicked because I am good?” (16) In this way the last ones will be first, and the first ones last.’ “

**Daniel 12:2** “And there will be many of those asleep in the ground of dust that will wake up, these to indefinitely lasting life and those to reproaches [and] to indefinitely lasting abhorrence.” And **John 5:28,29** Do not marvel at this, because the hour is coming in which all those in the

memorial tombs will hear his voice (29) and come out, those who did good things to a resurrection of life, those who practiced vile things to a resurrection of judgment.” Also compare **John 6:35-40**

**Matthew 24:48-51** see Luke 12:42-48

**Matthew 25:1-13 The Ten Virgins** – *The Interlinear Bible*; “Then the kingdom of heaven shall be compared to ten virgins who took their lamps and went out to a meeting of the bridegroom. (2) And five of them were wise, and five foolish. (3) Those *being* foolish, taking their lamps did not take oil with them. (4) But the wise took oil in their vessels with their lamps. (5) But the bridegroom delaying, all nodded and slept. (6) And *at* midnight a cry occurred; Behold the bridegroom comes! Go out to meet him. (7) Then all those virgins rose up and prepared their lamps. (8) And the foolish said to the wise, Give us *some* of your oil, for our lamps are going out. (9) But the wise answered, saying, *No*, lest there no be enough for us and you. But rather go to those who sell, and buy for yourselves. (10) But they going away to buy, the bridegroom came. And those ready went in with him to the wedding feast; and the door was shut. (11) And afterwards the rest of the virgins also came, saying, Lord, Lord, open to us. (12) But answering he said, truly I say to you, I do not know you. (13) Therefore, watch, for you do not know the day nor the hour in which the Son of man comes.”

Here 5 were wise and five were foolish. The wise were prepared for the event to meet the bridegroom but the others were not, and they were not allowed in the door.

I believe that this illustration can easily fit with the two (144,000+144,000=288,000) groups of the “Bride” of Christ. The first group is prepared and accepted, but the second group is not prepared and so rejected. They must be cleansed (or whitened) for 1,260 days. See the chapter about Christ’s bride.

**Matthew 25:14-30** Slaves with minas. Compare **Luke 19:11-27**. Notice the term used here for the wicked slave as “Wicked and sluggish slave.” (vs.26) Ever hear an organization say constantly “Just wait on Jehovah?” Although, in some cases, that is all we can do but it never should be said about seeking his righteousness. What would Satan like us to do? What would Jesus like us to do?

**Matthew 25:31-46** “When the Son of man arrives in his glory, and all the angels with him, then he will sit down on his glorious throne. (32) And all the nations will be gathered before him, and he will separate people one from another, just as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats. (33) And he will put the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on his left. (34) ‘Then the king will say to those on his right, “Come, YOU who have been blessed by my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for YOU from the founding of the world. (35) For I became hungry and YOU gave me something to eat; I got thirsty and YOU gave me something to drink. I was a stranger and YOU received me hospitably; (36) naked, and YOU clothed me. I fell sick and YOU looked after me. I was in prison and YOU came to me.” (37) Then the righteous ones will answer him with the words, ‘Lord, when did we see you hungry and feed you, or thirsty, and give you something to drink? (38) When did we see you a stranger and receive you hospitably, or naked, and clothe you? (39) When did we see you sick or in prison and go to you?’ (40) And in reply



the king will say to them, “Truly I say to YOU, to the extent that YOU did it to one of the least of these my brothers, YOU did it to me.” (41) Then he will say, in turn, to those on his left, “Be on YOUR way from me, YOU who have been cursed, into the everlasting fire prepared for the Devil and his angels. (42) For I became hungry, but YOU gave me nothing to eat, and I got thirsty, but YOU gave me nothing to drink. (43) I was a stranger, but YOU did not receive me hospitably; naked, but YOU did not clothe me; sick and in prison, but YOU did not look after me.” (44) Then they will also will answer with the words, “Lord, when did we see you hungry or thirsty or a stranger or naked or sick or in prison and did not minister to you?” (45) Then he will answer them with the words, “Truly I say to YOU, To the extent that YOU did not do it to one of these least ones, YOU did not do it to me.” (46) And these will depart into everlasting cutting-off, but the righteous ones into everlasting life.” ‘ ‘

It is very interesting how both groups claim Jesus to be their “Lord.”

Only the group that helps his “brothers” is considered righteous and they look forward to everlasting life. But the others are cut off everlastingly – They did not help Jesus’ brothers. These “brothers” in this instance would most likely primarily be those of the symbolic “Bride” of Christ during their approximate 3.5 years of tribulation.

This is a good example for us not to be so readily accepting of a teaching from someone who claims to worship Jesus or Jehovah. Test their words. (2 Corinthians 13:5)

This event happens after the sealing of the second part of the “Bride” of Christ. Because they have been invited to inherit the kingdom – They can live in it. This also appears to be the initial judgment for those who see Jesus coming with great glory to judge and reign. Jesus receives the “kingdom of the world” only after certain events take place. Compare **Revelation 11:15; Revelation 21:1-10**; The chapter on *The two parts of Christ’s Bride*

This is the separating work done by Jesus’ angels right after he receives the “kingdom of the world.” No one can successfully hide. Compare **Matthew 13:36-42,47-50; 24:28; 25:31-46; Luke 17:33-37; Revelation 11:15; Revelation 19:11-21**

**Luke 12:35-40** “Let YOUR loins be girded about, and the lamps burning; (36) and you *be* like men awaiting their lord when he returns from the feasts, so that *he* coming and knocking, they will at once open to him. (37) Blessed *are* those slaves whom the lord will find watching when *he* comes. Truly I say to you that he will gird himself and will make them recline; and coming up *he* will serve them. (38) And if he comes in the second watch, even in the third watch he comes and finds *it* so, blessed are those slaves. (39) But know this that if the housemaster had known the hour the thief is coming, he would have watched and would not have allowed his house to be dug through. (40) And you, then, be ready; for in the hour you think not, the Son of man comes.” – *The Interlinear Bible*

The NWT renders verse 40 as: “YOU also, keep ready, because at an hour that YOU do not think likely the Son of man is coming.”

This shows us the importance to stay awake spiritually so ones can be ready when the Son of man “comes” or is “coming” But he states that his followers will not discern the “hour. Why is this? It seems to be a very confident statement. It is because just about all his followers for our day have “fallen asleep” spiritually. This cannot be an acceptable state to Jesus or his Father. See comments for the second group of the “Bride”; **Isaiah 9:13-17**

**Luke 12:42-48 – The faithful steward;** “And the Lord said: ‘Who really is the faithful steward (or house manager), the discreet one, whom his master will appoint over his body of attendants to keep giving their measure of food supplies at the proper time? (43) Happy is that slave, if his master on arriving finds him doing so! (44) I tell YOU truthfully, He will appoint him over all his belongings. (45) But if ever that slave should say in his heart, ‘My master delays coming,’ and should start to beat the menservants and the maidservants, and to eat and drink and get drunk, (46) the master of that slave will come on a day that he is not expecting [him] and in an hour that he does not know, and he will punish him with the greatest severity (Or, “will cut him in two”) and assign him a part with the unfaithful ones. (47) Then that slave that understood the will of his master but did not get ready or do in line with his will be beaten with many strokes. (48) But the one that did not understand and so did things deserving of strokes will be beaten with few. Indeed, everyone to whom much was given, much will be demanded of him; and the one whom people put in charge of much, they will demand more than usual of him.” (Parenthesis with added information interjected)

It is apparent that this “faithful steward” has knowledge of his master and makes sure that things are ready.

This passage also shows us how the “slave” who knew but did not get things ready is beaten with “many strokes” or as some render it; “cut in two.”

This passage also shows us that the one that did not understand but still did wrong is not exempt from punishment. This emphasizes the importance to test doctrine against scripture to make sure that we are not disapproved somehow. (2 Corinthians 13:5)

**Luke 12:49-53** “I came to start a fire on the earth... (51) Do YOU imagine I came to give peace on the earth? No, indeed, I tell YOU, but rather division. (52) For from now on there will be five in one house divided, three against two and two against three. (53) They will be divided, father against son and son against father, mother against daughter and daughter against [her] mother, mother-in-law against [her] daughter-in-law and daughter-in-law against [her] mother-in-law.”

This symbolic “fire” divides families. It is the truth of the scriptures. There will be some who will firstly trust in their imperfect religious leaders and then there are those who only put their full trust in the scriptures.

This happened in the first century and it will happen again for our day. Actually, it has already started to a degree, but it will be much more apparent as we find ourselves in the last time period of 1,335 days just before Jesus “stands up.” It is because this is the time

period that Satan focuses on those “chosen ones” when he is “hurled” to the earth. There are many scriptures to refer to in this regard.

**Luke 13:6-9** “Then he went on to tell this illustration: ‘A certain man had a fig tree planted in his vineyard, and he came looking for fruit on it, but found none. (7) Then he said to the vine-dresser, “Here it is three years that I have come looking for fruit on this fig tree, but have found none. Cut it down! Why should it keep the ground useless?” (8) In reply he said to him, “Master, let it alone this year, until I dig around it and put on manure; (9) and if then it produces fruit in the future, [well and good]; but if not, you shall cut it down.” ‘ “

This illustration seems to be expounding on the previous **verses 3-5** in which Jesus states; “No, indeed, I tell YOU; but, unless YOU repent, YOU will all likewise be destroyed...”

So, what is there to repent of? It seems that these “certain ones” (verse 1) were not true disciples of Jesus. But even John the Baptist admonished the common people to repent. They all needed to straighten their worship to Jehovah. Their worship had become corrupted. (**Luke 3:3-6**)

1. This also ties in with other scriptures such as **Malachi 4:5,6** that if the straightening work would not be done, the earth (of man) would be destroyed! It is like the account of Sodom and Gomorrah. If there were just enough righteous people there, it would not have been destroyed by God. (**Genesis 18:32**)

**Luke 13:20,21** “And again he said: ‘With what shall I compare the kingdom of God? (21) It is like leaven, which a woman took and hid in (or “mixed in”) three large measures of flour until the whole mass was fermented.’ “(Parentheses with information interjected)

This shows how the kingdom of God starts small but then completely engulfs.

This could be compared to **Daniel 2:31-45** where the kingdom of God is a stone that struck an image representing kingdoms of the earth and destroys the image. But the stone becomes a large mountain that fills the “whole earth.” (vs.35) This stone that becomes this all-encompassing mountain, is the kingdom of God and will stand to “times indefinite.” (vs.44)

**Luke 13:23-30** “Now a certain said to him: ‘Lord, are those who are being saved few?’ He said to them: (24) ‘Exert yourselves vigorously to get in through the narrow door, because many, I tell YOU, will seek to get in but will not be able, (25) when once the householder has got up and locked the door, and YOU start to stand outside and to knock at the door, saying, “Sir, open to us.” But in answer he will say to YOU, “I do not know where YOU are from.” (26) Then YOU will start saying, “We ate and drank in front of you, and you taught in our broad ways.” (27) But he will speak and say to YOU, “I do not know where YOU are from. Get away from me, all YOU workers of unrighteousness!” (28) There is where [YOUR] weeping and the gnashing of [YOUR] teeth will be, when YOU see Abraham and Isaac and Jacob and all the prophets in the kingdom of God, but yourselves thrown outside. (29) Furthermore, people will come from eastern parts and western, and from north and south, and will recline at the table in the kingdom of God. (30) And look! there are those last who will be first, and there are those first who will be last.’ “

We find that ones will have to “exert” themselves to enter the kingdom. This “exertion” is a spiritual exertion. But it seems that although some exert themselves as a person of God, it does not mean that they will automatically be accepted into the kingdom. But it is only those who exert themselves righteously that will be accepted. The others have wasted their time.

This “last – first” and “first – last” can have many applications. However, in this case, it seems to be referring to those who demand the “first place” among others and they also flaunt themselves as being righteous and superior to others. Yet, it is the righteous-humble that will be exalted because they look to God rather than to men. Someone can appear “humble” but not want to search for God and so their worship would not be acceptable to God. (2 Corinthians 11:14,15)

This can also apply to the Jews as a national people. For they were the first nation that had a covenant with Jehovah. But they bought themselves out from under it with 30 pieces of silver. (**Zechariah 11:12,13**) And Jehovah turned to the nations to call people for his name. (**Amos 9:11,12**) So, many of the Jews will find themselves “last” and others of foreign nations will be “first” in God’s eyes.

**Luke 14:16-24** “[Jesus] said to him: ‘A certain man was spreading a grand evening meal, and he invited many. (17) And he sent his slave out at the hour of the evening meal to say to the invited ones, “Come, because things are now ready.” (18) But they all in common started to beg off. The first said to him, “I bought a field and need to go out and see it; I ask you, Have me excused.” (19) And another said, “I bought five yoke of cattle and am going to examine them; I ask you, Have me excused.” (20) Still another said, “I just married a wife and for this reason I cannot come.” (21) So the slave came up and reported these things to the master. Then the householder became wrathful and said to his slave, “Go out quickly into the broad ways and the lanes of the city, and bring in here the poor and crippled and blind and lame.” (22) In time the slave said, “Master, what you ordered has been done, and yet there is room.” (23) And the master said to the slave, “Go out into the roads and the fenced-in places, and compel them to come in, that my house may be filled. (24) For I say to YOU people, none of those men that were invited shall have a taste of my evening meal.” ‘ “

Here we have the original ones who were invited to a “grand evening meal” begging off. They made excuses of different types not to come. So, the master invited others that were not originally invited to the meal to fill his house.

This would apply well to the old Jewish nation. They refused to recognize the Christ. They were the first ones given the opportunity, but they rejected it. So, God turned his attention to the nations to “fill his house.” Compare **Romans 11:25,26**

**Romans 11:25-28** “For I do not want YOU, brothers, to be ignorant of this sacred secret, in order for YOU not to be discreet in your own eyes: that a dulling of sensibilities has happened in part to Israel until the full number (or “the fullness”) of people of the nations has come in, (26) and in this manner all Israel will be saved. Just as it is written: ‘The

deliverer will come out of Zion and turn away ungodly practices from Jacob. (27) And this is the covenant on my part with them, when I take their sins away.’ “

This is talking about spiritual Israel. Compare Romans 11:13-24 where it speaks of a natural olive tree that has branches grafted into it from a “wild olive” tree. God does not spare the natural branches due to their lack of faith and then he grafts in branches from the wild olive tree. Most likely due to their faith. But it interesting how Paul states that God can graft the natural branches back in, if he wants to. (vs.24) Compare **Matthew 8:5-13** where an army officer’s faith is so great that Jesus is amazed and states that “no one in Israel have I found so great a faith.” He then speaks of ones from the nations reclining at the table with Abraham and Isaac and Jacob in the kingdom of the heavens. But “the sons of the kingdom” would be “thrown into the darkness outside.” See **Amos 9:8-12**

Compare the similar account at **Matthew 22:1-14**. Notice the terms “The marriage feast is ready, but those invited are not worthy” (vs.8); “For there are many invited, but few chosen.” (vs.14)

**Luke 15:11-32 The prodigal son;** “Then he said: ‘A certain man had two sons. (12) And the younger of them said to his father, “Father, give me a part of the property that falls to my share.” Then he divided his means of living to them. (13) Later, after not many days, the younger son gathered all things together and traveled abroad into a distant country, and there squandered his property by living a debauched life. (14) When he had spent everything, a severe famine occurred throughout that country, and he started to be in need. (15) He even went and attached himself to one of the citizens of that country, and he sent him into his fields to herd swine. (16) And he used to desire to be filled with the carob pods which the swine were eating, and no one would give him [anything]. (17) When he came to his senses, he said, “How many of the hired men of my father are abounding with bread, while I am perishing here from famine! (18) I will rise and journey to my father and say to him: ‘Father, I have sinned against heaven and against you. (19) I am no longer worthy of being called your son. Make me as one of your hired men.’ “ (20) So he rose and went to his father. While he was yet a long way off, his father caught sight of him and was moved with pity, and he ran and fell upon his neck and tenderly kissed him. (21) Then the son said to him, “Father, I have sinned against heaven and against you. I am no longer worthy of being called your son. Make me as one of your hired men.” (22) But the father said to his slaves, “Quick! bring out a robe, the best one, and clothe him with it, and put a ring on his hand and sandals on his feet. (23) And bring the fattened young bull, slaughter it and let us eat and enjoy ourselves, (24) because this my son was dead and came to life again; he was lost and was found.” And they started to enjoy themselves. (25) Now his older son was in the field; and as he came and got near the house he heard a music concert and dancing. (26) So he called one of the servants to him and inquired what these things meant. (27) He said to him, “Your brother has come, and your father slaughtered the fattened young bull, because he got him back in good health.” (28) But he became wrathful and was unwilling to go in. Then his father came out and began to entreat him. (29) In reply he said to his father, “Here it is so many years I have slaved for you and never once did I transgress your commandment, and yet to me you never once gave me a kid for me to enjoy myself with my friends. (30) But as soon as this your son who ate up

your means of living with harlots arrived, you slaughtered the fattened young bull for him.” (31) Then he said to him, “Child, you have always been with me, and all the things that are mine are yours; (32) but we just had to enjoy ourselves and rejoice, because this your brother was dead and came to life, and he was lost and was found.” ‘ ‘

One lesson we can derive from this illustration is the need to show love to those who repent no matter what they did.

This illustration seems to be another example of the two previous illustrations. Religious leaders were looking down on Jesus for welcoming sinners and tax collectors to come to him and hear him. (verses 1,2) Apparently, they were looking down on him.

**Luke 15:4-7** Talks about someone who loses a sheep out of a hundred. Wouldn't he look for the lost one? And when he finds it, he would invite his friends and neighbors for a celebration!

**Luke 15:8-10** Talks about a woman who loses a valuable coin. She searches for it and upon finding it, she invites her friends and neighbors together for a celebration!

In all the above illustrations, I believe that the main point is found in verses 7 and 10:

**Luke 15:7** “I tell YOU that thus there will be more joy in heaven over one sinner that repents than over ninety-nine righteous ones who have no need of repentance.” This shows us how valuable we all are in God's eyes. Even if we sin, we can turn back from our bad ways. Compare Ezekiel 18:21-23

This illustration can also be applied to when ones straighten their worship to God. Especially those ones who will be initially rejected by Jehovah as not being fit to rule with his son. But after being cleansed, they will no longer support themselves on men but only on God. (**Daniel 11:35; Isaiah 10:16-22**)

**Luke 19:11-27** “While they were listening to these things he spoke in addition an illustration, because he was near Jerusalem and they were imagining that the kingdom of God was going to display itself instantly. (12) Therefore he said: ‘A certain man of noble birth traveled to a distant land to secure kingly power for himself and to return. (13) Calling ten slaves of his he gave them ten minas and told them, “Do business till I come.” (14) But his citizens hated him and sent out a body of ambassadors after him, to say, “We do not want this [man] to become king over us.” (15) Eventually when he got back after having secured the kingly power, he commanded to be called to him these slaves to whom he had given the silver money, in order to ascertain what they had gained by business activity. (16) Then the first one presented himself, saying, “Lord, your mina gained ten minas.” (17) So he said to him, “Well done, good slave! Because in a very small matter you have proved yourself faithful, hold authority over ten cities.” (18) Now the second came, saying, “Your mina, Lord, made five minas.” (19) He said to this one also, “You, too, be in charge of five cities.” (20) But a different one came, saying, “Lord, here is your mina, that I kept laid away in a cloth. (21) You see, I was in fear of you, because you are a harsh man; you take up what you did not deposit and you reap what you did not sow.” (22) He said to him, “Out of your own mouth I judge you, wicked slave. You knew, did you, that I am a harsh man, taking up what

I did not deposit and reaping what I did not sow? (23) Hence why is it you did not put my silver money in a bank? Then on my arrival I would have collected it with interest.” (24) With that he said to those standing by, “Take the mina from him and give it to him that has the ten minas.” (25) But they said to him, “Lord, he has ten minas!”- (26) “I say to YOU, to everyone that has, more will be given; but from the one that does not have, even what he has will be taken away. (27) Moreover, these enemies of mine that did not want me to become king over them BRING here and slaughter them before me.” ‘ ‘

One of the main purposes of this illustration was to explain to those around Jesus at that time was the thought that the kingdom was not going to display itself instantly as some had desired and thought. But he showed through illustration that other things had to happen first. Jesus, being of “noble birth” had to go away for a while but he would return. But on his return, he would have an accounting of those who were handling his “monies” or that is, “his work.” How have religions cared for Jesus’ work?

The personality differences are striking. From the one who did a lot with the “Lord’s” money to the one who hid it.

Why would anyone hide the “Lord’s money?” Perhaps they are not interested in eagerly pursuing the “Lord’s work.” But rather are partial to it. That is, they only teach the parts that do not conflict with their own created religious doctrine. Thus, they hide and avoid truth in favor to protect doctrines and traditions of man. Perhaps they reason that they do not want to make a mistake so they will not delve on some subjects in the scriptures. They want to escape accountability. But is that loving? If they really had love for others and Jesus and his Father, they would try their best to help others. This reminds me of ones that hide the Almighty’s name, Jehovah. They are “scared” that they might misuse it – So they don’t use it at all. So, in all actuality, they dishonor God for their own honor among themselves. Crooked reasoning for sure! Jehovah did not have it placed in scripture just for it to be removed or not used by man! Those wicked men pursue their own “interest” – Not God’s. That is what Satan desires men to do.

**Luke 20:9-19** “A man planted a vineyard and let it out to cultivators, and he traveled abroad for considerable time. (10) But in due season he sent out a slave to the cultivators, that they might give him some of the fruit of the vineyard. The cultivators, however, sent him away empty, after beating him up. (11) But he repeated and sent them a different slave. that one also they beat up and dishonored and sent away empty. (12) Yet again he sent a third; this one also they wounded and threw out. (13) At this the owner of the vineyard said. ‘What shall I do? I will send my son the beloved. Likely they will respect this one.’ (14) When the cultivators caught sight of him they went reasoning with one another, saying, ‘This is the heir; let us kill him, that the inheritance may become ours.’ (15) With that they threw him outside the vineyard and killed him. What, therefore, will the owner of the vineyard do to them? (16) He will come and destroy these cultivators and will give the vineyard to others.’ ... (19) The scribes and the chief priests now sought to get their hands on him in that very hour, but they feared the people; for they perceived that he spoke this illustration with them in mind.”

See comments above for **Luke 14:16-24**



See **Matthew 21:33-46**

Isn't it a sad thing when religious leaders are so willing to defend their own self-righteous establishments rather than defend God's word against falsehood? The self-righteous Pharisees felt so strongly about that they did not see the Christ right in front of them! Will religious leaders today see what is going on when we are in the time period of tribulation of the approximately 3.5 years? Will they seek Jehovah's righteousness or try to protect their own? Time will tell.

**Luke 21:29-31** "With that he spoke an illustration to them: 'Note the fig tree and all the other trees: (30) when they are already in the bud, by observing it YOU know for yourselves that now the summer is near. (31) In this way YOU also when YOU see these things occurring, know that the kingdom of God is near.' "

Here Jesus shows us that his followers will know that God's kingdom is near, from the signs that they see. Not a date. This was for his disciples in his day and for his disciples for our day. Sad to say, most will be spiritually asleep when they need to be awake.

## The Last Supper and The Value of Jesus' Sacrifice



By putting together the following accounts of the same event, we can learn a lot.

(Lessons are after the accounts.)

See also [Who is the Son of the Almighty?](#)

Compare the accounts at Matthew 26:19-30, Mark 14:16-26, Luke 22:13-30, and John 13:1-14:31 below:

[Matthew 26:19-30 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>19</sup> The disciples did as Jesus commanded them, and they prepared the Passover.

<sup>20</sup> Now when evening had come, he was reclining at the table with the twelve disciples. <sup>21</sup> As they were eating, he said, “Most certainly I tell you that one of you will betray me.”

<sup>22</sup> They were exceedingly sorrowful, and each began to ask him, “It isn’t me, is it, Lord?”

<sup>23</sup> He answered, “He who dipped his hand with me in the dish will betray me. <sup>24</sup> The Son of Man goes even as it is written of him, but woe to that man through whom the Son of Man is betrayed! It would be better for that man if he had not been born.”

<sup>25</sup> Judas, who betrayed him, answered, “It isn’t me, is it, Rabbi?”

He said to him, “You said it.”

<sup>26</sup> As they were eating, Jesus took bread, gave thanks for<sup>[a]</sup> it, and broke it. He gave to the disciples and said, “Take, eat; this is my body.” <sup>27</sup> He took the cup, gave thanks, and gave to them, saying, “All of you drink it, <sup>28</sup> for this is my blood of the new covenant, which is poured out for many for the remission of sins. <sup>29</sup> But I tell you that I will not drink of this fruit of the vine from now on, until that day when I drink it anew with you in my Father’s Kingdom.”

<sup>30</sup> When they had sung a hymn, they went out to the Mount of Olives.”

[Mark 14:16-26 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>16</sup> His disciples went out, and came into the city, and found things as he had said to them, and they prepared the Passover.

<sup>17</sup> When it was evening he came with the twelve. <sup>18</sup> As they sat and were eating, Jesus said, “Most certainly I tell you, one of you will betray me—he who eats with me.”

<sup>19</sup> They began to be sorrowful, and to ask him one by one, “Surely not I?” And another said, “Surely not I?”

<sup>20</sup> He answered them, “It is one of the twelve, he who dips with me in the dish. <sup>21</sup> For the Son of Man goes, even as it is written about him, but woe to that man by whom the Son of Man is betrayed! It would be better for that man if he had not been born.”

<sup>22</sup> As they were eating, Jesus took bread, and when he had blessed, he broke it, and gave to them, and said, “Take, eat. This is my body.”

<sup>23</sup> He took the cup, and when he had given thanks, he gave to them. They all drank of it. <sup>24</sup> He said to them, “This is my blood of the new covenant, which is poured out for many. <sup>25</sup> Most certainly I tell you, I will no more drink of the fruit of the vine, until that day when I drink it anew in God’s Kingdom.” <sup>26</sup> When they had sung a hymn, they went out to the Mount of Olives.”

[Luke 22:13-30 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>13</sup> They went, found things as Jesus had told them, and they prepared the Passover. <sup>14</sup> When the hour had come, he sat down with the twelve apostles. <sup>15</sup> He said to them, “I have earnestly desired to eat this Passover with you before I suffer, <sup>16</sup> for I tell you, I will no longer by any means eat of it until it is fulfilled in God’s Kingdom.” <sup>17</sup> He received a cup, and when he had given thanks, he said, “Take this, and share it among yourselves, <sup>18</sup> for I tell you, I will not drink at all again from the fruit of the vine, until God’s Kingdom comes.”

<sup>19</sup> He took bread, and when he had given thanks, he broke, and gave it to them, saying, “This is my body which is given for you. Do this in memory of me.” <sup>20</sup> Likewise,

he took the cup after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.<sup>21</sup> But behold, the hand of him who betrays me is with me on the table.<sup>22</sup> The Son of Man indeed goes, as it has been determined, but woe to that man through whom he is betrayed!”

<sup>23</sup> They began to question among themselves, which of them it was who would do this thing.<sup>24</sup> A dispute also arose among them, which of them was considered to be greatest.<sup>25</sup> He said to them, “The kings of the nations lord it over them, and those who have authority over them are called ‘benefactors.’<sup>26</sup> But not so with you. But one who is the greater among you, let him become as the younger, and one who is governing, as one who serves.<sup>27</sup> For who is greater, one who sits at the table, or one who serves? Isn’t it he who sits at the table? But I am among you as one who serves.<sup>28</sup> But you are those who have continued with me in my trials.<sup>29</sup> I confer on you a kingdom, even as my Father conferred on me,<sup>30</sup> that you may eat and drink at my table in my Kingdom. You will sit on thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel.”

### [John 13:1 – 14:31 \(WEB\);](#)

13 Now before the feast of the Passover, Jesus, knowing that his time had come that he would depart from this world to the Father, having loved his own who were in the world, he loved them to the end.<sup>2</sup> During supper, the devil having already put into the heart of Judas Iscariot, Simon’s son, to betray him,<sup>3</sup> Jesus, knowing that the Father had given all things into his hands, and that he came from God, and was going to God,<sup>4</sup> arose from supper, and laid aside his outer garments. He took a towel and wrapped a towel around his waist.<sup>5</sup> Then he poured water into the basin, and began to wash the disciples’ feet and to wipe them with the towel that was wrapped around him.<sup>6</sup> Then he came to Simon Peter. He said to him, “Lord, do you wash my feet?”

<sup>7</sup> Jesus answered him, “You don’t know what I am doing now, but you will understand later.”

<sup>8</sup> Peter said to him, “You will never wash my feet!”

Jesus answered him, “If I don’t wash you, you have no part with me.”

<sup>9</sup> Simon Peter said to him, “Lord, not my feet only, but also my hands and my head!”

<sup>10</sup> Jesus said to him, “Someone who has bathed only needs to have his feet washed, but is completely clean. You are clean, but not all of you.”<sup>11</sup> For he knew him who would betray him, therefore he said, “You are not all clean.”<sup>12</sup> So when he had washed their feet, put his outer garment back on, and sat down again, he said to them, “Do you know what I have done to you?<sup>13</sup> You call me, ‘Teacher’ and ‘Lord.’ You say so correctly, for so I am.<sup>14</sup> If I then, the Lord and the Teacher, have washed your feet, you also ought to wash one another’s feet.<sup>15</sup> For I have given you an example, that you should also do as I have done to you.<sup>16</sup> Most certainly I tell you, a servant is not greater than his lord, neither is one who is sent greater than he who sent him.<sup>17</sup> If you know these things, blessed are you if you do them.<sup>18</sup> I don’t speak concerning all of you. I know whom I have chosen.

But that the Scripture may be fulfilled, ‘He who eats bread with me has lifted up his heel against me.’ [Psalm 41:9](#) <sup>19</sup> From now on, I tell you before it happens, that when it happens, you may believe that I am he. <sup>20</sup> Most certainly I tell you, he who receives whomever I send, receives me; and he who receives me, receives him who sent me.”

<sup>21</sup> When Jesus had said this, he was troubled in spirit, and testified, “Most certainly I tell you that one of you will betray me.”

<sup>22</sup> The disciples looked at one another, perplexed about whom he spoke. <sup>23</sup> One of his disciples, whom Jesus loved, was at the table, leaning against Jesus’ breast. <sup>24</sup> Simon Peter therefore beckoned to him, and said to him, “Tell us who it is of whom he speaks.”

<sup>25</sup> He, leaning back, as he was, on Jesus’ breast, asked him, “Lord, who is it?”

<sup>26</sup> Jesus therefore answered, “It is he to whom I will give this piece of bread when I have dipped it.” So when he had dipped the piece of bread, he gave it to Judas, the son of Simon Iscariot. <sup>27</sup> After the piece of bread, then Satan entered into him.

Then Jesus said to him, “What you do, do quickly.”

<sup>28</sup> Now nobody at the table knew why he said this to him. <sup>29</sup> For some thought, because Judas had the money box, that Jesus said to him, “Buy what things we need for the feast,” or that he should give something to the poor. <sup>30</sup> Therefore having received that morsel, he went out immediately. It was night.

<sup>31</sup> When he had gone out, Jesus said, “Now the Son of Man has been glorified, and God has been glorified in him. <sup>32</sup> If God has been glorified in him, God will also glorify him in himself, and he will glorify him immediately. <sup>33</sup> Little children, I will be with you a little while longer. You will seek me, and as I said to the Jews, ‘Where I am going, you can’t come,’ so now I tell you. <sup>34</sup> A new commandment I give to you, that you love one another. Just as I have loved you, you also love one another. <sup>35</sup> By this everyone will know that you are my disciples, if you have love for one another.”

<sup>36</sup> Simon Peter said to him, “Lord, where are you going?”

Jesus answered, “Where I am going, you can’t follow now, but you will follow afterwards.”

<sup>37</sup> Peter said to him, “Lord, why can’t I follow you now? I will lay down my life for you.”

<sup>38</sup> Jesus answered him, “Will you lay down your life for me? Most certainly I tell you, the rooster won’t crow until you have denied me three times.

14 “Don’t let your heart be troubled. Believe in God. Believe also in me. <sup>2</sup> In my Father’s house are many homes. If it weren’t so, I would have told you. I am going to prepare a place for you. <sup>3</sup> If I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again, and will receive you to myself; that where I am, you may be there also. <sup>4</sup> You know where I go, and you know the way.”



<sup>5</sup> Thomas said to him, “Lord, we don’t know where you are going. How can we know the way?”

<sup>6</sup> Jesus said to him, “I am the way, the truth, and the life. No one comes to the Father, except through me. <sup>7</sup> If you had known me, you would have known my Father also. From now on, you know him, and have seen him.”

<sup>8</sup> Philip said to him, “Lord, show us the Father, and that will be enough for us.”

<sup>9</sup> Jesus said to him, “Have I been with you such a long time, and do you not know me, Philip? He who has seen me has seen the Father. How do you say, ‘Show us the Father?’ <sup>10</sup> Don’t you believe that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? The words that I tell you, I speak not from myself; but the Father who lives in me does his works. <sup>11</sup> Believe me that I am in the Father, and the Father in me; or else believe me for the very works’ sake. <sup>12</sup> Most certainly I tell you, he who believes in me, the works that I do, he will do also; and he will do greater works than these, because I am going to my Father. <sup>13</sup> Whatever you will ask in my name, I will do it, that the Father may be glorified in the Son. <sup>14</sup> If you will ask anything in my name, I will do it. <sup>15</sup> If you love me, keep my commandments. <sup>16</sup> I will pray to the Father, and he will give you another Counselor, <sup>[a]</sup> that he may be with you forever: <sup>17</sup> the Spirit of truth, whom the world can’t receive; for it doesn’t see him and doesn’t know him. You know him, for he lives with you, and will be in you. <sup>18</sup> I will not leave you orphans. I will come to you. <sup>19</sup> Yet a little while, and the world will see me no more; but you will see me. Because I live, you will live also. <sup>20</sup> In that day you will know that I am in my Father, and you in me, and I in you. <sup>21</sup> One who has my commandments and keeps them, that person is one who loves me. One who loves me will be loved by my Father, and I will love him, and will reveal myself to him.”

<sup>22</sup> Judas (not Iscariot) said to him, “Lord, what has happened that you are about to reveal yourself to us, and not to the world?”

<sup>23</sup> Jesus answered him, “If a man loves me, he will keep my word. My Father will love him, and we will come to him, and make our home with him. <sup>24</sup> He who doesn’t love me doesn’t keep my words. The word which you hear isn’t mine, but the Father’s who sent me. <sup>25</sup> I have said these things to you while still living with you. <sup>26</sup> But the Counselor, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, will teach you all things, and will remind you of all that I said to you. <sup>27</sup> Peace I leave with you. My peace I give to you; not as the world gives, I give to you. Don’t let your heart be troubled, neither let it be fearful. <sup>28</sup> You heard how I told you, ‘I go away, and I come to you.’ If you loved me, you would have rejoiced, because I said ‘I am going to my Father;’ for the Father is greater than I. <sup>29</sup> Now I have told you before it happens so that when it happens, you may believe. <sup>30</sup> I will no more speak much with you, for the prince of the world comes, and he has nothing in me. <sup>31</sup> But that the world may know that I love the Father, and as the Father commanded me, even so I do. Arise, let’s go from here.

### ***Conclusions:***

Remember what John the baptizer stated when Jesus came to him as recorded at [John 1:29 \(WEB\)](#); “The next day, he saw Jesus coming to him, and said, “Behold, the Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world!”

The last meal that Jesus had with his disciples highly symbolized the value of what he was talking to the crowds about earlier. That is, the value of his blood and flesh, symbolized by the bread and wine, in sacrifice for all of mankind. Jesus was to be the “sacrificial lamb” for the redemption of mankind, just as the sacrificial lamb provided salvation back in Egypt.

Partaking of the wine and unleavened bread signifies acknowledging and remembering Jesus’ ransom sacrifice for redemption which includes the forgiveness of sins (not being imperfect flesh) – But not sins against his father (Jehovah) as only Jehovah can forgive those. Compare Matthew 12:31-32; Zechariah 3:1-7

Judas was eating and drinking with them as he dipped his bread as Jesus mentioned. Compare [Luke 22:14-21 WEB](#) where Jesus states the hand of his betrayer is at the table. This is after Jesus told them to eat and drink. However, Judas must have left by the time Jesus made a covenant with his loyal disciples for a kingdom, a little later that night ([Luke 22:28-30 WEB](#)). Judas was working toward betraying Jesus.

The “new covenant” mentioned in Luke 22:19-20 is not the same as the “covenant” mentioned in verses 28-30 of the same chapter. The “new covenant” was for the forgiveness of sins of many. With the forgiveness of sins via a perfect sacrifice, in this case, Jesus’ body, there is no need for any more sacrifices. Compare Daniel 9:27b where it states that “At the half of the week he will cause sacrifice and gift offering to cease.”

The act of eating and drinking of the bread and wine does not differentiate between those who will rule with Christ or not, as some think. It’s about remembering the value of his perfect sacrifice of obedience to the Law for everybody. That is why he was sent. As John 3:17 brings out, Jesus was sent for the world, not just those who will rule with him. His perfect sacrifice (of obedience to the Law) and the value it has for all of mankind is what the meal is about. The covenant to those 11 loyal remaining disciples was made later, after the meal.

[John 3:17 \(WEB\)](#): “<sup>17</sup> For God didn’t send his Son into the world to judge the world, but that the world should be saved through him.”

### ***Further information:***

Unleavened bread and wine were used, and **it could be done anytime** as it is brought out by Paul’s thoughts at 1 Corinthians 5:6-8; 11:20-34.

[1 Cor. 5:6-8 \(WEB\)](#):

“<sup>6</sup> Your boasting is not good. Don’t you know that a little yeast leavens the whole lump? <sup>7</sup> Purge out the old yeast, that you may be a new lump, even as you are unleavened. For indeed Christ, our Passover, has been sacrificed in our place. <sup>8</sup> Therefore let’s keep



the feast, not with old yeast, neither with the yeast of malice and wickedness, but with the unleavened bread of sincerity and truth.”

[1 Cor. 5:11:20-34 \(WEB\):](#)

“<sup>20</sup> When therefore you assemble yourselves together, it is not the Lord’s supper that you eat. <sup>21</sup> For in your eating each one takes his own supper first. One is hungry, and another is drunken. <sup>22</sup> What, don’t you have houses to eat and to drink in? Or do you despise God’s assembly and put them to shame who don’t have enough? What shall I tell you? Shall I praise you? In this I don’t praise you. <sup>23</sup> For I received from the Lord that which also I delivered to you, that the Lord Jesus on the night in which he was betrayed took bread. <sup>24</sup> When he had given thanks, he broke it and said, “Take, eat. This is my body, which is broken for you. Do this in memory of me.” <sup>25</sup> In the same way he also took the cup, after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood. Do this, as often as you drink, in memory of me.” <sup>26</sup> For as often as you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim the Lord’s death until he comes. <sup>27</sup> Therefore whoever eats this bread or drinks the Lord’s cup in a way unworthy of the Lord will be guilty of the body and the blood of the Lord. <sup>28</sup> But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of the bread, and drink of the cup. <sup>29</sup> For he who eats and drinks in an unworthy way eats and drinks judgment to himself if he doesn’t discern the Lord’s body. <sup>30</sup> For this cause many among you are weak and sickly, and not a few sleep. <sup>31</sup> For if we discerned ourselves, we wouldn’t be judged. <sup>32</sup> But when we are judged, we are punished by the Lord, that we may not be condemned with the world. <sup>33</sup> Therefore, my brothers, when you come together to eat, wait for one another. <sup>34</sup> But if anyone is hungry, let him eat at home, lest your coming together be for judgment. The rest I will set in order whenever I come.”

Although not crucial, there is much speculation regarding **the timing of the events** and on what days things happened. It is important to remember that a “day” was considered to start at sunset. Perhaps it might be easier for some to think of it as a “date” or “time period for one day.”

**One of the best explanations that I could find for the timing of the events are below:**

Much of this has been taken from *The Original Gospel of Matthew Volume 2* by Standford Rives. Esq. page 118. I believe that there are a few mistakes by either the author of the book or by the works of Daniel Gregg, of which he was referencing. I have summarized **the timeline below:**

Jesus had the arrangements to have the location for the Passover meal prepared. This was done ahead of time to rid the house of fermented bread. This was mentioned (Matthew 26:2) on Nissan 13 (Monday). Remember, Nissan 14 (Tuesday) would start at sunset, although it still would be “Monday” for a few hours.

Jesus has the “Lord’s Supper” at the beginning of Nissan 14 (Early Tuesday). This was not the official Passover meal, as it was not Nissan 15. Judas was among those eating the meal, but then left early. Sometime after the meal, Jesus and his remaining disciples went out at night. Jesus

was betrayed by Judas. Jesus died as the sacrificial lamb around 3PM, on Nissan 14. This was late Tuesday before sunset. After sunset would be the start of Nissan 15.

In Egypt, the “Passover lamb” was killed around 3PM, on Nissan 14, and the blood was sprinkled on the doorposts, on Nissan 14. When the sun set, it was Nissan 15. A few hours later, around midnight, the Angel of Yahweh knew to pass by (pass over) the homes that had the lamb’s blood on the doorposts. No one would be put to death in those homes. The Passover meal was eaten on Nissan 15. As for the rest of the homes in Egypt, the Angel of Yahweh put to death all the first-born sons. Pharaoh immediately commanded the Israelites to go! God had freed his people! (Exodus 12)

### **More information regarding the value of Jesus’ sacrifice:**

John the baptizer, upon seeing Jesus, proclaimed, “Look, the lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world!” (John 1:29)

We get some good lessons from just this proclamation.

In ancient Israel, sacrifices were presented to Yahweh, for the forgiveness of sins. However, the practice had to continue because there was not a perfect sacrifice – Until Jesus.

Jesus’ sacrifice was for the redemption of sins, for the entire world. John did not say that this was just for Israel, but for the world! (John 3:16-17)

As Jesus had his last evening meal with his disciples, he used the bread in an illustrative way to represent his flesh. He also used the wine to represent his blood (1 Corinthians 11:24-25).

Many people are rightly confused with the timing of the events surrounding the death of Jesus. Terminology has changed over the centuries, and we have to deal with different ways of defining parts of a day, such as when a day starts, or different time periods of a 24-hour period. Simply put, for those who do not know, the Jewish “day” runs from sunset to sunset. Most of us are used to a “day” running from midnight to midnight. So, the Jewish day will start a few hours earlier than what most of us are used to.

Going back to the original writings of the events, it helps clarify matters.

Let’s start with the account in Exodus 12 regarding the last day Israel was bound by Pharaoh of Egypt:

Exodus 12 (NIV);

Notice that the lamb was to be slaughtered during the “twilight” on the 14<sup>th</sup> of Nissan ([Ex.12:6 NIV](#)). It is important to realize that this is using the terminology of early commentators that held the view that “twilight” is a period before sunset and that “night” begins immediately with sunset. ([Jewishvirtuallibrary.org / “Day and Night”](#)) In contrast, modern Jewish law states that from the time that the sun sets to “all dark” is to be called, “twilight.” We are going to focus on the oldest terminology related to the time period, where “twilight” was considered a time period

before sunset. That fits with Exodus 12. Interestingly, the NETS words the timing of the killing of the Lamb as, “shall slay it towards evening.”

Notice the instructions to not eat the meat raw or boil it but to roast it over fire (Ex.12:8-9). This had to take time. If the lamb was slaughtered at twilight, on the 14<sup>th</sup> of Nissan, the meat and the rest of the meal probably was not ready to eat until into the 15<sup>th</sup> of Nissan, after the sun had set.

**The Orthodox Jewish Bible clarifies it by stating in [Ex. 12:6-8](#);**

<sup>6</sup> And it will be with you for mishmeret (examination, checking for blemishes) up until the fourteenth day of the same month; and kol Kehal Adat Yisroel shall slaughter (shachat) it in the afternoon [before dark].

<sup>7</sup> And they shall take of the dahm, and strike it upon the two mezuzot (doorposts) and on the mashkof (lintel) of the batim (houses), wherein they shall eat it.

<sup>8</sup> And they shall eat the basar in that night, roasted over eish, and matzot; and with maror they shall eat it.

Compare [Ex. 12:6-8 \(NIV\)](#);

<sup>6</sup> Take care of them until the fourteenth day of the month, when all the members of the community of Israel must slaughter them at twilight.<sup>7</sup> Then they are to take some of the blood and put it on the sides and tops of the doorframes of the houses where they eat the lambs. <sup>8</sup> That same night they are to eat the meat roasted over the fire, along with bitter herbs, and bread made without yeast.

Notice that the Lamb was to be slaughtered in the afternoon, Nissan 14 and that the eating of the meal was to be at nighttime, Nissan 15

It was at midnight, Nissan 15, that God’s angel killed all the firstborn in Egypt. But he “passed over” the homes with the blood of the sacrifice on the door posts. That blood meant life! Shortly after that, still during the night of Nissan 15, Pharaoh summoned Moses and Arron and told them to leave Egypt with the Israelites! The Israelites left in a hurry and had little time to prepare food for the trip. They had no time to allow bread to ferment with yeast. They had to go! And thus, for a reminder, this is why during Nissan 15, bread that is eaten has no yeast (Ex. 12:31-39).

Interestingly, Exodus 12:48-51 shows that foreigners could partake just as a natural Hebrew.

## **What does it mean to be “Born Again” and was Jesus born again?**

**The term “to be born again” signifies someone to have a “fresh start.”** That is, to repent of one’s sins and start over with the intent of pleasing God. This is usually symbolized by water baptism. In Jesus’ case he did not need to repent of sins because he was sinless. Even John the baptizer knew this. John had been baptizing Israelites with the thought that Israel had to be made ready for the appearance of the messiah. They needed to repent. Jesus did not. However, Jesus’ baptism was to show his Father and others that it was time for him to commence the most important task for the reason he was sent by his Father; To open the doors of salvation, for the entire world. It is up to us to turn around, a.k.a. “be born again” and go through those doors.

## The Rich Man and Lazarus. What does it mean?

Simply put, this is an allegory to drive the point home that those who love to be first in riches with the glory of man rather than with God will be last, in God's sight and kingdom.

Sad to say, many have used this allegory to bolster support for the incorrect thought that people are still conscious after they die and go to either "heaven" or "hell," receiving their reward, at that time. But they miss the point, along with the rest of God's word that contradicts such teachings. So, taking into consideration that the bible says people are "asleep" and "unconscious" in death, what does this story really mean? See *The Soul and Spirit* chapter for more information.

### [Luke 16:19-31 \(YLT\)](#);

<sup>19</sup> ` And — a certain man was rich, and was clothed in purple and fine linen, making merry sumptuously every day,

<sup>20</sup> and there was a certain poor man, by name Lazarus, who was laid at his porch, full of sores,

<sup>21</sup> and desiring to be filled from the crumbs that are falling from the table of the rich man; yea, also the dogs, coming, were licking his sores.

<sup>22</sup> ` And it came to pass, that the poor man died, and that he was carried away by the messengers to the bosom of Abraham — and the rich man also died, and was buried;

<sup>23</sup> and in the hades having lifted up his eyes, being in torments, he doth see Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom,

<sup>24</sup> and having cried, he said, Father Abraham, deal kindly with me, and send Lazarus, that he may dip the tip of his finger in water, and may cool my tongue, because I am distressed in this flame.

<sup>25</sup> ` And Abraham said, Child, remember that thou did receive — thou — thy good things in thy life, and Lazarus in like manner the evil things, and now he is comforted, and thou art distressed;

<sup>26</sup> and besides all these things, between us and you a great chasm is fixed, so that they who are willing to go over from hence unto you are not able, nor do they from thence to us pass through.

<sup>27</sup> ` And he said, I pray thee, then, father, that thou mayest send him to the house of my father,

<sup>28</sup> for I have five brothers, so that he may thoroughly testify to them, that they also may not come to this place of torment.

<sup>29</sup> ` Abraham saith to him, They have Moses and the prophets, let them hear them;

<sup>30</sup> and he said, No, father Abraham, but if any one from the dead may go unto them, they will reform.

<sup>31</sup> And he said to him, If Moses and the prophets they do not hear, neither if one may rise out of the dead will they be persuaded.'

Young's Literal Translation (YLT) uses the word "hades" in verse 23. This is the COMMON grave, dust. For God told Adam, "For dust you are and to dust you will return." (Genesis 3:19) Both the righteous and wicked go there. Death is death. Those in death are conscious of nothing. They are "asleep," in God's eyes. [Ecclesiastes 9:5,10](#); [Lazarus' account](#).

The "rich man" pictured here put his love for money and the glory of men first, more than for God. The rich man's position, in death, is tormenting because there is no escaping or changing it. It could be viewed as a "burning," unrelenting thought. Of course, there is no consciousness in death, but we need to remember that this is an illustration. This "rich man" was probably directed especially at the religious leaders trying to trap Jesus ([Luke 16:14-15](#)). They loved riches and the glory of man that they brought. They, along with many people today, want to be first among men – Seeking the glory of man, rather than the glory of God. These ones who are first, will be last, in the incoming kingdom of God ([Luke 18:9-14](#); [Matthew 19:29-30](#); [Matthew 20:25-28](#))

This figurative Lazarus does not selfishly seek riches or the glory of men but seeks God first. By so doing, this figurative Lazarus ends up having to endure hardship but ends up in a position to be greatly rewarded by God – And will be, upon the arrival of His kingdom.

**The "bosom of Abraham," in verse 22 and 23 is referring to the favored position in God's sight – Not that he was carried to "heaven," as some teach. Keep in mind that this story was told by Jesus before he died and ascended to heaven. Abraham, although dead, had not ascended to heaven. [John 3:13 \(RSV\)](#) states; "<sup>13</sup> No one has ascended into heaven but he who descended from heaven, the Son of man."**

The "chasm" (verse 26) is the state of death. It is an unbreakable barrier by man. There is no consciousness in death. In death, a bad person cannot do something to turn good and a good person cannot do something to turn wicked. However, Daniel and Jesus spoke of a resurrection of both the righteous and unrighteous, once the kingdom of God begins ruling over earth ([Daniel 12:1,2](#); [John 5:28,29](#)). Certainly, the righteous ones mentioned in these two passages, have a favored position with God, although dead, and they will reap their reward when they are resurrected. Just as Daniel was promised in [Daniel 12:13](#)(NIV); "As for you, go your way till the end. You will rest, and then at the end of the days you will rise to receive your allotted inheritance." Daniel was not promised to receive his reward when he died but after he is resurrected, here on earth! Another "favored position" in God's sight would be to have one's name written in the "book of life," as mentioned in multiple parts of the scriptures. An example is where Paul mentions some of whom had labored with him, in the Lord's work – That their names were written in the "book of life." ([Philippians 4:3](#))

## **What We Can Do and Our Personal Relationship with God**

*Seek Jehovah* – not man. Strive for him to be your guide and he will give you the wisdom needed. And have love for others too. God loves them, even if they are wicked. But if they are, he desires them to turn around – And so should we.

Remember what Jesus said to love God and our neighbor as we love ourselves. If we love our neighbor, we will tell them the truths of God and Christ.

Don't forget the power of prayer!

The following scriptures are provided for you to look up for yourself and write comments on how you think each passage might be encouraging to you personally.

**Matthew 5:43-45**

**Matthew 6:9-11**

**Matthew 6:14,15**

**Matthew 7:7,8**

**Matthew 7:21** One should expect to see “powerful works” in the time of the end. But it does not mean that their form of worship is acceptable to Jesus.

**Matthew 20:26**

**Luke 18:1-8**

**Luke 18:19,20 John 3:16**

**John 13:34,35**

**1 John 4:1** – “Test” the “inspired expressions”



**2 Corinthians 13:5**

**2 Chronicles 16:9**

**1 Peter 3:15** “Make a defense”

**Ezekiel 9:4**

**Ezekiel 33:11**

**Daniel 12:3**

**Isaiah 55:6,7**

**Isaiah 66:2,5**

**James 1:5**

**Romans 10:13**

**Jeremiah 9:24**

**Isaiah 40:31**

**Jeremiah 1:8**

**Isaiah 10:16-22**

**Revelation 12:17b** “Who observe the commandments of God and have the work of bearing witness to Jesus.”

This is an important work. This “witness” work is more than telling the truth about Jesus, but it involves showing the nations firmness in following him in truth and wholeheartedly.

Compare **Matthew 10:18; Luke 21:13,14; Revelation 11:3**

**Revelation 22:20**

## Jehovah's (Yahweh's) Organized Heavenly and Earthly Rulership

There are parallels in structure between Satan's kingdom and Jesus' kingdom with Yahweh's (Jehovah's) oversight as Almighty. See [Powerful women of Revelation...](#)

Talking about Satan, Luke 4:5,6 "So he brought him up and showed him all the kingdoms of the inhabited earth in an instant of time; and the Devil said to him: "I will give you all this authority and the glory of them, because it has been delivered to me, and to whomever I wish I give it." – This shows that Satan had been given this authority from Jehovah most likely before he sinned ([see Why Satan ..](#))

Revelation 5:12 states of Jesus: "...The Lamb that was slaughtered is worthy to receive the power and riches and wisdom and strength and honor and glory and blessing."

Daniel 4:17 "By the decree of watchers the thing is, and [by] the saying of holy ones the request is, to the intent that people living may know that the Most High is Ruler in the kingdom of mankind and that to the one whom he wants to, he gives it and he sets up over it even the lowliest one of mankind." This shows us that although Satan has a great deal of God given authority, it is still subject to Jehovah's authority (Zechariah 3:1,2 ; Luke 22:31), and happily Satan will lose his authority when it is finally judged against and given to Jesus (Revelation 11:15). Jehovah still causes kings to rise and fall according to his will. Although it is sad that Satan sinned and opposes Jehovah's will. To see more on this and to use reason on why Jehovah allowed suffering see the [Why Satan... link](#). This oversight of Jehovah toward Jesus is also shown in Psalms 100:1 "The utterance of Jehovah to my Lord is: "Sit at my right hand Until I place your enemies as a stool for your feet" " It is also shown at Matthew 20:23 where Jesus stated "...but this sitting down at my right hand and at my left is not mine to give, but it belongs to those for whom it has been prepared by my Father."

The main difference between Satan and Jesus is that Jesus seeks his father's desire (which is based on love), and Satan seeks his own (which is based on greed).

Both Jesus and [Satan](#) were (and are) to cover or protect mankind.

Referring to Satan, Ezekiel 28:13-14: "In Eden, the garden of God, you proved to be.... You are the anointed cherub that is covering .." – Due to Satan's position, it is hard to think he would be charged with protecting anything else but the perfect humans – This is speculation, but I think it is correct.

Referring to Jesus' protection during his reign, Revelation 21:3: "... Look! The tent of God is with mankind..."

It is important to realize that Jesus acts as Jehovah's representative in many prophecies. Jesus is a separate entity from his father Jehovah. However, he does the will of his father, unlike Satan. I could go over many scriptures about this until rocks turn into sand. But if one can study the book of John, they should be able to see that Jesus and his father are one in the sense that they are one

in unity of purpose – The same as with Jesus and his followers. See *When Jesus states that he and the Father are one, what does that mean?*

Although Jehovah has had groups of people to call his people, they all had imperfection creep in. Solomon, although the wisest human to live other than Jesus, ended up apostatizing. The Israelites of old ended up apostatizing. Christians of the first century were foretold in **Acts 20:30** that from within the congregation itself, apostasy would occur: “and from among YOU yourselves men will rise and speak twisted things to draw away the disciples after themselves.”

Many organizations claim to be God’s people and organization and provide works to try to prove it. But the religious leaders in Jesus’ day did the same and yet he called them offspring of serpents. They had lost their way and were not interested in seeking truth that might threaten their establishment. They thus placed themselves above God’s truth!

There is a group that will be cleansed and accepted by the Almighty, in the near future. This group will rule with Jesus as their king and with righteousness. This group is one of two mentioned in Revelation chapter six and Daniel chapter eleven. This group will be called “My witnesses” by God. But only after they undergo a cleansing will God accept them. Whether we are part of that group or not, scriptures mention blessings for those who side with God!

## Why the Year 1914 Could Not be the Year of Jesus' Kingdom Beginning in Heaven

A simple answer from Christ to this question is in the chapter *What happens with Jesus' coming?*

Christ explained his coming and the information is presented in the above link. If anyone feels that their founder is smarter than Christ, that's your problem. Real Christians follow Christ, not a man. Although for argument's sake, I have presented information below to refute with logic and scripture the false teaching of "Jehovah's Witnesses" that Christ began ruling in heaven, in 1914. Personally, I would hope you would take Christ's explanation first. Christ said that his sheep would hear his voice. Do you?

**Although bible students of earlier times** may have meant well, they were imperfect, as we are today. On the other hand, Jesus was perfect and knew scripture better than anyone else. He stated in Matthew 24:36 "Concerning that day and hour nobody knows, neither the angels of the heavens nor the Son, but only the Father." Even regarding his followers and their knowledge of his coming, he stated "Keep on the watch, therefore, because YOU do not know on what day YOUR Lord is coming" (Matthew 24:42) and "On this account YOU too prove yourselves ready, because at an hour that YOU do not think to be it, the Son of man is coming" (Matthew 24:44)

Jesus did not give his loyal followers a date when Jerusalem of the first century was to be surrounded but he alluded to prophesy in Daniel chapter 8 that concerned a sign to signal a time period of upcoming events for them (Matthew 24, Luke 21, Daniel 8) According to Daniel, it is the same for our time period – We are to look for a sign, not a date. This sign is when the king of the North will capture and occupy Jerusalem. This "conquering" most likely will have to at a minimum, place Jerusalem back to its state (in principle) before the ["six day war" in 1967](#) (see point 1.1). It is at this time when a lot of prophesies come into play.

Some proponents of "1914" may say that Jesus did not have to refer to Daniel 4, concerning the appointed times of the nations. If that is the case, it must stand on its own merit and cannot be claimed to be referred to by Jesus. Also, if a man is claiming that Daniel 4 supports "1914" as the "appointed times of the nations", the claim must be very solid to be put faith in – but it is not.

**These basic reasons are expounded below:**

1. Jesus never referred to Daniel 4 about the tree, but he did refer to the times of the "king of the north" (Daniel chapters 7,8,11) and the resurrection (Daniel 12).
2. Witnesses claim that the symbolic tree mentioned in Daniel 4 represented Jehovah's rulership. But it doesn't. This is discussed further down the article.
3. Daniel 12 explains what a time is and so we know that in Daniel 4 the "seven times" mean – simply seven years.

Further reasons why arguments of Jehovah's Witnesses are incorrect, from their own publication:

1. The publication *WHAT DOES THE BIBLE Really TEACH* (2005) on Page 215 states: “1914 – A Significant Year in Bible Prophecy” par.2 uses the term “appointed time of the nations” from Luke 21:24. It also quotes the familiar term “the times of the Gentiles” from the *King James Version*. Luke 21:24 seems to have a dual meaning. It had a meaning for Jehovah’s people back in the first century and has meaning for our day (See the [Daniel](#) link) but it does not or ever refer to the “tree” or “seven times” in Daniel chapter 4. Also, “appointed time” can refer to numerous passages in the bible. I have described below two very important periods concerning thorough testing for Jehovah’s people.

1. For the first century destruction of Jerusalem: This is based upon prophesy in Daniel 11:9-20 (Rome) and Daniel 8:4-12 (Greece and Rome). But notice Daniel 8:13 “How long will the vision be of the constant [feature] and of the transgression causing desolation, to make both [the] holy place and [the] army things to trample on?” Here Daniel was talking about a timeframe of this vision NOT the vision of King Nebuchadnezzar and the tree in Daniel 4. In Daniel 8, this time period apparently started with this beast’s (“male of the goats”) campaign (made up of Greece and Rome – For it was Rome who destroyed Jerusalem. But this started with the “male of the goats coming from the sunset upon the surface of the whole earth, and it was not touching the earth”) (Daniel 8:5) AND would have a definite end that is, with the end of the trampling of “[the] holy place and [the] army” (Daniel 8:13). This started with the year of 334 BCE. At 20 years of age, Alexander the Great claimed the throne in 336 BCE and it was in 334 BCE that he along with 30,000 infantry soldiers and 5,000 cavalry soldiers [crossed the Hellespont into Asia](#) and he never returned – dying in 323 BC. Then add the “2,300 evenings [and] mornings” (2,300 years) (Daniel 8:14) and the result is the recent year of [June of 1967 when Israel firmly established it’s position](#) (by showing by war it was not to be trampled on by the surrounding nations. And it captured the “old city” area of Jerusalem of which it had none of before since its destruction in 70 CE. Remember, “Jerusalem” today is larger than what it was in the first century. Also, when doing research, it is good to note that the term “East Jerusalem” has more than one definition and they are not entirely compatible.). This does not indicate that Jehovah accepts them as his holy ones today (See Daniel link). (A formula which is accurate and I use for time periods extending over the “[zero year](#)” is: ((full time period of years that extend over the “zero” year) minus (start year (BCE)) plus (one (to coincide with our calendar)))). This is one example of time periods that are represented by beasts. However, there is another very significant time period for the nations
2. For our day and the coming “and they will actually profane the sanctuary, the fortress, and remove the constant [feature]” (Daniel 11:31): This is the conquering of the literal Jerusalem, in our day, by the king of the north (which strongly points to Russia or one of its allies in ideals, at this time, causing Jerusalem to revert to its condition before the 1967 “six-day” war at a minimum). Just as in the first

century, there is no starting date given or “formula” to be figured out. Just a sign. That sign being acts against Jerusalem that causes it to “fall”. That is probably one reason why Jesus said no one knew the day or the hour – And he was the smartest human to ever live! Anyhow, Daniel does define a period of time for our near future as “from the time that the constant [feature] has been removed and there has been a placing of the disgusting thing that is causing desolation, there will be one thousand two hundred and ninety days.” (Daniel 12:11) This “an appointed time, appointed times and a half” mentioned at Daniel 12:7c is either this entire 1,290 days or it is part of it (See “day 1 to 1,290” page). This is the start of Jesus reigning in heaven and when Satan is restricted to the earth with authority over God’s people- See timeline.

2. The claim that the tree in Daniel 4 represented Jehovah’s throne is incorrect and not supported in the bible.
  1. The thought that God’s rulership began to be trampled on by the nations back in 607 BCE is not supported in the bible. It is an incorrect theory held on to support the incorrect theory that 1914 was the beginning of Jesus ruling in heaven. Luke 21:24 “and they will fall by the edge of the sword and be led captive into all the nations, and Jerusalem will be trampled on by the nations, until the appointed times of the nations are fulfilled.” It is very important to realize the time period that this refers to. Luke 21:20 “Furthermore, when YOU see Jerusalem surrounded by encamped armies, then know that the desolating of her has drawn near. Then let those in Judea begin fleeing to the mountains, and let those in the country places not enter into her; because these are the days for meting out justice, that all the things written may be fulfilled. Woe to the pregnant women and the ones sucking a baby in those days! For there will be great necessity upon the land and wrath on this people; and they will fall by the edge of the sword and be led captive into all the nations, and Jerusalem will be trampled on by the nations, until the appointed times of the nations are fulfilled.” Here, Jesus was referring to the prophesy in Daniel 8 – mentioned earlier in 1.1. The “trampling” did not start yet but had yet to start when Jesus stated the above and *it was just a part* of the vision in Daniel 8. It is not recorded that Jesus ever referred to Daniel 4 regarding this “times of the nations” as being the “seven times” in Daniel 4. Plus, it does not fit with other prophesies (See timeline) and Daniel.
  2. It is acknowledged that trees in the bible can represent people. Daniel 4:23-25 “..”CHOP the tree down, and RUIN it. However, LEAVE its rootstock itself in the earth, but with a banding of iron and of copper, among the grass of the field, and with the dew of the heavens let it become wet, and with the beasts of the field let its portion be until seven times themselves pass over it,” this is the interpretation O king, and the decree of the Most High is that which must befall my lord the king. And you they will be driving away from men, and with the beasts of the field your dwelling will come to be, and the vegetation is what they will give even



to you to eat just like the bulls; and with the dew of the heavens you yourself will be getting wet, and seven times themselves will pass over you, until you know that the Most High is Ruler in the kingdom of mankind, and that to the one whom he wants to he gives it.” This tree represented King Nebuchadnezzar and the seven times represented seven years. The lesson of the vision was that [Jehovah is the one who sets and removes kings as he desires](#) and that it is of no credit to the kings themselves that they have the position they do. Jehovah is the Most High. There is no evidence that Jesus referred to this account of the tree when warning his disciples of the appointed time of the nations.

1. Pharaoh (and possibly representing Satan in some ways) was also depicted as a great tree at **Ezekiel 31** that was to be chopped down. But just because it was “heaven high” or “among the clouds” did not mean it represented God’s supreme rulership – particularly in its relationship to the earth. Verse 2: “Son of man, say to Pharaoh the king of Egypt and to his crowd,” ‘Whom have you come to resemble in your greatness? Look! An Assyrian, a cedar in Lebanon, pretty in bough, with a woody thicket offering shadow, and high in stature, so that among the clouds its treetop proved to be. Waters were what made it get big; the watery deep caused it to grow high. With its streams it was going all around its planting place; and its channel sit sent forth to all the trees of the field. That is why it grew higher in stature than all the [other] trees of the field. (vs.5b)” ‘And its boughs kept multiplying, and its branches continued getting longer because of much water in its watercourses. On its boughs all the flying creatures of the heavens made their nests, and under its branches all the wild beasts of the field gave birth, and in its shade all the populous nations would dwell. And it came to be pretty in its greatness, in the length of its foliage, for its root system proved to be over many waters. [Other] cedars were no match for it in the garden of God. As for juniper trees, they bore no resemblance as respects its boughs. And plane trees themselves did not prove to be like it in branches. No [other] tree in the garden of God resembled it in its prettiness. Pretty is the way that I made it in the abundance of its foliage, and all the [other] trees of Eden that were in the garden of the [true] God kept envying it.’ (vs10) “Therefore this is what the Sovereign Lord Jehovah has said, ‘For the reason that you became high in stature, so that it put its treetop even among the clouds and its heart became exalted because of its height. I shall also give it into the hand of the despot of [the] nations. Without fail he will act against it. According to its wickedness I will drive it out. And strangers, the tyrants of [the] nations, will cut it down, and people will abandon it upon the mountains; and in all the valleys its foliage will certainly fall, and its branches will be broken among all the streambeds of the earth. And out from its shade all the peoples of the earth will come down and abandon it. Upon its fallen trunk all the flying creatures of the heavens will reside, and upon its

branches there will certainly come to be all the wild beasts of the field; to the end that none of the watered trees may become high in their stature, or put their treetops even among the clouds, and that none drinking water may stand up against them in their height, for they will certainly all of them be given to death, to the land down below, in the midst of the sons of mankind, to those going down into the pit.’ (vs.15) “This is what the Sovereign Lord Jehovah has said, ‘On the day of its going down to Sheol I shall certainly cause a mourning. On its account I will cover the watery deep, that I may hold back its streams and [that] the many waters may be restrained; and on its account I shall darken Lebanon, and on its account the trees of the field will all swoon away. At the sound of its downfall I shall certainly cause nations to rock when I bring it down to Sheol with those going down into the pit, and in the land down below all the trees of Eden, the choicest and the best of Lebanon, all those drinking water, will be comforted, With him they themselves also have gone down to Sheol, to those slain by the sword, and those who as his seed have dwelt in his shadow in the midst of nations.’ (vs.18)” ‘Whom have you come to resemble thus in glory and greatness among the trees of Eden? But you will certainly be brought down with the trees of Eden to the land down below. In the midst of the uncircumcised ones, you will lie down with those slain by the sword. This is Pharaoh and all his crowd,’ is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah.”

2. Jeremiah 51:9 speaks of Babylon reaching heaven (not as a tree but as a mountain (vs.25)) but in a bad way: “We would have been healed Babylon, but she has not been healed. Leave her, YOU people, and let us go each one to his own land. For clear to the heavens her judgment has reached, and it has been lifted up to the cloudy skies.”
3. The bible does speak of a tree representing God’s intended government for the earth, but it is described as a sprout transplanted upon Jehovah’s mountain – not the earth. Notice too where it refers to the rulers of the earth as “all the trees of the field” – Isaiah 11:1 states: “And there must go forth a twig out of the stump of Jesse; and out of his roots a sprout will be fruitful.” (Talking about Jesus as the sprout); Ezekiel 17:22-24” ‘This is what the Sovereign Lord Jehovah has said: “I myself will also take and put some of the lofty treetop of the cedar; from the top of its twigs I shall pluck off a tender one and I will myself transplant [it] upon a high and lofty mountain. On the mountain of the height of Israel I shall transplant it, and it will certainly bear boughs and produce fruit and become a majestic cedar. And under it there will actually reside all the birds of every wing; in the shadow of its foliage, they will reside. And all the trees of the field will have to know that I myself, Jehovah, have abased the high tree, have put on high the low tree, have dried up the still-moist tree and have made the

dry tree blossom. I myself, Jehovah, have spoken and have done [it].” “” // Here where it speaks of Jehovah abasing the high tree and putting on high the low tree is the same lesson the King Nebuchadnezzar learned. That is, that Jehovah is the Most High is Ruler in the kingdom of mankind, and that to the one whom he wants to he gives it.” (Daniel 4:25)

3. Many bible students back in October of 1914 were highly expecting great things to happen as they prophesied that this was to be the time of Jesus beginning his rule on earth – It was supposed to be as Charles Taze Russel stated that it was the end of the Gentile times! Well, the end of the Gentile rule means God’s kingdom would be ruling over the entire earth! See Daniel 2:44 and Notes for Daniel 7,8, and 11-12. It is a simple conclusion that it was a wrong interpretation of scripture. It is a sad conclusion that instead of reevaluating the scriptures, ones held onto this prophesy as being true. This has resulted in the clouding of other time related prophesy.
4. To review the reasoning in the *WHAT DOES THE BIBLE Really TEACH?* (2005) publication:
  1. *Page 216 :* “ *How and when, though, did God’s rulership begin to be “trampled on by the nations”?* This happened in 607 BCE when *Jerusalem was conquered by the Babylonians.*” This is an absolutely incorrect assumption for some of the following reasons:
    1. First of all, it is important to define this time period “trampled on by the nations” mentioned at Luke 21:24 by considering the context especially starting with verse 20; “Furthermore, when you see Jerusalem surrounded by encamped armies, then know that the desolating of her *has drawn near*. Then let those in Judea begin fleeing to the mountains, and let those in the midst of her withdraw, and let those in the country places not enter into her; because these are the days for meting out justice, that all the things written may be fulfilled. Woe to the pregnant women and the ones sucking a baby in those days! For there will be great necessity upon the land and wrath on this people; and they will fall by the edge of the sword and be led captive into all the nations, and Jerusalem will be trampled on by the nations, until the appointed times of the nations are fulfilled.” Notice that this event of trampling is worded by Jesus as yet something to happen by saying “*Jerusalem will be...*” The parallel account at Matthew 24:15-22 states: “Therefore, when YOU catch sight of the disgusting thing that causes desolation, as spoken through Daniel the prophet, standing in a holy place, (let the reader use discernment,) then let those in Judea begin fleeing to the mountains. Let the man on the housetop not come down to take the goods out of his house; and let

the man in the field not return to the house to pick up his outer garment. Woe to the pregnant women and those sucking a baby in those days! Keep praying that YOUR flight may not occur in wintertime, nor on the sabbath day; for then there will be great tribulation such as has not occurred since the worlds beginning until now, no, nor will occur again. In fact, unless those days were cut short, no flesh would be saved; but on account of the chosen ones those days will be cut short.” Notice this is referring to Daniel in multiple places, but NOWHERE does it refer to Daniel chapter 4 where the illustration of the tree or the “seven times” is located. The trampling would actually end before Jesus becomes king in heaven, but it would be resumed by the king of the north just before Jesus becomes king in heaven. “And there will be arms that will stand up, proceeding from him; and they will actually profane the sanctuary, the fortress, and remove the constant [feature]. And they will certainly put in place the disgusting thing that is causing desolation.” To see how this is the king of the north for our time see timeline and 1.1 and 1.2 on this page.

2. On page 216 paragraph 1, it references 2 Kings 25:1-26. This is the description of Babylon laying a siege wall all around Jerusalem and capturing it. That is true that this happened, but it should not get mixed up with any “kings of the north” in Daniel that conquer Jerusalem. The king of the north that conquered Jerusalem the first time was Rome and is described in chapter 8 and 11 of Daniel. This “king of the north” (Rome) had a totally different ending (Daniel 11:20) then what Babylon did (Daniel 5:22-31). The account at 2 Kings 25:1-26 should not get mixed up with the “kings of the north” of the first century or today. The accounts of the “kings of the north” begin long after the fall of Babylon.
2. Page 217 par.2 It is defining the “trampling of the nations” as God’s rulership interrupted. And it is tried to be reasoned out that Jesus was installed as God’s heavenly king in 1914, in the remaining paragraphs on the page. However, this theory does not fit with actions of the king of the north and south in the time of the end. It also does not fit with numerous other prophesies concerning Jesus’ second coming either. Such as in Daniel 12:7b “And as soon as there will have been a finishing of the dashing of the power of the holy people to pieces, all these things will come to their finish.”- This strongly indicates that the legal structure (if not more) of Yahweh’s people are “dashed to pieces” very shortly before Jesus begins his rulership on earth.

It has been stated in other areas of this site and book that lies tend to twist untruth with truth. Just as a con-artist does, and it can sound a bit confusing.

But the truth is usually simple and straight forward. This is a good example. How Christ describes his coming is simple and clear, but this man-made doctrine relating to 1914 is confusing and when one does deep research into it, it falls apart. See the chapter on *What happens with Jesus' coming?*

Who do you put your trust in? Even the Pharisees claimed to serve Yahweh, but Christ called their father the devil.

## **Why Satan Did Not Think Humans Would be Better Off Under His Rulership; Adam, Eve, and the Trees in the Garden of Eden**

Some feel that Satan was Jealous of Jehovah and wanted Adam and Eve to serve him and that they would be better off under his rule. The following information challenges that thought:

Although the following several series of questions seem very basic and the answers seem all too obvious to many, I challenge the validity of the commonly used current answers. The reason for this challenge is to come to a better understanding of the reasons the current teachings exist and to achieve a greater understanding of spiritual principles and other teachings. I believe that trying to understand these current reasons for certain answers along with Jehovah's and Satan's motives toward mankind will help us in this endeavor. Thoughts are placed below the following several series of questions to help in the reasoning process. Toward the end of the paper are concluding answers and a summary.

1. What is the basis for reasoning that Satan evidently wants humans to worship him rather than God?
2. What is the core reasoning in the thought that Satan challenged Jehovah's sovereignty by saying that man would be better off without him? Where did this reasoning originate and how is it bible based?
3. What is the core reasoning in the thought that Satan questioned Jehovah's right to rule? And what is this reasoning based upon?
4. What was the first lie about? And what was the knowledge of good and bad?
5. What is the basis for the reasoning that Satan charged God with lying and implied that Jehovah was unfair in not allowing Adam and Eve to decide for themselves what was right and what was wrong?
6. What was the purpose for the tree of life and the tree of knowledge of good and bad?
7. What is the universal issue and what does it primarily involve?

**Of the information below, some are facts and others are theories, and others are questions that are answered later. However, I believe they help clarify bible truths concerning the sanctification of Jehovah's name.**

To open the thought process, I would like to submit the following facts, questions, and theories:

1. Angels are super-intelligent, when compared to humans.
2. Satan is known as a cunning manslayer. This proof goes back to the Garden of Eden when he deceived the woman to eat of the fruit of the tree of knowledge of good and bad. Eve acknowledged that she was deceived.

3. Satan is the father of the lie. In the Garden of Eden, Satan told the woman she would not die from eating of the fruit of the tree of knowledge of good and bad. This is known as the first recorded lie. Eve died.
4. I know of no place in the Bible that directly indicates that Satan wants to help humans or that he loves humankind.
5. I know of no direct statement in the Bible that indicates that Satan desires humans as subjects.
6. Satan does not want humans to know truth. He misleads the world of mankind (Revelation 12:9). He does not want humans to listen to Jehovah.
7. Satan has some angels in subjection to him (Revelation 12:4)
8. Humankind and angels can only listen to (also known as: give worship to, serve, submit to the ideals of) either Jehovah or Satan. Both Jehovah and Satan want individuals to listen to them. Jehovah will reward his listeners with everlasting life. Nowhere is it written that Satan will reward imperfect humans that do not listen to Jehovah. Why not?
9. If Satan desires worship from humans why is he called a manslayer? Does this mean that he would want to slay his followers or just those who do not follow him? If it is just those who do not follow him, would Jehovah or Jesus be considered a manslayer during the destruction of this system of things? I do not think this last thought to be the case (Ezekiel 33:11 Jehovah takes no delight in the death of wicked ones). But I wonder if the term manslayer has more than one definition, possibly related to genocide.
10. If Satan desires worship from humans, is it logical for him to want them to die off? He would not have any human subjects. I do not know of any hint that Satan wants humans to live. Eve mentioned that she produced a child with the aid of Jehovah, not Satan. I acknowledge that this could refer to her being designed by Jehovah to have offspring.
11. If Satan wanted humans to serve him, one would think that he would want his worshipers to be united. Jesus referred to the illogical idea that Satan would be divided against himself (Luke 11:17,18 / Matthew 12:25,26). Jesus indirectly testifies to Satan's mental state as being sound enough to logically run a kingdom. So, why are so many humans warring against each other if they serve the same master? I realize that Daniel 10 indicates a system of governing by wicked spirits (Satan's kingdom). Perhaps, the wars are reflections of the mental state of the wicked spirits and/or could it be they just do not care that much other than trying to wipe out "the woman's seed" that is prophesied to destroy them and to keep humankind from siding with Jehovah?
12. If Satan desired worship from humans, why would he be willing to give all his authority of the kingdoms of the world to Jesus for an act of worship as mentioned in Matthew 4? Jesus did not indicate that this offer was a lie. Of course, the thought is valid that Jesus probably would have put himself in subjection to Satan if he did the act of worship. However, it is interesting that he only asked for one act of worship, possibly indicating continued worship was not necessary. But it would have only taken one act of worship to Satan to break Jesus' integrity just as it only



took one act of disobedience for Adam to break his. This offer from Satan must have had substance that Jesus realized as valid for it to have full force. It is like when Eve was being deceived. She soon saw the forbidden fruit as desirable – it was real.

13. Jesus is known as being fond of humans. Proverbs 8:31 (Thank Jehovah and Jesus forever and ever!)

14. Jesus willingly gave his perfect human life for humankind's salvation.

15. Satan has many opposite intentions as Jesus.

16. Satan is known as the destroyer (1 Corinthians 10:10).

17. Satan wants humans to not obey, not listen to, nor worship Jehovah – Knowing the result as being death.

18. Jehovah and Jesus want humans to obey, listen, and worship them with the result being everlasting life.

19. Satan wants death for humans, but Jesus wants life for humans.

20. Satan did not have reservations in killing Job's children and his attendants. Nowhere does the Bible indicate that Satan has plans to resurrect them or that he felt regret about killing them.

21. Satan cannot kill humans without authorization from Jehovah (Job 1&2). If Satan wanted humankind to die, he would have to influence their actions. One way to do this is to get them to ruin the earth. Not only would they be securing their own destruction, but they would be breaking the command from Jehovah set forth with Adam's descendants to have creatures and the earth in subjection (not to kill the creatures off or ruin the earth). Other ways to do this is to get them to rebel against Jehovah by other means and to kill themselves and their unborn.

22. It would be illogical that Satan would believe that Jehovah would tell a lie. He never has.

23. Going back to the Garden of Eden, Satan knew he lied when he told the woman she would not die from eating of the fruit of the tree of knowledge of good and bad. He wanted her to die. If Satan wanted her to continue living (as long as possible) he would have had her eat of the tree of life as soon as possible after eating of the tree of knowledge of good and bad. This was a possibility. He knew that the results would not be good for the future of mankind. His actions prove that he did not want good things for mankind.

24. If Satan advertised that Jehovah was withholding something good from mankind, this would indicate that Satan would have wanted good for mankind, and this gives rise to the question: Why did he not just have them eat of the tree of life? – I ask this question because many believe that the tree of life was forbidden to eat from along with the tree of knowledge of good and bad, before the first human sin. Genesis 3:11 shows that Jehovah only forbade the eating from the one tree which is directly and indirectly identified throughout the entire chapter. There is also a distinction between "trees" and "tree" in verses 1-3, 11, and 17 of the same chapter. If the tree of life was forbidden before Adam and Eve sinned, Satan could have really messed things up by having them eat of the tree of life first or second – whatever worked for him. He could have had

“worshippers” that would live to time indefinite! Satan could have tried to deceive Eve into eating from the tree of life but there is no indication or scripture that states that it was forbidden to eat from (before they sinned). Satan was very intelligent, and it is hard for me to think that he would not have thought his actions through. Of course, the term “good” to Satan would mean something different to Jehovah. Jehovah withholding something “good” from mankind would be different then withholding something “good” from Satan (after he sinned) – From different points of view.

25. Satan told Eve a lie and a truth. The lie being that she would not die. The truth being that she would be like God in knowing good and bad. The angels testify that man did indeed become like them in knowing good and bad.

26. Satan certainly made it appear that Eve was missing out from something good by not eating the forbidden fruit. Eve acknowledged that she was deceived. It was in their gradually acquiring the knowledge of good and bad and possibly experiencing their first feelings of aging and shame that she realized the deception. It is not recorded that Satan told Eve that she would be simply like God although it is a possibility that he could have alluded to that idea. By stating that she would not die from eating of the forbidden fruit he was charging Jehovah with lying to his creation. And it is completely reasonable that he was insinuating that Jehovah was withholding something “good” from his perfect creation while he focused on directing Eve to sin against her creator. Is this a charge that angels would need to have answered? No. They knew humans would become imperfect and die. They knew they would not be better off. Is this a charge that Adam would have wondered about if Satan would have asked him first? Probably not. That is most likely why Satan worked his will on Eve. She was naïve. The charge was unbelievable to others thus did not have merit or need to be proven. However, to Eve it was believable, and she admitted it when she admitted being deceived. But by also acknowledging she was deceived, she no longer had doubt about the charge brought about by the serpent was a lie. This is a point in time where every being made in the image of God, both human and involved angels (including Satan) knew that humans were worse off by disobeying their creator. This issue was closed. Humans were now imperfect and dying. You cannot get perfection from imperfection alone.

27. Satan was able to deceive 50% of perfect humans, in the garden. Although this was just Eve, he had a follower of his ideas. She did what he wanted, why did he want her to die also? (Matthew 7:11) He knew she would die. Everyone knew she would die except her. Satan did not feel that Jehovah would feel or be obligated to let her live. Otherwise, he would be viewed as an unintentional manslayer. Satan’s pattern of actions thru human history is not indicative of being an unintentional manslayer or that of an unintentional liar. He wanted Adam and Eve to die along with their potential to bear seed.

28. Satan is an opportunist in his dealings with man. With Jesus, he waited until the most convenient time to tempt him. With Eve, he waited to tempt her until when the damage could be the greatest.

29. The thought that Satan charged that humans would be “better off” without Jehovah’s help is faulty reasoning because it would be imputing that Satan has good intentions for humankind.

This is a thought that is not supported anywhere in the Bible. Satan tempts humans to disobey with the goal of death for them. This is shown in all his recorded temptations including the account at Matthew 4. Satan would have helped Adam and Eve if he had good intentions for them. They did get the knowledge of good and bad. They also died.

30. The reasoning that Satan wanted humans to be able to rule themselves successfully apart from Jehovah's arrangement is faulty reasoning and not Bible based. If Satan wanted this, he would have tried to help humans to accomplish this. It would be in his interest to prove this, if it is a valid issue that he is concerned about. Also, when the Nephilim were alive, there is no indication that they wanted to help humans to better themselves – This is an indicator of Satan and his angelic followers' attitude toward humankind.

31. Ezekiel 28:17 refers to Satan as being haughty or allowing his heart to become proud in himself. I wonder who he wanted to boast to. Humans or spirits or both? If he wanted to boast about himself as being the wisest in knowing what was good for humans, why did he not approach Adam directly about the forbidden fruit? It was because he most likely realized that Adam could not be deceived. Satan was up to deceiving and manipulating the first human pair into sinning against their creator – with death as a consequence. This is not an action of boastfulness along with good intentions toward humankind but perhaps it was an action to try to prove a point to other angels. It would be illogical if he was trying to prove that humans would be better off now that they were to die. He certainly did not try to help humankind to better themselves – Before or after they sinned! Some irrationally think that Satan could have sincerely believed that humans would be better off on their own, apart from Jehovah's direction. If this were the case, they would be imputing that Satan had good intentions for humans! Also, the fact that they would die is not reason to be better off nor does it impute good intentions. As for the knowledge of good and bad: If Satan thought it was a good thing for humans to have, why he did not try to reason with Adam, but he resorted to deception (trickery) with naïve Eve? Satan simply wanted humans to die off.

32. The tree of life was not hidden. The fruit of this tree was reachable and not forbidden for perfect Adam and Eve. The fruitage from the tree of life must have had a positive physical effect on Adam and Eve. They were not forbidden to eat of it before they were ousted from the garden. However, they were forbidden to eat from it after they sinned. Genesis 3:22b states "...and now in order that he may not put his hand out and actually take fruit also from the tree of life and eat and live to time indefinite, —"The tree of life was also located in the "middle of the garden" along with the tree of knowledge of good and bad.

33. The tree of knowledge of good and bad was the only tree from which Adam and Eve were commanded not to eat. Eve testified to this command. There was certainly a mental and physical reaction from eating of the fruit of this tree. Their thought processes changed. The recorded fact that they realized they were naked is evidence of this. Genesis 3:22 states how their thinking ability changed "...Here the man has become like one of us in knowing good and bad..." (Italics mine). The other reaction is that humans deteriorate and die.

34. Adam and Eve could eat the fruit of the tree of life. Why did Adam not eat of the tree of life after he sinned but before being ousted from the garden? There could be many reasons. However, what if he found that Eve ate the forbidden fruit a day or two earlier and he did not see any immediate effect? He would have surely been confused (by possible misunderstanding of the meaning of “day” in the warning) and perhaps thought that fruit from the tree of life was not necessary. Other possibilities could be that he realized that what Jehovah said would come about regardless of what they did or that they ran out of time to eat of the fruit of the tree of life once they realized that it could help them. Regardless of the reason, Jehovah’s warning that death would result from eating from the forbidden fruit could not be invalidated.

35. Satan did not have to eat of the tree of knowledge of good and bad, to decide and or symbolize rebellion against Jehovah’s arrangement. Satan and the other angels already had this knowledge of good and bad.

36. Genesis 3:22 states “...Here the man has become like one of us in knowing good and bad...” A reference from the *Insight 2* vol. page 1011 (column one) is sourced from *The Jerusalem Bible* (JB 1966). It states “This knowledge is a privilege which God reserves to himself and which man, by sinning, is to lay hands on, 3:5, 22. Hence it does not mean omniscience, which fallen man does not possess; nor is it moral discrimination, for unfallen man already had it and God could not refuse it to a rational being. It is the power of deciding for himself what is good and what is evil and of acting accordingly, a claim to complete moral independence by which man refuses to recognize his status as a created being. This first sin was an attack on God’s sovereignty, a sin of pride.” This reasoning is faulty. According to Genesis 3:22, angels had this knowledge of good and bad, so God was not the only one who had it. This did not mean that the angels who God was speaking to in Genesis 3:22 were rebels – just because they had this “knowledge of good and bad”. Nor would it be logical to believe that these same angels had decided to have complete moral independence from God. Regarding the thought that it is the power of deciding for oneself what is good and what is evil and acting on it – Didn’t Adam and Eve do this before eating the fruit? They made the decision first then acted on that decision. Adam and Eve were simply affected spiritually and physically (by the dying process and added mental awareness and harming their relationship with their creator) by eating of the forbidden fruit. They already had the free will and ability to decide for themselves whether to obey or not before eating of the forbidden fruit. Sadly, their actions were based upon greed and they decided to disobey – The opposite of Ecclesiastes 12:13. (This same bible translation (JB 1966) comments about a part of Genesis 3:24 as being “Borrowed from Babylonian mythology” thus testifying that not all their reasoning is correct (2 Timothy 3:15)) In review: The thought “This knowledge is a privilege which God reserves to himself.” is incorrect. Genesis states that another had it too. This indicates that angels had this “knowing good and bad”. This statement from Genesis 3:22 does not say or impute for one to have the ability to set or make the “universal law of what is good or bad”. Jehovah is the only one to do that. However, this thought of “knowing good and bad” does indicate having knowledge of good and bad. The word for “know” or “knowing” in Genesis 3:22 is #3045 in *Abingdon’s Strong’s Exhaustive Concordance of the Bible*. There are many definitions. Some are: acknowledge, be aware, comprehend (come to give, have, take). It can be reasonable to conclude that Adam and Eve came to have a better

comprehension of good and bad from eating of the forbidden fruit. Regarding the incorrect thought “It is the power of deciding for himself what is good and what is evil and of acting accordingly”, it is wrong for the following reasons: When Jehovah created perfect angels and humans, he created them with free will and the ability / opportunity to use their free will to decide for themselves if they were going to serve him or not. Perfect angels proved they had this ability to decide for themselves what is good and bad when they forsook their positions in heaven and sinned. Perfect Adam and Eve proved they had this ability to decide for themselves what is good and is bad by showing that they could decide for themselves to disobey or not. Eve decided the forbidden tree was desirable and decided to take its fruit. In both cases, they decided to do something they were not authorized by Jehovah to do and so they sinned. However, the comments from the JB could also have in mind the incorrect thoughts that Adam and Eve took the right to set the universal standard of good and bad. The thought “... a claim to complete moral independence” is incorrect also just from the fact that it is based upon the other incorrect thoughts. However, Adam and Eve did take an independent course based upon greed and not love. In fact, all those perfect angels who sinned took an independent course too. These thoughts are in harmony with Jehovah’s intensions for perfect beings created in his image with the free will and ability to decide to obey or not – That is, to wipe out the disobedient to allow for unobstructed good for the obedient.

37. Adam and Eve had to have integrity to lose it. Satan did too. They all started out with integrity. They were all created perfect.

38. Adam certainly understood that it was bad to eat the forbidden fruit. So, until he allowed himself to be swayed by Eve, he was able to maintain his integrity. His integrity was tested. He did not have to eat of the forbidden fruit to understand what integrity meant. He had the understanding and the capacity to maintain his integrity before he sinned. Jesus had the same capacity, but he chose to maintain integrity.

39. It is certainly a possibility that if Adam and Eve had offspring before they sinned, some of them could have decided to not eat of the fruit and they would still be living. For those who decided to eat of the forbidden fruit, they would have died like their father did. For they would have made a perfect decision and would not need a redeemer. Satan did not want man to reproduce before he commenced his tempting; otherwise, he would have waited to tempt perfect man. Regardless, Jehovah’s will for the earth to be populated with man had to be fulfilled.

40. It was Jehovah’s will that perfect obedient humans would fill and subdue the earth before Adam and Eve sinned and his will remains.

41. Regarding some of the effects from Adam and Eve eating the forbidden fruit (Genesis 3:6,7): It had deepened their ability to comprehend good and bad. Adam and Eve had a basic understanding of good and bad before eating of the fruit. Eve shows us that she had a basic understanding of good when she “saw that the tree was good for food”. (Some people will look to see if animals eat from a bush to see if the food is edible. It could be that the fruit of this tree could affect humans in a way it would not in other creatures) Eve had to understand what bad was in order to understand that the tree had good qualities. This level of understanding that Adam

and Eve were different than the level of understanding that what the angel's possessed. It can be compared by thinking of ourselves as being much lower in mathematical intelligence than the angels – Which we certainly are. We are used to it. But if we had some sort of sizable increase in our mathematical intelligence, we would surely view things differently from that standpoint. Adam and Eve certainly literally viewed things differently after eating of the forbidden fruit! Each one of us has experienced this increase in our understanding to a similar degree. As youngsters, there was a time in which we did not realize all the reasons for clothing and did not care if we went around naked. But as certain parts of our brain developed, it became natural and normal for us to not want to be seen by others with our clothes off!

42. The two trees in the middle of the garden had real purpose. It allowed Adam and Eve to exercise their free will in determining their integrity. Adam and Eve could obey or disobey. There had to be consequences for both. Otherwise, what difference would there be? The tree of life provided continued life. The tree of knowledge of good and bad provided the opportunity for Adam and Eve to take what was not theirs. That is the knowledge of good and bad. Death was a consequence for disobedience. The potential knowledge that the tree of the knowledge of good and bad could provide was a way to determine perfect man's integrity. It proved to be a "touchstone". This type of touchstone is defined as something that has potential "value" to someone and is not owned at the time and it is not authorized or desired by Jehovah for the individual to possess and if the individual strives after it, it provides a way to determine one's loyalty to Jehovah. A touchstone can be many things or ideas but the action of striving after it is always based upon greed and not love. We have the example of Satan. He was created very beautiful. This beauty was not bad, but he allowed it to be a touchstone for him in that he decided to strive after his own glory and not Jehovah's. For some of the perfect angels in Noah's time before the flood, a touchstone proved to be the idea of residing on the earth and having for themselves the earthly "daughters of men" and having offspring. They did not reject this idea it, but they pursued it and it determined their loyalty. They forsook their proper dwelling places and therefore broke their integrity. The earth was given to the sons of men to dwell upon and not to these angels. For perfect Eve, the touchstone was the knowledge that the tree of knowledge of good and bad could provide. She was not authorized to have it but by her taking it, she determined her integrity by disobeying Jehovah. In all these cases, death by one means or another is the result. This process is a loving method which allows Jehovah to complete his works to provide unobstructed good for those who love righteousness. What a joyous time that will be!

43. Although Satan is acknowledged as the ruler of this world, he does not act in Jehovah's (or mankind's) best interest but acts with his own greedy interests in mind. He apparently had earthly authority placed upon him before he sinned and then he abused it, and he continues to intentionally mismanage it (Luke 4). Ezekiel 28:14,16 brings out that Satan was created to cover (protect or guard). Verse 13 brings out that he proved to be in Eden – This seems to be before he sinned. So, it can be deduced that he certainly had responsibility put on him. And a measure of authority usually goes with responsibility. This authority had to have a length of time attached to it, for it to have purpose. It also had to have been given to him before he sinned. The end of this time period could be alluded to at Matthew 8:29. Jesus also is given a time period of authority.

44. Satan currently has some type of authority over the earth because “neither was a place found for them any longer in heaven. So down the great dragon was hurled...” (Revelation 12:10-12) And he is mentioned as being the ruler of the world by Jesus as a man. This current time of authority over the world by Satan has an end when he is bound for the 1,000 years.

45. Satan wants to be self-glorified. That is, he desires to give glory to himself. This desire is the opposite from what Jesus had shown when he prayed to his father and asked if he could have the glory again of when he was a spirit (John 17). Jesus relied on his father to glorify him rather than to pursue the giving glory to himself.

46. In all recorded tests involving Satan and humans (that I know of) the issue was integrity to Jehovah – Not how the human governments were fairing. Satan seems to think humankind is irredeemable and weak. He tested the integrity of Adam and Eve, Job, the Israelite nation, Jesus, and now the remnant (among countless others today and in the past). He is known as the great tempter and wants man to die.

47. Adam was the first fleshly creation to be created in God’s image.

48. It was only after Eve’s creation that Satan acted against humankind. There could be multiple reasons for this. However, the creating of Eve did open a way for creatures that were made in God’s image to reproduce. It is open to limited speculation whether the angels had this ability to reproduce in the heavenly realm, but it does not really matter if they could or not. It is certain that they were not authorized by Jehovah to forsake their positions in their pursuing a desire to inhabit the earth and take wives for themselves and to have offspring on earth. They broke their integrity. It may also be that Satan desired to be receiving glory for himself from other angels by tempting other angels to do this. He had great authority as being a guardian cherub and it is possible that he had the authority to allow angels to materialize on earth, at the time. By Satan’s actions of deceiving Eve when the most damage could result, he shows by his actions that he did not want man to live. He wanted to destroy man along with the ability to fill the earth with mankind. Angels improperly having offspring on earth shows that this was something that could be desired by angels. Satan’s desire to have man die also showed that it was possible for angels to wrongfully desire to have man destroyed. Satan has never tried to help humankind or act as their savior or provider. In Matthew and Luke chapters 4, when Satan was tempting Jesus with the kingdoms of the world, he and others certainly would have known that just one act of worship from Jesus would break his integrity whether the offer from Satan was genuine or not. The results would have been that Jesus would die and humankind would not have had a savior. Satan does not desire to be humankind’s savior or to provide one, for whatever reason he may have. Jesus’ obedient human life course is an excellent example how he is the “amen” to Jehovah’s will.

49. Satan certainly is enraged when a lowly human can prove integrity when he could not, as in Job’s case. There is a possible parallel of how Satan used Eve in pressuring Adam to sin against Jehovah and how he may have influenced Job’s wife to try to do the same. But Satan must have been very, very, very enraged when imperfect Job maintained his integrity while perfect Adam did not. It had to add to an argument that imperfect humans are worth redeeming – They can



maintain their integrity even when everything is taken away! Another possible parallel is that Satan charged Jehovah with protecting Job – Being a guardian Cherub in Eden, Satan most likely was supposed to protect humans in the Garden of Eden. It would not make sense for him to protect the trees in the middle of the Garden, for Adam and Eve had to be able to prove their integrity. Integrity is the key issue in Job’s case, and it shows that even imperfect man is worth redeeming. Integrity also is noted at Ecclesiastes 12:13 as being the “whole obligation of man.” Satan also tries to get everyone to break their integrity. It also stands to reason that although Job was imperfect, his integrity still meant a lot to Satan and Jehovah. And it only makes sense that if someone can maintain their integrity when they are imperfect, it would only be much easier for them to maintain it if they were perfect. Otherwise, Job’s trial would not have meant much to Satan. He could have charged that Job was not perfect but that would not make sense. This account is a reliable witness regarding Satan’s viciousness toward humans. And it goes with good reason that that integrity is a key issue throughout the entire Bible.

50. The thought that “Satan challenged Jehovah that humans could govern themselves better than Jehovah” is incorrect along with a few other recent teachings. However, to understand why they are incorrect, it is necessary to see where and why they originated from within our publications and test them out....

---

Concluding answers to the several series of questions at the beginning:

1. What is the basis for reasoning that Satan evidently wants humans to worship him rather than God? And how could he be considered a manslayer at the same time?

1. Simply put, Satan does not want humans or angels to listen or obey Jehovah. If humans do not obey Jehovah, they are complying with Satan’s desires. Satan is a manslayer in the fact that he tried to have Adam and Eve destroyed and that he has tried to repeatedly prove that man is irredeemable and not worth saving. He has also pitted himself against Jehovah’s will to have perfect man fill the earth and subdue it.

2. What is the core reasoning in the thought that Satan challenged Jehovah’s sovereignty by saying that man would be better off without him? Where did this reasoning originate and how is it bible based?

1. This long held reasoning seems to be first based upon the incorrect thought that man had to experience the fullness of evil by choosing to govern himself and that Jehovah knew this had to happen and that Satan took advantage of this new position of man. Later this thought was revised to show that Satan originated this thought, mainly out of a desire to have human servants and that this thought was a challenge to Jehovah’s right to rule. Nowhere in the scriptures does it mention this thought. It is based upon the incorrect understanding that man must experience evil (or the pains of self-governing) to prove to himself and to angels that Jehovah’s rule is best. However, it was conclusive that after Adam and Eve sinned, they were dying and imperfect. No angel or human could logically question the results of Adam and Eve’s choice of disobedience. It was not good for them.

All concerned absolutely knew that they would never achieve what they had before. You cannot achieve perfection from imperfection alone. It would have been illogical and ridiculous for anyone to claim that humans could create a government to rival what Jehovah could provide. Again, there was no question as to whether man would be better off without Jehovah's rulership. Certainly, if this is something that Satan would have charged, he would have tried to help humans to achieve a grand government. It would be in his own selfish interest to do this so he could attempt to prove himself right. Nowhere in the scriptures does it mention that Satan has ever had any good intentions toward humankind. His attitude toward humans is that they are irredeemable and weak.

3. What is the core reasoning in the thought that Satan questioned Jehovah's right to rule? And what is this reasoning based upon?

1. This has been partially answered in the previous answer and it is basically the same. It developed from the thought that man challenged God's right to rule, and the consequences were immediately obvious. Man was worse off with no hope of attaining perfection by themselves. There was no question to answer, regarding if man would be better off. However, looking at this question from a different viewpoint, Satan does want angels to serve him, and he is pleased when humans side with his ideals of not desiring to serve Jehovah. Thus, he pits himself against Jehovah for desiring worshippers, or to say followers of his ideals, in heaven and earth.

4. What was the first lie about? And what was the knowledge of good and bad?

1. The first lie was Satan telling Eve she would not die if she ate of the forbidden fruit. It was not about Eve attaining the knowledge of good and bad. For the angels attested to the fact that man now had this knowledge as they did! The knowledge of good and bad was a higher plane of reasoning to understand more fully the difference between good and bad. Adam and Eve showed in one way how they were affected by this new reasoning ability by acknowledging that they were ashamed that now they realized they were naked. The angels had this reasoning power too, so it was not exclusively Jehovah's – And their having it did not represent rebellion against Jehovah. However, with man deciding to take it for himself, he broke his integrity and in so doing rebelled. For man to have this knowledge did not mean having the ability to change what Jehovah decided what was good or bad. It simply meant to acquire a better understanding of the law. This could be roughly illustrated by comparing a 4-year-old with a lawyer and with a judge. The 4-year-old would have a different understanding of law than the lawyer or judge. And although the lawyer can understand the law as the judge does, the lawyer cannot decide the law even though the lawyer may view things differently or the same as the judge. The judge in this case represents Jehovah and the lawyers represent angels with their understanding of good and bad or "the law" set forth by Jehovah.

5. What is the basis for the reasoning that Satan charged God with lying and implied that Jehovah was unfair in not allowing Adam and Eve to decide for themselves what was right and what was wrong?

1. This has been partially answered above. The thought to “decide for themselves” and “govern themselves” are basically the same. This faulty reasoning stems from a couple of incorrect conclusions. One is that the forbidden fruit represented the ability to decide for oneself what is right and what is wrong. Adam and Eve already had this ability but on a lower plane of knowledge than the angels. They could make their own decision whether to maintain their integrity or not. They could decide what was “good” and “bad” for themselves by their choices. Otherwise, how could they prove their integrity? Eve decided the forbidden fruit was “good” in her eyes, before she ate of it. The other incorrect thought was that man had to be able to fully experience evil to fully appreciate good and this would have had to involve challenging God by disobeying and that God knew that this had to happen. This incorrect thought was modified later to tell that Satan as being the originator of this challenge. However, the issue was simply integrity.
6. What was the purpose for the tree of life and the tree of knowledge of good and bad?
1. Jehovah created the angels and man perfect and in his image with the free will and ability to decide for themselves to maintain their integrity or not. But to have a universe free of bad, each individual would have to decide whether to obey or to disobey Jehovah. There had to be placed before the perfect humans something that would allow them to exercise their free will in showing which course they desired to follow. God permitted them to make a choice to show their integrity just as Jesus had the ability to choose to maintain his integrity or not. And Jehovah lovingly warned Adam and Eve of the danger of eating of the forbidden fruit.
7. What is the universal issue and what does it primarily involve?
1. The issue at hand is the sanctification of Jehovah’s name which includes his works. This would also include the redeeming of humankind and the cleansing of heaven and earth of non-integrity keepers by means of his Son and his kingdom. It is correct to reason from Matthew 6:9,10 that his “name” would also include his works. (“I SHALL PROVE TO BE” (Exodus 3:14) & “A name is better than good oil” (Ecclesiastes 7:1)) The end result of this process will be unobstructed universal good for all remaining creatures made in God’s image. Although this answer is how we now teach, the difference is that we now have a clearer understanding.

In summary:

God created and it was good. Satan was assigned as a guardian cherub and was very beautiful in appearance. For his own greedy reasons, Satan wants man to die and desires to prove that humankind is irredeemable and not worth saving. Satan also wants other angels to be in submission to him. However, because of Jehovah’s and Jesus’ love for humankind and truth, they set up a redemption process for imperfect mankind. This would take time (Hebrews 2:14,15 / John 12:31) – Especially with the involvement of ill-intended spirit creatures and humans who will be ultimately destroyed. Jehovah’s works will be primarily sanctified by his Son and his kingdom arrangement (2 Corinthians 1:19,20). The conclusion of this process will allow

unobstructed universal good for all remaining creatures made in God's image. Jehovah's works will be sanctified!

## Does Faith Need Works?

[Ephesians 2:8-9](#) shows us that works cannot save someone. The saving of someone is a gift from God but it takes faith as shown in verse 8. Verse 8 shows that faith is necessary. The two need each other. Neither one, faith or works, by itself, save someone. [James 2:14-26](#) goes further by showing that faith is DEAD without works. As an example, if you are on railroad tracks and see a train coming, you have faith that the train is coming. But if you do not do the work of getting out of the way, you are not saved. Likewise, a man of only works can walk on the tracks as much as he wants. But if he does not have faith that the train is coming, he will not be saved. **Faith is not just seeing but acting.**

### **Ephesians 2:8-9 (RSV);**

“<sup>8</sup> For by grace you have been saved through faith; and this is not your own doing, it is the gift of God—<sup>9</sup> not because of works, lest any man should boast.”

### **James 2:14-26 (RSV);**

“<sup>14</sup> What does it profit, my brethren, if a man says he has faith but has not works? Can his faith save him? <sup>15</sup> If a brother or sister is ill-clad and in lack of daily food, <sup>16</sup> and one of you says to them, “Go in peace, be warmed and filled,” without giving them the things needed for the body, what does it profit? <sup>17</sup> So faith by itself, if it has no works, is dead.

<sup>18</sup> But someone will say, “You have faith and I have works.” Show me your faith apart from your works, and I by my works will show you my faith. <sup>19</sup> You believe that God is one; you do well. Even the demons believe—and shudder. <sup>20</sup> Do you want to be shown, you shallow man, that faith apart from works is barren? <sup>21</sup> Was not Abraham our father justified by works, when he offered his son Isaac upon the altar? <sup>22</sup> You see that faith was active along with his works, and faith was completed by works, <sup>23</sup> and the scripture was fulfilled which says, “Abraham believed God, and it was reckoned to him as righteousness”; and he was called the friend of God. <sup>24</sup> You see that a man is justified by works and not by faith alone. <sup>25</sup> And in the same way was not also Rahab the harlot justified by works when she received the messengers and sent them out another way? <sup>26</sup> For as the body apart from the spirit is dead, so **faith apart from works is dead.**

## **Do people need to follow the Mosaic Law or Sabbath, to be saved?**

The Hebrew God is [Yahweh](#). Thousands of years ago, when Moses led the Hebrews from bondage in Egypt, he wrote the Mosaic Law. These hundreds of laws regulated many things and set the Hebrews apart from any other nation, as Yahweh's chosen people. Simply put, this was the standard to follow, to show that one was doing what God wanted. If one was a Gentile (A non-Hebrew), he/she could become "adopted" into the nation, as one of their own, obeying the Law.

The Mosaic Law had provisions to help atone for someone's sins. These provisions included sacrifices at the temple in Jerusalem. Interestingly, Job, although not a Hebrew but an Oriental, offered sacrifices to the Almighty, to help atone for possible sins of his offspring (Job 1:1-5). Job was considered a servant of the Almighty (Job 1:8).

Jesus, the Son of the Most high, Yahweh, offered the only completely obedient sacrifice, his life, to atone for the sins of all men. See *The Sacrifice of Christ*.

[John 3:17 \(WEB\)](#);

<sup>17</sup> For God didn't send his Son into the world to judge the world, but that the world should be saved through him.

After Jesus' death and resurrection, many Jews became believers. However, some Jews felt very strongly that people had to obey the Law of Moses (Mosaic Law), to be saved. Even the topic of circumcision, according to the Law of Moses, was brought up and argued that this was necessary too. This was a very important topic, especially to the Jews who lived their lives according to the Mosaic Law. Did the Gentiles, who the good news of the kingdom of God and his Christ was being preached, have to follow the Law including the Sabbath to be saved?

There was a meeting date set to discuss this matter. New believers, in Christ, who thought it was necessary to follow the Law of Moses, would be discussing this with Paul, Barnabas, Apostles, and older men, in Jerusalem.

There was much disputing, especially with those who were once Pharisees but now were believers. The apostle Peter rose and made a decisive argument. It was known to those in attendance that God had chosen Peter to help spread the word of the good news and believe, among the nations. These ones, who were of the nations (Gentiles) were favored by God. This was evident because these Gentiles, who did not observe the Law, received the holy spirit, as they did. God did not require them to observe the law of Moses, to be saved. So, Peter asked the ones who thought it was necessary; Why would they want to add this unnecessary burden to new believers, if God had already shown his favor to them?

**It was made clear by Peter, by the witness of God's holy spirit being freely given to those who never were under the Law of Moses, including the Sabbath, that salvation was based upon the undeserved kindness of Jesus - Not the Law of Moses or the Sabbath.**

[Acts 15:1-20 \(WEB\);](#)

15 Some men came down from Judea and taught the brothers, “Unless you are circumcised after the custom of Moses, you can’t be saved.”<sup>2</sup> Therefore when Paul and Barnabas had no small discord and discussion with them, they appointed Paul and Barnabas, and some others of them, to go up to Jerusalem to the apostles and elders about this question.<sup>3</sup> They, being sent on their way by the assembly, passed through both Phoenicia and Samaria, declaring the conversion of the Gentiles. They caused great joy to all the brothers.<sup>4</sup> When they had come to Jerusalem, they were received by the assembly and the apostles and the elders, and they reported all things that God had done with them.

<sup>5</sup> But some of the sect of the Pharisees who believed rose up, saying, “It is necessary to circumcise them, and to command them to keep the law of Moses.”

<sup>6</sup> The apostles and the elders were gathered together to see about this matter.<sup>7</sup> When there had been much discussion, Peter rose up and said to them, “Brothers, you know that a good while ago God made a choice among you, that by my mouth the nations should hear the word of the Good News, and believe.<sup>8</sup> God, who knows the heart, testified about them, giving them the Holy Spirit, just like he did to us.<sup>9</sup> He made no distinction between us and them, cleansing their hearts by faith.<sup>10</sup> Now therefore why do you tempt God, that you should put a yoke on the neck of the disciples which neither our fathers nor we were able to bear?<sup>11</sup> But we believe that we are saved through the grace of the Lord Jesus, just as they are.”

<sup>12</sup> All the multitude kept silence, and they listened to Barnabas and Paul reporting what signs and wonders God had done among the nations through them.<sup>13</sup> After they were silent, James answered, “Brothers, listen to me.<sup>14</sup> Simeon has reported how God first visited the nations, to take out of them a people for his name.<sup>15</sup> This agrees with the words of the prophets. As it is written,

<sup>16</sup> ‘After these things I will return.

I will again build the tabernacle of David, which has fallen.

I will again build its ruins.

I will set it up,

<sup>17</sup> That the rest of men may seek after the Lord;

all the Gentiles who are called by my name,

says the Lord, who does all these things.

<sup>18</sup> All of God’s works are known to him from eternity.’

<sup>19</sup> “Therefore my judgment is that we don’t trouble those from among the Gentiles who turn to God,<sup>20</sup> but that we write to them that they abstain from the pollution of idols, from sexual immorality, from what is strangled, and from blood.



## **An example of God’s holy spirit being given to Gentiles that were not under the Law of Moses;**

[Acts 10:21-48 \(WEB\);](#)

<sup>21</sup> Peter went down to the men, and said, “Behold, I am he whom you seek. Why have you come?”

<sup>22</sup> They said, “Cornelius, a centurion, a righteous man and one who fears God, and well spoken of by all the nation of the Jews, was directed by a holy angel to invite you to his house, and to listen to what you say.” <sup>23</sup> So he called them in and provided a place to stay. On the next day Peter arose and went out with them, and some of the brothers from Joppa accompanied him. <sup>24</sup> On the next day they entered into Caesarea. Cornelius was waiting for them, having called together his relatives and his near friends. <sup>25</sup> When Peter entered, Cornelius met him, fell down at his feet, and worshiped him. <sup>26</sup> But Peter raised him up, saying, “Stand up! I myself am also a man.” <sup>27</sup> As he talked with him, he went in and found many gathered together. <sup>28</sup> He said to them, “You yourselves know how it is an unlawful thing for a man who is a Jew to join himself or come to one of another nation, but God has shown me that I shouldn’t call any man unholy or unclean. <sup>29</sup> Therefore also I came without complaint when I was sent for. I ask therefore, why did you send for me?”

<sup>30</sup> Cornelius said, “Four days ago, I was fasting until this hour, and at the ninth hour, I prayed in my house, and behold, a man stood before me in bright clothing, <sup>31</sup> and said, ‘Cornelius, your prayer is heard, and your gifts to the needy are remembered in the sight of God. <sup>32</sup> Send therefore to Joppa, and summon Simon, who is also called Peter. He lodges in the house of a tanner named Simon, by the seaside. When he comes, he will speak to you.’ <sup>33</sup> Therefore I sent to you at once, and it was good of you to come. Now therefore we are all here present in the sight of God to hear all things that have been commanded you by God.”

<sup>34</sup> Peter opened his mouth and said, “Truly I perceive that God doesn’t show favoritism; <sup>35</sup> but in every nation he who fears him and works righteousness is acceptable to him. <sup>36</sup> The word which he sent to the children of Israel, preaching good news of peace by Jesus Christ—he is Lord of all— <sup>37</sup> you yourselves know what happened, which was proclaimed throughout all Judea, beginning from Galilee, after the baptism which John preached; <sup>38</sup> even Jesus of Nazareth, how God anointed him with the Holy Spirit and with power, who went about doing good and healing all who were oppressed by the devil, for God was with him. <sup>39</sup> We are witnesses of everything he did both in the country of the Jews, and in Jerusalem; whom they also killed, hanging him on a tree. <sup>40</sup> God raised him up the third day, and gave him to be revealed, <sup>41</sup> not to all the people, but to witnesses who were chosen before by God, to us, who ate and drank with him after he rose from the dead. <sup>42</sup> He commanded us to preach to the people and to testify that this is he who is appointed by God as the Judge of the living and the dead. <sup>43</sup> All the prophets testify about him, that through his name everyone who believes in him will receive remission of sins.”

<sup>44</sup> While Peter was still speaking these words, the Holy Spirit fell on all those who heard the word. <sup>45</sup> They of the circumcision who believed were amazed, as many as came with Peter,

because the gift of the Holy Spirit was also poured out on the Gentiles. <sup>46</sup> For they heard them speaking in other languages and magnifying God.

Then Peter answered, <sup>47</sup> “Can anyone forbid these people from being baptized with water? They have received the Holy Spirit just like us.” <sup>48</sup> He commanded them to be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ. Then they asked him to stay some days.

## **Are Christians required to be circumcised or follow the Mosaic Law (Including Sabbaths)?**

**This was a contested and recorded issue in the first century. Some former Pharisees (Jewish religious leaders) who became believers in Yeshua (Jesus) felt strongly that people of the nations (Gentiles) had to follow the Mosaic law and needed to be circumcised. Some today feel that observing the Sabbath is needed. The following verses help answer this issue of whether it is necessary or not:**

### [Acts 15:1-5 \(WEB\):](#)

15 Some men came down from Judea and taught the brothers, “Unless you are circumcised after the custom of Moses, you can’t be saved.”<sup>2</sup> Therefore when Paul and Barnabas had no small discord and discussion with them, they appointed Paul and Barnabas, and some others of them, to go up to Jerusalem to the apostles and elders about this question.<sup>3</sup> They, being sent on their way by the assembly, passed through both Phoenicia and Samaria, declaring the conversion of the Gentiles. They caused great joy to all the brothers.<sup>4</sup> When they had come to Jerusalem, they were received by the assembly and the apostles and the elders, and they reported everything that God had done with them.

<sup>5</sup> But some of the sect of the Pharisees who believed rose up, saying, “It is necessary to circumcise them, and to command them to keep the law of Moses.”

**In the following verses, notice how Peter mentions how people of the nations would hear the word and believe and that God made no distinction between the Jews who were circumcised and followed the Mosaic Law and people of the nations who did not:**

### [Acts 15:6-11 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>6</sup> The apostles and the elders were gathered together to see about this matter.<sup>7</sup> When there had been much discussion, Peter rose up and said to them, “Brothers, you know that a good while ago God made a choice among you that by my mouth the nations should hear the word of the Good News and believe.<sup>8</sup> God, who knows the heart, testified about them, giving them the Holy Spirit, just like he did to us.<sup>9</sup> He made no distinction between us and them, cleansing their hearts by faith.<sup>10</sup> Now therefore why do you tempt God, that you should put a yoke on the neck of the disciples which neither our fathers nor we were able to bear?<sup>11</sup> But we believe that we are saved through the grace of the Lord Jesus, just as they are.”

**Next, Paul and Barnabas related to the group the signs that God did through them for the nations:**

### [Acts 15:12-20 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>12</sup> All the multitude kept silence, and they listened to Barnabas and Paul reporting what signs and wonders God had done among the nations through them.<sup>13</sup> After they were silent, James answered, “Brothers, listen to me.<sup>14</sup> Simeon has reported how God first visited the nations to

take out of them a people for his name. <sup>15</sup> This agrees with the words of the prophets. As it is written,

<sup>16</sup> ‘After these things I will return.

I will again build the tabernacle of David, which has fallen.

I will again build its ruins.

I will set it up <sup>17</sup> that the rest of men may seek after the Lord;

all the Gentiles who are called by my name,

says the Lord, who does all these things.’ [Amos 9:11-12](#)

<sup>18</sup> “All of God’s works are known to him from eternity. <sup>19</sup> Therefore my judgment is that we don’t trouble those from among the Gentiles who turn to God, <sup>20</sup> but that we write to them that they abstain from the pollution of idols, from sexual immorality, from what is strangled, and from blood.

**The apostles and older men decided to send this decision vis chosen men to congregations which were of the nations. They were not required to be circumcised and were not required to follow the Law, which includes the Sabbath:**

[Acts 15:22-31 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>22</sup> Then it seemed good to the apostles and the elders, with the whole assembly, to choose men out of their company, and send them to Antioch with Paul and Barnabas: Judas called Barsabbas, and Silas, chief men among the brothers. <sup>23</sup> They wrote these things by their hand:

“The apostles, the elders, and the brothers, to the brothers who are of the Gentiles in Antioch, Syria, and Cilicia: greetings. <sup>24</sup> Because we have heard that some who went out from us have troubled you with words, unsettling your souls, saying, ‘You must be circumcised and keep the law,’ to whom we gave no commandment; <sup>25</sup> it seemed good to us, having come to one accord, to choose out men and send them to you with our beloved Barnabas and Paul, <sup>26</sup> men who have risked their lives for the name of our Lord Jesus Christ. <sup>27</sup> We have sent therefore Judas and Silas, who themselves will also tell you the same things by word of mouth. <sup>28</sup> For it seemed good to the Holy Spirit, and to us, to lay no greater burden on you than these necessary things: <sup>29</sup> that you abstain from things sacrificed to idols, from blood, from things strangled, and from sexual immorality, from which if you keep yourselves, it will be well with you. Farewell.”

<sup>30</sup> So, when they were sent off, they came to Antioch. Having gathered the multitude together, they delivered the letter. <sup>31</sup> When they had read it, they rejoiced over the encouragement.

**Very interesting relative events are recorded in Acts 10.** A Gentile named Cornelius, had a vision and in the vision was told to send men to find Peter. Peter relates how God revealed to him that God is not partial but everyone who fears God and works righteousness is acceptable to him. Notice in verse 45, those who were circumcised were amazed. They were amazed because Gentiles (Non-circumcised and non-followers of the Mosaic Law) were receiving the free gift of the Holy Spirit!

## Acts 10 (WEB):

10 Now there was a certain man in Caesarea, Cornelius by name, a centurion of what was called the Italian Regiment, <sup>2</sup> a devout man, and one who feared God with all his house, who gave gifts for the needy generously to the people, and always prayed to God. <sup>3</sup> At about the ninth hour of the day, he clearly saw in a vision an angel of God coming to him, and saying to him, “Cornelius!”

<sup>4</sup> He, fastening his eyes on him, and being frightened, said, “What is it, Lord?”

He said to him, “Your prayers and your gifts to the needy have gone up for a memorial before God. <sup>5</sup> Now send men to Joppa, and get Simon, who is also called Peter. <sup>6</sup> He is staying with a tanner named Simon, whose house is by the seaside.

<sup>7</sup> When the angel who spoke to him had departed, Cornelius called two of his household servants and a devout soldier of those who waited on him continually. <sup>8</sup> Having explained everything to them, he sent them to Joppa. <sup>9</sup> Now on the next day as they were on their journey, and got close to the city, Peter went up on the housetop to pray at about noon. <sup>10</sup> He became hungry and desired to eat, but while they were preparing, he fell into a trance. <sup>11</sup> He saw heaven opened and a certain container descending to him, like a great sheet let down by four corners on the earth, <sup>12</sup> in which were all kinds of four-footed animals of the earth, wild animals, reptiles, and birds of the sky. <sup>13</sup> A voice came to him, “Rise, Peter, kill and eat!”

<sup>14</sup> But Peter said, “Not so, Lord; for I have never eaten anything that is common or unclean.”

<sup>15</sup> A voice came to him again the second time, “What God has cleansed, you must not call unclean.” <sup>16</sup> This was done three times, and immediately the vessel was received up into heaven. <sup>17</sup> Now while Peter was very perplexed in himself what the vision which he had seen might mean, behold, the men who were sent by Cornelius, having made inquiry for Simon’s house, stood before the gate, <sup>18</sup> and called and asked whether Simon, who was also called Peter, was lodging there. <sup>19</sup> While Peter was pondering the vision, the Spirit said to him, “Behold, three men seek you. <sup>20</sup> But arise, get down, and go with them, doubting nothing; for I have sent them.”

<sup>21</sup> Peter went down to the men, and said, “Behold, I am he whom you seek. Why have you come?”

<sup>22</sup> They said, “Cornelius, a centurion, a righteous man and one who fears God, and well spoken of by all the nation of the Jews, was directed by a holy angel to invite you to his house, and to listen to what you say.” <sup>23</sup> So he called them in and provided a place to stay. On the next day Peter arose and went out with them, and some of the brothers from Joppa accompanied him. <sup>24</sup> On the next day they entered into Caesarea. Cornelius was waiting for them, having called together his relatives and his near friends. <sup>25</sup> When Peter entered, Cornelius met him, fell down at his feet, and worshiped him. <sup>26</sup> But Peter raised him up, saying, “Stand up! I myself am also a man.” <sup>27</sup> As he talked with him, he went in and found many gathered together. <sup>28</sup> He said to them, “You yourselves know how it is an unlawful thing for a man who is a Jew to join himself or come to one of another nation, but God has shown me that I shouldn’t call any man unholy or

unclean. <sup>29</sup> Therefore I also came without complaint when I was sent for. I ask therefore, why did you send for me?”

<sup>30</sup> Cornelius said, “Four days ago, I was fasting until this hour, and at the ninth hour, I prayed in my house, and behold, a man stood before me in bright clothing, <sup>31</sup> and said, ‘Cornelius, your prayer is heard, and your gifts to the needy are remembered in the sight of God. <sup>32</sup> Send therefore to Joppa and summon Simon, who is also called Peter. He is staying in the house of a tanner named Simon, by the seaside. When he comes, he will speak to you.’ <sup>33</sup> Therefore I sent to you at once, and it was good of you to come. Now therefore we are all here present in the sight of God to hear all things that have been commanded you by God.”

<sup>34</sup> Peter opened his mouth and said, “Truly I perceive that God doesn’t show favoritism; <sup>35</sup> but in every nation he who fears him and works righteousness is acceptable to him. <sup>36</sup> The word which he sent to the children of Israel, preaching good news of peace by Jesus Christ—he is Lord of all—<sup>37</sup> you yourselves know what happened, which was proclaimed throughout all Judea, beginning from Galilee, after the baptism which John preached; <sup>38</sup> even Jesus of Nazareth, how God anointed him with the Holy Spirit and with power, who went about doing good and healing all who were oppressed by the devil, for God was with him. <sup>39</sup> We are witnesses of everything he did both in the country of the Jews, and in Jerusalem; whom they also killed, hanging him on a tree. <sup>40</sup> God raised him up the third day, and gave him to be revealed, <sup>41</sup> not to all the people, but to witnesses who were chosen before by God, to us, who ate and drank with him after he rose from the dead. <sup>42</sup> He commanded us to preach to the people and to testify that this is he who is appointed by God as the Judge of the living and the dead. <sup>43</sup> All the prophets testify about him, that through his name everyone who believes in him will receive remission of sins.”

<sup>44</sup> While Peter was still speaking these words, the Holy Spirit fell on all those who heard the word. <sup>45</sup> They of the circumcision who believed were amazed, as many as came with Peter, because the gift of the Holy Spirit was also poured out on the Gentiles. <sup>46</sup> For they heard them speaking in other languages and magnifying God.

Then Peter answered, <sup>47</sup> “Can anyone forbid these people from being baptized with water? They have received the Holy Spirit just like us.” <sup>48</sup> He commanded them to be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ. Then they asked him to stay some days.

### **[Compare Romans 10:4 \(ASV\):](#)**

For Christ is the end of the law unto righteousness to every one that believeth.

**In conclusion, circumcision or following the Sabbath (Which is part of the Mosaic Law) is not required and does not make any difference to receive God’s approval. For as Peter had mentioned, God is not partial but accepts anyone who believes and works righteousness.**

## Does someone need to use Jesus' name to be heard by the Almighty?

There are many examples in the Bible where people's prayers were heard by Yahweh, the Almighty, before the Messiah gave his life as a corresponding sacrifice. King David is an excellent example. Abraham, Job, and Noah were among those considered righteous by God. They did not need Christ's sacrifice to have their prayers heard by the Almighty. God will hear the prayers of those who whole-heartily search for him.

Some feel that John 14:6 pertains to prayers.

[John 14:6 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>6</sup> Jesus said to him, "I am the way, the truth, and the life. No one comes to the Father, except through me.

This passage at John 14:6 can be properly viewed to involve all those who submit to God. It does not mean that someone must use Jesus' name in a prayer, for the Almighty to hear it. Otherwise, why didn't Jesus teach his followers to include this thought while instructing them how to pray, as found in Matthew 6:9-13?

[Matthew 6:9-13 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>9</sup> Pray like this:

“Our Father in heaven, may your name be kept holy.

<sup>10</sup> Let your Kingdom come.

Let your will be done on earth as it is in heaven.

<sup>11</sup> Give us today our daily bread.

<sup>12</sup> Forgive us our debts,  
as we also forgive our debtors.

<sup>13</sup> Bring us not into temptation,  
but deliver us from the evil one.

For yours is the Kingdom, the power, and the glory forever. Amen.’



## A Timeline Interpretation of Prophecy Concerning Jesus' Second Coming and Arrival

Placed below is a timeline in which prophecies have been brought together in a logical sequence. Jehovah allows us to meditate and properly speculate regarding possibilities. But it is Jehovah who makes sure that his prophecies come true. And it is our privilege to see how he accomplishes it. May we always turn to Jehovah's pure language to direct our ways.

This time-line is found at [Daniel 12:11-12](#) and is primarily based upon events in Daniel chapters [7](#), [11](#) and [12](#). The goal is to help others understand that Jehovah is a God who requires exclusive devotion, and his people must cleanse their worship as much as possible before Jesus arrives in power to execute judgment. This "straightening" or "cleansing" primarily involves discarding false worship which includes false teachings.

### Timeline primarily concerning Jesus' second coming in power to judge: – Much of the information is compiled into videos on the "1914" page

>>> "Elijah" >>>> 1 through 1,290 days (includes whitening and sackcloth) >>>> 1,290th day to the 1,335th day (45 days "dead" and repentance) >>>> day 1,335 and after >>>> The "war" (after the 1,000-year reign of Jesus) >>>

The "[Elijah](#)" is a person or group of people who bring attention to Jehovah's people that they are in grave need to straighten their corrupt ways – they have left the pure worship of Jehovah. This straightening is needed else the earth (of man) is to be "destroyed" or "cursed" ([Malachi 4:5-6](#)). How long before this "Elijah" appears before the 1,290 days is up to speculation. But an "Elijah" would have to know the scriptures thoroughly to help one to straighten their worship. That would include prophecy in Revelation. Once that is understood, Jesus "is [coming](#) quickly." Jesus also presents his "first fruits" before Jehovah for acceptance just before the 1,290 day period ([Zechariah 5:5-9](#))

The 1,290 days includes the "setting up" of the "abomination that causes desolation" (NIV) along with the capturing or conquering or destroying of the literal Jerusalem today\* (at a minimum, a revert to its condition before the "1967" war) – This will be accomplished by the "king of the north" or an ally of him. Satan and his demons are "hurled" to the earth at the start of this time period. These days also include Jehovah's people (generally speaking) finding themselves in sackcloth for 3.5 years (Revelation 11:2,3) and they experience the "dashing of the power of the holy people to pieces" (Daniel 12:7). This happens because Jehovah cannot longer excuse their apostate ways, so he leaves them (Jeremiah 9:16,17). His people gradually realize their need to straighten their worship. Many of God's people will fall away. This is a time of hardship and cleansing for God's people. Only those who seek Jehovah will be accepted. God's people will have to be careful. Ones will act cunningly to appear to be part of God's true people. Some will hypocritically and secretly hold onto impure worship and others may act as spies for others. But those knowing and siding with Jehovah's ways will act wisely to avoid traps. Satan will be restricted to the earth and will be allowed to put to "death" the holy ones of God as depicted by the two witnesses at Revelation 11:9. (The "two witnesses" is a group made of two parts – (See Revelation 6 comments). One part is made of loyal ones who died of the priestly

class (especially evident of those in the first and second century who endured the severest of tests from Rome). This first part (of the two witnesses) goes with Jesus during the 3.5 year period as represented by the woman who goes into the wilderness for 3.5 years (in Revelation 12:14) and the “ephah” (in Zechariah 5:9). The second part of the “two witnesses” is to be tested and cleansed on earth during the 3.5 years of “sackcloth.” They will be sifted and the righteous “sealed” (Revelation 7:3). Together, these “two witnesses” from two different time periods give legal witness of their loyalty to Jehovah and “conquer” Satan’s rulership by being “killed” by it. (Jehovah is the judge and He forgives them, making them pure like virgins – Compare [White robes](#), and Zechariah 3:3-7). The witnessing work of God’s people during this time will turn from the current “niceness” of the good news of the kingdom to the urgent warning for the nations to repent and submit to Jesus’ kingdom of righteousness soon to come – or be destroyed. This message will be granted to be given to the nations in “unrighteous” ways. It becomes known and becomes as an unavoidable pestilence to the nations that drives them crazy. Eventually, the “power” (which is most likely the legal organization(s)) of the holy ones will be done away with. Some of the holy ones may die, many may be imprisoned, others persecuted in other ways, but endurance is vital along with keeping free from the mark of the wild beast. Jesus suffered injustices and Jehovah left him for a time – to be fully tested. Jesus knew others would drink his “cup” also. When God’s holy people are “warred” upon, they are “killed” also. The “king of the north” will be defeated (possibly by Michael) toward the very end of this 1,290-day period – People rejoice!

At the beginning of the 45 days, Christ’s remaining brothers are gathered by the angels and become part of the bride of Christ. Jesus is standing up for God’s people. Christ also sends out his angels to collect the wicked and destroy them. It happens fast, like the flood of Noah’s day. The major part of the flood was 40 days and wiped out the wicked. Noah and his family were also sealed in the ark for a bit before the flood destroyed the wicked. The 45 days also have strong parallels with the book of Jonah. Jonah was “dead” in the fish for 3 days. He then walked to the edge of Nineveh in two days (although this interpretation may be off a bit) and it took him a day to walk the breadth of the city – An approximate total of 5 days. As he walked through Nineveh he proclaimed that in only forty days Nineveh was to be overthrown. It very well could be that the city of Nineveh heard of this prophet and his commission and his fate from ones from the boat – and now he was alive! – And he is giving his warning! – Surely his God is Almighty! From the king of Nineveh on down, the inhabitants repented and were given an “extension of time.” This opportunity is shown to kings in our future in Psalms 2:12 where it indicates kings are given a chance to “kiss” the Son so as not to be destroyed. It also coincides with Daniel 7:12 “...a lengthening in life given to them for a time and a season.” – Due to their repentance and submission. However, it seems that for the first approximate 3.5 literal days (of this 45-day period) after the complete “dashing of the power of the holy people to pieces”, they appear “dead” to the nations. Their enemies rejoice! However, they are now given a sign which they do not expect. (Revelation 11:11-13) Spirit of God enters the holy people and a loud voice from heaven occurs saying “Come on up here” and they may experience a great literal and/or symbolic earthquake among other things (perhaps similar to what was experienced when Jesus was put to death but more on a world-wide scale). The nations are very frightened – They see their end in front of them! This is when they experience Revelation 14:6,7; “And I saw another

angel flying in midheaven, and he had everlasting good news to declare as glad tidings to those who dwell on the earth, and to every nation and tribe and tongue and people, saying in a loud voice: “FEAR God and give him glory, because the hour of the judgment by him has arrived, and so worship the One who made the heaven and the earth and sea and fountains of waters.” The nations of people know what to do...they destroy false religion, repent (including submit), and give glory to our creator Jehovah! It is proper to notice that this message work is completed earth-wide by Jehovah’s means and most likely not by his holy people and certainly not with this impact. This is another reason to give glory to Jehovah! This most likely is the time spoken of in Zechariah 8:20-23 when nations eagerly take hold of “the skirt” of Jehovah’s people because they heard that Jehovah is with them!

Day 1,335 comes with those who have endured as praising Yahweh (Jehovah)! Some nations will have been given “a lengthening in life” (Daniel 7:12) most likely due to their repentant and submissive attitude. However, for a certainty, those putting faith in Jehovah will have escaped destruction and will soon realize the blessings under the rulership of the Prince of Peace. It seems as if the resurrection activity begins very soon but could have started in the 45 day period. It is hard to say exactly how soon it starts after Michael stands up or how long it lasts! However, it does seem that some during this time will not want to serve Jehovah. Will they be placed in “desert” regions either literally or symbolically or both? Time will tell. Some who are resurrected will show an improper attitude; thinking that they deserve more than others for one reason or another. (Matthew 20:1-16) We must be careful to never be ungrateful. However, the righteous will enjoy blessings as never before.

The “war” mentioned at Revelation 20:8 occurs after Jesus hands the kingdom to his father Jehovah. Prophecy indicates that when Satan is let out, he influences some humans to want to take something that they are not authorized to have – Possessions of the righteous ones granted to them by Jehovah. It appears that one of the main differences between this war and that of when Jesus arrives in power is that Jehovah’s people do not have to undergo tribulation as before. For Jehovah speedily destroys Satan and his followers before they can do any harm to his people. It is at this time that Jehovah himself vindicates his name once for all time. Jehovah provides his human and spirit followers with unobstructed good! Wow!

\* Regarding Jerusalem today: The borders are larger than what they were in the first century. Actually, the walls of Jerusalem from the first century seem to have resided entirely in what is known as “East Jerusalem” today and was captured by Israel in the 1967 “six-day” war. Although it is good to note that the term [“East Jerusalem”](#) has different definitions. So, if one was to just view the geographical location of the original city from the first century, one could say that Israel did not have any of it since 70 CE. along with their army – both not being “trampled on” until 1967. – See Daniel 8:13,14

## Elijah

**“What is your business here, Elijah?” To this he said: “I have been absolutely jealous for Jehovah the God of armies; for the sons of Israel have left your covenant, your altars they have torn down, and your prophets they have killed by the sword, so that I only am left; and they begin looking for my soul to take it away” (1 Kings 19:14)**

*The New American Bible (Saint Joseph Edition)* translates **Malachi 3:23,24 (same as Malachi 4:6 in many translations)**; “Lo, I will send you Elijah, the prophet, Before the day of the LORD comes, the great and terrible day, To turn the hearts of the fathers to their children, and the hearts of the children to their fathers, Lest I come and strike the land with doom.”

[Daniel 11:31-35](#) gives us a time frame when the work of “Elijah” occurs. This is the “straightening” or “cleansing” of God’s people during their time of tribulation. This work happens during the entire 3 and a half years that start with the destruction / conquering of Jerusalem of our day. Although this “Elijah” may exist today, it seems that the noticeable effects of the cleansing work do not start until after the destruction / conquering of Jerusalem of our day, by the king of the north of our day.

[Malachi 4:5,6](#) states that this “Elijah” (which could be a person or group) comes “before the coming of the great and fear-inspiring day of Jehovah.” How long before “the coming of the great and fear-inspiring day of Jehovah” does this “Elijah” come? There is not a certain answer, but we have the example of John the Baptist who was known as an “Elijah.” He could not have been doing his work very long before the arrival of Jesus (when Jesus was baptized).

**Bible prophecy** and other bible principles would have to be clearly understood by an “Elijah,” for a “straightening” to occur.

1. Daniel 12:9 states “...Go, Daniel, because the words are made secret until the time of [the] end.” So, it can be reasoned that the “Elijah” of our day would have this understanding to use for the “time of [the] end.”
2. If the presented interpretation of prophecies on this web site are correct, this could be part of the “Elijah” work – Because it would be presenting correct scriptural understanding that can be used by God’s people to cleanse their worship.

**The messages from Elijah** of long ago were not deemed to have God’s backing by the people (in general) until they literally had seen a sign. It is also interesting how God’s people did not know who to take sides with. Many may have been “born into” worshiping this way and been told it was correct their entire lives. (**1 Kings 18:21**: “Then Elijah approached all the people and said: “How long will YOU be limping on two different opinions? If Jehovah is the [true] God, go following him; but if Baal is, go following him.” And the people did not say a word in answer to him.) (1 Kings 18:36, 37: And it came about at the time that the grain offering goes up that Elijah the prophet began to approach and say: “O Jehovah, the God of Abraham, Isaac and Israel, today let it be known that you are God in Israel and I am your servant and it is by your word that I have

done all these things. Answer me, O Jehovah, answer me, that this people may know that you, Jehovah, are the [true] God and you yourself have turned their heart back.”)

1. It is not expected that many, if any, put faith in this timeline or much of anything mentioned in this site until Jerusalem is captured (or conquered with a minimum of reverting back to its condition before the 1967 “six-day” war – see [timeline](#), [Daniel 8:13,14](#)) by the king of the north of our day ([Daniel 11:31](#))
2. It is up to speculation of how many of Israel heard Elijah before people put faith in his word, but I am sure the word spread fast. The same thing most likely happened with John the Baptist’s work. To what extent this message of straightening out will be known (and possibly somewhat acted upon) before God’s people put full faith in it is yet to be seen.

**The “Elijah” in Jesus’ day and for our day is mentioned at [Matthew 17:1-13 \(WEB\)](#) (Same account at [Luke 9:28-36](#) and [Mark 9:1-13](#)):**

After six days, Jesus took with him Peter, James, and John his brother, and brought them up into a high mountain by themselves. <sup>2</sup> He was changed before them. His face shone like the sun, and his garments became as white as the light. <sup>3</sup> Behold, Moses and Elijah appeared to them talking with him.

<sup>4</sup> Peter answered and said to Jesus, “Lord, it is good for us to be here. If you want, let’s make three tents here: one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah.”

<sup>5</sup> While he was still speaking, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them. Behold, a voice came out of the cloud, saying, “This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased. Listen to him.”

<sup>6</sup> When the disciples heard it, they fell on their faces, and were very afraid. <sup>7</sup> Jesus came and touched them and said, “Get up, and don’t be afraid.” <sup>8</sup> Lifting up their eyes, they saw no one, except Jesus alone.

<sup>9</sup> As they were coming down from the mountain, Jesus commanded them, saying, “Don’t tell anyone what you saw, until the Son of Man has risen from the dead.”

<sup>10</sup> His disciples asked him, saying, “Then why do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?”

<sup>11</sup> Jesus answered them, “Elijah indeed comes first, and will restore all things; <sup>12</sup> but I tell you that Elijah has come already, and they didn’t recognize him, but did to him whatever they wanted to. Even so the Son of Man will also suffer by them.” <sup>13</sup> Then the disciples understood that he spoke to them of John the Baptizer.

Notice that “Elijah” was to come “and will restore all things” although John the Baptist was dead at the time of this statement.

[Matthew 11:7-14 \(WEB\)](#) speaks of John the Baptist as an “Elijah”:

<sup>7</sup> As these went their way, Jesus began to say to the multitudes concerning John, “What did you go out into the wilderness to see? A reed shaken by the wind? <sup>8</sup> But what did you go out to see? A man in soft clothing? Behold, those who wear soft clothing are in kings’ houses. <sup>9</sup> But why did

you go out? To see a prophet? Yes, I tell you, and much more than a prophet. <sup>10</sup> For this is he, of whom it is written, ‘Behold, I send my messenger before your face, who will prepare your way before you.’ [Malachi 3:1](#) <sup>11</sup> Most certainly I tell you, among those who are born of women there has not arisen anyone greater than John the Baptizer; yet he who is least in the Kingdom of Heaven is greater than he. <sup>12</sup> From the days of John the Baptizer until now, the Kingdom of Heaven suffers violence, and the violent take it by force.<sup>[a]</sup> <sup>13</sup> For all the prophets and the law prophesied until John. <sup>14</sup> If you are willing to receive it, this is Elijah, who is to come.

This shows us that John the Baptist was not of the kingdom of the heavens. Yet he was of a priestly line (Compare Luke 1:5). This along with other reasoning indicate that the “messenger” to straighten things out is not of the spiritual priestly class that will rule with Christ (Revelation 5:9,10). Elijah of old was not either. Prophets used to straighten things out went to the priestly class, kings, and people to warn them of their ways, but it seems that most came from outside the “priestly” class. (John was of a literal priestly line and he did warn the people – Luke 3:7-14) Does this mean it will happen this way today? No one can say for sure, but it is not important. It doesn’t matter.

“**Elijah’s spirit**” is defined in part at [Luke 1:17 \(WEB\)](#) <sup>17</sup> He will go before him in the spirit and power of Elijah, ‘to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children,’ [Malachi 4:6](#) and the disobedient to the wisdom of the just; to prepare a people prepared for the Lord.”

#### **Isaiah 40:3-5 (WEB)**

<sup>3</sup> The voice of one who calls out,  
“Prepare the way of Yahweh in the wilderness!  
Make a level highway in the desert for our God.  
<sup>4</sup> Every valley shall be exalted,  
and every mountain and hill shall be made low.  
The uneven shall be made level,  
and the rough places a plain.  
<sup>5</sup> Yahweh’s glory shall be revealed,  
and all flesh shall see it together;  
for the mouth of Yahweh has spoken it.”

John the Baptist referred to this scripture when ones asked who he was ([Luke 3:4-6 WEB](#))

**In Luke 1: 67-79 (WEB)** John the Baptist (also known as an “Elijah”) was prophesied about:

<sup>67</sup> His father Zacharias was filled with the Holy Spirit, and prophesied, saying,  
<sup>68</sup> “Blessed be the Lord, the God of Israel,  
for he has visited and redeemed his people;  
<sup>69</sup> and has raised up a horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David  
<sup>70</sup> (as he spoke by the mouth of his holy prophets who have been from of old),  
<sup>71</sup> salvation from our enemies and from the hand of all who hate us;  
<sup>72</sup> to show mercy toward our fathers,  
to remember his holy covenant,



<sup>73</sup> the oath which he swore to Abraham our father,  
<sup>74</sup> to grant to us that we, being delivered out of the hand of our enemies,  
should serve him without fear,  
<sup>75</sup> in holiness and righteousness before him all the days of our life.  
<sup>76</sup> And you, child, will be called a prophet of the Most High;  
for you will go before the face of the Lord to prepare his ways,  
<sup>77</sup> to give knowledge of salvation to his people by the remission of their sins,  
<sup>78</sup> because of the tender mercy of our God,  
by which the dawn from on high will visit us,  
<sup>79</sup> to shine on those who sit in darkness and the shadow of death;  
to guide our feet into the way of peace.”

#### **Malachi 4:6a**

“And he must turn the heart of fathers back toward sons, and the heart of sons back toward fathers;”

See [Isaiah 1:4](#); [Jeremiah 23:11,12](#); [Daniel 11:35](#)

#### **Malachi 4:6b**

“in order that I may not come and actually strike the earth with a devoting [of it] to destruction.”

Remember the account of Sodom and Gomorrah at [Genesis 18:23-33](#) where Abraham humbly “pleaded” with Jehovah not to destroy Sodom and Gomorrah and got Jehovah to say in verse 32b “I shall not bring it to ruin on account of the ten.” (Talking about not ruining Sodom and Gomorrah if Jehovah found 10 righteous ones there) We know what happened. And the current situation of “all of” Jehovah’s people offering “polluted bread” (apostasy) by including false teachings as part of his word (although most are unaware of this) certainly does not make them legally righteous in his eyes. ([Isaiah 9:16-17](#) and [Jeremiah 17:13](#)) Jehovah has grounds for a spiritual divorcing.

#### [Psalms 14:2-3](#)

<sup>2</sup> Yahweh looked down from heaven on the children of men,  
to see if there were any who understood,  
who sought after God.

<sup>3</sup> They have all gone aside.  
They have together become corrupt.  
There is no one who does good, no, not one.

#### [Jude 18-19 \(WEB\):](#)

<sup>18</sup> They said to you, “In the last time there will be mockers, walking after their own ungodly lusts.” <sup>19</sup> These are those who cause divisions and are sensual, not having the Spirit.



The word “ridiculers” is noted by the reference bible to be literally “players in sport [of mocking]”.

This word “mocking” reminds me of Elijah mocking the priests of Baal ([1 Kings 18:27](#)). He was a righteous and spiritual man, but he was mocking false worship. His mocking and Jehovah’s action did cause a division among Jehovah’s people, but it was with the intent of cleansing false worship from among Jehovah’s people. The “Elijah” of our day does not fit into this category of men mentioned in verses 18 and 19 because those ones proceeded according to their own desires for ungodly things.

# Daniel

## Daniel (My Judge is God)

Daniel lived over 2,500 years ago, about 500 years before the birth of Jesus. He was a Hebrew exile brought from the city of Jerusalem to serve in Babylon. Over time, he served in a high capacity and proved to be unwavering in his faith to Almighty God, the God of Abraham, Yahweh.

The main theme of Daniel is the succession of Gentile (Non-Israelite) kingdoms up to the ushering in of God's kingdom to rule over the entire earth!

**The end of the rule of the Gentile nations is known to some as “The end of the world!” But upon examination with scripture, it is not.** It is just the end of an era where Gentile nations rule the earth. And at the end of that era is the beginning of a grand new era of righteousness, good health, and the resurrection of those who have died – All with the rule of God's kingdom! (Isaiah 11:6-9; 33:24; 35:5,6; Daniel 12:1,2; John 5:28,29)

But before God's kingdom begins ruling, there is tribulation. Jesus taught his disciples to pray for God's kingdom to come. Jesus also talked with his disciples about the treacherous times ahead and referred to the writings of [Daniel the prophet](#) by name. (Matthew 6:9-13; 24: Mark 13; Luke 21)

Daniel talks about many different time periods. In fact, the *New World Translation of the Holy Scriptures (1984 Reference Edition)* has used the words “time” and “times” approximately 85 times in just the book of Daniel itself! When one studies the book of Daniel, one can see that it is not all in chronological order, as in Isaiah. Sometimes a point is re-illustrated or elaborated on somewhere else in the book.

Daniel chapters one through six are basically in order. The other chapters, seven through 12 elaborate on each other and are not in order.

### [Daniel 1](#)

Daniel and his three companions introduced

### [Daniel 2](#)

The king of Babylon demands to be told about a dream and its meaning. Lives are at stake!

The king is told of God's incoming kingdom, to rule all the world. (Compare [Matthew 6:9,10](#))

### [Daniel 3](#)

Daniel's three companions are thrown into a fiery furnace!

### [Daniel 4](#)

The king of Babylon goes mad for seven years and learns a lesson!

## [Daniel 5](#)

The writing on the wall and Babylon's fall.

## [Daniel 6](#)

Daniel is thrown into the lion's pit!

---

**This is the beginning of the book of Daniel where the chapters do not run in order. Chapters 7 and 8 are of two different visions covering two different time periods which overlap some. These visions correlate with the struggles of the king of the north and south in chapters 11 and 12 and the appearance of the messiah mentioned in chapter 9.**

---

## [Daniel 7](#)

The vision of the four beasts out of the sea

## [Daniel 8](#)

The vision of 2 beasts and the identification of Jerusalem

## [Daniel 9](#)

The identification of the appearance of the Messiah

## [Daniel 10](#)

Michael, the prince of Daniel's people, comes to help Gabriel.

Introduction to chapters 11 and 12.

## [Daniel 11 -12](#)

Struggles between the king of the north and south identified.

The sign to identify when God's kingdom begins its worldwide reign, immediately after the destruction of the king of the north!

A grand resurrection begins! (Compare [John 5:25-29](#); [6:39-40](#))

## Daniel 1

Here we are introduced to Daniel and his three companions as exiles from Jerusalem to be tested and brought before the king of Babylon. As time goes on, they are all exalted to superior positions.

**Daniel 1:17** “And as for these children, the four of them, to them the [true] God gave knowledge and insight in all writing and wisdom; and Daniel himself had understanding in all sorts of visions and dreams.”

Daniel Studying





Daniel and his companions in Babylon



## Daniel 2

We find, in this chapter, the king of Babylon has a dream, and he demands to be told the dream and its meaning or else the wise men are to be killed! No one can do this except Daniel who acknowledges that it is God who is the revealer of secrets.

This dream is of an immense image of a man made mostly of different metals except for his feet which include clay. The king is the head of gold. Other Gentile (Non-Hebrew) kings are represented by other metals. There is a stone that smashes the image. The image basically blows away and the stone that smashed it becomes a large mountain and fills the earth. Daniel explains that it is God's kingdom that smashes the image and will not be passed onto anyone else.

This crushing of the image of the Gentile kings represented by metals is the end of the Gentile Times or as some say, the end of the world – But it is not the end of the world of man. It is the end of the world under Gentile rule and is replaced with God's Kingdom of righteousness with Jesus (Yeshua) placed as the king! Not only is Jesus the Son of the Almighty but also the son of man of the lineage of Abraham, the father of many nations including the Hebrew nation.

Notice that as you read on how in the last part of Daniel 11, the king of the north is soundly defeated. Then immediately after that, Michael "stands up" and we see in chapter 12 verse 2 that a resurrection begins! Over this short period of time, the Gentile rulership over the earth is replaced by The Almighty's and his Son's! – Compare Revelation 11:15

**Daniel 2:20-23** "Daniel was answering and saying: "Let the name of God become blessed from time indefinite even to time indefinite, for wisdom and mightiness—for they belong to him. and he is changing times and seasons, removing kings and setting up kings, giving wisdom to the wise ones and knowledge to those knowing discernment. He is revealing the deep things and the concealed things, knowing what is in the darkness; and with him the light does dwell."

– Compare where Jesus taught his disciples to pray for God's name to be made "holy" or "sanctified" in Matthew 6:9-13

### **The king's perplexing dream:**





**Daniel 2:31-45** “You, O king, happened to be beholding, and, look! a certain immense image. That image, which was large and the brightness of which was extraordinary, was standing in front of you, and its appearance was dreadful. As regards that image, its head was of good gold, its breasts and its arms were of silver, its belly and its thighs were of copper, its legs were of iron, its feet were partly of iron and partly of molded clay. You kept on looking until a stone was cut



out not by hands, and it struck the image on its feet of iron and of molded clay and crushed them. At that time the iron, the molded clay, the copper, the silver and the gold were, all together, crushed and became like the chaff from the summer threshing floor, and the wind carried them away so that no trace at all was found of them. And as for the stone that struck the image, it became a large mountain and filled the whole earth. (vs.36) “This is the dream, and its interpretation we shall say before the king. You, O king, the king of kings, you to whom the God of heaven has given the kingdom, the might, and the strength and the dignity, and into whose hand he has given, wherever the sons of mankind are dwelling, the beasts of the field and the winged creatures of the heavens, and whom he has made ruler over all of them, you yourself are the head of gold. (vs.39) “And after you there will rise another kingdom inferior to you; and another kingdom, a third one, of copper, that will rule over the whole earth. (vs.40) “And as for the forth kingdom, it will prove to be strong like iron. Forasmuch as iron is crushing and grinding everything else, so, like iron that shatters, it will crush and shatter even all these. (vs.41) “And whereas you beheld the feet and the toes to be partly of molded clay of a potter and partly of iron, the kingdom itself will prove to be divided, but somewhat of the hardness of iron will prove to be in it, forasmuch as you beheld the iron mixed with moist clay. And as for the toes of the feet being partly of iron and partly of molded clay, the kingdom will partly prove to be strong and will partly prove to be fragile. Whereas you beheld iron mixed with moist clay, they will come to be mixed with the offspring of mankind; but they will not prove to be sticking together, this one to that one, just as iron is not mixing with molded clay. (vs.44) “And in those days of those kings the God of heaven will set up a kingdom that will never be brought to ruin. And the kingdom itself will not be passed on to any other people. It will crush and put an end to all these kingdoms, and it itself will stand to times indefinite; forasmuch as you beheld that out of the mountain a stone was cut not by hands, and [that] it crushed the iron, the copper, the molded clay, the silver and the gold. The grand God himself has made known to the king what is to occur after this. And the dream is reliable, and the interpretation of it is trustworthy.”

Jesus taught for God’s kingdom to come in Matthew 6:9-13. Compare Psalms chapter two where it tells the kings of the earth to submit to God’s Son else perish! Also Psalms 110:1; Ezekiel 17:22-24

It is not critical to know what king is represented by each metal. That’s not the critical point. The critical point is that it is God who sets up and removes kings and in time he is going to set up his everlasting kingdom over the whole earth. This is a literal event, just like the king of Babylon was literal although represented in the dream as the head of gold.

#### [Psalms 2 \(WEB\):](#)

- 2 Why do the nations rage,  
and the peoples plot a vain thing?
- <sup>2</sup> The kings of the earth take a stand,  
and the rulers take counsel together,  
against Yahweh, and against his Anointed, saying,
- <sup>3</sup> “Let’s break their bonds apart,  
and cast their cords from us.”

- <sup>4</sup> He who sits in the heavens will laugh.  
The Lord will have them in derision.
- <sup>5</sup> Then he will speak to them in his anger,  
and terrify them in his wrath:
- <sup>6</sup> “Yet I have set my King on my holy hill of Zion.”
- <sup>7</sup> I will tell of the decree:  
Yahweh said to me, “You are my son.  
Today I have become your father.
- <sup>8</sup> Ask of me, and I will give the nations for your inheritance,  
the uttermost parts of the earth for your possession.
- <sup>9</sup> You shall break them with a rod of iron.  
You shall dash them in pieces like a potter’s vessel.”
- <sup>10</sup> Now therefore be wise, you kings.  
Be instructed, you judges of the earth.
- <sup>11</sup> Serve Yahweh with fear,  
and rejoice with trembling.
- <sup>12</sup> Give sincere homage to the Son, lest he be angry, and you perish on the way,  
for his wrath will soon be kindled.  
Blessed are all those who take refuge in him.

## Daniel 3

Daniel's three companions are tested in their faith to God. They refuse to bow down to a false image that the king has set up. He becomes furious and has a fiery furnace heated up seven times hotter than normal and has the three companions of David thrown in! The strong men who throw them in die from the heat, but the companions of David are seen walking in the midst of the furnace and are summoned out by the frightened king. The fire had no effect on them. They did not even have the smell of smoke on them! The king is elated and allows freedom of worship for the Hebrews!

The main point is that the three knew that they might die but they loved Almighty God more than themselves and were rewarded! Compare where Jesus mentioned that one should love God with your whole soul in Matthew 22:37-39!

Fiery furnace:





## Daniel 4

The king of Babylon has another dream about an immense tree which is chopped down and metal bands are put on it to keep it from growing. Seven times are declared to pass over the banded stump until the king realizes that it is God who gives rulership even to the lowliest of mankind. Daniel interprets the dream. The king is the tree, and he is to become like an animal for seven years until he realizes that it is God who causes even the lowliest of man to rule. This befalls the king, and his kingdom is returned to him.

The king goes mad:



The king became haughty thinking it was because of his own self that his rulership was so great. But he was humbled until he realized that it was the Most High that sets up and removes kings, even the lowliest of man.

**Daniel 4:10-12** – “Now the visions of my head upon my bed I happened to be beholding, and, look! a tree in the midst of the earth, the height of which was immense. The tree grew up and became strong, and its very height finally reached the heavens, and it was visible to the extremity of the whole earth. Its foliage was fair, and its fruit was abundant, and there was food for all on it. Under it the beast of the field would seek shade, and on its boughs the birds of heaven would dwell, and from it all flesh would feed itself.”

**Daniel 4:15-17** “However, LEAVE its rootstock itself in the earth, even with a banding of iron and of copper, among the grass of the field; and with the dew of the heavens let it be wet, and with the beast let its portion be among the vegetation of the earth. Let its heart be changed from that of mankind, and let the heart of a beast be given to it, and let seven times pass over it. By the decree of watchers the thing is, and [by] the saying of holy ones the request is, to the intent that people living may know that the Most High is Ruler in the kingdom of mankind and that to the one whom he wants to, he gives it and he sets up over it even the lowliest one of mankind.”

**Daniel 4:23-26** ” ‘And because the king beheld a watcher, even a holy one, coming down from the heavens, who was also saying: “CHOP the tree down, and RUIN it. However, LEAVE its rootstock itself in the earth, but with a banding of iron and of copper, among the grass of the field, and with the dew of the heavens let it become wet, and with the beasts of the field let its portion be until seven times themselves pass over it,” this is the interpretation, O king, and the decree of the Most High is that which must befall my lord the king. And you they will be driving away from men, and with the beasts of the field your dwelling will come to be, and the vegetation is what they will give even to you to eat just like the bulls; and with the dew of the heavens you yourself will be getting wet, and seven times themselves will pass over you, until you know that the Most High is Ruler in the kingdom of mankind, and that to the one whom he wants to he gives it. (vs.26)” ‘And because they said to leave the rootstock of the tree, your kingdom will be sure to you after you know that the heavens are ruling.”

**Daniel 4:27** “Therefore, O king, may my counsel seem good to you, and remove your own sins by righteousness, and your iniquity by showing mercy to the poor ones. Maybe there will occur a lengthening of your prosperity.”

**Daniel 4:29** “At the end of twelve lunar months...”

This shows one of Daniel’s recorded methods of time tracking (the lunar calendar)

**Daniel 4:35** “And all the inhabitants of the earth are being considered as merely nothing, and he is doing according to his own will among the army of the heavens and the inhabitants of the earth. And there exists no one that can check his hand or say to him, ‘What have you been doing?’”

**Daniel 4:37** “Now I, Nebuchadnezzar, am praising and exalting and glorifying the King of the heavens, because all his works are truth and his ways are justice, and because those who are walking in pride, he is able to humiliate.”

**We should never think too much of ourselves but thank God for our blessings!**

Jesus certainly lived a lowly life, from many respects. He was born in a stable, didn't even have a house, and was wrongly executed as a criminal. Yet God raised him from the dead to sit at his right side until he is to set his enemies as a footstool for his feet – Psalm 110:1. Compare Isaiah 42:1-4; Jeremiah 33:14-16; Ezekiel 17:22-24; 34:23,24; Daniel 12:1; Zechariah 6:12,13



## Daniel 5

Here we see the current king of Babylon disrespecting items from God's temple during a huge feast. Immediately, there is a supernatural site of a handwriting message on a wall. Daniel is called, to interpret the message. The message to the king is that God has found him to be deficient and is going to hand Babylon over to the Medes and Persians. That very night the king is killed and Babylon ceases to be the world power it once was.

The writing on the wall:





The fall of Babylon and its king in one night:





## Daniel 6

This is the story where Daniel is thrown into the lion's pit by schemers. The schemers had tricked the new king into signing into law that for 30 days, no one was to worship anyone but the king. The penalty was death, and the king could not nullify the law. But this did not deter Daniel from his regularly praying to God and that is what the wicked men wanted to see. But little did they realize that this would lead to their destruction!

Daniel prays toward Jerusalem:





Daniel in the lion's pit:



God sends his angel and keeps Daniel from harm. The king has the schemers thrown to the lions. The miraculous delivery of Daniel impresses upon the new king that Daniel's God is to be feared in the kingdom.



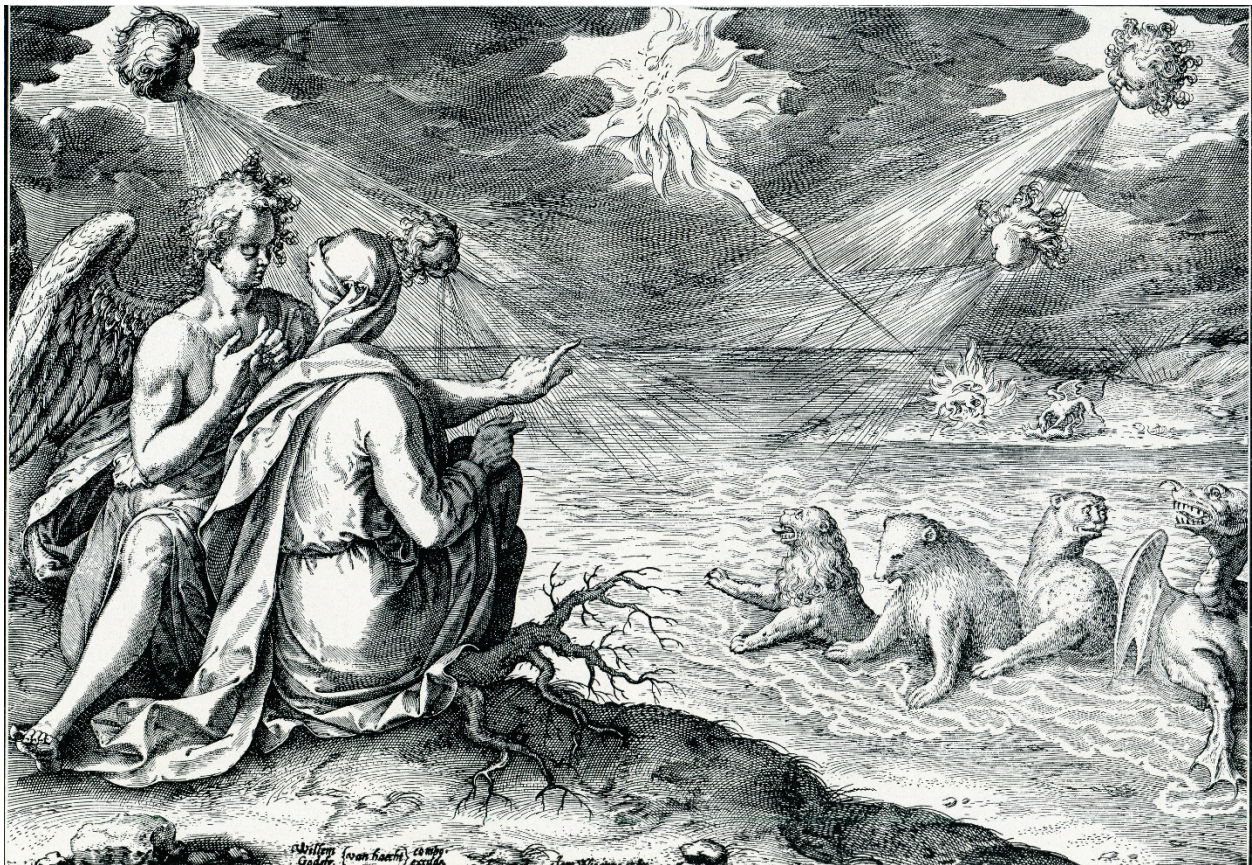
## Daniel 7

July 6, 2018

This is a vision of 4 beasts. There are two different ways to interpret this timeline regarding what kingdoms the first three beasts may represent. But it does not matter which viewpoint is correct because the actions of the small horn on the fourth beast is what is critical to understand.

We are introduced to the first three beasts coming out of a sea. As we will see, it does not matter if these beasts represent world powers in a streaming timeline or if they coexist as powers in the time of the end of the Gentiles. But one thing is for certain, the fourth is mightier than all. It's the identification of the fourth beast and the small horn that displaces three horns – That is crucial.

The four beasts:



**The beasts:**

**Daniel 7:4** “The first one was like a lion and it had the wings of an eagle. I kept on beholding until its wings were plucked out, and it was lifted up from the earth and was made to stand up on two feet just like a man, and there was given to it the heart of a man.”

**Daniel 7:5** “And, see there! another beast, a second one, it being like a bear. And on one side it was raised up, and there were three ribs in its mouth between its teeth; and this is what they were saying to it, ‘Get up, eat much flesh.’” (*This is NOT the small horn that displaces three horns, as mentioned later*)

**Daniel 7:6** “After this I kept on beholding, and, see there! another [beast], one like a leopard, but it had four wings of a flying creature on its back. And the beast had four heads, and there was given to it rulership indeed.”

**Daniel 7:7-8** “After this I kept on beholding in the visions of the night, and, see there! a fourth beast, fearsome and terrible and unusually strong. And it had teeth of iron, big ones. It was devouring and crushing, and what was left it was treading down with its feet. And it was something different from all the [other] beasts that were prior to it, and it had ten horns. I kept on considering the horns, and, look! another horn, a small one, came up in among them, and there were three of the first horns that were plucked up from before it. And, look! there were eyes like the eyes of a man in this horn, and there was a mouth speaking grandiose things.”

***Daniel himself asks for an interpretation of this starting in verse 16. The interpretation is important as it adds clarification as to the three horns and the small one.***

**This fourth beast represents America.** America is by far the most powerful nation to ever exist. The ten horns plus the small one that comes up and gets bigger are Middle East powers that America has struggled to control through assistance whether financial or military aid. This would not include Israel because it would not be part of the beast as they are Jews. But can you imagine how America has tried to control the Middle East over the years? It's like a crown of achievement! America displaces rulers that they do not want with rulers that they do want. Currently as of this writing (Jan.25, 2016), they are working to get rid of Assad as president of Syria. Although America has given assistance to the country before.

[Check this web site out!](#) It shows how America has primarily assisted ten Middle East countries in the past. The data is from 2010. ISIS did not exist then. But they came about by America's will to have “moderate rebels” trained in the Middle East to do their bidding. Well ISIS (IS or ISIL) has become a little monster speaking grandiose things such as conquering Europe, America, and the entire World. They have even mockingly claimed that they will kill Christ's followers “until he returns.” They also have their sites upon Israel – Especially Jerusalem. They shout that they will not leave one Israeli alive. I would not doubt that they would destroy the remaining foundation wall (the wailing wall), if they captured the old city. So far, for many reasons, **ISIS fits the description of the “little horn”** in chapter 7 and that “little horn” is also “the king of the north” in the latter half of Daniel 11 for our time. As of 10/25/2023, Hamas seems to have taken ISIS' place. However, time will tell who really the little horn is.

**Daniel 7:9-10** “I kept on beholding until there were thrones placed and the Ancient of Days sat down. His clothing was white just like snow, and the hair of his head was like clean wool. His throne was flames of fire; its wheels were a burning fire. There was a stream of fire flowing and going out from before him. There were a thousand thousands that kept ministering to him, and



ten thousand times ten thousand that kept standing right before him. The Court took its seat, and there were books that were opened.”

1. The word translated here as “Court” is also literally translated “The **Judgment**” (Ref. footnote). This helps explain why “the horn” (the king of the north for our day) is destroyed in verse 11. It is Judged by Jehovah’s “Court” as being unworthy to continue existing. (Remember the lesson from Daniel 4:17) This happens at the end of the three-and-a-half-year period. See also comments on Daniel 11:44-45.
2. This “Ancient of Days” is Jehovah, the [Almighty](#). (See Daniel 7:13,14 and compare Daniel 4:17)

**Daniel 7:11** “I kept on beholding at that time because of the sound of the grandiose words that the horn was speaking; I kept on beholding until the beast was killed and its body was destroyed, and it was given to the burning fire.”

See comments for verses 7:9-10; 19-25; 11:44-45.

**Daniel 7:12** “But as for the rest of the beasts, their rulerships were taken away, and there was a lengthening of life given to them for a time and a season.”

**Daniel 7:13-14** “I kept on beholding in the visions of the night, and, see there! With the clouds of the heavens someone like a son of man happened to be coming; and to the Ancient of Days he gained access, and they brought him up close even before that One. And to him there were given rulership and dignity and kingdom, that the peoples, national groups and languages should all serve even him. His rulership is an indefinitely lasting rulership that will not pass away, and his kingdom one that will not be brought to ruin.”

1. This describes in detail Jesus receiving rulership from Jehovah and with that authority received he “stands up” when he is ready to exercise that authority upon the earth – Daniel 12:1. See Revelation 5:5-10; Isaiah 9:6,7; 11:1-5,10; Jeremiah 23:2-6; 33:15; Ezekiel 17:22-24; 34:23-30; 37:15-25; Zechariah 3:8; 6:12,13
2. Concerning “with the clouds of the heavens” – compare Matthew 24:27
3. Concerning “And to him there were given rulership...”, compare Psalms 110:1
4. **Compare verses 22 and 27.**

**Daniel 7:17-18** “‘As for these huge beasts, because they are four, there are four kings that will stand up from the earth. But the holy ones of the Supreme One will receive the kingdom, and they will take possession of the kingdom for time indefinite, even for time indefinite upon times indefinite.’”

Any remaining of any kingdoms will pass their glory and submission to “the holy ones of the Supreme One”. This starts when Michael stands up – See Daniel 2:44; 12:1; Psalms 2

**Daniel 7:19-20** “Then it was that I desired to make certain concerning the fourth beast, which proved to be different from all the others, extraordinarily fearsome, the teeth of which were of

iron and the claws of which were of copper, which was devouring [and] crushing, and which was treading down even what was left with its feet; and concerning the ten horns that were on its head, and the other [horn] that came up and before which three fell, even that horn that had eyes and a mouth speaking grandiose things and the appearance of which was bigger than that of its fellows.” – See verses 7 and 8

1. See comments for Revelation 13:16,17; 16:14; 17:12-13. It also helps to identify it as the king of the north for our time – See comments Daniel 9:24,25; 11:36-39.
2. Compare the thought of “and he will carry on deception and actually come up and become mighty by means of a little nation.” (See Daniel 11:23 comments)
3. The word “fell” here is Strong’s number of 5308 which can mean “to lie down.” – See verses 24, 25

**Daniel 7:21** “I kept on beholding when that very horn made war upon the holy ones, and it was prevailing against them,”

Compare Daniel 11:21-24, 33,36

This is *not* “Har-Mageddon” – The “holy ones” mentioned here are the second group of witnesses to be fully put to the test and “conquer” Satan’s kingdom as Jesus did – See Revelation 17:14

**Daniel 7:22**” until the Ancient of Days came and judgment itself was given in favor of the holy ones of the Supreme One, and the definite time arrived that the holy ones took possession of the kingdom itself.”

This “very” horn makes war upon the holy ones and was depicted as “prevailing against them” just before judgment was given in favor to the holy ones. See Daniel 11:21-45. This action against the holy ones does not necessarily start in the “time of [the] end” (Daniel 11:40) but could start a little before it – That is, a little while before the conquering of Jerusalem (see Daniel 11).

The “judgment” most likely occurs once they “come to life” (After the three-and-a-half-year period) and are accepted and forgiven by Jehovah (Revelation 11 “two witnesses”). Then it shows that “the definite time arrived that the holy ones took possession of the kingdom itself” – This is the time period of and after “Har-Mageddon” (Revelation 16:13-16) when Michael stands up (Daniel 12).

Compare Zechariah 3:1-10 to see how it is Jehovah who makes the decisions on who will rule with Jesus. This account deals with the first group of the “two witnesses” mentioned in Revelation 11:1.

**Daniel 7:23** “This is what he said, ‘As for the fourth beast, there is a fourth kingdom that will come to be on the earth, that will be different from all the [other] kingdoms; and it will devour all the earth and will trample it down and crush it.’”

See comments for verses 7 and 8.



**Daniel 7:24-25** “And as for the ten horns, out of that kingdom there are ten kings that will rise up; and still another one will rise up after them, and he himself will be different from the first ones, and three kings he will humiliate. And he will speak even words against the Most High, and he will harass continually the holy ones themselves of the Supreme One. And he will intend to change times and law, and they will be given into his hand for a time, and times and half a time.”

1. This is an elaboration of Daniel 7:19-20, and it tells us the time period of the three and a half times. Compare Revelation 11:1,2, and Daniel 12:7,11
2. This term, “rise up” is critical to understanding the relationship between the horns and the unusually strong beast that they were upon. This word is often translated to the [Strong’s number of 6966](#). This word is also used in 7:4 “made to stand”; 6:15 “the king...establishes”; 6:3 “to elevate” or “to appoint.” There are many areas in Daniel where this word is used...
3. The interpretation of the three horns being “plucked up” or “fell” is given here as humiliation which is [Strong’s number 8214](#). It is found in Daniel 4:37 “and he able to humble...”; 5:19, 20 as “humbled.” So, it could mean that the little horn doesn’t have to conquer three kings, he just has to humiliate them.

**Daniel 7:26** “And the Court itself proceeded to sit, and his own rulership they finally took away, in order to annihilate [him] and to destroy [him] totally.”

See Daniel 7:9-10 comments. This king of the north is judged and comes “to his end” (Daniel 11:45)

**Daniel 7:27** “And the kingdom and the rulership and the grandeur of the kingdoms under all the heavens were given to the people who are the holy ones of the Supreme One. Their kingdom is an indefinitely lasting kingdom, and all the rulerships will serve and obey even them.”

Remember the lessons from earlier chapters of Daniel. Chapter two tells of God’s kingdom ruling the earth. Chapter four tells of Almighty God giving rulership to whom he wants – Compare Matthew 6:9,10; 20:20-23; Luke 22:28-30

See Revelation 11:15 comments.

## Daniel 8

*Daniel 8 is like 7 in the fact that the interpretation is told to Daniel and recorded later in the chapter which makes things easier to understand.*

**Daniel 8:1-27** This is a vision of Daniel of two beasts. The first one is a ram that represents Media and Persia. The second beast is a hairy goat represents Greece with Rome which comes from one of its horns. It is the effects of this second beast that Jesus warned his disciples about in Matthew 24 and Luke 21. These effects were to last longer the beast itself!

The ram from Daniel chapter 8:



**Daniel 8:3** The first beast is described as a ram with two horns of which one was taller than the other – This is interpreted as the kings of Media and Persia in chapter 8:20

**Daniel 8:4** The next beast is a hairy he-goat with a great horn that is broken and four stand up instead of it and a small horn comes out of one of those horns. The goat is interpreted as the king of Greece in chapter 8:21 and notice verses 8 and 9.

*Below are some notes taken from a different place in this site but pertain to these verses:*

They help explain the identification of Rome from Greece as depicted as a hairy he-goat.

For the first century destruction of Jerusalem: This is based upon prophesy in Daniel 11:9-20 (Rome) and Daniel 8:4-12 (Greece and Rome). But notice Daniel 8:13 “How long will the vision be of the constant [feature] and of the transgression causing desolation, to make both [the] holy place and [the] army things to trample on?” Here Daniel was talking about a timeframe of this vision NOT the vision of King Nebuchadnezzar and the tree in Daniel 4. In Daniel 8, this time period apparently started with this beast’s (“male of the goats”) campaign (made up of Greece and Rome – For it was Rome who destroyed Jerusalem. But this started with the “male of the goats coming from the sunset upon the surface of the whole earth, and it was not touching the earth”) (Daniel 8:5) AND would have a definite end that is, with the end of the trampling of “[the] holy place and [the] army” (Daniel 8:13). This started with the year of 334 BCE. At 20 years of age, Alexander the Great claimed the throne in 336 BCE and it was in 334 BCE that he along with 30,000 infantry soldiers and 5,000 cavalry soldiers [crossed the Hellespont into Asia](#) and he never returned – dying in 323 BC. Then add the “2,300 evenings [and] mornings” (2,300 years) (Daniel 8:14) and the result is the recent year of [June of 1967 when Israel firmly established it’s position](#) (by showing by war it was not to be trampled on by the surrounding nations. And it captured the “old city” area of Jerusalem of which it had none of before since its destruction in 70 CE. Remember, “Jerusalem” today is larger than what it was in the first century.). This does not indicate that Jehovah accepts them as his holy ones today (See Daniel link). (A formula which is accurate and I use for time periods extending over the “zero year” is: ((full time period of years that extend over the “zero” year) minus (start year (BCE)) plus (one (to coincide with our calendar)))). This is one example of time periods that are represented by beasts. However, there is another very significant time period for the nations – See timeline.

**Daniel 8:8** helps to identify this beast and its horns. The great horn was Alexander the Great. At the peak of his power, he suddenly died. Greece was divided up with his four Generals of which one became Rome. Rome eventually laid siege to Jerusalem, massacred the Jews, and destroyed the Temple.

**Daniel 8:9** speaks of Rome (the little horn getting bigger). This horn is the king of the north (the abomination back then) in his first-time attacking Jerusalem. He is mentioned in Daniel 11:1-20. His end is different when he reappears as another king to strike against Jerusalem in our day. The first time the king of the north (as Rome in this instance) appears and strikes at Jerusalem, his end is that he slowly fades away – Compare Daniel 11:15-20 which depicts the first century fall of Jerusalem along with Rome fading away. See also Luke 19:41-44. The second time the “little horn” appears, he is granted 3.5 years over God’s people. But his end is definite. He is soundly defeated. This little horn is in a vision of a “fourth beast” in Daniel 7. Compare Revelation 17:11 (Rome – because Revelation was written decades after the fall of Jerusalem, but the small horn

will come back as a different king (not Rome) as the king of the north). Compare Daniel 7:24-27 with 11-12:3.

**Daniel 8:10** Speaking about Rome; “And it kept getting greater all the way to the army of the heavens, so that it caused some of the army and some of the stars to fall to the earth, and it went trampling them down.” Nineveh of old, in Jonah’s day, was considered “a city great to God.” (Jonah 1:2; 3:3) This term can also be rendered “extremely great” or “divinely great.” (Ref. bible footnote) This does not mean it did good things. It just meant it drew his attention. Same thing with Pharaoh depicted as a great tree “high in stature, so that it put its treetop even among the clouds..” (Ezekiel 31:10). The term “stars” can be similar to the “stars” mentioned in Revelation 1:20 namely, the older men or spiritual leaders of the congregations (Revelation 2:1).

**Daniel 8:12** “And an army itself was gradually given over, together with the constant [feature], because of transgression; and it kept throwing truth to the earth, and it acted and had great success.” – **See notes at the end of chapter 8 about the term “constant feature” or “continual sacrifice”**

**Daniel 8:13,14** “...’How long will the vision be of the constant [feature] and of the transgression causing desolation, to make both [the] holy place and [the] army things to trample on?’ So he said to me: ‘Until two thousand three hundred evenings [and] mornings; and [the] holy place will certainly be brought into its right condition.’”

Simply put, this “transgression causing desolation” was the hairy he-goat in this vision. It was a “horn” (Rome) of this beast that persecuted God’s people. This beast’s conquest had its beginning in 334 BCE and the effects of putting the holy place in the “wrong” condition ended in June 1967 at the end of the “[6 day war](#)” where Israel captured and controlled all of Jerusalem. **See “1914” and the notes after Daniel 8:4 to help understand this timeline.**

Regarding Jerusalem today: The borders are larger than what they were in the first century. Actually, the walls of Jerusalem from the first century seem to have resided entirely in what is known as “East Jerusalem” today and was captured by Israel in the 1967 “[six day](#)” war. Although it is good to note that the term “[East Jerusalem](#)” has different definitions. So, if one was to just view the geographical location of the original city from the first century, one could say that Israel did not have any of it since 70 CE. along with their army – with both being “trampled on” until 1967 with the advent of the “[6-day war](#).”

The time between the end of this vision in 1967 and the next conquering of Jerusalem is not made evident. However, with the current situation in the Middle East October 25, 2023, and the possibility that Hamas (Or that Hamas creates the situation for another to emerge as the king of the north) is the symbolic “small horn” to take Jerusalem away from Israel..... these could be exciting yet troublesome times indeed – **See notes in chapter 7 of Daniel about the “small horn” conquering Jerusalem again.**

**Daniel 8:17b** “Understand, O son of man, that the vision is for the time of the end.”

The Emphasized Bible: “that < to the time of the end > belongeth the vision”.

NIV Interlinear: “that the vision concerns the time of the end”.

King James Version: “for at the time of the end shall be the vision”

**Daniel 8:20-22** Helps identify Rome as described in verses 23 – 25. Notice how this king of the north has a different end than for the one in our day (Daniel 11:21-45). Verse 25 states: “but it will be without hand that he will be broken.” This is where Rome is the king of the north described in Daniel 11:9-20. Notice how it describes his downfall in the end of verse 20: “he will be broken, but not in anger nor in warfare.” Rome is not the king of the north for our day – Compare Daniel 7:23-26 and 11:44,45 where the small horn then is decisively defeated.

**Daniel 8:23-25** Rome (as part of the he-goat) acts and prevails against God’s people and destroys Jerusalem that contained the temple, the “continual sacrifice”.

Notice “but it will be without hand that he will be broken” – this represents the fading away of the “horn” and its beast that it was a part of. Rome basically “faded away”.

**Further notes concerning the “constant feature” or “continual sacrifice”:**

1. **Daniel 8:11,12,13** all use the term “the constant [feature]”. The ref. footnote for this term in verse 11 states: “Or, ‘the continual [sacrifice],’ ...” // This helps to identify this “feature” as Jerusalem when one compares **1 Chronicles 23:31** where it is talking about Levite duties in Jerusalem; “and for every offering up of the burnt sacrifices to Jehovah at the Sabbaths, at the new moons and at the festival seasons, by number according to the rule concerning them, constantly before Jehovah.” Compare also where worship is continuous at Numbers 4:16; 29:6 (below); Zechariah 14:7-9; Revelation 21:22-27; 22:1-5; Jeremiah 33:18 “...render sacrifice always”; and Hebrews 10:1 where “sacrifices...they offer continually.” Keep in mind that the brackets “[ ]” include a word that has been interjected by the translator to “assist” in clarity of thought.
  1. The Hebrew word translated as “constant” is “tamiyd” (#8548) by the *Abingdon’s Strong’s Exhaustive Concordance of the Bible* and it is defined as: “from an unused root mean. to stretch; prop. continuance (as indef. extension); but used only (attributively as adj.) constant (or adv. constantly); ellipt. the regular (daily) sacrifice:- away (-s), continual (employment, -ly), daily, ([n]) ever (-more), perpetual.”
  2. There are only 7 places where this word is used in the bible:
    1. **Daniel 8:11** “And all the way to the Prince of the army it put on great airs, and from him the constant [feature] was taken away, and the established place of his sanctuary was thrown down.”
    2. **Daniel 8:12** “And an army itself was gradually given over, together with the constant [feature], because of transgression; and it kept throwing truth to the earth, and it acted and had success.”

3. **Daniel 8:13** “And I got to hear a certain holy one speaking, and another holy one proceeded to say to the particular one who was speaking: “How long will the vision be of the constant [feature] and of the transgression causing desolation, to make both [the] holy place and [the] army things to trample on?”
  4. **Daniel 11:31** “And there will be arms that will stand up, proceeding from him; and they will actually profane the sanctuary, the fortress, and remove the constant [feature].”
  5. **Daniel 12:11** “And from the time that the constant [feature] has been removed and there has been a placing of the disgusting thing that is causing desolation, there will be one thousand two hundred and ninety days.”
  6. **Numbers 4:16** “And the oversight of Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest is over the oil of the luminary and the perfumed incense and the constant grain offering and the anointing oil, the oversight of all the tabernacle and all that is in it, namely, the holy place and its utensils.”
  7. **Numbers 29:6** “aside from the monthly burnt offering and its grain offering and the constant burnt offering and its grain offering, together with their drink offerings, according to the regular procedure for them, as a restful odor, an offering made by fire to Jehovah.”
3. *The Interlinear Bible* translates the word as “continual” in Numbers 4:16; 29:6; “daily” in Daniel 8:11,12; “regular” in Daniel 8:13; 11:31; 12:11
  4. When comparing all the information above including 1 Chronicles 23:31; Zechariah 14:7-9; Revelation 21:22-27; 22:1-5, “the constant [feature]” or “the continual [sacrifice]” are referring to Jerusalem – Literal or Spiritual. In these cases, the term “the continual [feature]”; “the continual [sacrifice]”; “the regular [sacrifice]”; “the daily [sacrifice]” refer to a location that can be identified throughout the centuries. It does not matter if the people in Jerusalem are “God’s people” at the time. This idea is also used in Daniel 11:31; 12:11.



## Daniel 9

Here in this chapter, we start by finding Daniel praying for the sins of his people. And in answer he receives information regarding the timeline of the appearance of the Messiah. It is easily realized that the prophesy deals with Jesus Christ, the Messiah. But verses 26 and 27 talk about the first advent where the little horn or king of the north in the first century as spoken of in chapter 8 (Rome) basically kills (cuts off) the Messiah. Compare Daniel 8:9-12; 23-25 with Daniel 11:9-20.

**Daniel 9:24-27** Basically goes over the prophesy that helped ones around the turn of the first century know basically when the Messiah was to arrive and included that he would be “cut off”.

The 70 prophetic weeks are divided up as 62 weeks plus 7 weeks plus 1 week. Jesus was “cut off” in the middle of the last week.

This timeline begins with the going forth of the word to restore and rebuild Jerusalem which was around 455 BCE. At the end of the 69 prophetic weeks (a day for a year –  $69 \times 7 = 483$ ), the Messiah would appear! Jesus did not start his “mission” until he was baptized being about 30 years old. This is why so many were in expectation of his arrival, at that time! See Luke 2:25-34; John 4:4-26

**Daniel 9:27b** “And upon the wing of disgusting things there will be the one causing desolation; and until an extermination, the very thing decided upon will go pouring out also upon the one lying desolate.”

1. The NIV renders this passage as: “And on a wing of the temple, he will set up an abomination that causes desolation, until the end that is decreed is poured out on him.”
2. The rendering varies from translation to translation. However, the important thing is to identify this “abomination that causes desolation” in Jesus’ day (see prior verses). This would be Rome. And it is this “abomination” that Jesus is referring to that causes the trampling of Jerusalem in Luke 21:24. Compare Daniel 8:23-25; 11:13-17.

## Daniel 10

Daniel chapter 10 is an introduction to chapters 11 and 12. Chapters 10 through 12 flow together.

Chapter ten also introduces us to Michael as the prince of Daniel's people. This is evident in verses 13 and 21 of chapter 10 right into chapter 11 verse 1. Michael comes to help Gabriel in his fight against the prince of Persia.

A strong angel subduing another



## Daniel 11 – 12

**Daniel 11** Talks about kings and starts off with identifying the king of Greece, Alexander the Great in verses 3 and 4.

1. Verses 9 thru 20 are somewhat repeated in some areas but the king of the north here is Rome, and the king of the south is the Jewish nation with its “strong position” (vs.12), “a city with fortifications” (vs.15) being Jerusalem. It is very likely that Jesus was referring (along with Daniel 8) to this area in Daniel when he was talking to his disciples about difficult times to come (Mathew 24; Luke 21). But Jesus was probably also referring to similar actions of the king of the north in our day (vs.21-45).
2. Verses 21 thru 45 refer to the king of the north for our day. If one “works backwards” in the timeline in Daniel, one realizes that the king of the north of our day destroys (or conquers) literal Jerusalem. // Daniel 11:23 uses the term “by means of a little nation” – the Ref. footnote: or “fewness of a nation” – This could be referring to ISIS of our day. Who knows?
3. There is a difference between the ending of the king of the north for our day (vs.45) and the ending of the king of the north of early Christian times (vs.20). There is also a difference with the kings of the south. In verse 10, it mentions the king of the south goes back to this fortress (Jerusalem) and it does not mention that the king of the south (back then) had a large army as it does for the king of the south for our day (vs.25 “...and the king of the south, for his part, will excite himself for the war with an exceedingly great and mighty military force.”
4. Verses 21 thru 24 are talking about the kings of the north and south for our day. Verses 25 thru 45 elaborate on verses 21 thru 24. The critical identification of a point in time (for us) is when the king of the north destroys or conquers and occupies Jerusalem (vs.31). – See comments on Daniel 7:19-20.
5. Notice in verse 27 how it seems that diplomacy occurs but in untruth.
6. Notice verse 28 shows that the king of the north goes back to his land with “a great amount of goods” – much different than the king of the north in early Christian times. This is also done after diplomacy (vs.27). This verse also shows how the king of the north’s determination is against the holy ones – Along with the wild beast’s determination mentioned in Revelation 13.
7. It seems that starting with verse 30b “And he...” thru verse 31, this is an elaboration of verse 28.
8. Verses 29-30 shows another war campaign of the king of the north but that “he will have to become dejected” -see vs.30b comments.

9. Verse 31 – For a detailed description of the “arms that will stand up, proceeding from him” see the 1,290-day page
10. Verse 31 – The “constant [feature]” is “removed” – Jerusalem is destroyed or conquered by the king of the north. – See also the “1914” page; 1,290 days. This “constant [feature]” is also translated “continual [sacrifice]” – See Jeremiah 33:18; Daniel 8:11-13 has good notes on this term and compare 12:11
11. Verses 32-39 speaks of actions of the king of the north of our time. Some of these actions could start before the fall of the present-day city of Jerusalem.
12. Verse 32 “And those acting wickedly against [the] covenant” could be anyone who purposefully continues to apostatize by holding on to false scriptural teachings The king of the north will try to “lead” ones into apostasy by “smooth words” – This could be some type of agreement between the king of the north and those who want to hold onto false beliefs or trickery to get God’s people to “receive the mark” of the wild beast. The term “smooth words” may denote the settings of a trap or acting with hypocrisy (see vs.34). Notice: Other prophesy denotes that a large-scale ban will take place on God’s people. So, this warning can apply to all. See Revelation 13:7 comments.
13. Verses 33-35 talk about some of those who have insight and that many will be made to stumble because of them. This is a cleansing or whitening process concerning straightening worship to God. This is part of a separating and preparing work within God’s people so they can be measured (Malachi 4:5,6; Matthew 24:9-12; Revelation 21:9-21; Compare Revelation 11:1 comments and Proverbs 3:5-6 footnote in the American Standard Version) Anyone promoting a false teaching as being from God is a false prophet and will need Jehovah to forgive them because they sinned against him – see Zechariah 13:2-6; 3:4; James 5:15
14. Verse 34 “they will be helped with a little help” – See Ezekiel 7:26; 11:16 for possible parallel applications. Compare also [Matthew 25:31-40](#) (Those who help Christ’s brothers and sisters)
15. Verse 34 “...and many will certainly join themselves to them by means of smoothness.” – *The Interlinear Bible* translates it this way: “...But many will join them, with hypocrisy.” // So here we can see the possibility of government or other spies and/or hypocrites joining themselves to God’s people although God’s people at this time have endured times of “sackcloth” – Compare Matthew 22:2-14; Revelation 11:2
16. Verse 36-39 shows how the king of the north of our time will “magnify himself” and will give glory “to the god of fortresses” (to “worship” military might)
17. Verses 40-45 repeats actions mentioned in verses 25-30 but with slightly different information. Verse 43 mentions that Ethiopia will be at his feet – In ancient times Ethiopia bordered Egypt’s southern border – Not like today. Notice vs.44-45 “But there will be reports that will disturb him, out of the sunrising and out of the north, and he will certainly go forth in a great rage in order to annihilate and to devote many to destruction

... and he will have to come all the way to his end, and there will be no helper for him.”  
– This could also have been foretold at Isaiah 46:11 referring to Jehovah; “the one calling from the sunrising a bird of prey, from a distant land the man to execute my counsel”  
Remember Daniel 7:26 when it refers to the king of the north for our day; “And the Court itself proceeded to sit, and his own rulership they finally took away, in order to annihilate [him] and to destroy [him] totally.” This happens at the end of the three and a half year time period. However, when someone takes into consideration the comments for Revelation 6:2, this phrase “out of the sunrising” can refer to as: “being given authority by Jehovah” + “to conquer” – So it is possible that it could be a king(s) authorized by Jehovah to destroy the king of the north – Or even Christ himself with his armies! This would certainly put fear in men to submit – Compare Psalms 2 and Revelation 11:12,13,17,18; Revelation 6:12-17; Matthew 24:27-31; [Hebrews 9:28 \(WEB\)](#):<sup>28</sup> so Christ also, having been offered once to bear the sins of many, will appear a second time, without sin, to those who are eagerly waiting for him for salvation.

## **Daniel 12**

A continuation of chapter 11...

**Daniel 12:1** “And during that time Michael will stand up, the great prince who is standing in behalf of the sons of your people. And there will certainly occur a time of distress such as has not been made to occur since there came to be a nation until that time. And during that time your people will escape, every one who is found written down in the book.” – This seems to happen very soon after the king of the north is defeated, or he could be finally defeated by Jesus and his armies too! See above comments for Daniel 11:40-45. (Matthew 24:21,22) And after the approximate 45-day period to show repentance. For more information regarding “stand” see the 1,290 days page.

Daniel is told that the words of the vision are sealed (or closed up) until the time of the end being the end of the rule of the gentile nations. Compare chapter 11:40 and the notes on chapter 7 concerning the small horn that pushes aside three other horns that are all on the top of a very strong wild beast.



Daniel's vision is sealed:



1. Verse 2 – Resurrections start of “many of those asleep in the ground of dust” – Compare John 5:28,29
2. Verse 3 – “And the ones having insight will shine like the brightness of the expanse; and those who are bringing the many to righteousness, like the stars to time indefinite, even forever.”
3. Verse 4 shows us that the words are “sealed up” until the time of the end. If this is the true understanding, we will be in the time of the end of Gentile rulers! But the clock doesn't start ticking until the little horn of our day takes the old city of Jerusalem away from Israel and occupies it – See Daniel 11:31; 12:11
4. Verse 6 The question is asked: “How long will it be to the end of the wonderful things?” The *Emphasized Bible*: “How long shall be the end of the wonders?” The *NIV Interlinear*: “How long will it be before these astonishing things are fulfilled?” – The time period is given twice. Once in verse 7; “It will be for an appointed time, appointed times and a half.” It continues to say when it ends: “And as soon as there will have been a



finishing of the dashing of the power of the holy people to pieces, all these things will come to their finish.” Another more accurate time period along with the start time is given in verse 11; “And from the time the constant [feature] has been removed and there has been a placing of the disgusting thing that is causing desolation, there will be one thousand two hundred and ninety days.” The reasoning that these are the same time periods is found at the timeline page and the 1,290-day page. This is a time of great tribulation for God’s people and others. Satan is restricted to the earth. Jehovah removes his spirit from “his people” to allow a cleansing and it is at this time that Jesus takes “half” of spiritual Jerusalem into the “wilderness” for three and a-half years. The other “half” will be sealed by the time of the completion of the “dashing of the power of the holy people to pieces.” Satan is allowed to test God’s people to the limit as he did with the Christians of old.

5. Verses 9 and 10 are repeat information.
6. Between verses 11 and 12, there are 45 days. This corresponds with a time period at Matthew 24:29-31 and Revelation 11:11-13 and events in the book of Jonah – See timeline. The very start of this time period (three and a half days) appears to be when the “two witnesses” appear to be “dead” to the nations – They no doubt rejoice due to the “stinging” messages from them. But a great sign is seen, and they realize they acted against God’s people. They need to repent or die. They show repentance and submission by turning on Babylon the Great and destroying her (See Revelation 11:11-13 and 14:6-11 comments and [Psalms 2](#))
7. Verse 12: “Happy is the one who is keeping in expectation and who arrives at the one thousand three hundred and thirty-five days!” – This would be at the end of the 45 day period when Michael begins his rule on earth. For those who do not repent or submit they will perish (Revelation 16:13-14; 19:11-21) – See timeline. However, great rejoicing occurs with God’s people – they will walk in pride (to the glory of Jehovah – Isaiah 45:17). See Revelation 20:6; Psalms 2
8. Verse 13: “And as for you yourself, go toward the end; and you will rest, but you will stand up for your lot at the end of the days.” Daniel was given assurance that although he would die, he would be resurrected.

## Malachi

### Possible prophecies for Israel's day, the first century, our day and the future:

#### Malachi 1

**Malachi 1:6** “A son, for his part, honors the father; and a servant, his grand master. So, if I am a father, where is the honor to me? And if I am a grand master, where is the fear of me?” Jehovah of armies has said to YOU, O priests who are despising my name. “And YOU have said: “In what way have we despised your name?” (vs.7) “[By] presenting upon my altar polluted bread.’

**Malachi 1:14-2:** “And cursed is the one acting cunningly when there exists in his drove a male animal, and he is making a vow and sacrificing a ruined one to Jehovah. For I am a great King,” Jehovah of armies has said, “and my name will be fear-inspiring among the nations.” (2:1-2)” And now this commandment is to YOU, O priests. If YOU will not listen, and if YOU will not lay [it] to heart to give glory to my name,” Jehovah of armies has said, “I shall also certainly send upon YOU the curse, and I will curse YOUR blessings. Yes, I have even cursed the [blessing], because YOU are not laying [it] to heart.”

Notice the qualities of a true priest and could typify Jesus and /or Moses and could be referring to the messenger of the covenant mentioned in Malachi 3:1:

#### Malachi 2

**Malachi 2:5-7** “As for my covenant, it proved to be with him, [one] of life and of peace, and I kept giving them to him, with fear. And he continued fearing me; yes, because of my name he himself was struck with terror. The very law of truth proved to be in his mouth, and there was no unrighteousness to be found on his lips. In peace and in uprightness he walked with me, and many were those whom he turned back from error. For the lips of a priest are the ones that should keep knowledge, and [the] law is what people should seek from his mouth; for he is the messenger of Jehovah of armies.”

**Malachi 2:8-9** “But YOU men – YOU have turned aside from the way. YOU have caused many to stumble in the law. YOU have ruined the covenant of Levi, Jehovah of Armies has said. “And I also, for my part, shall certainly make YOU to be despised and low to all the people, according as YOU were not keeping my ways, but were showing partiality in the law.”

#### The first charge against false priests:

**Malachi 2:10b-12a** “Why is it that we deal treacherously with one another, in profaning the covenant of our forefathers? Judah has dealt treacherously, and a detestable thing has been committed in Israel and in Jerusalem; for Judah has profaned the holiness of Jehovah, which He has loved, and he has taken possession of the daughter of a foreign god as a bride. Jehovah will cut off each one that does it” – Basically by taking “possession of the daughter of a foreign god as a bride” a priest is taking on a covenant not from Jehovah. Thus, a priest in this instance

would not be giving honor to his covenant arrangement with Jehovah or those under him by arrangement of the covenant. However, Jehovah requires exclusive devotion.

### **The second charge against false priests:**

**Malachi 2:13-17** “And this is the second thing that YOU people do, [this resulting in] covering with tears the altar of Jehovah, with weeping and sighing, so that there is no more a turning toward the gift offering or a taking of pleasure [in anything] from YOUR hand. And YOU have said, ‘On what account?’ On this account, that Jehovah himself has borne witness between you and the wife of your youth, and with whom you yourself have dealt treacherously, although she is your partner and the wife of your covenant. And there was one who did not do [it], as he had what was remaining of [the] spirit. And what was that one seeking? The seed of God. And YOU people must guard yourselves respecting YOUR spirit, and with the wife of your youth may no one deal treacherously. For he has hated a divorcing,” Jehovah the God of Israel has said; “and the one who with violence has covered over his garment,” Jehovah of armies has said. “And YOU must guard yourselves respecting YOUR spirit, and YOU must not deal treacherously. (vs.17) “YOU people have made Jehovah weary by your words, and YOU have said, ‘In what way have we made [him] weary?’ By YOUR saying, ‘Everyone that is doing bad is good in the eyes of Jehovah, and in such ones he himself has taken delight’; or, ‘Where is the God of justice?’ “- This tells us of the importance to KNOW Jehovah so we can cleanse any false teachings that we may feel are approved by him. See Isaiah 62:4,5 and 54:6 to help understand the symbolic wife-like covenant.

**Malachi 2:15** see Isaiah 4:1

**Malachi 2:15** (according to the *ROTHERHAM EMPHASIZED BIBLE*; “Now was it not ||One|| [who] made [you] who had ||the residue of the spirit||? What then of that one? He was seeking a godly seed. Therefore should ye take heed to your spirit, and <with the wife of thy youth> do not thou deal treacherously.”) This seems to be a difficult passage to translate but the idea is sound. Jehovah desires any marriage to be sacred in which all involved are serving him properly which would include the husbands treating their wives properly in Jehovah’s eyes. According to the arrangement (presented here in reverse order to help understanding) of Hebrew words in *The NIV Interlinear Hebrew-English Old Testament* (Kohlenberger): “indeed spirit to-him and-why? the-one seeking offspring-of God so-you-guard-yourself partner-of-you and-wife-of covenant-of-you”

### **Other messages to priests:**

#### **Malachi 3**

**Malachi 3:6,7** “For I am Jehovah; I have not changed. and YOU are the sons of Jacob; YOU have not come to YOUR finish. From the days of your forefathers YOU have turned aside from my regulations and have not kept [them]. Return to me, and I will return to YOU,” Jehovah of armies has said.

After turning around: **Malachi 3:12** “And all the nations will have to pronounce YOU happy, for YOU yourselves will become a land of delight,” Jehovah of armies has said.

**The arrival of “Elijah” (the messenger), Jesus, and the messenger of the covenant** (Moses or heavenly priestly class – This priestly class may be made of “one half” of the “two witnesses” mentioned at Revelation 11:2,3).

**Compare Malachi 3:1 with Malachi 4:5,6:** Malachi 3:1 “Look! I am sending my messenger, and he must clear up a way before me. And suddenly there will come to his temple the [true] Lord, whom YOU people are seeking, and the messenger of the covenant in whom YOU are delighting. Look! He will certainly come,” Jehovah of armies has said. // Malachi 4:5,6 “Look! I am sending to YOU people Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and fear-inspiring day of Jehovah. And he must turn the heart of fathers back toward sons, and the heart of sons back toward fathers; in order that I may not come and actually strike the earth with a devoting [of it] to destruction.” // It is evident that this “Elijah” is the same as “the messenger” in 3:1. // The “messenger of the covenant” appears to be the same one mentioned in 4:4 “Remember, YOU people, the law of Moses my servant with which I commanded him in Horeb concerning all Israel, even regulations and judicial decisions.” // Compare Revelation 22:6,7

It is interesting that Jesus, “Moses”, and “Elijah” appeared in the transfiguration mentioned in Matthew 17:1-9. See Elijah.

**Malachi 3:2-4:** “But who will be putting up with the day of his coming, and who will be the one standing when he appears? For he will be like the fire of a refiner and like the lye of laundrymen. And he must sit as a refiner and cleanser of silver and must cleanse the sons of Levi; and he must clarify them like gold and like silver, and they will certainly become to Jehovah people presenting a gift offering in righteousness. And the gift offering of Judah and of Jerusalem will actually be gratifying to Jehovah, as in the days of long ago and as in the years of antiquity.” // It appears that this cleansing work is done by Jesus and when they are presented to Jehovah, Jehovah forgives them of their error (deducted by tying in other scriptures). This work is after the “straightening” work done by “Elijah”. John the Baptist declared in **Luke 3:16,17:** “John gave the answer, saying to all: “I, for my part, baptize YOU with water; but the one stronger than I am coming, the lace of whose sandals I am not fit to untie. He will baptize YOU people with holy spirit and fire. His winnowing shovel is in his hand to clean up his threshing floor completely and to gather the wheat into his storehouse, but the chaff he will burn up with fire that cannot be put out.” // This “chaff” is also in Jehovah’s organization today. This separating work (also the time of “sealing” in Revelation 7:3 and the 1,260 “sackcloth” days mentioned in Revelation 11:3) seems to take place for our day during the 1,290 days mentioned in Daniel 12:11. The burning of the chaff happens when Jesus arrives in power. He will start with his people and then will go to the nations.

**Malachi 3:16** “At that time those in fear of Jehovah spoke with one another, each one with his companion, and Jehovah kept paying attention and listening. And a book of remembrance began to be written up before him for those in fear of Jehovah and for those thinking upon his name.”

#### **Malachi 4**

**Malachi 4:1,2** “For, look! the day is coming that is burning like the furnace, and all the presumptuous ones and all those doing wickedness must become as stubble. And the day that is

coming will certainly devour them,” Jehovah of armies has said, “so that it will not leave to them either root or bough. And to YOU who are in fear of my name the sun of righteousness will certainly shine forth, with healing in its wings...”

**Malachi 4:5,6** Malachi prophesied, for our day, that “before the coming of the great and fear-inspiring day of Jehovah” some actions were so important that if they were not accomplished, Jehovah would “strike the earth with a devoting [of it] to destruction.” // Compare Exodus 32:11-14; Ezekiel 18:30,31; Elijah

**Malachi 4:6** see Elijah link

**Malachi 4:6a** “And he must turn the heart of fathers back toward sons, and the heart of sons back toward fathers;” // See Isaiah 1:4; 59:20; Jeremiah 23:11,12; Daniel 11:35 – This is a straightening work. And notice the phrase “he must. “

**Malachi 4:6b** “in order that I may not come and actually strike the earth with a devoting [of it] to destruction.” // This reminds me of the account of Sodom and Gomorrah at **Genesis 18:23-33** where Abraham humbly “pleaded” with Jehovah not to destroy Sodom and Gomorrah and got Jehovah to say in verse 32b “I shall not bring it to ruin on account of the ten.” (Talking about not ruining Sodom and Gomorrah if Jehovah found 10 righteous ones there) Well, we know what happened. And the current situation of “all of” Jehovah’s people offering “polluted bread” (apostasy) by including false teachings as part of his word (although most are unaware of this) certainly does not make them legally righteous in his eyes. (Isaiah 1:9; 9:16,17 and Jeremiah 17:13) Jehovah has grounds for a spiritual divorcing.

*The New American Bible (Saint Joseph Edition)* translates Malachi 3:23,24 (same as Malachi 4:6 in many translations); “Lo, I will send you Elijah, the prophet, Before the day of the LORD comes, the great and terrible day, To turn the hearts of the fathers to their children, and the hearts of the children to their fathers, Lest I come and strike the land with doom.”

## Revelation

There's a common theme in the book of Revelation. That is: God's people will have to straighten their worship to God. And in so doing, they will have to undergo tribulation from the nations for about three and a half years. But once they have been tested as to their loyalty to God and his son the "Lamb," they are accepted to rule with the Lord over the earth. There will be a tribulation that has never been seen. But when God's kingdom is set up, blessings will be bestowed upon those who submit to Christ!

### John Receives the Visions





### Revelation 1-3 (WEB):

1 This is the Revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave him to show to his servants the things which must happen soon, which he sent and made known by his angel<sup>[a]</sup> to his servant, John,<sup>2</sup> who testified to God's word and of the testimony of Jesus Christ, about everything that he saw.

<sup>3</sup> Blessed is he who reads and those who hear the words of the prophecy, and keep the things that are written in it, for the time is at hand.

<sup>4</sup> John, to the seven assemblies that are in Asia: Grace to you and peace from God, who is and who was and who is to come; and from the seven Spirits who are before his throne;<sup>5</sup> and from Jesus Christ, the faithful witness, the firstborn of the dead, and the ruler of the kings of the earth. To him who loves us and washed us from our sins by his blood—<sup>6</sup> and he made us to be a Kingdom, priests [Exodus 19:6](#); [Isaiah 61:6](#) to his God and Father—to him be the glory and the dominion forever and ever. Amen.

<sup>7</sup> Behold,<sup>[b]</sup> he is coming with the clouds, and every eye will see him, including those who pierced him. All the tribes of the earth will mourn over him. Even so, Amen.

<sup>8</sup> “I am the Alpha and the Omega,<sup>[c]</sup>” says the Lord God,<sup>[d]</sup> “who is and who was and who is to come, the Almighty.”

<sup>9</sup> I John, your brother and partner with you in the oppression, Kingdom, and perseverance in Christ Jesus, was on the isle that is called Patmos because of God's Word and the testimony of Jesus Christ. <sup>10</sup> I was in the Spirit on the Lord's Day, and I heard behind me a loud voice, like a trumpet <sup>11</sup> saying,<sup>[e]</sup> “What you see, write in a book and send to the seven assemblies:<sup>[f]</sup> to Ephesus, Smyrna, Pergamum, Thyatira, Sardis, Philadelphia, and to Laodicea.”

<sup>12</sup> I turned to see the voice that spoke with me. Having turned, I saw seven golden lamp stands. <sup>13</sup> And among the lamp stands was one like a son of man, [Daniel 7:13](#) clothed with a robe reaching down to his feet, and with a golden sash around his chest. <sup>14</sup> His head and his hair were white as white wool, like snow. His eyes were like a flame of fire. <sup>15</sup> His feet were like burnished brass, as if it had been refined in a furnace. His voice was like the voice of many waters. <sup>16</sup> He had seven stars in his right hand. Out of his mouth proceeded a sharp two-edged sword. His face was like the sun shining at its brightest. <sup>17</sup> When I saw him, I fell at his feet like a dead man.

He laid his right hand on me, saying, “Don't be afraid. I am the first and the last,<sup>18</sup> and the Living one. I was dead, and behold, I am alive forever and ever. Amen. I have the keys of Death and of Hades.<sup>[g]</sup> <sup>19</sup> Write therefore the things which you have seen, and the things which are, and the things which will happen hereafter. <sup>20</sup> The mystery of the seven stars which you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lamp stands is this: The seven stars are the angels<sup>[h]</sup> of the seven assemblies. The seven lamp stands are seven assemblies.

2 “To the angel of the assembly in Ephesus write:

“He who holds the seven stars in his right hand, he who walks among the seven golden lamp stands says these things:

<sup>2</sup> “I know your works, and your toil and perseverance, and that you can’t tolerate evil men, and have tested those who call themselves apostles, and they are not, and found them false. <sup>3</sup> You have perseverance and have endured for my name’s sake, and have <sup>[i]</sup> not grown weary. <sup>4</sup> But I have this against you, that you left your first love. <sup>5</sup> Remember therefore from where you have fallen, and repent and do the first works; or else I am coming to you swiftly, and will move your lamp stand out of its place, unless you repent. <sup>6</sup> But this you have, that you hate the works of the Nicolaitans, which I also hate. <sup>7</sup> He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the assemblies. To him who overcomes I will give to eat from the tree of life, which is in the Paradise of my God.

<sup>8</sup> “To the angel of the assembly in Smyrna write:

“The first and the last, who was dead, and has come to life says these things:

<sup>9</sup> “I know your works, oppression, and your poverty (but you are rich), and the blasphemy of those who say they are Jews, and they are not, but are a synagogue of Satan. <sup>10</sup> Don’t be afraid of the things which you are about to suffer. Behold, the devil is about to throw some of you into prison, that you may be tested; and you will have oppression for ten days. Be faithful to death, and I will give you the crown of life. <sup>11</sup> He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the assemblies. He who overcomes won’t be harmed by the second death.

<sup>12</sup> “To the angel of the assembly in Pergamum write:

“He who has the sharp two-edged sword says these things:

<sup>13</sup> “I know your works and where you dwell, where Satan’s throne is. You hold firmly to my name, and didn’t deny my faith in the days of Antipas my witness, my faithful one, who was killed among you, where Satan dwells. <sup>14</sup> But I have a few things against you, because you have there some who hold the teaching of Balaam, who taught Balak to throw a stumbling block before the children of Israel, to eat things sacrificed to idols, and to commit sexual immorality. <sup>15</sup> So you also have some who hold to the teaching of the Nicolaitans likewise. <sup>[i]</sup> <sup>16</sup> Repent therefore, or else I am coming to you quickly, and I will make war against them with the sword of my mouth. <sup>17</sup> He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the assemblies. To him who overcomes, to him I will give of the hidden manna, <sup>[k]</sup> and I will give him a white stone, and on the stone a new name written, which no one knows but he who receives it.

<sup>18</sup> “To the angel of the assembly in Thyatira write:

“The Son of God, who has his eyes like a flame of fire, and his feet are like burnished brass, says these things:

<sup>19</sup>“I know your works, your love, faith, service, patient endurance, and that your last works are more than the first. <sup>20</sup> But I have this against you, that you tolerate your<sup>[1]</sup> woman, Jezebel, who calls herself a prophetess. She teaches and seduces my servants to commit sexual immorality, and to eat things sacrificed to idols. <sup>21</sup> I gave her time to repent, but she refuses to repent of her sexual immorality. <sup>22</sup> Behold, I will throw her and those who commit adultery with her into a bed of great oppression, unless they repent of her works. <sup>23</sup> I will kill her children with Death, and all the assemblies will know that I am he who searches the minds and hearts. I will give to each one of you according to your deeds. <sup>24</sup> But to you I say, to the rest who are in Thyatira, as many as don’t have this teaching, who don’t know what some call ‘the deep things of Satan,’ to you I say, I am not putting any other burden on you. <sup>25</sup> Nevertheless, hold that which you have firmly until I come. <sup>26</sup> He who overcomes, and he who keeps my works to the end, to him I will give authority over the nations. <sup>27</sup> He will rule them with a rod of iron, shattering them like clay pots; [Psalm 2:9](#) as I also have received of my Father: <sup>28</sup> and I will give him the morning star. <sup>29</sup> He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the assemblies.

3 “And to the angel of the assembly in Sardis write:

“He who has the seven Spirits of God and the seven stars says these things:

“I know your works, that you have a reputation of being alive, but you are dead. <sup>2</sup> Wake up and keep the things that remain, which you were about to throw away, for I have found no works of yours perfected before my God. <sup>3</sup> Remember therefore how you have received and heard. Keep it and repent. If therefore you won’t watch, I will come as a thief, and you won’t know what hour I will come upon you. <sup>4</sup> Nevertheless you have a few names in Sardis that didn’t defile their garments. They will walk with me in white, for they are worthy. <sup>5</sup> He who overcomes will be arrayed in white garments, and I will in no way blot his name out of the book of life, and I will confess his name before my Father, and before his angels. <sup>6</sup> He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the assemblies.

<sup>7</sup> “To the angel of the assembly in Philadelphia write:

“He who is holy, he who is true, he who has the key of David, he who opens and no one can shut, and who shuts and no one opens, says these things:

<sup>8</sup> “I know your works (behold, I have set before you an open door, which no one can shut), that you have a little power, and kept my word, and didn’t deny my name. <sup>9</sup> Behold, I give some of the synagogue of Satan, of those who say they are Jews, and they are not, but lie—behold, I will make them to come and worship before your feet, and to know that I have loved you. <sup>10</sup> Because you kept my command to endure, I also will keep you from the hour of testing which is to come on the whole world, to test those who dwell on the earth. <sup>11</sup> I am coming quickly! Hold firmly that which you have, so that no one takes your crown. <sup>12</sup> He who overcomes, I will make him a pillar in the temple of my God, and he will go out from there no more. I will write on him the name of my God and the name of

the city of my God, the new Jerusalem, which comes down out of heaven from my God, and my own new name. <sup>13</sup> He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the assemblies.

<sup>14</sup>“To the angel of the assembly in Laodicea write:

“The Amen, the Faithful and True Witness, the Beginning<sup>[m]</sup> of God’s creation, says these things:

<sup>15</sup>“I know your works, that you are neither cold nor hot. I wish you were cold or hot. <sup>16</sup> So, because you are lukewarm, and neither hot nor cold, I will vomit you out of my mouth. <sup>17</sup> Because you say, ‘I am rich, and have gotten riches, and have need of nothing;’ and don’t know that you are the wretched one, miserable, poor, blind, and naked; <sup>18</sup> I counsel you to buy from me gold refined by fire, that you may become rich; and white garments, that you may clothe yourself, and that the shame of your nakedness may not be revealed; and eye salve to anoint your eyes, that you may see. <sup>19</sup> As many as I love, I reprove and chasten. Be zealous therefore, and repent. <sup>20</sup> Behold, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, then I will come in to him, and will dine with him, and he with me. <sup>21</sup> He who overcomes, I will give to him to sit down with me on my throne, as I also overcame, and sat down with my Father on his throne. <sup>22</sup> He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the assemblies.”

**Revelation 1:4-3:22** Letters to the “stars” of the 7 congregations (**Revelation 1:20; 2:1**)

**Revelation chapters 2 and 3 have a common theme. That is that God’s people had to straighten their ways or keep their ways straight and endure so they could “conquer” Satan’s world as he did (Revelation 3:21).**

**Revelation 2:10 (WEB):**

<sup>10</sup> Don’t be afraid of the things which you are about to suffer. Behold, the devil is about to throw some of you into prison, that you may be tested; and you will have oppression for ten days. Be faithful to death, and I will give you the crown of life.

This principle of being fully put to the test is necessary. For our day, it happens during the three and a half times mentioned in **Daniel 12:7,11**, and **Revelation 11:2,3**.

**Revelation 3:3 (WEB)** Jesus warns some of his followers to keep their ways straight.

<sup>3</sup> Remember therefore how you have received and heard. Keep it and repent. If therefore you won’t watch, I will come as a thief, and you won’t know what hour I will come upon you.

Jesus gives encouraging advise for those who straighten their ways that they will be richly rewarded – This is shown throughout these verses and at **Mark 10:29, 30** of *The Emphatic Diaglott*; “Jesus said, “Indeed I say to you, There is no one who has left House, or Brothers, or Sisters, or Father, or Mother, or Wife, or Children, or Lands, on my account, and on account of

the GLAD TIDINGS, who will not receive a hundred-fold, now, in this TIME,- Houses, and Brothers, and Sisters, and Mothers, and Children, and Lands,- but with Persecutions; and in the AGE to COME, aionian Life.”

**Revelation 3:5 (WEB):**

<sup>5</sup>He who overcomes will be arrayed in white garments, and I will in no way blot his name out of the book of life, and I will confess his name before my Father, and before his angels.

**Revelation 3:20 (WEB):**

<sup>20</sup>Behold, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, then I will come in to him, and will dine with him, and he with me.

**Do we hear the voice of Jesus, and open the door?**





**Revelation 3:21 (WEB):**

<sup>21</sup> He who overcomes, I will give to him to sit down with me on my throne, as I also overcame, and sat down with my Father on his throne.

Jesus had to be tested fully by Satan's kingdom in order to conquer it. So, it will be similar with all of God's holy people who are called and chosen. Compare Revelation 17:14.

**Revelation 4 (WEB):**

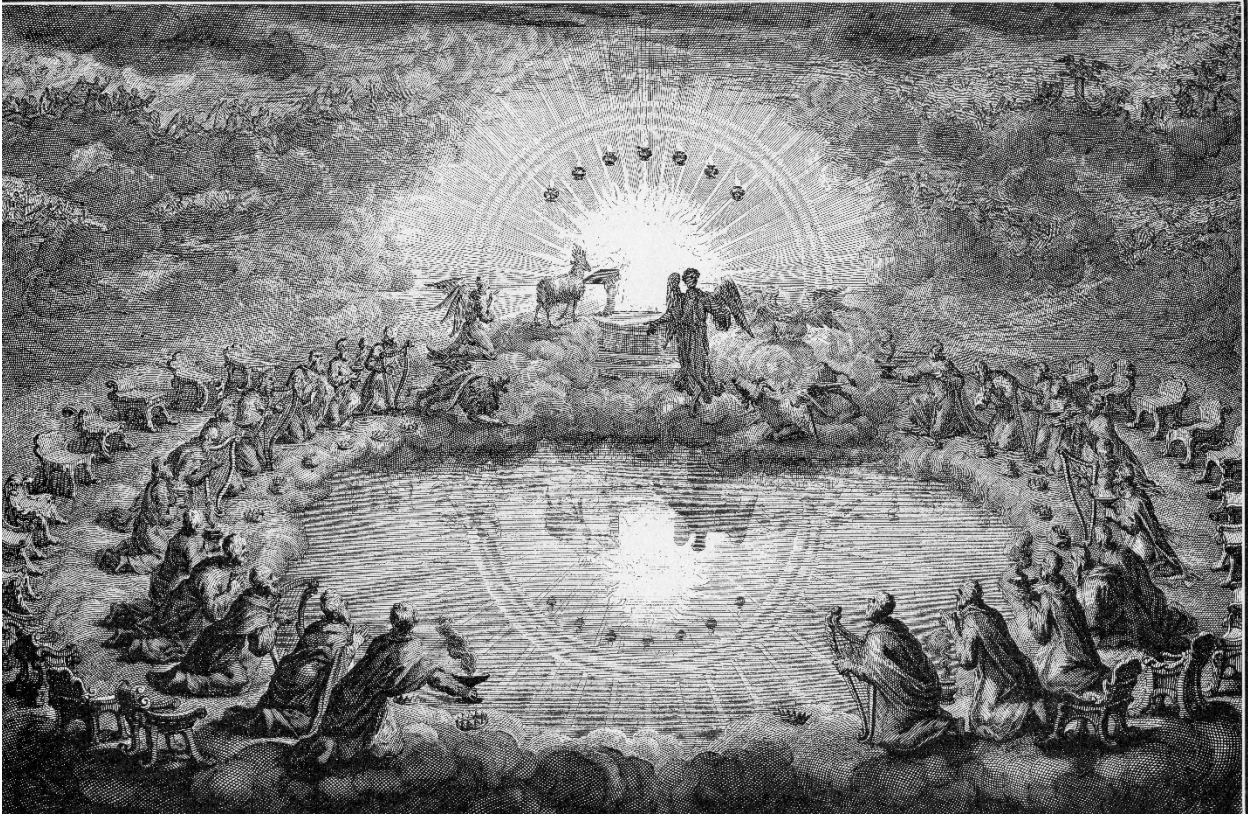
<sup>4</sup> After these things I looked and saw a door opened in heaven, and the first voice that I heard, like a trumpet speaking with me, was one saying, "Come up here, and I will show you the things which must happen after this."

<sup>2</sup> Immediately I was in the Spirit. Behold, there was a throne set in heaven, and one sitting on the throne <sup>3</sup> that looked like a jasper stone and a sardius. There was a rainbow around the throne, like an emerald to look at. <sup>4</sup> Around the throne were twenty-four thrones. On the thrones were twenty-four elders sitting, dressed in white garments, with crowns of gold on their heads. <sup>5</sup> Out of the throne proceed lightnings, sounds, and thunders. There were seven lamps of fire burning before his throne, which are the seven Spirits of God. <sup>6</sup> Before the throne was something like a sea of glass, similar to crystal. In the middle of the throne, and around the throne were four living creatures full of eyes before and behind. <sup>7</sup> The first creature was like a lion, and the second creature like a calf, and the third creature had a face like a man, and the fourth was like a flying eagle. <sup>8</sup> The four living creatures, each one of them having six wings, are full of eyes around and within. They have no rest day and night, saying, "Holy, holy, holy<sup>[a]</sup> is the Lord God, the Almighty, who was and who is and who is to come!"

<sup>9</sup> When the living creatures give glory, honor, and thanks to him who sits on the throne, to him who lives forever and ever, <sup>10</sup> the twenty-four elders fall down before him who sits on the throne, and worship him who lives forever and ever, and throw their crowns before the throne, saying, <sup>11</sup> "Worthy are you, our Lord and God, the Holy One,<sup>[b]</sup> to receive the glory, the honor, and the power, for you created all things, and because of your desire they existed, and were created!"



The Glory of the Almighty and the Lamb, with the 24 princes round about



**Revelation 4:4** It is difficult, but not critical, to identify these “[twenty-four elders](#).” However, seeing that they are “round about” and “twenty-four,” it reminds me of “twenty-four hours-a-day” sacred service completely around the earth (as the earth rotates one complete time in 24 hours). It also reminds me of the 24 “chiefs of the holy place and of the [true] God” (24 priestly divisions **1 Chronicles 24:5-19**). Interestingly, there were 24 groups of 12 each that prophesied with the harp and praised Jehovah in 1 Chronicles 25. Compare Revelation 4:10; 5:8; 11:16; 19:4; Isaiah 24:23

**Revelation 4:6** The “glassy sea like crystal” appears to represent purity on an ultimate scale. It also looks like there is no change in time period from chapter 4 to 5. See Revelation 6:9-11 comments. Compare the difference with Revelation 15:2 where both groups are represented and in the proper time line. But in Revelation 15:2, the “glassy sea” is mingled with fire. Fire is associated with making things pure and even God’s active spirit. Remember the ones in the upper room who received God’s Holy spirit? They had what appeared to be tongues of fire above their heads. Remember Moses talking to God via the “burning bush?” Although it was not burning up. To identify this glassy sea, is not critical.

## Revelation 5 (WEB):

**5** I saw, in the right hand of him who sat on the throne, a book written inside and outside, sealed shut with seven seals. **2** I saw a mighty angel proclaiming with a loud voice, “Who is worthy to open the book, and to break its seals?” **3** No one in heaven above, or on the earth, or under the earth, was able to open the book or to look in it. **4** Then I wept much, because no one was found worthy to open the book or to look in it. **5** One of the elders said to me, “Don’t weep. Behold, the Lion who is of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has overcome: he who opens the book and its seven seals.” **6** I saw in the middle of the throne and of the four living creatures, and in the middle of the elders, a Lamb standing, as though it had been slain, having seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven Spirits of God, sent out into all the earth. **7** Then he came, and he took it out of the right hand of him who sat on the throne. **8** Now when he had taken the book, the four living creatures and the twenty-four elders fell down before the Lamb, each one having a harp, and golden bowls full of incense, which are the prayers of the saints. **9** They sang a new song, saying,

“You are worthy to take the book  
and to open its seals:  
for you were killed,  
and bought us for God with your blood  
out of every tribe, language, people, and nation,  
**10** and made us kings and priests to our God,  
and we will reign on the earth.”

**11** I saw, and I heard something like a voice of many angels around the throne, the living creatures, and the elders. The number of them was ten thousands of ten thousands, and thousands of thousands; **12** saying with a loud voice, “Worthy is the Lamb who has been killed to receive the power, wealth, wisdom, strength, honor, glory, and blessing!”

**13** I heard every created thing which is in heaven, on the earth, under the earth, on the sea, and everything in them, saying, “To him who sits on the throne, and to the Lamb be the blessing, the honor, the glory, and the dominion, forever and ever! Amen!”<sup>[a]</sup>

**14** The four living creatures said, “Amen!” Then the<sup>[b]</sup> elders fell down and worshiped.<sup>[c]</sup>

**Revelation 5:5-7** We see “the root of David, has conquered” and “he went and at once took [it] out of the right hand of the One seated on the throne.” Compare Isaiah 9:6,7; 11:1-5,10; Jeremiah 23:2-6; 33:15; Ezekiel 17:22-24; 34:23-30; 37:15-25; Zechariah 3:8; 6:12,13; Revelation 5:12 – This happens at the start of the three-and-a-half-year period. See Daniel 7:13-14 comments.

**Revelation 5:6;**” ... a lamb...having seven horns and seven eyes...” may refer to Zechariah 3:9; “For, look! the stone that I have put before Joshua! Upon the one stone there are seven eyes...”



**Revelation 5:8-10;** "... And they sing a new song, saying:" Interestingly, **1 Chronicles 25:1-6** where music was used for aiding in "prophesying with the harp for thinking and praising Jehovah" (vs.3). Also, compare verses 9 and 10 where there's going to be an earth wide kingdom set up with kings from every nation with the thought of forever in verse 13 and Daniel chapter 2:44.

At the end of chapter 5 we see the glory of the lamb who was found to be worthy to receive power and riches and wisdom and strength and honor and glory and blessing!

### **Revelation 6**

The first seal of seven seals of the scroll given to the lamb is opened. The ride of the four horsemen begins.



### Revelation 6:1-11 (WEB):

<sup>6</sup> I saw that the Lamb opened one of the seven seals, and I heard one of the four living creatures saying, as with a voice of thunder, “Come and see!” <sup>2</sup> Then a white horse appeared, and he who sat on it had a bow. A crown was given to him, and he came out conquering, and to conquer.

<sup>3</sup> When he opened the second seal, I heard the second living creature saying, “Come!” <sup>4</sup> Another came out: a red horse. To him who sat on it was given power to take peace from the earth, and that they should kill one another. There was given to him a great sword.

<sup>5</sup> When he opened the third seal, I heard the third living creature saying, “Come and see!” And behold, a black horse, and he who sat on it had a balance in his hand. <sup>6</sup> I heard a voice in the middle of the four living creatures saying, “A choenix of wheat for a denarius, and three choenix of barley for a denarius! Don’t damage the oil and the wine!”

<sup>7</sup> When he opened the fourth seal, I heard the fourth living creature saying, “Come and see!” <sup>8</sup> And behold, a pale horse, and the name of he who sat on it was Death. Hades followed with him. Authority over one fourth of the earth, to kill with the sword, with famine, with death, and by the wild animals of the earth was given to him.

<sup>9</sup> When he opened the fifth seal, I saw underneath the altar the souls of those who had been killed for the Word of God, and for the testimony of the Lamb which they had. <sup>10</sup> They cried with a loud voice, saying, “How long, Master, the holy and true, until you judge and avenge our blood on those who dwell on the earth?” <sup>11</sup> A long white robe was given to each of them. They were told that they should rest yet for a while, until their fellow servants and their brothers, who would also be killed even as they were, should complete their course.

The opening of the sixth seal:



**Revelation 6:12-17 (WEB):**

<sup>12</sup> I saw when he opened the sixth seal, and there was a great earthquake. The sun became black as sackcloth made of hair, and the whole moon became as blood. <sup>13</sup> The stars of the sky fell to the earth, like a fig tree dropping its unripe figs when it is shaken by a great wind. <sup>14</sup> The sky was removed like a scroll when it is rolled up. Every mountain and island was moved out of its place. <sup>15</sup> The kings of the earth, the princes, the commanding officers, the rich, the strong, and every slave and free person, hid themselves in the caves and in the rocks of the mountains. <sup>16</sup> They told the mountains and the rocks, “Fall on us, and hide us from the face of him who sits on the throne, and from the wrath of the Lamb, <sup>17</sup> for the great day of his wrath has come; and who is able to stand?”

Revelation 6 denotes a time of not just tribulation but great tribulation and authorized conquest (vs.2). This time period fits in with Satan being “hurled” to the earth – Which is also the start of the three and a half years of tribulation and the start of Jesus’ rule in heaven – This time period seems to describe mainly the three and a half years of tribulation – Although there will still be the greatest tribulation for 45 days after the three and a half tribulation period. The first six seals seem to represent events described in this entire chapter including chapter 7:1-8. The seventh seal is described starting with chapter 8. The four angels mentioned at Revelation 7:2 aren’t the

same as the four horsemen of Revelation 6. The “great day of their wrath” (Revelation 6:17) seems to be referring to “the face of the One seated on the throne and from the wrath of the Lamb” (vs.16) which would be during the 45-day period. Apparently, the four horsemen (Revelation 6:1-8) seem to be let loose at the start of the three and a half period of tribulation.

**Revelation 6:2** mentions a “white horse; and the one seated upon it had a bow; and a crown was given him, and he went forth conquering and to complete his conquest.” This most likely doesn’t refer to Jesus because Christ doesn’t act until the end of the 3.5-year tribulation. It most likely refers to a king or kings given authority by Satan or Jehovah to carry out their work during the three and a half year time of tribulation. The other reason the rider on the white horse isn’t Christ is because he is seen as the Lamb, in verse 1.

### **Revelation 6:9-11 (WEB):**

<sup>9</sup> When he opened the fifth seal, I saw underneath the altar the souls of those who had been killed for the Word of God, and for the testimony of the Lamb which they had. <sup>10</sup> They cried with a loud voice, saying, “How long, Master, the holy and true, until you judge and avenge our blood on those who dwell on the earth?” <sup>11</sup> A long white robe was given to each of them. They were told that they should rest yet for a while, until their fellow servants and their brothers, who would also be killed even as they were, should complete their course.

\*The footnote states that the word for “brothers” and where the context allows may also be correctly translated “brothers and sisters” or “siblings.”

This is very important to understand.

There are two groups talked about, in this passage. The one group, also known as the “first fruits,” have died faithful and true. Their fellow servants still must complete their course because their worship is defiled. It is crooked and unmeasurable. It needs to be cleansed or “straightened” so it can be measured, in this point in time. It takes 3.5 years for the cleansing work to be completed.

Both groups together make up the symbolic bride of Christ. But until the second group is found to be measurable, to have straight worship, they will not be accepted by Yahweh. This is why, in Revelation 11:1-3 there are things measurable (acceptable) and other things not.

The group identified as: “the souls of those slaughtered because of the word of God and because of the witness work that they used to have.” and “killed as they also had been.” – So, this shows us that it includes those faithful disciples of Christ who underwent grievous trials from long ago. Another group is introduced to us as “their fellow slaves and their brothers who were about to be killed as they also had been.” – So, we are introduced to two different groups that are separated by two different times of testing. The first group is given “a white robe” and they ask; “Until when, Sovereign Lord holy and true, are you refraining from judging and avenging our blood upon those who dwell on the earth?” – This shows the two groups are in different locations – earth and heaven. Their question is answered “and they were told to rest a little while longer, until the number was filled also of their fellow slaves and their brothers...” – So, the number had



to be filled “also of their fellow slaves” (vs.11) and they had to rest a little while. The resting fits in with the three-and-a-half-year period where Jesus prepares his kingdom, and the “brothers” are fully tested on earth. This fits in with Zechariah 3:1-9 where “Joshua the high priest” is standing before Jehovah “in befouled garments” and is given “the clean turban upon his head and to clothe him with garments”; and “you and your companions who are sitting before you...” This also seems to fit with Zechariah 14:1-2 where “...And half of the city must go forth into the exile; but as for the remaining ones of the people, they will not be cut off from the city.” Compare also Zechariah 5:3; 1 Corinthians 15:23; Revelation 11:1-3; Revelation 14:4 comments and Micah chapters 2 and 4. Regarding the number to be filled: At 1 Chronicles 27:1-22 there were a total of 288,000 who ministered to David the king. The same will be true, in the future. There will be 288,000 who minister to the figurative king David, Christ. There will be a total of 24 divisions. Each division with its own prince. See *How God’s kingdom will be as it was in ancient times*.

**Revelation 6:11**; “...that they should rest yet a little while— until the number should be made full of their fellow-servants..” – *Emphasized Bible*. “...and it was told them to rest yet for a Time, till both their FELLOW-SERVANTS and their BRETHREN, who were about to be killed even as they, should be completed.” – *Emphatic Diaglott*. “... and it was said unto them, that they should rest yet for a little season, until their fellowservants also and their brethren, that should be killed as they *were*, should be fulfilled.” – *King James Version*. “...and it was said unto them, that they should rest yet for a little time, until their fellow-servants also their brethren, who should be killed even as they were, should have fulfilled *their course*.” – *American Standard Version* (1901). “...and they were told to rest a little while longer, until the tally should be complete of all their brothers in Christ’s service who were to be killed as they had been.” – *THE NEW ENGLISH BIBLE*. “... and told to rest a little longer, until the number of their fellow servants and their brethren should be complete, who were to be killed as they themselves had been.” – *REVISED STANDARD EDITION* (Second Edition). The *New American Bible* uses the term “until the number was filled”. *THE BIBLE in Living English*; “...till the number...” *THE NEW JERUSALEM BIBLE*: “... until the roll was completed.” *New International Version*; “... until the number...” *The Kingdom Interlinear Translation of the GREEK SCRIPTURES*; “should be fulfilled” is the direct translation from the Greek word. There is actually not a word for “number” in this Greek text (verse 11) but it seems that the translators try to explain the passage with surrounding context. Vine’s *Expository Dictionary of Biblical Words* (1985) page 257 describes Revelation 6:11 under “FULFILL, FULFILLING, FULFILLMENT” as meaning “of number”.

**Revelation 6:12-17** This happens right after the “brothers” are “killed”. This corresponds with “a finishing of the dashing of the power of the holy people to pieces” in Daniel 12:7b and Revelation 11:7 “... the wild beast that ascends out of the abyss will make war with them and conquer them and kill them”. This corresponds to the 45 day period of great fearful repentance of those on the earth. The “great day of their wrath” (Jehovah and the Lamb) occurs during this 45 day period

## Revelation 7 (WEB):

7 After this, I saw four angels standing at the four corners of the earth, holding the four winds of the earth, so that no wind would blow on the earth, or on the sea, or on any tree. <sup>2</sup> I saw another angel ascend from the sunrise, having the seal of the living God. He cried with a loud voice to the four angels to whom it was given to harm the earth and the sea, <sup>3</sup> saying, “Don’t harm the earth, the sea, or the trees, until we have sealed the bondservants of our God on their foreheads!” <sup>4</sup> I heard the number of those who were sealed, one hundred forty-four thousand, sealed out of every tribe of the children of Israel:

<sup>5</sup> of the tribe of Judah twelve thousand were sealed,  
of the tribe of Reuben twelve thousand,  
of the tribe of Gad twelve thousand,  
<sup>6</sup> of the tribe of Asher twelve thousand,  
of the tribe of Naphtali twelve thousand,  
of the tribe of Manasseh twelve thousand,  
<sup>7</sup> of the tribe of Simeon twelve thousand,  
of the tribe of Levi twelve thousand,  
of the tribe of Issachar twelve thousand,  
<sup>8</sup> of the tribe of Zebulun twelve thousand,  
of the tribe of Joseph twelve thousand, and  
of the tribe of Benjamin twelve thousand were sealed.

<sup>9</sup> After these things I looked, and behold, a great multitude, which no man could count, out of every nation and of all tribes, peoples, and languages, standing before the throne and before the Lamb, dressed in white robes, with palm branches in their hands. <sup>10</sup> They cried with a loud voice, saying, “Salvation be to our God, who sits on the throne, and to the Lamb!”

<sup>11</sup> All the angels were standing around the throne, the elders, and the four living creatures; and they fell on their faces before his throne, and worshiped God, <sup>12</sup> saying, “Amen! Blessing, glory, wisdom, thanksgiving, honor, power, and might, be to our God forever and ever! Amen.”

<sup>13</sup> One of the elders answered, saying to me, “These who are arrayed in the white robes, who are they, and where did they come from?”

<sup>14</sup> I told him, “My lord, you know.”

He said to me, “These are those who came out of the great suffering.<sup>[a]</sup> They washed their robes, and made them white in the Lamb’s blood. <sup>15</sup> Therefore they are before the throne of God, they serve him day and night in his temple. He who sits on the throne will spread his tabernacle over them. <sup>16</sup> They will never be hungry or thirsty any more. The sun won’t beat on them, nor any heat; <sup>17</sup> for the Lamb who is in the middle of the throne shepherds

them and leads them to springs of life-giving waters. And God will wipe away every tear from their eyes.”

**Revelation 7:1-3** These four angels hold back the four winds until the slaves of Jehovah are sealed. Revelation 7:1-8 appears to be a further elaboration of events just before Revelation 6:12-17 (compare Revelation 6:11b with Revelation 7:3)

**Revelation 7:3-5** The term “sealed” is defined a bit different than the term in Ezekiel 9:4 – See Ezekiel 9:4 comments.

**Revelation 7:4-8** The number mentioned here being sealed seems to be referring to the group of Jehovah’s holy people who just became “dead” and were tested fully (2 Corinthians 1:9) The thought of these verses (1-8) seems to be one of the same – that is referring to the holy people of God who have straightened their worship and are fully tested by experiencing all or part of the three and a half year period noted at Daniel 12:7,11 – Because this appears to be when the sealing is done for this group – The holy ones need to be tested fully. This is the second group of the “two witnesses” mentioned in Revelation 11:2,3 and the “fellow slaves” mentioned in Revelation 6:11 – see also Revelation 14:1-5; 20:4.

**Revelation 7:9-10** This “great crowd“, “dressed in [white robes](#)” has shown repentance and submission. It seems to be made up of all those who make it through “the great day of their wrath” (Jehovah and the Lamb). This is made clearer in verses 13-17. This would occur after the “wrath” which would be very shortly after Jesus’ return.

**Revelation 7:15** “... and they are rendering him sacred service day and night in his temple...” This does not mean they (the “great crowd”) are of the sealed 144,000 mentioned earlier but they now submit themselves to Jehovah and the Lamb. They have different roles and are different groups. Notice the comments for Ezekiel 9:4 and Revelation 7:3-5.

## Revelation 8

Here begins the vision of the seven angels that stand before God, and they were given seven trumpets. These angels are talked about through chapter 10.



### Revelation 8:1-13 (WEB):

**8** When he opened the seventh seal, there was silence in heaven for about half an hour. **2** I saw the seven angels who stand before God, and seven trumpets were given to them.

**3** Another angel came and stood over the altar, having a golden censer. Much incense was given to him, that he should add it to the prayers of all the saints on the golden altar which was before the throne. **4** The smoke of the incense, with the prayers of the saints, went up before God out of the angel's hand. **5** The angel took the censer, and he filled it with the fire of the altar, then threw it on the earth. Thunders, sounds, lightnings, and an earthquake followed.

**6** The seven angels who had the seven trumpets prepared themselves to sound. **7** The first sounded, and there followed hail and fire, mixed with blood, and they were thrown to the earth. One third of the earth was burned up, and one third of the trees were burned up, and all green grass was burned up.

<sup>8</sup> The second angel sounded, and something like a great burning mountain was thrown into the sea. One third of the sea became blood, <sup>9</sup> and one third of the living creatures which were in the sea died. One third of the ships were destroyed.

<sup>10</sup> The third angel sounded, and a great star fell from the sky, burning like a torch, and it fell on one third of the rivers, and on the springs of the waters. <sup>11</sup> The name of the star is called “Wormwood.” One third of the waters became wormwood. Many people died from the waters, because they were made bitter.

<sup>12</sup> The fourth angel sounded, and one third of the sun was struck, and one third of the moon, and one third of the stars; so that one third of them would be darkened, and the day wouldn’t shine for one third of it, and the night in the same way. <sup>13</sup> I saw, and I heard an eagle, flying in mid heaven, saying with a loud voice, “Woe! Woe! Woe for those who dwell on the earth, because of the other voices of the trumpets of the three angels, who are yet to sound!”

This silence seems to be described at Amos 8:2,3 as: “...And Jehovah went on to say to me: “The end has come to my people Israel. I shall no more do any further excusing of them. ‘And the songs of [the] temple will actually be a howling in that day,’ is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah, ‘There will be many a carcass. In every place one will certainly throw [them] out-hush!” And Amos 8:11 further describes a famine for the hearing the words of Jehovah. This (Revelation 8:1) seems to describe the three and a half period of testing of Jehovah’s holy people on earth without Jehovah’s spirit so they can be tested fully. This “seventh seal” (which among other things include “seven trumpet” blasts, seems to include events starting with Jesus beginning his reign in heaven all the way through the 1000-year reign (Revelation 11:15-19).

Revelation 8:3-4 seems like it is the same time of Zechariah 3:1,2 where Joshua is presented before Jehovah for acceptance. The statement “the smoke of the incense ascended ... before God.” is showing God’s acceptance of the first group of the “two witnesses” – See Revelation 11:2,3. This acceptance by or “ascending” before God is the same as Zechariah 3:3-5 where Joshua is pardoned and given “robes of state”.

**Revelation 8:5** “But right away the angel took the incense vessel, and he filled it with some of the fire of the altar and hurled it to the earth...”- This is the account at Jeremiah 25:27

**Revelation 8:7 thru 9:19** describe the first six “trumpet blasts” – These correspond with the prophetic messages of the “two witnesses” till their “death” at Revelation 11:2-7. The “four angels” mentioned in 9:14 are not the same as Revelation 7:2 or Revelation 6:2-8 because they carry out actions in different time periods. The “four angels” and their actions mentioned at 9:14-19 happen, most likely during the three and a half year time period because some who do not repent remain (Revelation 9:20-21). Keep in mind that the definition for “angels” can mean messenger.

## Revelation 9 (WEB):

9 The fifth angel sounded, and I saw a star from the sky which had fallen to the earth. The key to the pit of the abyss was given to him.<sup>2</sup> He opened the pit of the abyss, and smoke went up out of the pit, like the smoke from a<sup>[a]</sup> burning furnace. The sun and the air were darkened because of the smoke from the pit.<sup>3</sup> Then out of the smoke came locusts on the earth, and power was given to them, as the scorpions of the earth have power.<sup>4</sup> They were told that they should not hurt the grass of the earth, neither any green thing, neither any tree, but only those people who don't have God's seal on their foreheads.<sup>5</sup> They were given power, not to kill them, but to torment them for five months. Their torment was like the torment of a scorpion when it strikes a person.<sup>6</sup> In those days people will seek death, and will in no way find it. They will desire to die, and death will flee from them.<sup>7</sup> The shapes of the locusts were like horses prepared for war. On their heads were something like golden crowns, and their faces were like people's faces.<sup>8</sup> They had hair like women's hair, and their teeth were like those of lions.<sup>9</sup> They had breastplates, like breastplates of iron. The sound of their wings was like the sound of chariots, or of many horses rushing to war.<sup>10</sup> They have tails like those of scorpions, and stings. In their tails they have power to harm men for five months.<sup>11</sup> They have over them as king the angel of the abyss. His name in Hebrew is "Abaddon",<sup>[b]</sup> but in Greek, he has the name "Apollyon".<sup>[c]</sup><sup>12</sup> The first woe is past. Behold, there are still two woes coming after this.

<sup>13</sup> The sixth angel sounded. I heard a voice from the horns of the golden altar which is before God,<sup>14</sup> saying to the sixth angel who had the trumpet, "Free the four angels who are bound at the great river Euphrates!"

<sup>15</sup> The four angels were freed who had been prepared for that hour and day and month and year, so that they might kill one third of mankind.<sup>16</sup> The number of the armies of the horsemen was two hundred million.<sup>[d]</sup> I heard the number of them.<sup>17</sup> Thus I saw the horses in the vision, and those who sat on them, having breastplates of fiery red, hyacinth blue, and sulfur yellow; and the horses' heads resembled lions' heads. Out of their mouths proceed fire, smoke, and sulfur.<sup>18</sup> By these three plagues were one third of mankind killed: by the fire, the smoke, and the sulfur, which proceeded out of their mouths.<sup>19</sup> For the power of the horses is in their mouths and in their tails. For their tails are like serpents, and have heads, and with them they harm.<sup>20</sup> The rest of mankind, who were not killed with these plagues, didn't repent of the works of their hands, that they wouldn't worship demons, and the idols of gold, and of silver, and of brass, and of stone, and of wood; which can't see, hear, or walk.<sup>21</sup> They didn't repent of their murders, their sorceries,<sup>[e]</sup> their sexual immorality, or their thefts.

**Revelation 9:2** The term "and the sun was darkened" – see comments for Revelation 16:10

**Revelation 9:16** "And the number of the armies of cavalry was "; 200,000 (Ref. note). This reminds me of the army of insects symbolized as people in Joel chapters 1 and 2



although in Joel, the “insects” were stripping Jehovah’s people bare – Here God’s people are not harmed from these creatures (9:4).

### **Revelation 10 (WEB):**

**10** I saw a mighty angel coming down out of the sky, clothed with a cloud. A rainbow was on his head. His face was like the sun, and his feet like pillars of fire. <sup>2</sup> He had in his hand a little open book. He set his right foot on the sea, and his left on the land. <sup>3</sup> He cried with a loud voice, as a lion roars. When he cried, the seven thunders uttered their voices. <sup>4</sup> When the seven thunders sounded, I was about to write; but I heard a voice from the sky saying, “Seal up the things which the seven thunders said, and don’t write them.”

<sup>5</sup> The angel whom I saw standing on the sea and on the land lifted up his right hand to the sky, <sup>6</sup> and swore by him who lives forever and ever, who created heaven and the things that are in it, the earth and the things that are in it, and the sea and the things that are in it, that there will no longer be delay, <sup>7</sup> but in the days of the voice of the seventh angel, when he is about to sound, then the mystery of God is finished, as he declared to his servants, the prophets. <sup>8</sup> The voice which I heard from heaven, again speaking with me, said, “Go, take the book which is open in the hand of the angel who stands on the sea and on the land.”

<sup>9</sup> I went to the angel, telling him to give me the little book.

He said to me, “Take it, and eat it. It will make your stomach bitter, but in your mouth it will be as sweet as honey.”

<sup>10</sup> I took the little book out of the angel’s hand, and ate it. It was as sweet as honey in my mouth. When I had eaten it, my stomach was made bitter. <sup>11</sup> They<sup>[a]</sup> told me, “You must prophesy again over many peoples, nations, languages, and kings.”

**Revelation 10:7** “but in the days of the sounding of the seventh angel, when he is about to blow his trumpet, the sacred secret of God according to the good news which he declared to his own slaves the prophets is indeed brought to a finish.” // It is important to realize when this happens. The Greek word for “about” is “mello” (#3195 – Strong’s Concordance) and is defined as: “..to intend, i.e. be about to be, do, or suffer something..”) // Compare Amos 3:7; The time period of Daniel 11:33-35; 12:7,12; Malachi 3:1; 4:5,6; Revelation 11:15

**Revelation 10: 8-11** This appears to indicate how the messages to the nations from God’s people change from “sweet” to ” bitter.” This is made more evident in chapter 11:5-6.

### **Revelation 11 (WEB):**

**11** A reed like a rod was given to me. Someone said, “Rise, and measure God’s temple, and the altar, and those who worship in it. <sup>2</sup> Leave out the court which is outside of the temple, and don’t measure it, for it has been given to the nations. They will tread the holy city under foot for forty-two months. <sup>3</sup> I will give power to my two witnesses, and they

will prophesy one thousand two hundred sixty days, clothed in sackcloth.”<sup>4</sup> These are the two olive trees and the two lamp stands, standing before the Lord of the earth.<sup>5</sup> If anyone desires to harm them, fire proceeds out of their mouth and devours their enemies. If anyone desires to harm them, he must be killed in this way.<sup>6</sup> These have the power to shut up the sky, that it may not rain during the days of their prophecy. They have power over the waters, to turn them into blood, and to strike the earth with every plague, as often as they desire.<sup>7</sup> When they have finished their testimony, the beast that comes up out of the abyss will make war with them, and overcome them, and kill them.<sup>8</sup> Their dead bodies will be in the street of the great city, which spiritually is called Sodom and Egypt, where also their Lord was crucified.<sup>9</sup> From among the peoples, tribes, languages, and nations, people will look at their dead bodies for three and a half days, and will not allow their dead bodies to be laid in a tomb.<sup>10</sup> Those who dwell on the earth rejoice over them, and they will be glad. They will give gifts to one another, because these two prophets tormented those who dwell on the earth.<sup>11</sup> After the three and a half days, the breath of life from God entered into them, and they stood on their feet. Great fear fell on those who saw them.<sup>12</sup> I heard a loud voice from heaven saying to them, “Come up here!” They went up into heaven in the cloud, and their enemies saw them.<sup>13</sup> In that day there was a great earthquake, and a tenth of the city fell. Seven thousand people were killed in the earthquake, and the rest were terrified, and gave glory to the God of heaven.<sup>14</sup> The second woe is past. Behold, the third woe comes quickly.

<sup>15</sup> The seventh angel sounded, and great voices in heaven followed, saying, “The kingdom of the world has become the Kingdom of our Lord, and of his Christ. He will reign forever and ever!”

<sup>16</sup> The twenty-four elders, who sit on their thrones before God’s throne, fell on their faces and worshiped God,<sup>17</sup> saying: “We give you thanks, Lord God, the Almighty, the one who is and who was; because you have taken your great power and reigned.<sup>18</sup> The nations were angry, and your wrath came, as did the time for the dead to be judged, and to give your bondservants the prophets, their reward, as well as to the saints, and those who fear your name, to the small and the great, and to destroy those who destroy the earth.”

<sup>19</sup> God’s temple that is in heaven was opened, and the ark of the Lord’s covenant was seen in his temple. Lightnings, sounds, thunders, an earthquake, and great hail followed.

**Revelation 11:1** It is interesting that three things are mentioned to be measured – That is, they are “straight” so they can be measured – The temple, altar, and those worshipping in it. Those “worshipping in it” would most likely be the first group (of two) who have already been fully tested “to death” as mentioned at Revelation 6:9-11. Compare Zechariah 5:6-11 where the first group would be represented by the measurable “ephah”. See also 1 Corinthians 15:23; Revelation 14:4 “first fruits”; [Proverbs 3:5-6](#) where it shows that those who follow God have their ways made straight (see footnote in the American Standard Version) Contrast Revelation 11:2-3 (things not measured) with Revelation 21:10-21 (things with perfect measurements)

**Revelation 11:2-3** This “courtyard that is outside the temple [sanctuary]” is not measured but “given to the nations” to be trampled upon for 42 months. This event in time corresponds *within* the three and a half times or 1,290 days mentioned in Daniel 12:7,11 where God’s holy people are cleansed, and their power is dashed to pieces so they can be tested fully. They will be in “sackcloth”. This will be a spiritual famine too as one brought out in Amos chapter 8. These “two witnesses” seem to be two groups of holy people who “conquer” Satan’s kingdom. One group was most likely from the first century period and the other group is for our day. Both groups must go through the tribulation period of which there is a king of the north which especially takes the lead in “killing” the holy people of God – See Daniel 7:25; 8:11;12 and Revelation 6:9-11 comments and the book of Lamentations.

**Revelation 11:4** – Reference Zechariah 4:11-14

**Revelation 11:5-6** This appears to be the prophetic stinging messages of Jehovah’s people while in “sackcloth.” See Revelation 8:7 thru 9:19 and 10:8-11 comments. Prophets of old such as Elijah and Moses performed literal feats as mentioned here.

**Revelation 11:7** The holy people are “killed” by the wild beast – See Daniel 12:7. They have been tested fully as their companions had been – Revelation 6:9-11.

**Revelation 11:8-10** The “corpses” are on open display to their enemies who now rejoice – The stinging prophetic work of this group is legally “killed” for a literal three and a half days – Very similar to Jonah in a death-like state in the belly of the big fish. This would correspond with the first literal approximate three days of the 45-day period commented upon in Daniel 12:11-12. This would correspond with Daniel 12:7 as noted. **The Holy People have their power dashed to pieces. The tribulation for God’s people is basically over. Their worship has now been straightened out and tested. Now it is time for the great tribulation of the nations!**

**Revelation 11:11-13** Just after an approximate three literal days (Hosea 6:1-3), a great sign or signs show God’s protection and favor on his “two witnesses” who were “killed”. The people of the nations “go crazy” because repentance including the showing of servitude and glory to Jehovah – on their part – means their very lives! – See comments for verses 8-10. This is a most fitting time for the people that the “Harlot” that sits upon her people is destroyed “in one hour” (Revelation chapters 17 and 18). The phrase “come on up here” could refer to the invitation for God’s holy ones to be judged before Jehovah to be worthy and/or it could include a visible sign such as Elijah and Elisha experienced (2 Kings 2:9-12,23). See [What happens when Jesus comes?](#)

**Revelation 11: 14-18** This appears to take place during the 45-day period at day 1,335. Notice verse 19 comments. See Revelation 14:14-20; 19:11-21)

**Revelation 11:18** “ruining the earth” the word translated here as “ruining” is Literally “corrupting through” – Ref. note. See also Revelation 19:2.

**Revelation 11:19** “And the temple [sanctuary] of God that is in heaven was opened, and the ark of his covenant was seen in his temple [sanctuary]. And there occurred lightnings and voices and

thunders and an earthquake and a great hail.” It appears that this is a clue to figuring out the timing of this vision by referencing what appears to be the same event at Revelation 15:5

### **Revelation 12 (WEB):**

<sup>12</sup> A great sign was seen in heaven: a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and on her head a crown of twelve stars. <sup>2</sup> She was with child. She cried out in pain, laboring to give birth. <sup>3</sup> Another sign was seen in heaven. Behold, a great red dragon, having seven heads and ten horns, and on his heads seven crowns. <sup>4</sup> His tail drew one third of the stars of the sky, and threw them to the earth. The dragon stood before the woman who was about to give birth, so that when she gave birth he might devour her child. <sup>5</sup> She gave birth to a son, a male child, who is to rule all the nations with a rod of iron. Her child was caught up to God, and to his throne. <sup>6</sup> The woman fled into the wilderness, where she has a place prepared by God, that there they may nourish her one thousand two hundred sixty days.

<sup>7</sup> There was war in the sky. Michael and his angels made war on the dragon. The dragon and his angels made war. <sup>8</sup> They didn’t prevail. No place was found for them any more in heaven. <sup>9</sup> The great dragon was thrown down, the old serpent, he who is called the devil and Satan, the deceiver of the whole world. He was thrown down to the earth, and his angels were thrown down with him. <sup>10</sup> I heard a loud voice in heaven, saying, “Now the salvation, the power, and the Kingdom of our God, and the authority of his Christ has come; for the accuser of our brothers has been thrown down, who accuses them before our God day and night. <sup>11</sup> They overcame him because of the Lamb’s blood, and because of the word of their testimony. They didn’t love their life, even to death. <sup>12</sup> Therefore rejoice, heavens, and you who dwell in them. Woe to the earth and to the sea, because the devil has gone down to you, having great wrath, knowing that he has but a short time.”

<sup>13</sup> When the dragon saw that he was thrown down to the earth, he persecuted the woman who gave birth to the male child. <sup>14</sup> Two wings of the great eagle were given to the woman, that she might fly into the wilderness to her place, so that she might be nourished for a time, and times, and half a time, from the face of the serpent. <sup>15</sup> The serpent spewed water out of his mouth after the woman like a river, that he might cause her to be carried away by the stream. <sup>16</sup> The earth helped the woman, and the earth opened its mouth and swallowed up the river which the dragon spewed out of his mouth. <sup>17</sup> The dragon grew angry with the woman, and went away to make war with the rest of her offspring,<sup>[a]</sup> who keep God’s commandments and hold Jesus’ testimony.

John describes a war in heaven in which Michael and his angels battle with the dragon and his angels. Michael prevails and the great dragon who is Satan who misleads the entire earth is hurled out of heaven and restricted to the earth! See *Is Michael, Jesus?*



**Revelation 12:6** “And the woman fled into the wilderness, where she has a place prepared by God, that they should feed her there a thousand two hundred and sixty days.” This happens at the start of the 1,290-day period in Daniel 12:7,11. This is a time of testing of God’s servants – See comments for Revelation 11:2-4 and Zechariah 5:5-11

**Revelation 12:7-9** Occurs basically at the same time as 12:6.

**Revelation 12:10-12** This occurs basically at the same time as 12:6. However, verse 11 talks about the first group of the “two witnesses” not the holy ones yet to undergo trials – see comments for Revelation 6:9-11.

**Revelation 12:13-14** pictures Satan restricted to the earth and Jehovah removing his spirit from his people by the “woman” fleeing into the wilderness. This may be the same thing as mentioned in Zechariah 5:9-11.

**Revelation 12:15-17** “And the serpent disgorged water like a river from its mouth after the woman, to cause her to be drowned by the river. But the earth came to the woman’s help, and the earth opened its mouth and swallowed up the river that the dragon disgorged from its mouth. And the dragon grew wrathful at the woman and went off to wage war with the remaining ones of her seed, who observe the commandments of God and have the work of bearing witness to Jesus.” // All the verses happen during the same time period (three and a half times). Actually, it appears that verse 17 repeats what is mentioned in verses 15 and 16. They simply seem to be the same thing. This “disgorged water” are attempts by Satan to destroy the remaining of God’s holy people, but they find protection (“the earth came to the woman’s help”) among some people and possibly laws of the nations. See the attitudes found at Daniel 7:25 and Isaiah 16:4.

### **Revelation 13 (WEB):**

**13** Then I stood on the sand of the sea. I saw a beast coming up out of the sea, having ten horns and seven heads. On his horns were ten crowns, and on his heads, blasphemous names. <sup>2</sup> The beast which I saw was like a leopard, and his feet were like those of a bear, and his mouth like the mouth of a lion. The dragon gave him his power, his throne, and great authority. <sup>3</sup> One of his heads looked like it had been wounded fatally. His fatal wound was healed, and the whole earth marveled at the beast. <sup>4</sup> They worshiped the dragon, because he gave his authority to the beast, and they worshiped the beast, saying, “Who is like the beast? Who is able to make war with him?” <sup>5</sup> A mouth speaking great things and blasphemy was given to him. Authority to make war for forty-two months was given to him. <sup>6</sup> He opened his mouth for blasphemy against God, to blaspheme his name, and his dwelling, those who dwell in heaven. <sup>7</sup> It was given to him to make war with the saints, and to overcome them. Authority over every tribe, people, language, and nation was given to him. <sup>8</sup> All who dwell on the earth will worship him, everyone whose name has not been written from the foundation of the world in the book of life of the Lamb who has been killed. <sup>9</sup> If anyone has an ear, let him hear. <sup>10</sup> If anyone is to go into captivity, he



will go into captivity. If anyone is to be killed with the sword, he must be killed.<sup>[a]</sup> Here is the endurance and the faith of the saints.

<sup>11</sup> I saw another beast coming up out of the earth. He had two horns like a lamb, and he spoke like a dragon. <sup>12</sup> He exercises all the authority of the first beast in his presence. He makes the earth and those who dwell in it to worship the first beast, whose fatal wound was healed. <sup>13</sup> He performs great signs, even making fire come down out of the sky to the earth in the sight of people. <sup>14</sup> He deceives my own<sup>[b]</sup> people who dwell on the earth because of the signs he was granted to do in front of the beast, saying to those who dwell on the earth that they should make an image to the beast who had the sword wound and lived. <sup>15</sup> It was given to him to give breath to it, to the image of the beast, that the image of the beast should both speak, and cause as many as wouldn't worship the image of the beast to be killed. <sup>16</sup> He causes all, the small and the great, the rich and the poor, and the free and the slave, to be given marks on their right hands, or on their foreheads; <sup>17</sup> and that no one would be able to buy or to sell, unless he has that mark, which is the name of the beast or the number of his name. <sup>18</sup> Here is wisdom. He who has understanding, let him calculate the number of the beast, for it is the number of a man. His number is six hundred sixty-six.

Here we are introduced to what John describes as a 7 headed beast with ten horns.



**Revelation 13:1** “blasphemous names” could easily denote blasphemous actions. The “heads” or “horns” would represent kingdoms or possibly groups of kingdoms.

**Revelation 13:2** It is interesting how this wild beast encompasses characteristics of the first three beasts mentioned in Daniel 7:4-6 (Babylon, Medo-Persia, Greece (possibly with Rome)) However, it may be depicting the descendant nations of the previous world powers or just similar qualities. When taking into consideration Daniel’s account of this beast along with this account, it seems that it represents Satan’s entire kingdom of human governments. Different “horns” represent different kingdoms.

**Revelation 13:2** where it mentions “And the dragon gave to [the beast] its power and its throne and great authority.” This most likely occurs as soon as Satan is “hurled” to the earth (Revelation 12:7,13). An unprecedented amount of authority is given to it – most likely more than what was given to the king of the north in the first century mainly due to the dragon being “restricted” to the earth. Because “the dragon” gives the wild beast its throne, anyone “worshiping” (or doing service for) would be considered serving a god rather than Jehovah.

**Revelation 13:3** “And I saw one of its heads as though slaughtered to death, but its death-stroke got healed...” It is hard to say when this takes place. Taking into consideration what Daniel describes as the wild beast for our day and the conflicts between its kingdoms, this could represent a kingdom that was “on the verge of death” being revived. So, it most likely would not represent the king of the north because he is not conquered until his end, and he does not recover (Daniel 7:11). It is a slim possibility that this “head as though slaughtered to death” could represent the kingdom of Israel (Including Jerusalem). This “slaughtered” head most likely would not represent America because of the greatness of the injury. For our near future, Daniel 11 does show some victory of the king of the north over the king of the south but not to this degree. This “slaughtered to death” could be a financial slaughtering – it is a possibility, but I believe a slim one. It could be Israel or another nation coming back from defeat from the king of the north the aid of other nations before the end of the king of the north. – Time will tell. Could be ISIS. Who knows?

**Revelation 13:4** It seems that the “wild beast” has “heads” that fight against one another. That is some represent different national interests, but they all belong to the same political time period. The phrase “Who is like the wild beast, and who can do battle with it?” can indicate a show of force has been exercised. Perhaps the king of the north is “pushed back” or “stopped” by the principal part of the wild beast (Most likely the United Nations or a large group of nations), for a time (until the king of the north pushes again – but to his end – Daniel 11:40-45 comments).

**Revelation 13:5-8** “And a mouth speaking great things and blasphemies was given it, and authority to act forty-two months was given it.” This is certainly the complete worldly political system of our day – not just “the king of the north”(vs.7b “and authority was given it over every tribe and people and tongue and nation”) – whether they fight with one another or not. The timing of the given authority to act forty-two months (Three and a half years) seems to begin with the destruction or conquering of Jerusalem. It also wages war with the holy ones (see comments for Revelation 17:14) and speaks blasphemies against God (possibly by speaking

against God's holy ones). For those who "worship" it, they render it service to support its objective of "killing" or "wage war" and "conquer" Jehovah's "holy ones" thus they willingly mark themselves as worshippers or servants of Satan's throne. (see 13:17). This "worship" (could also be defined as: "to give aid to" or "serve") could – but does not have to be – something as simple as a type of "tax". If that were to happen, a person of God would rather be "restricted" as Paul was – rather than to render a service to this wild beast.

**Revelation 13:8** Notice that referring to a scroll related to those who serve this wild beast; "... all those who dwell on the earth will worship it; the name of not one of them stands written in the scroll of life of the Lamb who was slaughtered, from the founding of the world." -This is the same beast described at Revelation 17:8.

**Revelation 13:9-10** ". Here is where it means the endurance and faith of the holy ones." The holy ones will need endurance to "conquer" (or "prove faithful") this wild beast. This is the three and a half times.

**Revelation 13:11-13** "And I saw another wild beast ascending out of the earth..." This beast has a different beginning, "the earth", then the wild beast mentioned in verse 1. Notice verse 11: "... And it had two horns like a lamb, but it began speaking as a dragon." – This highly indicates a dual world power (This is based upon other visions and their descriptions with "horns") that began to have great power (like at the end of World War 2). This beast evidently exists at the/or about same time as the wild beast of the nations (vs.7) when it is stated "in its sight" (vs.12). Verse 12 also shows that this other dual-horned beast is the force behind making "the earth and those who dwell in it worship the first wild beast...". It makes most sense that this is the dual world power of America and the British kingdoms.

**Revelation 13:13** "And it performs great signs, so that it should even make fire come down out of heaven to the earth in the sight of mankind." – This "fire" could be what is mentioned in verse 14. I personally believe it could mean literally prophesy – and the prophesy would come true. That is another reason why it is important to be able to distinguish between a true and false prophet. This "fire" could also represent literal military might or something else.

**Revelation 13:14** "And it misleads those who dwell on the earth, because of the signs that were granted it to perform in the sight of the wild beast..." This beast is also identified as the "false prophet" (See Revelation 19:20) – It misleads people into false worship ("worship" is also known as "service")

**Revelation 13:14** "... while it tells those who dwell on the earth to make an image to the wild beast that had the sword-stroke and yet revived." Images were and are used in acts of false worship. In this case, "to make an image" may denote the promoting of the means to "worship" or to "serve" the first wild beast which would include supporting its warring (or any opposition) against the holy ones and speaking against Jehovah (Revelation 13:5-8 comments) Reflecting on what Jesus mentioned in John 14:9 "He that has seen me has seen the Father [also]..." and what Hebrews 1:3 states: "He is the reflection of [his] glory and the exact representation of his very being, and he sustains all things by the word of his power.." – it is also possible that the image of

the wild beast be represented not just by an organization of nations but also by a principle leader or leaders.

**Revelation 13:15-17** “And there was granted it to give breath to the image of the wild beast, so that the image of the wild beast should both speak and cause to be killed all those who would not in any way worship the image of the wild beast. And it puts under compulsion all persons, the small and the great, and the rich and the poor, and the free and the slaves, that they should give these a mark in their right hand or upon their forehead, and that nobody might be able to buy or sell except a person having the mark, the name of the wild beast or the number of its name.” This shows the intensity of Satan’s will to destroy Jehovah’s holy people by trying to force everyone to submit to his (Satan’s) will. This “cause to be killed” could very easily be symbolic such as being barred from doing business or buying something or it could include the real thing too – See Revelation 20:4b comments. However, for any of God’s people who are “in sackcloth”, Satan would only need one act of servitude to “mark” someone – This could be in the form of a king telling the “two witnesses” that all they would have to do is sign a piece of paper or pay some type of fee – with the deceptive reasoning such as “if you do this – just once – we will allow you to worship your God freely!”. Watch out! -See Daniel 11:32.

**Revelation 13:18** Comments and speculation on **the number of the beast 666**: It is interesting that the wild beast mentioned in Rev. 13:11 speaks as a dragon and gives life “to the image” of the wild beast (Revelation 13:1-8) – There are two separate “beasts” working here on a common campaign. It seems that this campaign time frame is listed as 666. It can be calculated as  $666 * 2$  (because of two beasts with same thought) = 1,332. This is very close to the time from when (according to Daniel) the beginning of the last time period of the nations begin – That is, it begins with the fall of the literal Jerusalem, includes the fall of the king of the north and the 45 “days to repent.” Daniel puts the completed days at 1,335 days, the primary end of the wicked. One could say that it would be the end of Armageddon. Just like the end of the flood.

#### **Revelation 14 (WEB):**

**14** I saw, and behold, the Lamb standing on Mount Zion, and with him a number, one hundred forty-four thousand, having his name, and the name of his Father, written on their foreheads. <sup>2</sup> I heard a sound from heaven, like the sound of many waters, and like the sound of a great thunder. The sound which I heard was like that of harpists playing on their harps. <sup>3</sup> They sing a new song before the throne, and before the four living creatures and the elders. No one could learn the song except the one hundred forty-four thousand, those who had been redeemed out of the earth. <sup>4</sup> These are those who were not defiled with women, for they are virgins. These are those who follow the Lamb wherever he goes. These were redeemed by Jesus from among men, the first fruits to God and to the Lamb. <sup>5</sup> In their mouth was found no lie, for they are blameless.

<sup>6</sup> I saw an angel flying in mid heaven, having an eternal Good News to proclaim to those who dwell on the earth, and to every nation, tribe, language, and people. <sup>7</sup> He said with a loud voice, “Fear the Lord, and give him glory; for the hour of his judgment has come. Worship him who made the heaven, the earth, the sea, and the springs of waters!”

<sup>8</sup> Another, a second angel, followed, saying, “Babylon the great has fallen, which has made all the nations to drink of the wine of the wrath of her sexual immorality.”

<sup>9</sup> Another angel, a third, followed them, saying with a great voice, “If anyone worships the beast and his image, and receives a mark on his forehead, or on his hand, <sup>10</sup> he also will drink of the wine of the wrath of God, which is prepared unmixed in the cup of his anger. He will be tormented with fire and sulfur in the presence of the holy angels, and in the presence of the Lamb. <sup>11</sup> The smoke of their torment goes up forever and ever. They have no rest day and night, those who worship the beast and his image, and whoever receives the mark of his name. <sup>12</sup> Here is the perseverance of the saints, those who keep the commandments of God, and the faith of Jesus.”

<sup>13</sup> I heard a voice from heaven saying, “Write, ‘Blessed are the dead who die in the Lord from now on.’”

“Yes,” says the Spirit, “that they may rest from their labors; for their works follow with them.”

<sup>14</sup> I looked, and saw a white cloud, and on the cloud one sitting like a son of man, [Daniel 7:13](#) having on his head a golden crown, and in his hand a sharp sickle. <sup>15</sup> Another angel came out of the temple, crying with a loud voice to him who sat on the cloud, “Send your sickle, and reap; for the hour to reap has come; for the harvest of the earth is ripe!” <sup>16</sup> He who sat on the cloud thrust his sickle on the earth, and the earth was reaped.

<sup>17</sup> Another angel came out of the temple which is in heaven. He also had a sharp sickle. <sup>18</sup> Another angel came out from the altar, he who has power over fire, and he called with a great voice to him who had the sharp sickle, saying, “Send your sharp sickle, and gather the clusters of the vine of the earth, for the earth’s grapes are fully ripe!” <sup>19</sup> The angel thrust his sickle into the earth, and gathered the vintage of the earth, and threw it into the great wine press of the wrath of God. <sup>20</sup> The wine press was trodden outside of the city, and blood came out of the wine press, even to the bridles of the horses, as far as one thousand six hundred stadia.

**Revelation 14:1** “And I saw, and, look! the Lamb standing upon the Mount Zion, and with him a hundred and forty-four thousand having his name and the name of his Father written on their foreheads.” // This helps to confirm how the “Lamb”, the “Father”, and the “hundred and forty-four thousand” are separate.

**Revelation 14:1-5** seems to describe the first group of the 144,000 (“two witnesses” – See Revelation 11:2-3; 6:9-11; 21:16b-17a comments) because it appears that the events of the entire chapter happen in order. Although the thought that this group in these verses is not identified as “not receiving” the mark of the beast does not resolve the matter. However, see the comments in Revelation 15:2; 20:4 where I believe it shows the two groups together – With one of them partly identified as “who had not received the mark” (20:4). See also Revelation 7:3-8 comments.



**Revelation 14:4a** “These are the ones that did not defile themselves with women; in fact, they are virgins.” // Denoting that spiritually they are pure not defiling themselves with apostate or foreign wives serving other gods – Compare Ezekiel 44:15-22. The phrase “they are virgins,” could denote different things. It is possible it could denote their spiritual purity (being forgiven by Jehovah) and that they would be virgins from the standpoint that they are to make up the “bride” of Jesus.

**Revelation 14:4b, c** “These are the ones that keep following the Lamb no matter where he goes. These were bought from among mankind as first-fruits to God and to the Lamb” // This identifies the first of the “two witnesses” as spoken of in Revelation 11:1-3. Compare Zechariah 5:8; 1 Corinthians 15:23; Revelation 6:9-11

**Revelation 14:6-12** occurs during the 45-day period.

**Revelation 14:6-7** Here is where the nations see great signs and they realize they need to repent and submit in order to survive the upcoming time of the wrath of God (Revelation 11:11-13 comments)

**Revelation 14:8** It seems that the nations of people, in their eagerness to show repentance and submission, destroy Babylon the Great. The Great harlot most definitely “marked” (see Revelation 13:14-17 comments) herself too by serving the wild beast in “killing” God’s holy people.

**Revelation 14:9-12** Is a proclaimed fact that the nations have been “tormented” with when the “two witnesses” prophesied. This partial group of the “two witnesses” was helped to be “killed” by anyone who bore the beast’s mark (Revelation 11; 13:15-18)

**Revelation 14:13** Those who were “killed” or “died” have been fully tested and now the testing is done, and the nations know for a certainty that they are God’s holy people. They can “rest.” This starts at the beginning of the 45-day period.

**Revelation 14:14-20** Jesus has arrived in kingdom might and starts the separating work of those who have submitted and do not bear the mark of the beast from the ones who bear the mark of the beast along with any who do not submit (See Revelation 11:16-18; 19:11-21)

### **Revelation 15 (WEB):**

15 I saw another great and marvelous sign in the sky: seven angels having the seven last plagues, for in them God’s wrath is finished. <sup>2</sup>I saw something like a sea of glass mixed with fire, and those who overcame the beast, his image,<sup>[a]</sup> and the number of his name, standing on the sea of glass, having harps of God. <sup>3</sup>They sang the song of Moses, the servant of God, and the song of the Lamb, saying,

“Great and marvelous are your works, Lord God, the Almighty!

Righteous and true are your ways, you King of the nations.

<sup>4</sup>Who wouldn’t fear you, Lord,

and glorify your name?

For you only are holy.



For all the nations will come and worship before you.  
For your righteous acts have been revealed.”

<sup>5</sup> After these things I looked, and the temple of the tabernacle of the testimony in heaven was opened. <sup>6</sup> The seven angels who had the seven plagues came out, clothed with pure, bright linen, and wearing golden sashes around their breasts.

<sup>7</sup> One of the four living creatures gave to the seven angels seven golden bowls full of the wrath of God, who lives forever and ever. <sup>8</sup> The temple was filled with smoke from the glory of God, and from his power. No one was able to enter into the temple until the seven plagues of the seven angels would be finished.

**Revelation 15:1** starts us off in a different time period as brought out in verse 2 (which takes place during the 45-day period)

**Revelation 15:2** “And I saw what seemed to be a glassy sea mingled with fire, and those who come off victorious from the wild beast and from its image and from the number of its name standing by the glassy sea, having harps of God.” – Compare THE NEW ENGLISH BIBLE (1971); “I saw what seemed a sea of glass shot with fire, and beside the sea of glass, holding the harps which God had given them, were those who had won the victory over the beast and its image and the number of its name.” – I prefer the later rendering of the verse because it makes this difficult verse easier to understand on how it harmonizes with prophetic events. This “sea of glass shot with fire” represents the second group of “the two witnesses.” They have just been “killed” by Satan’s wild beast. They have “conquered it.” They just have been fully tested and cleansed and are standing beside the first group of the “two witnesses” when the “seven bowls of the anger of God” get poured into the earth (Revelation 16:1 comments). They were just “made alive” after being “killed” or “dead” for 3 days and were accepted by Jehovah with any past sins (most likely of apostasy) wiped away. So now both groups are together.

The understanding of the text is important. Because if one thinks this is only talking about the first group, it puts different emphasis on what may or may not be literal in the following verses. Especially in Revelation 16:12 where it could be thought to be referring to the end of the king of the north for our day (Daniel 11:44-45) and even Revelation 16:16.

**Revelation 15:5** “And after these things I saw, and the sanctuary of the tent of the witness was opened in heaven, and the seven angels with the seven plagues emerged from the sanctuary” – This “tent of the witness” is also translated as “the TEMPLE of the TABERNACLE of the TESTIMONY” – *EMPHATIC DIAGLOTT*.

**Revelation 15:5-16:21** Refer to the pouring out of “the seven bowls of the anger of God” (16:1) by “the seven angels” (15:6)

## Revelation 16 (WEB):

<sup>1</sup> I heard a loud voice out of the temple, saying to the seven angels, “Go and pour out the seven bowls of the wrath of God on the earth!”

<sup>2</sup> The first went, and poured out his bowl into the earth, and it became a harmful and evil sore on the people who had the mark of the beast, and who worshiped his image.

<sup>3</sup> The second angel poured out his bowl into the sea, and it became blood as of a dead man. Every living thing in the sea died.

<sup>4</sup> The third poured out his bowl into the rivers and springs of water, and they became blood. <sup>5</sup> I heard the angel of the waters saying, “You are righteous, who are and who were, O Holy One, because you have judged these things. <sup>6</sup> For they poured out the blood of saints and prophets, and you have given them blood to drink. They deserve this.” <sup>7</sup> I heard the altar saying, “Yes, Lord God, the Almighty, true and righteous are your judgments.”

<sup>8</sup> The fourth poured out his bowl on the sun, and it was given to him to scorch men with fire. <sup>9</sup> People were scorched with great heat, and people blasphemed the name of God who has the power over these plagues. They didn’t repent and give him glory.

<sup>10</sup> The fifth poured out his bowl on the throne of the beast, and his kingdom was darkened. They gnawed their tongues because of the pain, <sup>11</sup> and they blasphemed the God of heaven because of their pains and their sores. They still didn’t repent of their works.

<sup>12</sup> The sixth poured out his bowl on the great river, the Euphrates. Its water was dried up, that the way might be prepared for the kings that come from the sunrise. <sup>13</sup> I saw coming out of the mouth of the dragon, and out of the mouth of the beast, and out of the mouth of the false prophet, three unclean spirits, something like frogs; <sup>14</sup> for they are spirits of demons, performing signs; which go out to the kings of the whole inhabited earth, to gather them together for the war of that great day of God, the Almighty.

<sup>15</sup> “Behold, I come like a thief. Blessed is he who watches, and keeps his clothes, so that he doesn’t walk naked, and they see his shame.” <sup>16</sup> He gathered them together into the place which is called in Hebrew, “Megiddo”.

<sup>17</sup> The seventh poured out his bowl into the air. A loud voice came out of the temple of heaven, from the throne, saying, “It is done!” <sup>18</sup> There were lightnings, sounds, and thunders; and there was a great earthquake, such as has not happened since there were men on the earth, so great an earthquake, and so mighty. <sup>19</sup> The great city was divided into three parts, and the cities of the nations fell. Babylon the great was remembered in the sight of God, to give to her the cup of the wine of the fierceness of his wrath. <sup>20</sup> Every island fled away, and the mountains were not found. <sup>21</sup> Great hailstones, about the weight of a talent, came down out of the sky on people. People blasphemed God because of the plague of the hail, for this plague is exceedingly severe.

**Revelation 16:1-11** Refer to the first five “bowls of the anger of God.” The time frame for this is the 45 day period – Because the “two witnesses” are joined in heaven (Revelation 15:2) and Revelation 16:12 seems to explain events just before [Michael](#) stands up in judicial power. Just as Moses performed miracles similar to these, most of these can be literal. The “great crowd” will be protected. Notice how many do not repent although they see miracles – It is like Pharaoh in Moses day. It would be the unrepentant who would gather together to fight Michael in “the war of the great day of God the Almighty”- see comments for Revelation 16:14b; 16:16.

**Revelation 16:10** “And the fifth one poured out his bowl upon the throne of the wild beast. And its kingdom became darkened, and they began to gnaw their tongues for [their] pain.” This term “darkened” is defined by *Vine’s Expository Dictionary of Biblical Words* (1984) page 145 as: “to darken,” is used (a) of the heavenly bodies, Revelation 9:2; 16:10”. This is most likely literal.

**Revelation 16:12** “And the sixth one poured out his bowl upon the great river Euphrates, and its water was dried up, that the way might be prepared for the kings from the rising of the sun.” // “the kings from the rising of the sun” would denote those new kings with Jesus. We also see Babylon’s water dried up – her defenses are gone. In this case, it seems that Babylon’s organization is destroyed by man because God put it into their hearts.

**Revelation 16:13-16** This “Har-Magedon” is a literal and righteous war between Jesus himself and any who have not submitted or repented. This takes place during the 45 day period after Michael stands up. Notice that in verses 14 and 16, they are gathered (or prepared themselves) “to the war” – This “war” does not happen until the seventh angel pours out his bowl of the anger of God. – Compare Psalms 2:1-3

**Revelation 16:14b** An alternate rendering from the *EMPAHTIC DIAGLOTT* – as it is directly from the Greek language: “... to-gather-together them for the war of-the day of-that of-the great of-the God of-the almighty.” (hyphens have been added – I recommend seeing this in the publication so one can understand it more clearly – I have attempted to type it in as it is in the book, but it is not “perfectly possible” due to keyboard restrictions.

**Revelation 16:17** “...It has come to pass!” This may denote that Satan finally lost all his authority in heaven and on earth by him being bound and his political element “dashed to pieces” (Genesis 3:15 (because I believe Jehovah destroys Satan himself))

**Revelation 16:19** “... and Babylon the Great was remembered in the sight of God, to give her the cup of the wine of the anger of his wrath.” – It seems that although the organization of Babylon the Great was destroyed by the people (God put it in their minds to do that. Plus, it was the financial gain that people were going to miss as they saw her destroyed – not the people), many of her “former” members remain to be judged by Jesus to fully complete the destruction of the harlot. Time will tell.

## Revelation 17 (WEB):

17 One of the seven angels who had the seven bowls came and spoke with me, saying, “Come here. I will show you the judgment of the great prostitute who sits on many waters, <sup>2</sup> with whom the kings of the earth committed sexual immorality. Those who dwell in the earth were made drunken with the wine of her sexual immorality.” <sup>3</sup> He carried me away in the Spirit into a wilderness. I saw a woman sitting on a scarlet-colored beast, full of blasphemous names, having seven heads and ten horns. <sup>4</sup> The woman was dressed in purple and scarlet, and decked with gold and precious stones and pearls, having in her hand a golden cup full of abominations and the impurities of the sexual immorality of the earth. <sup>5</sup> And on her forehead a name was written, “MYSTERY, BABYLON THE GREAT, THE MOTHER OF THE PROSTITUTES AND OF THE ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH.” <sup>6</sup> I saw the woman drunken with the blood of the saints, and with the blood of the martyrs of Jesus. When I saw her, I wondered with great amazement. <sup>7</sup> The angel said to me, “Why do you wonder? I will tell you the mystery of the woman, and of the beast that carries her, which has the seven heads and the ten horns. <sup>8</sup> The beast that you saw was, and is not; and is about to come up out of the abyss and to go into destruction. Those who dwell on the earth and whose names have not been written in the book of life from the foundation of the world will marvel when they see that the beast was, and is not, and shall be present. <sup>[a]</sup> <sup>9</sup> Here is the mind that has wisdom. The seven heads are seven mountains on which the woman sits. <sup>10</sup> They are seven kings. Five have fallen, the one is, the other has not yet come. When he comes, he must continue a little while. <sup>11</sup> The beast that was, and is not, is himself also an eighth, and is of the seven; and he goes to destruction. <sup>12</sup> The ten horns that you saw are ten kings who have received no kingdom as yet, but they receive authority as kings with the beast for one hour. <sup>13</sup> These have one mind, and they give their power and authority to the beast. <sup>14</sup> These will war against the Lamb, and the Lamb will overcome them, for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings, and those who are with him are called chosen and faithful.” <sup>15</sup> He said to me, “The waters which you saw, where the prostitute sits, are peoples, multitudes, nations, and languages. <sup>16</sup> The ten horns which you saw, and the beast, these will hate the prostitute, will make her desolate, will strip her naked, will eat her flesh, and will burn her utterly with fire. <sup>17</sup> For God has put in their hearts to do what he has in mind, to be of one mind, and to give their kingdom to the beast, until the words of God should be accomplished. <sup>18</sup> The woman whom you saw is the great city, which reigns over the kings of the earth.”

### Revelation 17:1-6 Identifying “Babylon the Great” – Compare Jeremiah 51:57

To identify the “wild beast” in Revelation 17:

**Revelation 17:8** An important clue is that “their names have not been written upon the scroll of life” is similar and most likely the same scroll mentioned at Revelation 13:8 and the same beast. Another important clue is to the time period that this descending and ascending takes place: “those who dwell on the earth will wonder admiringly, but their names have not been written upon the scroll of life from the founding of the world.” “Those who dwell on the earth” are

shown not to have their names written on this scroll of life. The time period of this “scroll” is given as “from the founding of the world”- And it continues into the time period of the vision which is when this beast goes “off into destruction.” So, the time period for “those who dwell on the earth” covers a long period of time. // This also shows the love of Jehovah’s arranging for Jesus’ sacrifice and the “two groups of” sacrifices of his holy people to pronounce certain judgment against Satan’s rulership – so that – “those who dwell on the earth” have an opportunity to have their names written in the “scroll of life” – See Jehovah’s rulership.

**Revelation 17:8a** “The wild beast that you saw was, but is not, and yet is about to ascend out of the abyss, and it is to go off into destruction...” This wild beast is the political powers that Satan uses in both time periods to “kill” Jehovah’s holy people. That is, back in the first century when Jerusalem was destroyed, then it gradually went into “the abyss” (Daniel 11:19,20 Rome’s uneventful demise – But in the time of the writing of Revelation, the king of the north (Rome – the political power Satan used) had already done most of its work by scattering Jehovah’s people and destroying Jerusalem and putting many to test. Gradually, Rome faded away. But the appearance of the “beast” in this vision – in the stream of time – is most important) This beast ascends out of the abyss by receiving authority over Jehovah’s holy people for a second time (Remember, concerning the first time, when Jesus told Simon that “Satan has demanded to have YOU men to sift YOU as wheat” (Luke 22:31)) – This occurs when Jerusalem is destroyed (or conquered) by the king of the north again (Daniel 11:31)

**Revelation 17:10-11** “And there are seven kings: five have fallen, one is, the other has not yet arrived, but when he does arrive, he must remain a short while. And the wild beast that was but is not, it is also itself an eighth [king], but springs from the seven, and it goes off into destruction”. The identification of the beast is done so we will attempt to identify these kings. I agree with the illustration in the *Revelation Its Grand Climax At Hand* book on page 252 that shows “The Succession of Seven World Powers” as being Egypt, Assyria, Babylon, Medo-Persia, Greece, Rome, and Anglo-America. I believe the phrase “but springs from the seven” can be translated “but owes its existence to the seven.” – Ref. footnote. This succession of world powers agrees with the “immense image” at Daniel 2.

**Revelation 17:12-14** “And the ten horns that you saw mean ten kings, who have not yet received a kingdom, but they do receive authority as kings one hour with the wild beast. These have one thought, and so they give their power and authority to the wild beast. These will battle with the lamb, but, because he is Lord of lords and King of kings, the Lamb will conquer them. Also, those called and chosen and faithful with him [will do so].”

Revelation 17:12 The phrase “ten kings” seems to indicate a completeness of the kings of the earth. But who knows? Things become clearer as time goes on.

Revelation 17:12 The phrase “one hour” seems to indicate a brief time.

Revelation 17:13 The phrase “one thought” is generally defined in verse 14; to “battle with the Lamb.” This is when Michael stands up and the remaining ones of the bride class are gathered and brought “up” with their other brothers.

Revelation 17:14 The phrase “conquer them” does not mean Jesus destroying his enemies. Rather God’s holy people are “killed” by Satan’s kingdom in order to conquer it – as Jesus did. – See Revelation chapters 2 and 3 comments; Revelation 3:21; 6:11; 11:7; 12:17; 13:5,7,15; 14:12,13; Daniel 7:21 (concerning the king of the north’s actions for our near future); Matthew 25:40 comments. This is during the three and a half year time period. This should not be confused with “Har-Mageddon” at Revelation 16:16 or Revelation 19:19.

**Revelation 17:16** shows us how the nations turn and “completely” destroy the harlot.

**Revelation 17:17** This happens during the 45 days of repentance.

**Revelation 18 (WEB):**

**18** After these things, I saw another angel coming down out of the sky, having great authority. The earth was illuminated with his glory. <sup>2</sup> He cried with a mighty voice, saying, “Fallen, fallen is Babylon the great, and she has become a habitation of demons, a prison of every unclean spirit, and a prison of every unclean and hateful bird! <sup>3</sup> For all the nations have drunk of the wine of the wrath of her sexual immorality, the kings of the earth committed sexual immorality with her, and the merchants of the earth grew rich from the abundance of her luxury.”

<sup>4</sup> I heard another voice from heaven, saying, “Come out of her, my people, that you have no participation in her sins, and that you don’t receive of her plagues, <sup>5</sup> for her sins have reached to the sky, and God has remembered her iniquities. <sup>6</sup> Return to her just as she returned, and repay her double as she did, and according to her works. In the cup which she mixed, mix to her double. <sup>7</sup> However much she glorified herself, and grew wanton, so much give her of torment and mourning. For she says in her heart, ‘I sit a queen, and am no widow, and will in no way see mourning.’ <sup>8</sup> Therefore in one day her plagues will come: death, mourning, and famine; and she will be utterly burned with fire; for the Lord God who has judged her is strong. <sup>9</sup> The kings of the earth who committed sexual immorality and lived wantonly with her will weep and wail over her, when they look at the smoke of her burning, <sup>10</sup> standing far away for the fear of her torment, saying, ‘Woe, woe, the great city, Babylon, the strong city! For your judgment has come in one hour.’ <sup>11</sup> The merchants of the earth weep and mourn over her, for no one buys their merchandise any more: <sup>12</sup> merchandise of gold, silver, precious stones, pearls, fine linen, purple, silk, scarlet, all expensive wood, every vessel of ivory, every vessel made of most precious wood, and of brass, and iron, and marble; <sup>13</sup> and cinnamon, incense, perfume, frankincense, wine, olive oil, fine flour, wheat, sheep, horses, chariots, and people’s bodies and souls. <sup>14</sup> The fruits which your soul lusted after have been lost to you. All things that were dainty and sumptuous have perished from you, and you will find them no more at all. <sup>15</sup> The merchants of these things, who were made rich by her, will stand far away for the fear of her torment, weeping and mourning, <sup>16</sup> saying, ‘Woe, woe, the great city, she who was dressed in fine linen, purple, and scarlet, and decked with gold and precious stones and pearls! <sup>17</sup> For in an hour such great riches are made desolate.’ Every



ship master, and everyone who sails anywhere, and mariners, and as many as gain their living by sea, stood far away, <sup>18</sup> and cried out as they looked at the smoke of her burning, saying, ‘What is like the great city?’ <sup>19</sup> They cast dust on their heads, and cried, weeping and mourning, saying, ‘Woe, woe, the great city, in which all who had their ships in the sea were made rich by reason of her great wealth!’ For she is made desolate in one hour.

<sup>20</sup> “Rejoice over her, O heaven, you saints, apostles, and prophets; for God has judged your judgment on her.” <sup>21</sup> A mighty angel took up a stone like a great millstone and cast it into the sea, saying, “Thus with violence will Babylon, the great city, be thrown down, and will be found no more at all. <sup>22</sup> The voice of harpists, minstrels, flute players, and trumpeters will be heard no more at all in you. No craftsman, of whatever craft, will be found any more at all in you. The sound of a mill will be heard no more at all in you. <sup>23</sup> The light of a lamp will shine no more at all in you. The voice of the bridegroom and of the bride will be heard no more at all in you; for your merchants were the princes of the earth; for with your sorcery all the nations were deceived. <sup>24</sup> In her was found the blood of prophets and of saints, and of all who have been slain on the earth.”

**Revelation 18:1-8** Describes the harlot and her demise as happening “in one day.” This also happens during the 45-day period. This harlot is the primary instrument of Satan to keep people from learning about or serving Jehovah properly – That is most likely why there is so much rejoicing when she is destroyed.

**Revelation 18:4-8** describes the basic information that the nations will find out when they realize that they just “killed” God’s holy people. They will “go crazy” (my terminology) in destroying the harlot so as not “to receive part of her plagues” (vs.4). This also happens during the 45-day period. See Revelation 16:17-21 comments.

**Revelation 18:9-19** The different groups of people all stand at a distance when the harlot is destroyed because; “because Jehovah God, who judged her, is strong.” (vs.8)

**Revelation 18:21** “And a strong angel lifted up a stone like a great millstone and hurled it into the sea, saying: “Thus with a swift pitch will Babylon the great city be hurled down, and she will never be found again.” – See Jeremiah 51:63,64

### **Revelation 19 (WEB):**

**19** After these things I heard something like a loud voice of a great multitude in heaven, saying, “Hallelujah! Salvation, power, and glory belong to our God; <sup>2</sup> for his judgments are true and righteous. For he has judged the great prostitute, who corrupted the earth with her sexual immorality, and he has avenged the blood of his servants at her hand.”

<sup>3</sup> A second said, “Hallelujah! Her smoke goes up forever and ever.” <sup>4</sup> The twenty-four elders and the four living creatures fell down and worshiped God who sits on the throne, saying, “Amen! Hallelujah!”

<sup>5</sup> A voice came from the throne, saying, “Give praise to our God, all you his servants, you who fear him, the small and the great!”

<sup>6</sup> I heard something like the voice of a great multitude, and like the voice of many waters, and like the voice of mighty thunders, saying, “Hallelujah! For the Lord our God, the Almighty, reigns! <sup>7</sup> Let’s rejoice and be exceedingly glad, and let’s give the glory to him. For the wedding of the Lamb has come, and his wife has made herself ready.” <sup>8</sup> It was given to her that she would array herself in bright, pure, fine linen: for the fine linen is the righteous acts of the saints.

<sup>9</sup> He said to me, “Write, ‘Blessed are those who are invited to the wedding supper of the Lamb.’” He said to me, “These are true words of God.”

<sup>10</sup> I fell down before his feet to worship him. He said to me, “Look! Don’t do it! I am a fellow bondservant with you and with your brothers who hold the testimony of Jesus. Worship God, for the testimony of Jesus is the Spirit of Prophecy.”

<sup>11</sup> I saw the heaven opened, and behold, a white horse, and he who sat on it is called Faithful and True. In righteousness he judges and makes war. <sup>12</sup> His eyes are a flame of fire, and on his head are many crowns. He has names written and a name written which no one knows but he himself. <sup>13</sup> He is clothed in a garment sprinkled with blood. His name is called “The Word of God.” <sup>14</sup> The armies which are in heaven followed him on white horses, clothed in white, pure, fine linen. <sup>15</sup> Out of his mouth proceeds a sharp, double-edged sword, that with it he should strike the nations. He will rule them with an iron rod. [Psalm 2:9](#) He treads the wine press of the fierceness of the wrath of God, the Almighty. <sup>16</sup> He has on his garment and on his thigh a name written, “KING OF KINGS, AND LORD OF LORDS.”

<sup>17</sup> I saw an angel standing in the sun. He cried with a loud voice, saying to all the birds that fly in the sky, “Come! Be gathered together to the great supper of God,<sup>[a]</sup> <sup>18</sup> that you may eat the flesh of kings, the flesh of captains, the flesh of mighty men, and the flesh of horses and of those who sit on them, and the flesh of all men, both free and slave, small and great.” <sup>19</sup> I saw the beast, and the kings of the earth, and their armies, gathered together to make war against him who sat on the horse, and against his army. <sup>20</sup> The beast was taken, and with him the false prophet who worked the signs in his sight, with which he deceived those who had received the mark of the beast and those who worshiped his image. These two were thrown alive into the lake of fire that burns with sulfur. <sup>21</sup> The rest were killed with the sword of him who sat on the horse, the sword which came out of his mouth. So all the birds were filled with their flesh.

**Revelation 19:2b** “For he has executed judgment upon the great harlot who corrupted the earth with her fornication, and he has avenged the blood of his slaves at her hand.” Compare this “corrupted the earth” with Revelation 11:18 footnote “corrupting through.”

**Revelation 19:6** “a great crowd” – See also Revelation 7:9-10, 13-17.

**Revelation 19:11** This “white horse” and its rider is Jesus. This is most likely not the white horse of the “four horsemen” – see comments of Revelation 6:1-8.

**Revelation 19:11-21** (See also Revelation 14:14-21; 11:16-18) Michael “stands up” (Daniel 12:1,2).

**Revelation 19:15b** “He treads too the winepress of the anger of the wrath of God the Almighty.”  
Comment: I personally think the “too” in this verse does not belong and it makes things not so clear. The *Emphatic Diaglott* words it this way; “...and He treads the WINEPRESS of the WINE of the INDIGNATION of the WRATH of GOD.” This “winepress” also reminds me of the gathering (or separating) work – See Revelation 14:14-20 comments.

**Revelation 19:17-21** describe “the great evening meal of God” resulting from Jesus destroying any who oppose him. This includes the wild beast (Revelation 17), false prophet (Revelation 13:12 also known as the king of the south for our time (Daniel 11), “those who received the mark of the wild beast and those who render worship to its image” – See Revelation 13 comments. This likely begins right away in the “1,336” day period. However, it could be included or included entirely in the 45 day period where the nations destroy the symbolic Babylon the Great. It’s a gray area. Time will tell. – See Revelation 16:13-16 comments.

### **Revelation 20 (WEB):**

**20** I saw an angel coming down out of heaven, having the key of the abyss and a great chain in his hand. <sup>2</sup> He seized the dragon, the old serpent, which is the devil and Satan, who deceives the whole inhabited earth, and bound him for a thousand years, <sup>3</sup> and cast him into the abyss, and shut it, and sealed it over him, that he should deceive the nations no more, until the thousand years were finished. After this, he must be freed for a short time. <sup>4</sup> I saw thrones, and they sat on them, and judgment was given to them. I saw the souls of those who had been beheaded for the testimony of Jesus, and for the word of God, and such as didn’t worship the beast nor his image, and didn’t receive the mark on their forehead and on their hand. They lived and reigned with Christ for a thousand years. <sup>5</sup> The rest of the dead didn’t live until the thousand years were finished. This is the first resurrection. <sup>6</sup> Blessed and holy is he who has part in the first resurrection. Over these, the second death has no power, but they will be priests of God and of Christ, and will reign with him one thousand years.

<sup>7</sup> And after the thousand years, Satan will be released from his prison, <sup>8</sup> and he will come out to deceive the nations which are in the four corners of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together to the war; the number of whom is as the sand of the sea. <sup>9</sup> They went up over the width of the earth, and surrounded the camp of the saints, and the beloved city. Fire came down out of heaven from God and devoured them. <sup>10</sup> The devil who deceived them was thrown into the lake of fire and sulfur, where the beast and the false prophet are also. They will be tormented day and night forever and ever.

<sup>11</sup> I saw a great white throne, and him who sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away. There was found no place for them. <sup>12</sup> I saw the dead, the great and the small, standing before the throne, and they opened books. Another book was opened, which is the book of life. The dead were judged out of the things which were written in the books, according to their works. <sup>13</sup> The sea gave up the dead who were in it. Death

and Hades gave up the dead who were in them. They were judged, each one according to his works. <sup>14</sup> Death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. This is the second death, the lake of fire. <sup>15</sup> If anyone was not found written in the book of life, he was cast into the lake of fire.



**Revelation 20:1-3** “Satan” is “bound ... for a thousand years.” – This is most likely executed immediately before the events of Revelation 19:17-21. This assumption is based upon the principle that Jesus mentioned at Matthew 12:29 (Strong man). See Isaiah 24:21-23



**Revelation 20:4a** “And I saw thrones, and there were those who sat down on them, and power of judging was given them.” (See also Revelation 14:1-5; 7:3-8 comments)

**Revelation 20:4b** “Yes, I saw the souls of those executed with the ax for the witness they bore to Jesus and for speaking about God,” -This seems to be referring to the first group of the “two witnesses” – Compare Revelation 11:1

**Revelation 20:4b** “...and those who had worshiped neither the wild beast nor its image and who had not received the mark upon their forehead and upon their hand.” – This seems to be referring to the second group of the “two witnesses” – See Revelation chapters 11 and 13. Esp. Revelation 11:2,3. Further comments: It appears – but does not mean it is – that a common general “testing” of each group is listed.

**Revelation 20:4c** “And they came to life and ruled as kings with the Christ for a thousand years.” – Although they lived in different time periods and “came to life” at different times, they rule as kings at the same time. – See Revelation 11

**Revelation 20:5a** “(The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were ended.)” – This seems to be describing those on earth that still need to be fully tested when Satan is unbound. This is an unusual verse because it does not seem to fit. Could it be spurious? Time will tell. At least it is not critical.

**Revelation 20:5b** “This is the first resurrection.” – This seems to be referring to the “coming to life” or “standing up” (Ref. footnote) of the proven faithful of those who are to rule with Jesus in verse 20:4a, b.

**Revelation 20:6** “Happy and holy is anyone having part in the first resurrection...” Although anyone will be happy to make it to this point in time (after the initial cleansing mentioned at Revelation 19:15b-21), this reminds me of Daniel 12:12.

**Revelation 20:8** “... Gog and Maygog.”- See the description of the battle between Jehovah and Satan with “Gog and Maygog” at Ezekiel 38 thru 39:20

**Revelation 20:8** This battle is described as “the war” and happens after the 1000-year reign of Jesus after he hands the kingdom over to his Father.

**Revelation 20:11-15** This seems to be after “the war” and is similar to after the three and a half year time period in that God’s people have been tested. It appears that in both cases, judging happens, and it is based upon the stand people took during the “tribulation” period. However, in this case, it is Jehovah himself that does the judging and executing of Satan and his crowd.

**Revelation 21(WEB):**

**21** I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth have passed away, and the sea is no more. <sup>2</sup> I saw the holy city, New Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God, prepared like a bride adorned for her husband. <sup>3</sup> I heard a loud voice out of heaven saying, “Behold, God’s dwelling is with people, and he will dwell with them, and they will be his people, and God himself will be with them as their

God. <sup>4</sup> He will wipe away every tear from their eyes. Death will be no more; neither will there be mourning, nor crying, nor pain, any more. The first things have passed away.”

<sup>5</sup> He who sits on the throne said, “Behold, I am making all things new.” He said, “Write, for these words of God are faithful and true.” <sup>6</sup> He said to me, “I am the Alpha and the Omega, the Beginning and the End. I will give freely to him who is thirsty from the spring of the water of life. <sup>7</sup> He who overcomes, I will give him these things. I will be his God, and he will be my son. <sup>8</sup> But for the cowardly, unbelieving, sinners, abominable, murderers, sexually immoral, sorcerers, idolaters, and all liars, their part is in the lake that burns with fire and sulfur, which is the second death.”

<sup>9</sup> One of the seven angels who had the seven bowls, who were loaded with the seven last plagues came, and he spoke with me, saying, “Come here. I will show you the wife, the Lamb’s bride.” <sup>10</sup> He carried me away in the Spirit to a great and high mountain, and showed me the holy city, Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God, <sup>11</sup> having the glory of God. Her light was like a most precious stone, as if it were a jasper stone, clear as crystal; <sup>12</sup> having a great and high wall; having twelve gates, and at the gates twelve angels; and names written on them, which are the names of the twelve tribes of the children of Israel. <sup>13</sup> On the east were three gates; and on the north three gates; and on the south three gates; and on the west three gates. <sup>14</sup> The wall of the city had twelve foundations, and on them twelve names of the twelve Apostles of the Lamb. <sup>15</sup> He who spoke with me had for a measure a golden reed to measure the city, its gates, and its walls. <sup>16</sup> The city is square, and its length is as great as its width. He measured the city with the reed, twelve thousand twelve stadia. Its length, width, and height are equal. <sup>17</sup> Its wall is one hundred forty-four cubits, by the measure of a man, that is, of an angel. <sup>18</sup> The construction of its wall was jasper. The city was pure gold, like pure glass. <sup>19</sup> The foundations of the city’s wall were adorned with all kinds of precious stones. The first foundation was jasper; the second, sapphire; the third, chalcedony; the fourth, emerald; <sup>20</sup> the fifth, sardonyx; the sixth, sardius; the seventh, chrysolite; the eighth, beryl; the ninth, topaz; the tenth, chrysoprase; the eleventh, jacinth; and the twelfth, amethyst. <sup>21</sup> The twelve gates were twelve pearls. Each one of the gates was made of one pearl. The street of the city was pure gold, like transparent glass. <sup>22</sup> I saw no temple in it, for the Lord God, the Almighty, and the Lamb, are its temple. <sup>23</sup> The city has no need for the sun or moon to shine, for the very glory of God illuminated it, and its lamp is the Lamb. <sup>24</sup> The nations will walk in its light. The kings of the earth bring the glory and honor of the nations into it. <sup>25</sup> Its gates will in no way be shut by day (for there will be no night there), <sup>26</sup> and they shall bring the glory and the honor of the nations into it so that they may enter. <sup>27</sup> There will in no way enter into it anything profane, or one who causes an abomination or a lie, but only those who are written in the Lamb’s book of life.

**Revelation 21:1-8** Describes conditions during the 1000-year reign of Jesus and what the “conquering” ones will inherit. The actual “conquering” happens before they rule with Jesus when they are fully tested – See Revelation 17:14 comments.



**Revelation 21:9-27** Describes “the bride, the Lamb’s wife” – See Isaiah 54:5,6,11-14; 62:4,5

**Revelation 21:16b-17a** “And he measured the city with the reed, twelve thousand furlongs; its length and breadth and height are equal. Also, he measured its wall, one hundred and forty-four cubits”

Notice a marked difference between this “holy city of Jerusalem” and the one mentioned in Revelation 11:1-3. The one in Revelation 11:1-3 has its “courtyard that is outside the temple ... cast it clear out and do not measure it, because it has been given to the nations, and they will trample the holy city underfoot for forty-two months.” But the one mentioned in Revelation 21:15,16 does get its city measured; “... that he might measure the city and its gates and its wall. And the city lies foursquare, and its length is as great as its breadth...”

It is also interesting how New Jerusalem is not prepared “as a bride” – that is – ready to be married to the Lamb, until she can be fully measured. Her “wall” had been “measured” (denoting being presented to Jehovah and accepted and her sins forgiven (could be referring to any sins against Jehovah (like un-pure worship whether knowingly or not)) – Zechariah 3:1-5) in Revelation 11:1-3 but she was not ready for marriage, yet. Her “courtyard” must be (“refined” or) “straightened out” (See Malachi 4:5,6 comments) so it can be measured. – This primarily happens during the three-and-a-half-year tribulation period on earth. During this tribulation period, it is this heavenly “unprepared” bride that flees to the wilderness to wait to become fully prepared. She becomes fully prepared once her “companions” or “courtyard” can be measured. It is at this time that Revelation 21:2 takes place; “I saw also the holy city, New Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God and prepared as a bride adorned for her husband.”

**Revelation 21:22-27** Shows how true worship is continuous – the gates are not even closed. However, the wicked “will in no way enter into it”. Compare Isaiah 60:11,12,18-21; Zechariah 14:7-9; Revelation 22:1-5. See Daniel 8:11,12,13 and 1 Chronicles 23:31 (quoted in Daniel 8:11 comments) about (“the continuous [sacrifice]”)

**Revelation 22 (WEB):**

**22** He showed me a river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding out of the throne of God and of the Lamb, <sup>2</sup> in the middle of its street. On this side of the river and on that was the tree of life, bearing twelve kinds of fruits, yielding its fruit every month. The leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations. <sup>3</sup> There will be no curse any more. The throne of God and of the Lamb will be in it, and his servants will serve him. <sup>4</sup> They will see his face, and his name will be on their foreheads. <sup>5</sup> There will be no night, and they need no lamp light or sun light; for the Lord God will illuminate them. They will reign forever and ever.

<sup>6</sup> He said to me, “These words are faithful and true. The Lord God of the spirits of the prophets sent his angel to show to his bondservants the things which must happen soon.”

<sup>7</sup> “Behold, I come quickly. Blessed is he who keeps the words of the prophecy of this book.”

<sup>8</sup> Now I, John, am the one who heard and saw these things. When I heard and saw, I fell down to worship before the feet of the angel who had shown me these things. <sup>9</sup> He said to me, “See you don’t do it! I am a fellow bondservant with you and with your brothers, the prophets, and with those who keep the words of this book. Worship God.” <sup>10</sup> He said to me, “Don’t seal up the words of the prophecy of this book, for the time is at hand. <sup>11</sup> He who acts unjustly, let him act unjustly still. He who is filthy, let him be filthy still. He who is righteous, let him do righteousness still. He who is holy, let him be holy still.”

<sup>12</sup> “Behold, I come quickly. My reward is with me, to repay to each man according to his work. <sup>13</sup> I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. <sup>14</sup> Blessed are those who do his commandments, that they may have the right to the tree of life, and may enter in by the gates into the city. <sup>15</sup> Outside are the dogs, the sorcerers, the sexually immoral, the murderers, the idolaters, and everyone who loves and practices falsehood. <sup>16</sup> I, Jesus, have sent my angel to testify these things to you for the assemblies. I am the root and the offspring of David, the Bright and Morning Star.”

<sup>17</sup> The Spirit and the bride say, “Come!” He who hears, let him say, “Come!” He who is thirsty, let him come. He who desires, let him take the water of life freely. <sup>18</sup> I testify to everyone who hears the words of the prophecy of this book, if anyone adds to them, may God add to him the plagues which are written in this book. <sup>19</sup> If anyone takes away from the words of the book of this prophecy, may God take away his part from the tree of life, and out of the holy city, which are written in this book. <sup>20</sup> **He who testifies these things says, “Yes, I come quickly.”**

**Amen! Yes, come, Lord Jesus.**

<sup>21</sup> The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ be with all the saints. Amen.

**Revelation 22:2** Shows us two sides of a river producing fruit for the “curing of the nations”. I believe these represent the “two witnesses” united and rendering blessings to the nations (of course, this is during the 1,000-year reign of God’s Son). See Revelation 6:9-11 comments.

**Revelation 22:3-5** Shows us that the spiritual light of pure worship is continuous – compare Revelation 21:22-27 comments.

**Revelation 22:6,7** “And he said to me: “These words are faithful and true; yes, Jehovah the God of the inspired expressions of the prophets sent his angel forth to show his slaves the things that must shortly take place. And, look! I am coming quickly. Happy is anyone observing the words of the prophesy of this scroll.” I honestly think that now I am able to help other servants of Jehovah to understand Revelation much more clearly including understanding the urgent need to make things straight. (Malachi 3:4,5) The EMPHASIZED BIBLE translates it this way; “And he said unto me- ||These words|| are faithful and true; and ||the Lord the God of the spirits of the prophets|| hath sent his messenger to point out unto his servants the things which must needs come to pass with speed. And- Lo! I come speedily! |Happy| is he that keepeth the words of the prophesy of this scroll.” // Also compare Malachi 3:1

**Revelation 22:6,20 EMPHATIC DIAGLOTT:** “And he said to me, “These WORDS are faithful and true; and the Lord GOD of the SPIRITS of the PROPHETS sent his ANGEL to show to his SERVANTS what it is necessary to have done speedily.”; “HE who TESTIFIES these things says, “Yes, I am coming speedily.” Amen! Come! Lord Jesus.”

**Revelation 22:20** “He that bears witness of these things says, ‘Yes; I am coming quickly.’” – Along with (Revelation 22:7), by deductive reasoning (and with hardly the ability to type (Wow!)), **JESUS IS COMING QUICKLY!** // According to the ABINGDON’S *STRONG’S EXHAUSTIVE CONCORDANCE OF THE BIBLE*, the term “bears witness” is derived from the Greek word numbered as 3140 which basically means to give evidence, to be a witness, testify, bear record, bear witness, give witness, obtain witness.

**Personal comments:** *For those who do not think Revelation is inspired: In my opinion, it certainly is beyond doubt, inspired. I have never read something so well put together – never. It draws on prophesy throughout the inspired scriptures and puts it together. In many ways, it complements and “finishes” many prophecies for our day. Only with unadulterated understanding of other inspired scriptures can it be understood. This would lend its understanding to true lovers of Jehovah – those seeking His righteousness – not their own or their father’s. In my opinion and I believe it to be true, the book of Revelation could only have been created by a “genius of geniuses” – which is far above normal human ability.*

## **Zechariah**

Once you understand Malachi, Daniel and the timelines along with Revelation, all the rest of the prophesies fall into place. It is like having a key – If you don't have the right one, the door of understanding is not open to you. However, it opens in a great way, when you do understand them.

**Zechariah 3** Takes us into the heavenly realm at a time when Satan is resisting the acceptance of the first of the two witnesses (Revelation 6:9-11) by Jehovah. Jehovah accepts them and forgives their error. It is most likely right after this forgiving, that Satan is “hurled to the earth” that is, his authority is now restricted to the earth. The time period of Jesus presenting the first of the two witnesses for acceptance including their acceptance by Jehovah most likely happens just before Satan is hurled to the earth. And the action of Satan's authority being restricted to the earth would coincide with the action of the “arms” of the king of the north (of our day) starting to act against Jerusalem. There is no way, that I know of to indicate exactly when Jesus would present the first group to Jehovah for acceptance. But Jehovah forgiving them and accepting them gets Satan very angry. I wouldn't be surprised if this “presenting” started at the time of the lunar eclipse of 12/21 and may not be complete for a little while. It can also be speculated that the “presenting” could be done in literal hours before the 1,290-day period. Both statements are equally valid – Time will tell. I just tend to go with the first idea because it is a way of telling time for events that could be deemed universal. One cannot tell when the 1,290-day period starts (at the earliest) until Jerusalem is put back into a “wrong” condition (because you would subtract 30 days from the “conquering” of Jerusalem) – Similar in principle to what it was before the “6 day war” in June of 1967. The other brothers of the “two witnesses” are left on earth for a cleansing (or straightening) for 3.5 years because their worship is “crooked” and cannot be measured. We are also introduced to Jehovah's servant named “Sprout!” who is talked about more in chapter 6:12-14. Compare Zechariah 5:5-9

**Zechariah 3:7** “This is what Jehovah of armies has said, ‘If it is in my ways that you will walk, and if it is my obligation that you will keep, then also it will be you that will judge my house and also keep my courtyards; and I shall certainly give you free access among these who are standing by.’”

**Zechariah 3:8** “Hear, please, O Joshua the high priest, you and your companions who are sitting before you, for they are men [serving] as portents; for here I am bringing in my servant Sprout!” – See Zechariah 6:12-14; Isaiah 9:6,7; 32:1,2,16-18; Jeremiah 33:15; Revelation 6:11

**Zechariah 3:9**; “For, look! the stone that I have put before Joshua! Upon the one stone there are seven eyes...” – compare Revelation 5:6; “... a lamb... having seven horns and seven eyes...”

**Zechariah 4:11-14** Notice the two “anointed ones”. This is also translated as “sons of the oil” and “sons of princes” (Ref. footnote). These seem to be part of the “two witnesses” mentioned in Revelation 11:3,4.

**Zechariah 5:1-4** Notice verse 2 a huge “flying scroll” – could denote a “written” record of all of man’s bad activities on earth and they have gone free from punishment. (Malachi 4:5,6)

**Zechariah 5:4** Notice “... ‘and it must enter into the house of the thief and into the house of the one making a sworn oath in my name falsely; and it must lodge in the midst of his house and exterminate it and its timbers and its stones.’” This seems to be referring to two different houses. This would correspond with the “two witnesses” at Revelation 11:2,3. But also notice “and exterminate it” – see Revelation 6:9-11

**Zechariah 5:5-9** The description of “the ephah” – to a “measure”. This “ephah” is gradually raised “up between the earth and the heavens” (verse 9)

**Zechariah 5:5-9** The description of “a certain woman sitting in the midst of the ephah. So, he said: “This is wickedness.” And he proceeded to throw her [back] into the midst of the ephah, after which he threw the lead weight upon its mouth.” Notice “[back]” – This is the best guess of the translator, and I can understand why. It is more understood when it is read without the interjected “[back]”. Then it makes it easier to understand that this is actually talking about 2 things: The measurable “ephah” (vs.6) and the “certain woman” (vs.7) called “This is Wickedness” (vs.8) – And then after considering verses 9-11, one can see how this fits in with other prophesy. // The “certain woman” cannot be measured – she is crooked. She is the second of the “two witnesses” described in Revelation 11:1-3 that must endure a period of “sackcloth” because their worship is corrupted. – Compare Isaiah 40:3-5; Ezekiel 43:10,11; Daniel 11:35; Revelation 21:9-21 Also, compare Micah 6:10-13 where the “scrimped ephah measure” is wicked.

**Zechariah 5:9-11** most likely is described at Revelation 12:13-14 where it pictures the “woman” fleeing into the wilderness. – See also Revelation 6:11; 11:2,3; 12:6,14, and comments

**Zechariah 6:12,13** “...” “This is what Jehovah of armies has said: “Here is the man whose name is Sprout. And from his own place he will sprout, and he will certainly build the temple of Jehovah. And he himself will build the temple of Jehovah, and he, for his part, will carry [the] dignity; and he must sit down and rule on his throne, and he must become a priest upon his throne, and the very counsel of peace will prove to be between both of them.” – See Ezekiel 17:22-24 and Zechariah 3:8 comments

**Zechariah 8:11-15** Verse 13,15 show two groups – need to research – Is “Jerusalem” (vs.15) the “” Israel” in verse 13?

**Zechariah 8:20-23** (“.... to soften the face of Jehovah... ten men... will actually take hold of the skirt of a man who is a Jew...”) most likely primarily happens during the [45 day period](#)

**Zechariah 9:12** – See Revelation 6:11

**Zechariah 11:7-17** – note also verses 11-14,17. The religious leaders (“shepherds”) “bought” their way out of Jehovah’s covenant for 30 pieces of silver then they impaled his Son.

**Zechariah 13:2-6** “False prophets to “...pass out of the land. And it must occur [that] in case a man should prophesy anymore, his father and his mother, the ones who caused his birth, must

also say to him, ‘You will not live, because falsehood is what you have spoken in the name of Jehovah.’ And his father and his mother, the ones who caused his birth, must pierce him through because of his prophesying...the prophets will become ashamed...” See Daniel 11:32-35

**Zechariah 13:8,9** “And it must occur in all the land,” is the utterance of Jehovah, “[that] two parts in it are what will be cut off [and] expire; and as for the third [part], it will be left remaining in it. And I shall certainly bring the third [part] through the fire; and I shall actually refine them as in the refining of silver and examine them as in the examining of gold. It for its part, will call upon my name, and I, for my part, will answer it. I will say, ‘It is my people,’ and it, in its turn, will say, ‘Jehovah is my God.’” // The two parts that “expire” are the two groups of the holy ones (see Revelation 6:9-11 comments) and the “third” would be those on the earth out of the nations who would be subjects of the first two parts (Revelation 7:9,10). These parts are further described in 14:2b as two halves and “remaining ones”.

**Zechariah 14:1,2** “Look! There is a day coming, belonging to Jehovah, and the spoil of you will certainly be apportioned out in the midst of you. And I shall certainly gather all the nations against Jerusalem for the war; and the city will actually be captured, and the houses pillaged, and the women themselves will be raped. And half of the city must go forth into the exile; but as for the remaining ones of the people, they will not be cut off from the city. // This is an example of two parts of God’s holy people. -See Revelation 6:9-11; 11:2-4

**Zechariah 14:3-5** “And Jehovah will certainly go forth and war against those nations as in the day of his warring, in the day of fight.... And Jehovah my God will certainly come, all the holy ones being with him.” // Notice that in verses 1,2 Jehovah allows Jerusalem to be captured but by verse five, all the holy ones are with him. This is in agreement with Daniel’s timeline where some of the holy people are rejected by Jehovah but by the end of the approximate three- and half-year time period, Jehovah sees that they have learned to serve him properly and he then accepts them. Keep in mind what Jesus said that it is not he who decides who rules with him, but it is his father.

**Zechariah 14:6** “And it must occur in that day [that] there will prove to be no precious light – things will be congealed.” // This certainly happens on a spiritual level during the approximate three-and-a-half-year period of spiritual famine when Jehovah leaves his people. – See Revelation 11:2-4 and Lamentations 3:42-45

**Zechariah 14:7-9** “And it must become one day that is known as belonging to Jehovah. It will not be day, neither will it be night; and it must occur [that] at evening time it will become light. And it must occur in that day [that] living waters will go forth from Jerusalem, half of them to the eastern sea and half of them to the western sea. In summer and in winter it will occur. And Jehovah must become king over all the earth. In that day Jehovah will prove to be one, and his name one.” // Here we see the similar resemblance of what Revelation describes as the never ending spiritual light available to all during the 1000 year reign – Revelation 21:22-25; 22:1-5

**Zechariah 14:11** “And people will certainly inhabit her; and there will occur no more any banning [to destruction], and Jerusalem must be inhabited in security.” // From the time of Michael standing up, Jehovah’s people are to dwell in security. Daniel 12:1; Revelation 21:2-4



**Zechariah 14:12-14** “And this is what will prove to be the scourge with which Jehovah will scourge all the peoples that will actually do military service against Jerusalem: There will be a rotting away of one’s flesh, while one is standing upon one’s feet; and one’s very eyes will rot away in their sockets, and one’s very tongue will rot away in one’s mouth. (vs.13) “And it must occur in that day [that] confusion from Jehovah will become widespread among them; and they will actually grab hold, each one of the hand of his companion, and his hand will actually come up against the hand of his companion. And Judah itself also will be warring at Jerusalem; and the wealth of all the nations round about will certainly be gathered, gold and silver and garments in excessive abundance.” // Notice the scourge and confusion that Jehovah uses against those who war against him

**Zechariah 14:16-17** “And it must occur [that], as regards everyone who is left remaining out of all the nations that are coming against Jerusalem, they must also go up from year to year to bow down to the King, Jehovah of armies, and to celebrate the festival of the booths. And it must occur that, as regards anyone that does not come up out of the families of the earth to Jerusalem to bow down to the King, Jehovah of armies, even upon them no pouring rain will occur.” // This “no pouring rain” can be both literal and symbolic. Literal could mean literal desert regions where those resisting to serve Jehovah reside. Symbolic in the thought that these people would not receive any (or very little) spiritual blessings from Jehovah – But this is their own decision.

**Zechariah 14:21b** “And there will no more prove to be a Canaanite in the house of Jehovah of armies in that day.” // The term “Canaanite” is interesting. Some render it as “tradesman” (Ref.) or “merchant” (*Rotherham Emphasized Bible*) but I am leaning to defining it to be a false worshipper – not to change the word.

## Zephaniah

**Zephaniah 1:12-18** “And it must occur at that time that I shall carefully search Jerusalem with lamps, and I will give attention to the men who are congealing upon their dregs [and] who are saying in their heart, ‘Jehovah will not do good, and he will not do bad.’ And their wealth must come to be for pillage and their houses for a desolate waste. And they will build houses, but they will not have occupancy; and they will plant vineyards, but they will not drink the wine of them. (vs.14) “The great day of Jehovah is near. It is near, and there is a hurrying [of it] very much. The sound of the day of Jehovah is bitter. There a mighty man is letting out a cry. That day is a day of fury, a day of distress and of anguish, a day of storm and of desolation, a day of darkness and of gloominess, a day of clouds and of thick gloom, a day of horn and of alarm signal, against the fortified cities and against the high corner towers. And I will cause distress to mankind, and they will certainly walk like blind men; because it is against Jehovah that they have sinned. And their blood will actually be poured out like dust, and their bowels like the dung. Neither their silver nor their gold will be able to deliver them in the day of Jehovah’s fury; but by the fire of his zeal the whole earth will be devoured, because he will make an extermination, indeed a terrible one, of all the inhabitants of the earth.”

This will happen unless God’s people straighten their worship to him. Compare Malachi 4:5,6

It is because Jehovah’s people repent that he turns back his anger. Compare Isaiah 1:4,9; 2:10,20,21; 3:24; 9:13-17; 12:1,2; 14:1-7

**Zephaniah 2:1-3** “Gather yourselves together, yes, do the gathering, O nation not paling in shame. Before [the] statute gives birth to [anything], [before the] day has passed by just like chaff, before there comes upon YOU people the burning anger of Jehovah, before there comes upon YOU the day of Jehovah’s anger, seek Jehovah, all YOU meek ones of the earth, who have practiced His own judicial decision. Seek righteousness, seek meekness. Probably YOU may be concealed in the day of Jehovah’s anger.” – Compare Revelation 6:15,16

**Zephaniah 2:9-11** Those who do not repent and/or submit to Jehovah or who continued to deal badly with his people will answer for their actions.

**Zephaniah 3:8,9** Jehovah’s denunciation to the nations – and a “pure language” (literally “a clean lip”) – see vs.13.

**Zephaniah 3:14-20** “.... For I shall make YOU people to be a name and a praise among all the peoples of the earth ...”

## Jonah

It is interesting how the main events in Jonah cover a period of 45 days – From Jonah being in a death-like state in the belly of the fish for three days, his walking to the edge of Nineveh in about 2 days, his walking through Nineveh of one day while proclaiming that the city was to be overthrown in 40 days. That is the message that Jehovah told Jonah to say to the city. Simply put, from the king on down, everyone showed repentance by commanding “... No man and no domestic animal, no herd and no flock, should taste anything at all. None should take food. Even water they should not drink. And let them cover themselves with sackcloth, man and domestic animal; and let them call out to God with strength and come back, each one from his bad way and from the violence that was in their hands. Who is there knowing whether the [true] God may turn back and actually feel regret and turn back from his burning anger, so that we may not perish?” (**Jonah 3:7-9**) (The exact time of walking to the edge of Nineveh – I guess we should hope to make it thru the tribulation so we can ask Jonah himself)

**Jonah 3:10** It is interesting how Jehovah “felt regret” and “he did not cause [it]”. The same opportunity (to show their submission and repentant attitudes) will be made available to nations of peoples during the 45-day period of repentance. Whether they survive “the great day of their wrath” (Revelation 6:17) will be seen.

**Jonah 4**– A lesson can be learned from Jonah’s attitude. Jonah was proclaiming that Nineveh was going to be overthrown but it wasn’t! He was mad that these “one hundred and twenty thousand men who do not at all know the difference between their right hand and their left” were spared. It seems he felt his own personal viewpoint was not executed – so he was very mad. It is that many, many people will be spared -when Michael stands up – if they have the right attitude. We should not be mad – although they might have had a wicked reputation. Jehovah extends his love to those who repent, and we should too – even if we personally feel they do not deserve it (Luke 15:11-32 “Prodigal son”)

This book shows an example of the possible extent of Jehovah’s mercy.

## Micah

**Micah 2:1** “Woe to those who are scheming what is harmful, and to those practicing what is bad, upon their beds...” Interesting phrase, “practicing what is bad, upon their beds!”. We know people can think up hurtful schemes while in bed, but this may denote adultery – That is spiritual adultery concerning God’s people. They are no longer following Jehovah.

**Micah 2:3** “Therefore this is what Jehovah has said, ‘Here I am thinking up against this family a calamity from which YOU people will not remove YOUR necks, so that YOU will not walk haughtily; because it is a time of calamity.’”

**Micah 2:12** {“I shall positively gather Jacob, all of you; I shall without fail collect the remaining ones of Israel together. In unity I shall set them, like a flock in the pen, like a drove in the midst of its pasture; they will be noisy with men.”} See Revelation 6:9-11 comments about the two groups being joined together. – See also 4:6

**Micah 3:5-7** “This is what Jehovah has said against the prophets that are causing my people to wander, that are biting with their teeth and that call out, ‘Peace!’ that, when anyone does not put [something] into their mouths, also actually sanctify war against him .... And they will have to cover over the mustache, all of them, for there is no answer from God.”

**Micah 3:8** “And, on the other hand, I myself have become full of power, with the spirit of Jehovah, and of justice and mightiness, in order to tell Jacob his revolt and to Israel his sin.”

**Micah 4:6,7** *The EMPHASISED BIBLE*; “< In that day > Declareth Yahweh~ Will I take up her that is lame, And < her that hath been an outcast > will I carry, — Even whomsoever I have afflicted; (vs.7); And will make of her that was lame’ a residue, And of her that was removed far away’ a strong nation, — And Yahweh |shall be king| over them, in Mount Zion, From henceforth, even unto times age-abiding.” (Substituted some grammar markings) Notice two groups. – See 2:12 comments.

**Micah 5:2** “And you, O Bethlehem Ephrathah, the one too little to get to be among the thousands of Judah, from you there will come out to me the one who is to become ruler in Israel, whose origin is from early times, from the days of time indefinite.” – This positively identifies where the future ruler was to come from. That being, from Bethlehem and “from the days of time indefinite”. It could only be Jesus.

**Micah 5:15** “And in anger and in rage I will execute vengeance upon the nations that have not obeyed.” Compare Psalms 2:12

**Micah 6:10-12** “Do there yet exist [in] the house of a wicked one the treasures of wickedness, and the scrimped ephah measure that is denounced? Can I [morally] clean with wicked scales and with a bag of deceptive stone weights? For her own rich men have become full of violence, and her own inhabitants have spoken falsehood, and their tongue is tricky in their mouth.” Compare Zechariah 5:6-8

**Micah 7:2** “The loyal one has perished from the earth..”

**Micah 7:16,17** “Nations will see and become ashamed of all their mightiness...To Jehovah our God they will come quivering, and they will be afraid of you.”

**Micah 7:18** “Who is a God like you, one pardoning error and passing over transgression of the remnant of his inheritance? He will not certainly hold onto his anger forever, for he is delighting in loving-kindness.” Compare Isaiah 12:1,2

## **Amos**

**Amos 3:7** “For the Sovereign Lord Jehovah will not do a thing unless he has revealed his confidential matter to his servants the prophets.”

**Amos 5:4** “For this is what Jehovah has said to the house of Israel, ‘Search for me, and keep living’ “

**Amos 8:1-3:** Jehovah will not excuse his people any longer – “hush!” – compare Revelation 8:1; 11:2,3

**Amos 8:4-8** states reasons why Jehovah is leaving his people -See Lamentations

**Amos 8:9-14** describe a spiritual famine and reasons for wearing “sackcloth” and having shame – Compare Matthew 24:28 “carcass”; Revelation 11:3

**Amos 9:10** “By the sword they will die – all the sinners of my people, those who are saying: “The calamity will not come near or reach as far as us.”

**Amos 9:11,12**” ‘In that day I shall raise up the booth of David that is fallen, and I shall certainly repair their breaches. And its ruins I shall raise up, and I shall certainly build it up as in the days of long ago, to the end that they may take possession of what is left remaining of Edom, and all the nations upon whom my name has been called, is the utterance of Jehovah, who is doing this.’ Compare Zechariah 11:12,13; Isaiah 45:20-25; Acts 9:11,12.



## Joel

**Joel 1:4-2:11** uses the illustration of God allowing relentless symbolic insects to strip his people bare.

**Joel 2:12** God's people have left him, and he asks them to come back to him with all their hearts

**Joel 2:25** When God's people return to him with all their hearts, Jehovah makes compensation to them.

**Joel 2:28,29** talk about conditions during the 1,000-year reign of Jesus.

**Joel 1:6-8** "For there is a nation that has come up into my land, mighty and without number. Its teeth are the teeth of a lion, and it has the jawbones of a lion. It has set my vine as an object of astonishment, and my fig tree as a stump. It has positively stripped it bare and thrown [it] away. The twigs of it have become white. Wail, as a virgin girded with sackcloth does over the owner of her youth." // Compare Isaiah 10:16-22; 57:11-13; Revelation 11:2,3

**Joel 2:12-14** "And now also," the utterance of Jehovah is, "come back to me with all YOUR hearts, and with fasting and with weeping and with wailing. And rip apart YOUR hearts, and not YOUR garments; and come back to Jehovah YOUR God, for he is gracious and merciful, slow to anger and abundant in loving-kindness, and he will certainly feel regret on account of the calamity. Who is there knowing whether he will turn back and actually feel regret and let remain after it a blessing, a grain offering and a drink offering for Jehovah YOUR God?" – Revelation 11:2,3 – Malachi 3:5,6

## Hosea

**Hosea 3:4-5** “It is because for many days the sons of Israel will dwell without a king and without a prince and without a sacrifice and without a pillar and without an ephod and teraphim. Afterwards the sons of Israel will come back and certainly look for Jehovah their God, and for David their king; and they will certainly come quivering to Jehovah and to his goodness in the final part of the days.”

**Hosea 6:1-3** “Come, YOU people, and do let us return to Jehovah, for he himself has torn to pieces but he will heal us. He kept striking, but he will bind us up. He will make us alive after two days. On the third day he will make us get up, and we shall live before him. And we will know, we will pursue to know Jehovah. Like dawn, his going forth is firmly established. And he will come in like a pouring rain to us; like a spring rain that saturates [the] earth.” – See Revelation 11:11-13 comments

**Hosea 14:1-9** “Do come back, O Israel, to Jehovah your God, for you have stumbled in your error.... I shall heal their unfaithfulness. I shall love them of [my] own free will, because my anger has turned back from him.... Who is wise, that he may understand these things? Discreet, that he may know them? For the ways of Jehovah are upright, and the righteous are the ones who will walk in them; but the transgressors are the ones who will stumble in them.” Compare Isaiah 12:1,2

## Ezekiel

**Ezekiel 2:3-7;** “And he went on to say to me: “Son of man, I am sending you to the sons of Israel, to rebellious nations that have rebelled against me. They themselves and their forefathers have transgressed against me down to this selfsame day. And the sons insolent of face and hard of heart – I am sending you to them, and you must say to them, ‘This is what the Sovereign Lord Jehovah has said.’ And as for them, whether they will hear or refrain – for they are a rebellious house – they will certainly know also that a prophet himself happened to be in the midst of them. (vs.6) “And you, O son of man, do not be afraid of them; and of their words do not be afraid, because there are obstinate ones and things pricking you and it is among scorpions that you are dwelling. Of their words do not you be afraid, and at their faces do not you be struck with terror, for they are a rebellious house. And you must speak my words to them, regardless of whether they hear or they refrain, for they are a case of rebellion.”

**Ezekiel 3:7,8** “But as for the house of Israel, they will not want to listen to you, for they are not wanting to listen to me; because all those of the house of Israel are hardheaded and hardhearted. Look! I have made your face exactly as hard as their faces and your forehead exactly as hard as their foreheads.”

**Ezekiel 3:17,18** “Son of man, a watchman is what I have made you to the house of Israel, and you must hear from my mouth speech and you must warn them from me. When I say to someone wicked, ‘You will positively die,’ and you do not actually warn him and speak in order to warn the wicked one from his wicked way to preserve him alive, he being wicked, in his error he will die, but his blood I shall ask back from your own hand.”

**Ezekiel 4:13** “And Jehovah went on to say: “Just like this the sons of Israel will eat their bread unclean among the nations to which I shall disperse them.”

**Ezekiel 5:5,6** “This is what the Sovereign Lord Jehovah has said, ‘This is Jerusalem. In the midst of the nations I have set her, with lands all around her. And she proceeded to behave rebelliously against my judicial decisions in wickedness more than the nations, and against my statutes more than the lands that are all around her, for my judicial decisions they rejected and, as for my statutes, they did not walk in them.”

**Ezekiel 5:11-17** ” ‘Therefore as I am alive,’ is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah, ‘surely for the reason that it was my sanctuary that you defiled with all your disgusting things and with all your detestable things, I myself also am the One that will diminish [you] and my eye will not feel sorry and I myself also will not show compassion. A third of you – by the pestilence they will die, and by famine they will come to their end in the midst of you. And another third – by the sword they will fall all around you. and the [last] third I shall scatter even to every wind, and a sword is what I shall draw out after them. And my anger will certainly come to its finish and I will appease my rage on them and comfort myself; and they will have to know that I myself, Jehovah, have spoken in my insistence on exclusive devotion, when I bring my rage to its finish upon them. (vs.14)” ‘And I shall make you a devastated place and a reproach among the nations that are all around you before the eyes of every passerby. And you must become a reproach and an object of reviling words, a warning example and a horror to the nations that are

all around you, when I do in you acts of judgment in anger and in rage and in raging reproofs. I myself, Jehovah, have spoken. (vs.16)” ‘When I send the injurious arrows of the famine upon them, which must prove to be for ruination, which [arrows] I shall send to bring YOU people to ruin, even famine I shall increase upon YOU people and I will break YOUR rods around which ring-shaped loaves are suspended. And I will send upon YOU people famine and injurious wild beasts, and they must bereave you of children, and pestilence and blood themselves will pass along through you, and a sword I shall bring in upon you. I myself, Jehovah, have spoken.” // This reminds me of Revelation 11 where God’s people are in “sackcloth”.

**Ezekiel 6:8-10** ” ‘ “And when it occurs I will let YOU have as a remnant the ones escaping from the sword among the nations, when YOU get scattered among the lands. And YOUR escaped ones will certainly remember me among the nations which they will have been taken captive, because I have been broken up at their fornicating heart that has turned aside from me and at their eyes that are going in fornication after their dungy idols; and they will certainly feel a loathing in their faces at the bad things that they have done in all their detestable things. And they will have to know that I am Jehovah; not in vain did I speak about doing to them this calamitous thing.” ‘ ”

**Ezekiel 7:8** ” ‘Now shortly I shall pour out my rage upon you, and I will bring my anger against you to its finish, and I will judge you according to your ways and bring upon you all your detestable things.”

**Ezekiel 7:14:18** “And they have girded on sackcloth, and shuddering has covered them; and on all faces there is shame and on all their heads there is baldness.” – Revelation 11 “sackcloth”

**Ezekiel 7:24-27** “And I will bring in the worst ones of the nations, and they will certainly take possession of their houses, and I will cause the pride of the strong ones to cease, and their sanctuaries must be profaned. There will come anguish, and they will certainly seek peace but there will be none. There will come adversity upon adversity, and there will occur report upon report, and people will actually seek a vision from a prophet, and the law itself will perish from a priest and counsel from elderly men. The king himself will go into mourning; even a chieftain will clothe himself with desolation, and the very hands of the people of the land will get disturbed. According to their way I shall act toward them, and with their judgments I shall judge them; and they will have to know that I am Jehovah.” // People have sought true prophets of Jehovah in times of trouble as they did with Daniel and Jeremiah. This thought of “people will actually seek a vision from a prophet” may possibly applied to the “Elijah” of our day – Time will tell.

**Ezekiel 9:4** “And Jehovah went on to say to him: “Pass through the midst of the city, through the midst of Jerusalem, and you must put a mark on the foreheads of the men that are sighing and groaning over all the detestable things that are being done in the midst of it.”// The “persons to be “sealed” being secured from destruction and marked for reward” – This definition is a bit different from the sealing of the 144,000 in Revelation 7:3-5 defined as “ownership and security, together with destination” – *Vine’s Expository Dictionary of Biblical Words* (1985) page 553.

**Ezekiel 9:6** Notice that this sealing work and “killing” starts with Jehovah’s “sanctuary”.

**Ezekiel 9:9** "...and the city is full of crookedness." – Malachi 4:5,6

**Ezekiel 11:1,2** "...princes of the people. Then he said to me: "Son of man, these are the men that are scheming hurtfulness and advising bad counsel against this city.."

**Ezekiel 11:8-12** "A sword YOU have feared, and a sword I shall bring upon YOU,' is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah. 'And I shall certainly bring YOU forth out of the midst of her and give YOU into the hand of strangers and execute upon YOU acts of judgment. By the sword YOU will fall. On the border Of Israel I shall judge YOU people; and YOU will have to know that I am Jehovah. She herself will not prove to be for YOU a widemouthed cooking pot, and YOU yourselves will not prove to be flesh in the midst of her. On the border of Israel I shall judge YOU, and YOU will have to know that I am Jehovah, because in my regulations YOU did not walk and my judgments YOU did not do, but according to the judgments of the nations that are round about YOU, YOU have done.' "

**Ezekiel 11:16** "therefore say, 'This is what the sovereign Lord Jehovah has said: "Although I have put them far away among the nations, and although I have scattered them among the lands, yet I shall become to them a sanctuary for a little while among the lands to which they have come." // "for a little while" can be translated as "in a little way." Ref. footnote – Possible parallel with Daniel 11:34 "a little help".

**Ezekiel 11:17-20** "Therefore say, 'This is what the Sovereign Lord Jehovah has said: "I will also collect YOU from the peoples and gather YOU from the lands among which YOU have been scattered, and I will give YOU the soil of Israel. And they will certainly come there and remove all its disgusting things and all its detestable things out of it. And I will give them one heart, and a new spirit I shall put inside them; and I shall certainly remove the heart of stone from their flesh and give them a heart of flesh, in order that they may walk in my own statutes and keep my own judicial decisions and actually carry them out; and they may really become my people and I myself may become their God." ' Notice the time period – this happens immediately after [Michael stands up](#) – Daniel 12:1

**Ezekiel 12:25** "...There will be no postponement anymore, for in YOUR days, O rebellious house, I shall speak a word and certainly do it," is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah.' "

**Ezekiel 13:1-7** speaks of "stupid prophets, who are walking after their own spirit" (vs.3) and "They have visioned what is untrue and a lying divination, those who are saying, 'The utterance of Jehovah is,' when Jehovah himself has not sent them, and they have waited to have a word come true. It is not an untrue vision that YOU men have visioned, and a lying divination that YOU have said, when saying, 'The utterance of Jehovah is,' when I myself have spoken nothing?" (vs.6,7) // This would pertain to any false teaching such as "1914".

**Ezekiel 13:8-23** "Therefore this is what the Sovereign Lord Jehovah has said: " 'For the reason that YOU men have spoken untruth and YOU have visioned a lie, therefore here I am against YOU,' is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah." And my hand has come to be against the prophets that are visioning untruth and that are diving a lie. In the intimate group of my people

they will not continue on, and in the register of the house of Israel they will not be written, and to the soil of Israel they will not come; and YOU people will have to know that I am the Sovereign Lord Jehovah, for the reason, yes, for the reason that they have led my people astray, saying, “There is peace!” when there is no peace, and there is one building a partition wall, but in vain there are those plastering it with whitewash.’ (vs.11) “Say to those plastering with whitewash that it will fall. A flooding downpour will certainly occur, and YOU, O hailstones, will fall, and a blast of windstorms itself will cause a splitting. And, look! the wall must fall. Will it not be said to YOU men, “Where is the coating with which YOU did the plastering?” (vs.13) “Therefore this is what the Sovereign Lord Jehovah has said, ‘I will also cause a blast of windstorms to burst forth in my rage, and in my anger there will occur a flooding downpour, and in rage there will be hailstones for an extermination. And I will tear down the wall that YOU men have plastered with whitewash and bring it into contact with the earth, and its foundation must be exposed. And she will certainly fall, and YOU must come to an end in the midst of her; and YOU will have to know that I am Jehovah.’ (vs.15) ” ‘And I will bring my rage to its finish upon the wall and upon those plastering it with whitewash, and I shall say to YOU men: “The wall is no more, and those plastering it are no more, the prophets of Israel that are prophesying to Jerusalem and that are visioning for her a vision of peace, when there is no peace,” ‘ is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah...(vs.18) And you must say, ‘This is what the Sovereign Lord Jehovah has said: “Woe to the women sewing bands together upon all elbows and making veils upon the head of every size in order to hunt souls!...(vs.22) By reason of dejecting the heart of a righteous one with falsehood, when I myself had not caused him pain, and for making the hands of a wicked one strong so that he would not turn back from his bad way in order to preserve him alive, therefore untruth YOU women will not keep on visioning, and divination YOU will divine no longer; and I will deliver my people out of YOUR hand, and YOU will have to know that I am Jehovah.’ ”

Men or women teaching false prophesy as Jehovah’s word are supporting Satan’s efforts. Notice too how false teachings are protected by their false teachers by “whitewash” – They are protecting it and glorifying it. This is very applicable to the teaching of “1914”. See also Jeremiah chapter 23. and Ezekiel 22:28

**Ezekiel 14:9-11** ” ‘And as for the prophet, in case he gets fooled and actually speaks a word, I myself, Jehovah, have fooled that prophet; and I will stretch out my hand against him and annihilate him from the midst of my people Israel. And they will have to bear their error. The error of the inquirer will prove to be just the same as the error of the prophet, in order that those of the house of Israel may no more go wandering off from following me and may no more go defiling themselves with all their transgressions. And they must become my people and I myself shall become their God,’ is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah.” // This “fooled prophet” allows himself to be fooled – The context indicates that it is talking about false prophets.

**Ezekiel 14:12-23** “...(vs.13)”Son of man, as regards a land, in case it commits a sin against me in acting unfaithfully, I will also stretch out my hand against it and break for it the rods around which ring-shaped loaves are suspended, and I will send upon it famine and cut off from it



earthling man and domestic animal.” (vs.14) ” ‘And had these three men proved to be in the midst of it, Noah, Daniel and Job, they themselves because of their righteousness would deliver their soul,’...(vs.16) were these three men in the midst of it, as I am alive,’ is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah, ‘neither sons nor daughters would they deliver; they, only they themselves, would be delivered and the land itself would become a desolate waste...’ // This idea of “neither sons nor daughters would they deliver; they, only they themselves, would be delivered” is repeated a total of four times – For famine (vs.13), injurious wild beasts and a desolating of the land (vs.15), sword (vs.17), and pestilence (vs.19). See also the marriage link with reference to these verses.

**Ezekiel 15:8** ” ‘And I will make the land a desolate waste, for the reason that they have acted unfaithfully,’ is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah.”

**Ezekiel 16** speaks of God’s “Jerusalem” (vs.1) as becoming “very, very pretty” (vs.13). However, she becomes a prostitute; “In the case of the wife that commits adultery, she takes strangers instead of her own husband.” (vs.32 – does refer to false teachings such as “1914” ); (vs.62) ” ‘And I, I myself, will establish my covenant with you; and you will have to know that I am Jehovah, in order that you may remember and actually be ashamed and you may no more come to have any reason to open [your] mouth because of your humiliation, when I make an atonement for you for all that you have done,’ is the utterance of the sovereign Lord Jehovah.”

**Ezekiel 17:22-24** ” ‘This is what the Sovereign Lord Jehovah has said: “I myself will also take and put some of the lofty treetop of the cedar; from the top of its twigs I shall pluck off a tender one and I will myself transplant [it] upon a high and lofty mountain. On the mountain of the height of Israel I shall transplant it, and it will certainly bear boughs and produce fruit and become a majestic cedar. And under it there will actually reside all the birds of every wing; in the shadow of its foliage, they will reside. And all the trees of the field will have to know that I myself, Jehovah, have abased the high tree, have put on high the low tree, have dried up the still-moist tree and have made the dry tree blossom. I myself, Jehovah, have spoken and have done [it].” ’ // This “tender one” being Jesus – See “Sprout” in Zechariah 3:8; 6:12,13.

**Ezekiel 18:20** “The soul that is sinning – it itself will die. A son himself will bear nothing because of the error of the father, and a father himself will bear nothing because of the error of the son. Upon his own self the very righteousness of the righteous one will come to be, and upon his own self the very wickedness of a wicked one will come to be.” – See Ezekiel 14:12-23 comments.

**Ezekiel 18:21,22** ” ‘Now as regards someone wicked, in case he should turn back from all his sins that he has committed and he should actually keep all my statutes and execute justice and righteousness, he will positively keep living. He will not die. All his transgressions that he has committed – they will not be remembered against him. For his righteousness that he has done he will keep living.’ “

**Ezekiel 18:30,31** ” ‘Therefore each one according to his ways is how I shall judge YOU, O house of Israel,’ is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah. ‘Turn back, yes, cause a turning back from all YOUR transgressions, and let nothing prove to be for YOU people a stumbling block

causing error. Throw off from yourselves all YOUR transgressions in which YOU have transgressed and make for yourselves a new heart and a new spirit, for why should YOU die, O house of Israel?’ “- See Malachi 4:5,6

**Ezekiel 18:32**” ‘For I do not take any delight in the death of someone dying,’ is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah. ‘So cause a turning back and keep living, O YOU people.’”

**Ezekiel 20:33-44**” ‘As I am alive,’ is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah, ‘it will be with a strong hand and with a stretched-out arm and with outpoured rage that I will rule as king over YOU people. And I will bring YOU forth from the peoples, and I will collect YOU together out of the lands to which YOU have been scattered with a strong hand and with a stretched-out arm and with outpoured rage. And I will bring YOU into the wilderness of the peoples and put myself on judgment with YOU there face to face. (vs.36) ” ‘Just as I put myself on judgment with YOUR forefathers in the wilderness of the land of Egypt, so I shall put myself on judgment with YOU,’ is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah. ‘And I will make YOU pass under the rod and bring YOU into the bond of the covenant. And I will clean out from YOU the revolvers and the transgressors against me, for out of the land of their alien residence I shall bring them forth, but onto the soil of Israel they will not come; and YOU people will have to know that I am Jehovah.’ (vs.39) “And YOU, O house of Israel, this is what the Sovereign Lord Jehovah has said, ‘Go serve each one of YOU his own dungy idols. And afterward if YOU are not listening to me, then my holy name YOU will no more profane by YOUR gifts and by YOUR dungy idols.’ (vs.40)” ‘For in my holy mountain, in the mountain of the height of Israel,’ is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah, ‘there is where they, the whole house of Israel in its entirety, will serve me, in the land. There I shall take pleasure in them, and there I shall require YOUR contributions and the first fruits of YOUR presentations in all YOUR holy things. Because of the restful odor I shall take pleasure in YOU, when I bring YOU forth from the peoples and I actually collect YOU together from the lands to which YOU have been scattered, and I will be sanctified in YOU before the eyes of the nations.’ (vs.42) ” ‘And YOU people will have to know that I am Jehovah, when I bring YOU onto the soil of Israel, into the land that I lifted up my hand [in an oath] to give to YOUR forefathers. And YOU will certainly remember there YOUR ways and all YOUR dealings by which YOU defiled yourselves, and YOU will actually feel a loathing at YOUR own faces because of all YOUR bad things that YOU did. And YOU will have to know that I am Jehovah when I take action with YOU for the sake of my name, not according to YOUR bad ways or according to YOUR corrupted dealings, O house of Israel, ‘is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah.” // Notice that “and I will be sanctified in YOU before the eyes of the nations” has not occurred yet at the time of this writing – And it shows that God’s people had to straighten their ways. – Compare Malachi 3:2-4

**Ezekiel 22:28** “And her prophets have plastered for them with whitewash, visioning an unreality and divining for them a lie, saying: “This is what the Sovereign Lord Jehovah has said,” when Jehovah himself has not spoken.” – See also Ezekiel 13:8-23

**Ezekiel 28** Pictures the king of Tyre as haughty and wealthy and wise but because he was making himself as a god, he was to die by the hand of strangers. Verse 12 introduces us to a dirge that parallels the king of Tyre with Satan – the beautiful guardian (“covering”) Cherub.

**Ezekiel 31** Pictures Pharaoh the king of Egypt as a cedar with its treetop among the clouds and all the populous nations would dwell in its shade. I also believe it parallels some characteristics with Satan. – See “1914” link

**Ezekiel 33:11** “..’ “As I am alive,” is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah, “I take delight, not in the death of the wicked one, but in that someone wicked turns back from his way and actually keeps living. Turn back, turn back from YOUR bad ways, for why is it that YOU should die, O house of Israel?” ‘

**Ezekiel 34:10** “This is what the Sovereign Lord Jehovah has said, ‘Here I am against the shepherds, and I shall certainly ask back my sheep from their hand and make them cease from feeding [my] sheep, and the shepherds will no longer feed themselves; and I will deliver my sheep out of their mouth, and they will not become food for them.’ ”

**Ezekiel 34:15,16** “I myself shall feed my sheep, and I myself shall make them lie down,” is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah. “The lost one I shall search for, and the dispersed one I shall bring back, and the broken one I shall bandage and the ailing one I shall strengthen, but the fat one and the strong one I shall annihilate. I shall feed that one with judgment.”

**Ezekiel 34:23-30** “And I will raise up over them one shepherd, and he must feed them, even my servant David. He himself will feed them, and he himself will become their shepherd. And I myself, Jehovah, will become their God, and my servant David a chieftain in the midst of them. I myself, Jehovah, have spoken. (vs.25) ” ‘ “And I will conclude with them a covenant of peace, and I shall certainly cause the injurious wild beast to cease out of the land, and they will actually dwell in the wilderness in security and sleep in the forests. And I will make them and the surroundings of my hill a blessing, and I will cause the pouring rain to descend in its time. Pouring rains of blessing there will prove to be. And the tree of the field must give its fruitage, and the land itself will give its yield, and they will actually prove to be on their soil in security. And they will have to know that I am Jehovah when I break the bars of their yoke and I have delivered them out of the hand of those who had been using them as slaves. And they will no longer become something to plunder for the nations; and as regards the wild beast of the earth, it will not devour them, and they will actually dwell in security, with no one to make [them] tremble. (vs.29) ” ‘ “And I will raise up for them a planting for a name, and they will no more become those taken away by famine in the land, and they will no longer bear the humiliation by the nations. ‘And they will have to know that I, Jehovah their God, am with them and that they are my people, the house of Israel,’ is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah.” ‘ // Notice the time – This has not happened yet and it is talking about blessings for God’s people who he takes back from bad shepherds (Ezekiel 34:10)

**Ezekiel 36** shows us that God’s people had been humiliated before nations and now the nations will be humiliated and Jehovah causes it “Not for YOUR sakes...but for my holy name...’ And I shall certainly sanctify my great name, which was being profaned among the nations, which YOU profaned in the midst of them; and the nations will have to know that I am Jehovah,’ is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah, ‘when I am sanctified among YOU before their eyes. And I will take YOU out of the nations and collect YOU together out of all the lands and bring

YOU in upon YOUR soil.” (vs.22-24) // We can see the importance of the beginning of the “Lord’s prayer” in Mathew 6:9 for God’s name to be sanctified. Jehovah’s people have profaned his name by teaching falsehood as Jehovah’s word. But it is Jehovah himself that will see to it that his holy name is sanctified. // Compare Isaiah 65:8,9; Exodus 32:11-14

**Ezekiel 37** introduces us to “dry bones” that come to life. These bones that come to life are identified “..as regards these bones, they are the whole house of Israel. Here they are saying, ‘Our bones have become dry, and our hope has perished. We have been severed off to ourselves.’ ” (vs.11) // Verse 14; ” ‘And I will put my spirit in YOU, and YOU must come to life, and I will settle YOU upon YOUR soil; and YOU will have to know that I myself, Jehovah, have spoken and I have done [it],’ is the utterance of Jehovah.” Notice the wording “the whole house of Israel” with reference to comments for verses 15-20. Also notice “our hope has perished” – this could also be reflected in Zechariah 3:2.

**Ezekiel 37:15-25:** Verses 15 to 20 talk about two sticks representing two groups of God’s people and they are joined together; “..and I shall actually make them one stick, and they must become one in my hand.” (vs.19). Verse 22; “And I shall actually make them one nation in the land, on the mountains of Israel, and one king is what all of them will come to have as king, and they will no longer continue to be two nations, nor will they be divided any longer into two kingdoms. And they will no longer defile themselves with their dungy idols and with their disgusting things and with all their transgressions; and I shall certainly save them from all their dwelling places in which they have sinned, and I will cleanse them, and they must become my people, and I myself shall become their God. (vs.24-25;) ” ‘ “And my servant David will be king over them, and one shepherd is what they will all come to have...and David my servant will be their chieftain to time indefinite.” // This agrees with the illustrations in Revelation which depict two groups coming together – See Revelation 11 “two witnesses” comments. Notice “and I will cleanse them” denoting a cleansing work is needed – See Malachi 4:5,6.

**Ezekiel 38 thru 39:20** describes the battle between Jehovah and Satan with “Gog and Maygog” – See Revelation 20:8. This is also after Michael hands the kingdom over to his father after his 1,000 year reign.

**Ezekiel 39:21-29** speaks of the two groups of God’s people coming together and Jehovah pours his spirit upon them. This happens during the 1,000 year reign of Michael.

**Ezekiel 40-42** Show us measurements of God’s (house) buildings and things.

**Ezekiel 43** explains the reason for the measurements in chapters 40-42 and more measurements and methods in chapter 43. Verses 10-12; “As for you, O son of man, inform the house of Israel about the House, that they may feel humiliated because of their errors, and they must measure the pattern. And if they actually feel humiliated because of all that they have done, the ground plan of the House, and its arrangement and its exits and its entryways, and all its ground plans and all its specifications, and all its ground plans and all its laws do you make known to them and write before their eyes, in order that they may observe all its ground plan and all its specifications and may actually carry them out. This is the law of the House. On the top of the mountain its entire territory all around is something most holy. Look! This is the law of the

House.” // Notice “in order that they may observe” – denoting the importance of straightening their ways to conform to Jehovah’s standards of measurement.

**Ezekiel 44:15-22** ” ‘And as for the Levitical priests...(vs.22) And no widow or divorced woman should they take for themselves as wives, but virgins of the offspring of the house of Israel or the widow who happens to be the widow of a priest they may take.’ ” // The term “divorced woman” most likely denotes that she was or still is a transgressor of Jehovah’s law. // It does show the importance of a proper marriage in Jehovah’s eyes. // I am unsure of the term “widow” in this case – I will have to research it at a later time.

**Ezekiel 47:1-9** “..there was water going forth from under the threshold of the house...being brought forth into the sea itself, [its] water is also actually healed. And it must occur that every living soul that swarms, in every place to which the double-size torrent comes, will get life...and the [seawater] will get healed, and everything will be alive where the torrent comes.” // Although parts of this may be literal, it would be most fitting for this to be primarily symbolic – Representing the physical and spiritual blessings of David’s 1000 year reign – See comments for verse 11 and Revelation 22:1,2,16

**Ezekiel 47:11** “There are its swampy places and its marshy places, and they will not be healed. To salt they will be certainly given.” // See comments for verses 1-9. And compare Jeremiah 17:5-8 and Zechariah 14:16-17 comments.

**Ezekiel 47:12** “And alongside the torrent there will come up, along its bank on this side and on that side, all sorts of trees for food. Their leafage will not wither, nor will their fruitage be consumed. In their months they will bear new fruit, because the water for them – it is coming forth from the very sanctuary. And their fruitage must prove to be for food and their leafage for healing.” // The term “nor will their fruitage be consumed” simply means the fruitage will not run out.

**Ezekiel 47:21-23** “And YOU must apportion this land to yourselves, to the twelve tribes of Israel. And it must occur that YOU should allot it for inheritance to yourselves and to the alien residents who are residing as aliens in YOUR midst, who have become father to sons in the midst of YOU. And they must become to YOU like a native among the sons of Israel. With YOU people they will fall [by lot] into an inheritance in the midst of the tribes of Israel. And it must occur that in the tribe with which the alien resident has taken up residence as an alien, there is where YOU should give his inheritance,” is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Jehovah. // Notice how the aliens can become like a native of Israel. This also is in agreement of Jehovah’s promise to Abraham that “all the nations of the earth must bless themselves by means of him” (Genesis 18:18)

**Ezekiel 48:15** Note that the word “profane” is translated “common” by the *Rotherham Emphasized Bible* which I feel leads to less confusion in this passage.

## Lamentations

Lamentations is full of sad reasons why God's people are justifiably "forsaken" by him. This was the case back then (Jeremiah's) and in some ways the early Christians and will start for our day when Jerusalem is destroyed or conquered (Daniel 11). I suggest reading the entire book.

**Lamentations 1:1** "O how she has come to sit solitary, the city that was abundant with people! How she has become like a widow, she that was populous among the nations! How she that was a princess among the jurisdictional districts has come to be for forced labor!"

**Lamentations 1:5** "Her adversaries have become the head. Those who are her enemies are unconcerned. Because Jehovah himself has brought grief to her on account of the abundance of her transgressions, Her own children have walked captive before the adversary."

**Lamentations 1:8** "Jerusalem has committed outright sin..."

**Lamentations 1:21** "People have heard how I myself am sighing as a woman. There is no comforter for me. All my enemies themselves have heard of my calamity. They have exulted, because you yourself have done [it]. "You will certainly bring the day that you have proclaimed, that they may become like me."

**Lamentations 2:7** "Jehovah has cast off his altar. He has spurned his sanctuary. Into the hand of the enemy he has surrendered the walls of her dwelling towers." – Compare Zechariah 5:6,7; Revelation 21:16-17

**Lamentations 2:10** "The older men ... have girded on sackcloth.." – See the "two witnesses" in Revelation 11; Daniel 12:7.

**Lamentations 2:15** "At you all those passing along on the road have clapped their hands. They have whistled and kept wagging their head at the daughter of Jerusalem, [saying:] "Is this the city of which they used to say, 'It is the perfection of prettiness, an exultation for all the earth'?" – this will happen also in our near future during the three and a half time period.

**Lamentations 3:8,9** "Also, when I call for aid and cry for help, he actually hampers my prayer. He has blocked up my ways with hewn stone. My roadways he has twisted."

**Lamentations 3:14,15** "I have become an object of laughter to all people against me, the theme of their song all day long. He has given me a sufficiency of bitter things. He has saturated me with wormwood." – See Amos 8:1-12; Revelation 8:1-12

**Lamentations 3:38** "From the mouth of the Most High bad things and what is good do not go forth." – This is just a reflection of how Jehovah left his people to the nations for then and our near future. Satan is what causes the bad to happen – Jehovah just allows it to discipline his people so they will straighten their ways.

**Lamentations 3:42-45** "We ourselves have transgressed, and we have behaved rebelliously. You yourself have not forgiven. You have blocked approach with anger, and you keep pursuing us.



You have killed; you have shown no compassion. You have blocked approach to yourself with a cloud mass, that prayer may not pass through. You make us mere offscouring and refuse in the midst of the peoples.” // Here we do see a turning of attitude concerning God’s people – They acknowledge transgression. – Compare Jeremiah 50:20; and a possible parallel with Zechariah 14:6

**Lamentations 3:55-56** “I have called out your name, O Jehovah, from a pit of the lowest sort. My voice you must hear. Do not hide your ear to my relief, to my cry for help.” – Just before Jehovah returns to his people after they straightened their ways -see vs.57

**Lamentations 3:57** “You have drawn near in the day that I kept calling you. You said: Do not be afraid.”

**Lamentations 3:64-66** “You will give back to them a treatment, O Jehovah, according to the work of their hands. You will give to them the insolence of heart, your curse to them. You will pursue in anger and annihilate them from under the heavens of Jehovah.”

**Lamentations 5:20-21** “Why is it that forever you forget us, that you leave us for the length of days? Bring us back, O Jehovah, to yourself, and we shall readily come back. Bring new days for us as in the long ago. However, you have positively rejected us. You have been indignant toward us very much.” – Notice the important change of attitude. They are now “straightening” their worship. Compare Malachi 4:5,6

## Jeremiah

We find that God's people apostatize against him and they do not even realize it but it is their own error. They refuse to look for him. So Jehovah gets tired of forgiving them and he leaves them. After a while, his people straighten their ways and Jehovah then returns to his people. Babylon's fall is also described.

**Jeremiah 1:5** "Before I was forming you in the belly I knew you, and before you proceeded to come forth from the womb I sanctified you. Prophet to the nations I made you." // I find this interesting and something to meditate on. Although one has free will, could it be that for some, they are designed for a specific role or roles?

**Jeremiah 1:18,19** "But as for me, here I have made you today a fortified city and an iron pillar and copper walls against all the land, toward the kings of Judah, toward her princes, toward her priests and toward the people of the land. And they will be certain to fight against you, but they will not prevail against you, for 'I am with you,' is the utterance of Jehovah, 'to deliver you.' "

**Jeremiah 2:1-3** "And the word of Jehovah proceeded to occur to me, saying: "Go, and you must call out in the ears of Jerusalem, saying, 'This is what Jehovah has said: "I well remember, on your part, the loving kindness of your youth, the love during your being engaged to marry, your walking after me in the wilderness, in a land not sown with seed. Israel was something holy to Jehovah, the first yield to him." ' .." // Compare Malachi 2:15b and Revelation 14:14 "firstfruits" usage and Revelation 19:7,8

**Jeremiah 2:12,13** "Stare in amazement, O YOU heavens, at this; and bristle up in very great horror,' is the utterance of Jehovah, 'because there are two bad things that my people have done: They have left even me, the source of living water, in order to hew out for themselves cisterns, broken cisterns, that cannot contain the water.' "

**Jeremiah 2:29** "Why do YOU people keep contending against me? Why have YOU transgressed, all of YOU, against me?" is the utterance of Jehovah."

**Jeremiah 3:14-17** "Return O YOU renegade sons," is the utterance of Jehovah. "For I myself have become the husbandly owner of YOU people; and I will take YOU, one out of a city and two out of a family, and I will bring YOU to Zion. And I will give YOU shepherds in agreement with my heart, and they will certainly feed YOU with knowledge and insight. And it must occur that YOU will become many and certainly bear fruit in the land in those days," is the utterance of Jehovah. "No more will they say, 'The ark of the covenant of Jehovah!' nor will it come up into the heart, nor will they remember it or miss it, and no more will it be made. In that time they will call Jerusalem the throne of Jehovah; and to her all the nations must be brought together to the name of Jehovah at Jerusalem, and they will no more walk after the stubbornness of their bad heart." // Notice this time period is for the future – This will start when Michael stands up – See Daniel 12:1

**Jeremiah 3:18** “In those days they will walk, the house of Judah alongside the house of Israel, and together they will come out of the land of the north into the land that I gave as a hereditary possession to YOUR forefathers.” // Notice the bringing together of the two as one in unity – Compare Jeremiah 30:3; 31:31; Ezekiel 37:22; Revelation 11:3 “two witnesses” comments.

**Jeremiah 4:8-10** “On this account gird on sackcloth, YOU people. Beat YOUR breasts and howl, because the burning anger of Jehovah has not turned back from us. (vs.9) “And it must occur in that day,” is the utterance of Jehovah, “that the hearth of the king will perish, also the heart of the princes; and the priests will certainly be driven to astonishment, and the prophets themselves will be amazed.” (vs.10) And I proceeded to say: “Alas, O Sovereign Lord Jehovah! Truly you have absolutely deceived this people and Jerusalem, saying, ‘Peace itself will become YOURS,’ and the sword has reached clear to the soul.” // See Revelation 11:3 “sackcloth” comments.

**Jeremiah 4:14** “Wash your heart clean of sheer badness, O Jerusalem, in order that you may be saved. How long will your erroneous thoughts lodge within you?”

**Jeremiah 4:27-29** “For this is what Jehovah has said: “A desolate waste is what the whole land will become, and I shall not carry out a sheer extermination? On this account the land will mourn, and the heavens above will certainly become dark. It is because I have spoken, I have considered, and I have not felt regret, nor shall I turn back from it.” // Compare Malachi 4:5,6 and also the need for softening the heart of Jehovah during the approximate 45-day period of repentance.

**Jeremiah 5:7** “How can I forgive you for this very thing? Your own sons have left me, and they keep swearing by what is no God. And I kept satisfying them, but they continued committing adultery, and to the house of a prostitute woman they go in troops.”

**Jeremiah 6:21** “Therefore this is what Jehovah has said: “Here I am setting for this people stumbling blocks, and they will certainly stumble over them, fathers and sons together; the neighbor and his companion – they will perish.” // Compare Daniel 11:33 and Malachi 4:5,6

**Jeremiah 6:27-30** “I have made you a metal tester among my people, one making a thorough search; and you will take note and you must examine their way. All of them are the most stubborn men, walking about as slanderers – copper and iron. They are all of them ruinous. The bellows have been scorched. Out from their fire there is lead. One has kept refining intensely simply for nothing, and those who are bad have not been separated. Rejected silver is what people will call them, for Jehovah has rejected them.”

**Jeremiah 7:8** “Here YOU are putting YOUR trust in fallacious words – it will certainly be of no benefit at all.”

**Jeremiah 7:19,20** “Is it I whom they are offending?” is the utterance of Jehovah. ‘Is it not they themselves, for the purpose of shame to their faces?’ Therefore, this is what the Sovereign Lord Jehovah has said, ‘Look! My anger and my rage are being poured forth upon this place, upon mankind and upon domestic animal, and upon the tree of the field and upon the fruitage of the

ground; and it must burn, and it will not be extinguished.” // Remember how Jehovah had Jonah proclaim the fall of Nineveh but due to their repentance, Jehovah turned back his anger – However, for his servants in the future, they will be cleansed. // Notice too that it is because of Jehovah’s people offending Him that this rage happens.

**Jeremiah 7:30,31** “For the sons of Judah have done what is bad in my eyes,’ is the utterance of Jehovah. ‘They have set their disgusting things in the house upon which my name has been called, in order to defile it. And they have built the high places of Topheth, which is in the valley of the son of Hinnom, in order to burn their sons and their daughters in the fire, a thing that I had not commanded and that had not come up into my heart.” // This actually could occur physically today if God’s people do not warn their own people of the conquering and or destruction of the literal city of Jerusalem in our day – due to holding fast to an apostate teaching. This certainly has occurred symbolically today and literally in the past. – Compare comments for Daniel 11:31.

**Jeremiah 8:8-12:** ” ‘How can YOU men say: “We are wise, and the law of Jehovah is with us”?’ Surely, now, the false stylus of the secretaries has worked in sheer falsehood. The wise ones have become ashamed. they have become terrified and will be caught. Look! They have rejected the very word of Jehovah, and what wisdom do they have? Therefore, I shall give their wives to other men, their fields to those taking possession; for, from the least one even to the greatest one, each one is making unjust gain; from the prophet even to the priest, each one is acting falsely. And they try to heal the breakdown of the daughter of my people lightly, saying: “There is peace! There is peace!” when there is no peace. Did they feel shame because they had done even what was detestable? For one thing, they positively could not feel ashamed; for another thing, they did not know even how to feel humiliated. (vs.12b)” ‘Therefore they will fall among those who are falling. In the time of their being given attention, they will stumble, ‘Jehovah has said.” (See Daniel 11:33-35)

**Jeremiah 8:13-15**” ‘When doing the gathering, I shall bring them to their finish,’ is the utterance of Jehovah. ‘There will be no grapes on the vine, and there will be no figs on the fig tree, and the foliage itself will certainly wither. And things that I give to them will pass by them.” .. “For Jehovah our God has himself put us to silence, and he gives us poisoned water to drink, because we have sinned against Jehovah. There was a hoping for peace, but no good [came]; for a time of healing, but look! terror!” // compare Daniel 12:7

**Jeremiah 8:17-20** “For here I am sending in among YOU serpents, poisonous snakes, for which there is no charming, and they will certainly bite YOU,” is the utterance of Jehovah. (vs.18) A grief that is beyond curing has come up into me. My heart is ill. Here is the sound of the cry for help of the daughter of my people from a land far away: “Is Jehovah not in Zion? Or is her king not in her?” “Why is it that they have offended me with their graven images, with their vain foreign gods?” (vs.20) “The harvest has passed, the summer has come to an end; but as for us, we have not been saved!” // See Jeremiah 8:13-15 and Lamentations

**Jeremiah 9:2,3** “...Then I would leave my people and go away from them, for all of them are adulterers, a solemn assembly of treacherous dealers; and they bend their tongue as their bow in falsehood; but not for faithfulness have they proved mighty in the land. “For from badness to

badness they went forth, and they ignored even me,” is the utterance of Jehovah.” // See Lamentations and Malachi 4:5,6

**Jeremiah 9:4-6** “Guard yourselves each one against his own companion, and put YOUR trust in no brother at all...They have taught their tongue to speak falsehood...Through deception they have refused to know me,” is the utterance of Jehovah.”

**Jeremiah 9:23,24** “This is what Jehovah has said: “Let not the wise man brag about himself because of his wisdom, and let not the mighty man brag about himself because of his mightiness. Let not the rich man brag about himself because of his riches.” (Vs.24) “But let the one bragging about himself brag about himself because of this very thing, the having of insight and the having of knowledge of me, that I am Jehovah, the One exercising loving-kindness, justice and righteous in the earth; for in these things I do take delight,” is the utterance of Jehovah.” // Notice that Daniel 11:32-35 talks about some of the ones having insight will be made to stumble but it also says that those knowing their God will prevail.

**Jeremiah 10:21** “For the shepherds have behaved unreasoningly, and they have not looked even for Jehovah. That is why they have not acted with insight, and all their pastured animals have been scattered.”

**Jeremiah 10:23** “I well know, O Jehovah, that to earthling man his way does not belong. It does not belong to man who is walking even to direct his step.” // This is made very evident with the continued use of false teachings of man as being viewed as from Jehovah – It is compounded imperfection.

**Jeremiah 13:13,14** “And you must say to them, ‘This is what Jehovah has said: “Here I am filling all the inhabitants of this land and the kings that are sitting for David upon his throne and the priests and the prophets and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem with drunkenness. And I will dash them one against another, both the fathers and the sons, at the same time,” is the utterance of Jehovah. “I shall show no compassion, nor feel any sorrow, and I shall not have the mercy to keep from bringing them to ruin.” ‘ ’ // Good reference for other scriptures that show “David” sitting at God’s right hand after the literal David had already died – See Psalms 100:1 and Ezekiel 34 and 37 // Compare Isaiah 3:4; Mathew 24:10

**Jeremiah 14:12** “When they fast, I am not listening to their entreating cry; and when they offer up the whole burnt offering and the grain offering, I am taking no pleasure in them; for by the sword and by famine and by pestilence I am bringing them to their end.” – See verses 13-16. Compare Daniel 12:7

**Jeremiah 15:6** ” ‘You yourself have deserted me,’ is the utterance of Jehovah. ‘Backwards is the way you keep walking. And I shall stretch out my hand against you and bring you to ruin. I have got tired of feeling regret.’”

**Jeremiah 15:19,20** “Therefore this is what Jehovah has said: “If you will come back, then I shall bring you back. Before me you will stand. ...” And I have made you to this people a fortified copper wall; and they will certainly fight against you, but they will not prevail over you. For I am with you, to save you and to deliver you,” is the utterance of Jehovah.” // This “and they will

certainly fight against you” happens multiple times but for these instances, it is after God’s people turn around. It could happen to an extent during the approximate 3 and a half years and the beginning of the 45 day period of repentance and also certainly when Satan is released after the 1,000 year reign of Jesus (Revelation 20:7-10)

**Jeremiah 17:5-8** “This is what Jehovah has said: “Cursed is the able-bodied man who puts his trust in earthling man and actually makes flesh his arm, and whose heart turns away from Jehovah himself. And he will certainly become like a solitary tree in the desert plain and will not see when good comes; but he must reside in parched places in the wilderness, in a salt country that is not inhabited. Blessed is the able bodied man who puts his trust in Jehovah, and whose confidence Jehovah has become. And he will certainly become like a tree planted by the waters, that sends out its roots right by the watercourse; and he will not see when heat comes, but his foliage will actually prove to be luxuriant. And in the year of drought he will not become anxious, nor will he leave off from producing fruit” // Good example of how the righteous receive life giving blessings from Jehovah but the unrighteous do not – Compare Ezekiel 47:11

**Jeremiah 17:13** “O Jehovah, the hope of Israel, all those who are leaving you will be put to shame. Those apostatizing from me will be written down even in the earth, because they have left the source of living water, Jehovah.” – Compare Malachi 4:6b

**Jeremiah 18:11** “And now say, please, to the men of Judah and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem, ‘This is what Jehovah has said: “Here I am forming against YOU a calamity and thinking against YOU a thought. Turn back, please, each one from his bad way, and make YOUR ways and YOUR dealings good.” ‘ ”

**Jeremiah 22:8,9** And many nations will actually pass along by this city and say one to the other: “On what account did Jehovah do like this to this great city?” And they will have to say: “On the account of the fact that they left the covenant of Jehovah their God and proceeded to bow down to other gods and to serve them.” // The term “other gods” can easily refer to any number of man’s false teachings being exalted as being sacred.

**Jeremiah 23:2-6** “Therefore this is what Jehovah the God of Israel has said against the shepherds who are shepherding my people: “YOU yourselves have scattered my sheep; and YOU kept dispersing them, and YOU have not turned your attention to them.” (vs.3) “Here I am turning my attention upon YOU for the badness of YOUR dealings,” is the utterance of Jehovah. (vs.3) “And I myself shall collect together the remnant of my sheep out of all the lands to which I had dispersed them, and I will bring them back to their pasture ground, and they will certainly be fruitful and become many. And I will raise up over them shepherds who will actually shepherd them; and they will be afraid no more, neither will they be struck with any terror, and none will be missing,” is the utterance of Jehovah. (vs.5) “Look! There are days coming,” is the utterance of Jehovah, “and I will raise up to David a righteous sprout. And a king will certainly reign and act with discretion and execute justice and righteousness in the land. In his days Judah will be saved, and Israel itself will reside in security. And this is his name with which he will be called, Jehovah Is Our Righteousness.” // Notice the time period that this covers – It covers from before



the days of sackcloth on up into when Michael stands up – See timeline; Revelation 11:2,3; Daniel 12:1-3; Ezekiel 37:21-25; Zechariah 3:8; 6:12

**Jeremiah 23:11,12** “For both the prophet and the priest themselves have become polluted. Also in my own house I have found their badness,” is the utterance of Jehovah. “Therefore their way will become for them like slippery places in the gloom, into which they will be pushed and certainly fall.” “For I shall bring upon them a calamity, the year of their being given attention,” is the utterance of Jehovah.” // Notice the need for cleansing – Malachi 4:5,6

**Jeremiah 23:16,17** “This is what Jehovah of armies has said: “Do not listen to the words of the prophets who are prophesying to YOU people. They are making YOU become vain. The vision of their own heart is what they speak – not from the mouth of Jehovah. They are saying again and again to those who are disrespectful of me, ‘Jehovah has spoken: “Peace is what YOU people will come to have.” ‘And [to] every one walking in the stubbornness of his heart they have said , ‘No calamity will come upon YOU people.’ ”

**Jeremiah 23:25-28,32,33** “I have heard what the prophets who are prophesying falsehood in my own name have said, saying, ‘I have had a dream! I have had a dream!’ How long will it exist in the heart of the prophets who are prophesying the falsehood and who are prophets of the trickiness of their own heart? They are thinking of making my people forget my name by means of their dreams that they keep relating each one to the other, just as their fathers forgot my name by means of Baal. The prophet with whom there is a dream, let him relate the dream; but the one with whom my own word is, let him speak forth my word truthfully.” (vs.32) “Here I am against the prophets of false dreams,” is the utterance of Jehovah, “who relate them and cause my people to wander about because of their falsehoods and because of their boasting.” “But I myself did not send them or command them. So they will by no means benefit this people.” is the utterance of Jehovah.” (vs.33) “...” “YOU people are – O what a burden! And I shall certainly abandon YOU,” is the utterance of Jehovah.” – See verses 34-40 also. – See Ezekiel 13

**Jeremiah 24:2-10** “As for the one basket, the figs were very good, like early figs; and as for the other basket, the figs were very bad, so that they could not be eaten for badness...(vs.5) “This is what Jehovah the God of Israel has said, ‘Like these good figs, so I shall regard the exiles of Judah, whom I will send away from this place to the land of the Chaldeans, in a good way. And I will set my eye upon them in a good way, and I shall certainly cause them to return to this land. And I will build them up, and I shall not tear down; and I will plant them, and I shall not uproot. And I will give them a heart to know me, that I am Jehovah; and they must become my people, and I myself shall become their God, for they will return to me with all their heart.” (vs.8) “And like the bad figs that cannot be eaten for badness, this in fact is what Jehovah has said: “So I shall give Zedekiah the king of Judah and his princes and the remnant of Jerusalem who are remaining over in this land and those who are dwelling in the land of Egypt – I will also give them over for quaking, for calamity, in all the kingdoms of the earth, for reproach and for a proverbial saying, for a taunt and for a malediction, in all the places to which I shall disperse them. And I will send against them the sword, the famine and the pestilence, until they come to their finish off the ground that I gave to them and to their forefathers.” ‘ ” // Compare Zechariah 5:6-11; Revelation 6:9-11; Revelation 14:4 “first fruits”.

**Jeremiah 25:27-31** “And you must say to them, ‘This is what Jehovah of armies, the God of Israel, has said: “Drink and get drunk and puke and fall so that YOU cannot get up because of the sword that I am sending among YOU.” ‘ And it must occur that in case they refuse to take the cup out of your hand to drink, you must also say to them, ‘This is what Jehovah of armies has said: “YOU will drink without fail. For, look! it is upon the city upon which my name is called that I am starting off in bringing calamity, and should YOU yourselves in any way go free from punishment?” ‘ ” ‘YOU will not go free of punishment, for there is a sword that I am calling against all the inhabitants of the earth,’ is the utterance of Jehovah of armies. ..’From on high Jehovah himself will roar, and from his holy dwelling he will give forth his voice. Without fail he will roar upon his abiding place. A shout like that of those treading [the winepress] he will sing out against all the inhabitants of the earth.’ (vs.31) ” ‘A noise will certainly come clear to the farthest part of the earth, for there is a controversy that Jehovah has with the nations. He must personally put himself in judgment with all flesh. As regards the wicked ones, he must give them to the sword,’ is the utterance of Jehovah.” // Notice that Jehovah starts with cleansing his people first then cleanses the nations. Compare Malachi 3:2-4; Daniel 11:35; Revelation 14:14-20

**Jeremiah 28:9b** “...when the word of the prophet comes true the prophet whom Jehovah has sent in truth will become known.”

**Jeremiah 28:15,16** “And Jeremiah the prophet went on to say to Hananiah the prophet: “Listen, please, O Hananiah! Jehovah has not sent you, but you yourself have caused this people to trust in a falsehood. Therefore this is what Jehovah has said, ‘Look! I am sending you away from off the surface of the ground. This year you yourself must die, for you have spoken outright revolt against Jehovah.’” // Good example of how Jehovah views false prophets.

**Jeremiah 30:3** “For, “look! there are days coming,” is the utterance of Jehovah, “and I will gather the captive ones of my people, Israel and Judah,” Jehovah has said, “and I will bring them back to the land that I gave to their forefathers, and they will certainly repossess it.” “” // compare comments for Jeremiah 3:18 and verses 32:37-41

**Jeremiah 30:22-24** “Look! A windstorm of Jehovah, rage itself, has gone forth, an onward-sweeping tempest. Upon the head of the wicked ones it will whirl. The burning anger of Jehovah will not turn back until he will have executed and until he will have carried out the ideas of his heart. In the final part of the days YOU people will give YOUR consideration to it.” // Notice the time frame for all of this chapter – Revelation 11:11-18

**Jeremiah 31:1** “At that time,” is the utterance of Jehovah, “I shall become God to all the families of Israel; and as for them, they will become my people.” // Compare Daniel 12:1

**Jeremiah 31:13,14,28** “At that time the virgin will rejoice in the dance, also the young men and the old men, all together. And I will change their morning into exultation, and I will comfort them and make them rejoice away from their grief. And I will saturate the soul of the priests with fatness, and with my goodness my own people will become satisfied,” is the utterance of Jehovah.” (vs.28) “And it must occur that just as I had kept alert toward them to uproot and to pull down and to tear down and to destroy and to do damage, so I shall keep alert toward them to

build up and to plant,” is the utterance of Jehovah.” // Notice that the rejoicing happens just after the “tearing down” – This certainly occurs when when Michael stands up – Daniel 12:1

**Jeremiah 31:31** “Look! There are days coming,” is the utterance of Jehovah, “and I will conclude with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah a new covenant;” // Notice the two parts under one covenant – Compare Ezekiel 37:22

**Jeremiah 31:39** “And the line for measurement will yet actually go forth straight ahead to the hill of Gareb, and it will certainly go around to Goah.” // Notice how that now things can be measured – Compare Revelation 21:15-21

**Jeremiah 33:7-9** “And I will bring back the captives of Judah and the captives of Israel, and I will build them just as the start. And I will purify them from all their error with which they have sinned against me, and I will forgive all their errors with which they have sinned against me and with which they have transgressed against me. And she will certainly become to me a name of exultation, a praise and beauty toward all the nations of the earth who will hear of all the goodness that I am rendering to them. And they will certainly be in dread and be agitated on account of all the goodness and on account of all the peace that I am rendering to her.’” // Certainly, this happens when Michael stands up – Daniel 12:1; Malachi 3:2-4

**Jeremiah 33:15** “In those days and at that time I shall make sprout for David a righteous sprout, and he will certainly execute justice and righteousness in the land.” // Notice verses 16-26 and compare Isaiah 9:6,7; 11:1-5; 32:1,2,16-18; Zechariah 3:8; 6:12

**Jeremiah 33:17,18** “For this is what Jehovah has said, ‘There will not be cut off in David’s case a man to sit upon the throne of the house of Israel. (vs.18) And in the case of the priests, the Levites, there will not be cut off a man from before me to offer up whole burnt offering and to make smoke with a grain offering and to render sacrifice always.’” // This helps to identify the “continual [sacrifice]” (Jerusalem) mentioned in Daniel 11:31; 12:11 for our day.

**Jeremiah 35** God’s people do not listen to his prophets to turn back – they would not listen so Jehovah brings calamity upon his people.

**Jeremiah 50:20** “And in those days and at that time,” is the utterance of Jehovah, “the error of Israel will be searched for, but it will not be; and the sins of Judah, and they will not be found, for I shall forgive those whom I let remain.” // Compare Zechariah 3:3-7

**Jeremiah 51** speaks much of Babylon’s sudden falling and the wailing of people of the nations because of that. The fall was sudden back then and it will be sudden in our near future – Compare Revelation 18 comments . It is also interesting that Babylon the Great was celebrating and using items from Jehovah’s temple immediately before her fall. This is the same for the Babylon of our day – They will be celebrating over the demise of Jehovah’s people and at the same time, others (perhaps some religious groups) will own God’s people’s material things – But then they will be suddenly destroyed by mankind – See 45 day period.

**Jeremiah 51:6-8** “FLEE out of the midst Babylon, and provide escape each one for his own soul. Do not be rendered inanimate through her error. For it is the time of vengeance belonging

to Jehovah. There is treatment that he is paying back to her. Babylon has been a golden cup in the hand of Jehovah, she making all the earth drunk. From her the wine the nations have drunk. That is why the nations keep acting crazed. Suddenly Babylon has fallen, so that she is broken. Howl over her, YOU people. Take balsam for her pain. Perhaps she may be healed.” // This “Perhaps she may be healed” phrase seems to be stated more as a scornful statement rather than a possibility. – See Jeremiah 51 comments

**Jeremiah 51:9** speaks of Babylon reaching heaven (not as a tree) but in a bad way: “We would have been healed Babylon, but she has not been healed. Leave her, YOU people, and let us go each one to his own land. For clear to the heavens her judgment has reached, and it has been lifted up to the cloudy skies.”

**Jeremiah 51:25,41,57,63,64** “Here I am against you, O ruinous mountain,” is the utterance of Jehovah, “you ruiner of the whole earth; and I will stretch out my hand against you and roll you away from the crags and make you a burnt-out mountain.” (vs.41) “O how Sheshack has been captured, and how the Praise of the whole earth gets to be seized! How Babylon has become a mere object of astonishment among the nations!” (vs.57) “And I will make her princes and her wise ones, her governors and her deputy rulers and her mighty men drunk, and they must sleep an indefinitely lasting sleep, from which they will not wake up,” is the utterance of the King, whose name is Jehovah of armies.” (vs.63,64) “And it must occur that when you will have completed reading this book, you will tie to it a stone, and you must pitch it into the midst of the Euphrates. And you must say, ‘This is how Babylon will sink down and never rise up because of the calamity that I am bringing in upon her; and they will certainly tire themselves out.’” // Compare how this also fits for our future at Revelation 17:1-6 and chapter 18

## Isaiah

Isaiah seems to show that God's people have left him and so after some time, Jehovah leaves his people. His people then experience Jehovah's indignation. There is a refining of his people. Once refined, Jehovah turns his attention back to his people and blesses them in front of nations.

**Isaiah 1:4,9** “Woe to the sinful nation, the people heavy with error, an evildoing seed, ruinous sons! They have left Jehovah, they have treated the Holy One of Israel with disrespect, they have turned backwards.” (vs.9) “Unless Jehovah of armies himself had left remaining to us just a few survivors, we should have become just like Sodom, we should have resembled Gomorrah itself.”  
// Compare Malachi 1:6,7; 4:5,6

**Isaiah 1:15** “And when YOU spread out YOUR palms, I hide my eyes from YOU. Even though YOU make many prayers, I am not listening; with bloodshed (or rendered “bloodguilt” – Ref.) YOUR very hands have become filled.” // Parenthesis mine // Compare Lamentations 3:42-45

**Isaiah 1:21,22,25-27** “O how the faithful town has become a prostitute! She was full of justice; righteousness itself used to lodge in her, but now murderers. Your silver itself has become scummy dross. Your wheat beer is diluted with water. (vs.25) And I will turn back my hand upon you, and I shall smelt away your scummy dross as with lye, and I will remove all you waste products. And I will bring back again judges for you as at the first, and counselors for you as at the start. After this you will be called City of Righteousness, Faithful Town. // God's people needed cleansing back then and so do today partly because they are adulterating their worship by promoting and protecting false doctrine such as “1914” as being part of Jehovah's word. – See Isaiah 1:4,9 comments

**Isaiah 2:2-4** “And it must occur in the final part of the days [that] the mountain of the house of Jehovah will become firmly established above the top of the mountains, and it will certainly be lifted up above the hills; and to it all the nations must stream. And many peoples will certainly go and say: “Come, YOU people, and let us go up to the mountain of Jehovah, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will instruct us about his ways, and we will walk in his paths.” For out of Zion law will go forth, and the word of Jehovah out of Jerusalem. And he will certainly render judgment among the nations and set matters straight respecting many peoples. And they will have to beat their swords into plowshares and their spears into pruning shears. Nation will not lift up sword against nation, neither will they learn war anymore.” // This has not happened yet, but it will begin with Michael standing up – Daniel 12:1. Notice also the “straightening” work – See Malachi 3:2-4

**Isaiah 2:10,20,21** “Enter into the rock and hide yourself in the dust because of the dreadfulness of Jehovah, and from his superiority. (vs.20) In that day the earthling man will throw his worthless gods of silver and his valueless gods of gold that they had made for him to bow before to the schrewwice and to the bats, in order to enter into the holes in the rocks and into the clefts

of the crags, because of the dreadfulness of Jehovah and from his splendid superiority, when he rises up for the earth to suffer shocks.” // Compare Zephaniah 1:12-18; Revelation 6:12-17

**Isaiah 3:5** “And the people will actually tyrannize one over the other, even each one over his fellowman. they will storm, the boy against the old man, and the lightly esteemed one against the one to be honored.” // Compare Jeremiah 13:14; Mathew 24:10

**Isaiah 3:8** “For Jerusalem has stumbled, and Judah itself has fallen, because their tongue and their dealings are against Jehovah, in behaving rebelliously in the eyes of his glory.” // This happened in the past and will happen again in our future – Daniel 11:35

**Isaiah 3:24** According to the *American Standard Version* “And it shall come to pass, that instead of sweet spices there shall be rottenness; and instead of a girdle, a rope; and instead of well set hair, baldness; and instead of a robe, a girding of sackcloth; branding instead of beauty.” // This happens with the start of Jerusalem being conquered in our day – See timeline and compare Revelation 11:2 comments.

**Isaiah 4:1** “And seven women will actually grab hold of one man in that day, saying: “We shall eat our own bread and wear our own mantles; only may we be called by your name to take away our reproach.” // I find this a very interesting verse. The time period seems to be when God’s people are being cleansed because It appears that this verse is talking about preceding verses. It is biblically fine for a man to have more then one wife (See [marriage](#)). It also agrees with Jeremiah 8:8-10; Malachi 2:13-15 in the circumstance where the husband of a wife is falsely worshiping Jehovah and the wife desires to have a husband who serves Jehovah properly. In Malachi 2:15, it brings out that it should be the desire of both husband and wife to have a sacred marriage – Which would include the desire to please their creator and treat each other according to Jehovah’s will (which is based upon love). It is also interesting that these woman mentioned here in Isaiah 4:1 offer to literally support themselves – it seems they just want the basics to be known to be married (or closely associated) to a man serving Jehovah properly. However, it may also reflect the desire to be called by anyone’s name other then by their husband’s, due to the degree of disgrace on his people. This account could be literal and / or spiritual. // This should not be confused with the “ten men out of all the languages of the nations will take hold, yes, they will actually take hold of the skirt of a man who is a Jew, saying: “We will go with YOU people, for we have heard [that] God is with YOU people.” (Zechariah 8:23). Isaiah 4:1 seems to be based upon the desire to take away reproach that is brought upon God’s people as described in chapter 3 – There seems to be a common theme especially from 3:24 thru 4:1. Zechariah 8:23 is about nations trying to save themselves – not so much about taking away reproach because they had not been of God’s people.

**Isaiah 4:2,3** “In that day what Jehovah makes sprout will come to be for decoration and for glory, and the fruitage of the land will be something to be proud of and something beautiful for those of Israel who have escaped. And it must occur that the ones remaining in Zion and the ones left over in Jerusalem will be said to be holy to him, everyone written down for life in Jerusalem.” // This seems to occur when Michael stands up. See Daniel 12:1; Isaiah 11:1-5 comments.



**Isaiah 5:1-7** God’s people are referred to as “wild grapes” which are not fit for use – They are supposed to be good grapes, but they are not so they “are destined for burning down”.

**Isaiah 5:13** “Therefore my people will have to go into exile for lack of knowledge; and their glory will be famished men, and their crowd will be parched with thirst.” // This is a spiritual famine. See Revelation 11:2 comments.

**Isaiah 5:21,24b-25** “Woe to those wise in their own eyes and discreet even in front of their own faces!” (vs.24b) “...because they have rejected the law of Jehovah of armies, and the saying of the Holy One of Israel they have disrespected. That is why the anger of Jehovah has grown hot against his people, and he will stretch out his hand against them and strike them. And the mountains will be agitated, and their dead bodies will become like the offal in the midst of the streets.” // This “wisdom” is not based upon Jehovah’s teachings (see “1914” as an example).

**Isaiah 6:8** “And I began to hear the voice of Jehovah saying: “Whom shall I send, and who will go for us?” And I proceeded to say: “Here I am! Send me.” // Isaiah volunteered for an assignment to be used by Jehovah but he knew Jehovah’s own people would not be responsive. This assignment would be “Until the cities actually crash in ruins, to be without an inhabitant, and the houses be without earthling man, and the ground itself is ruined into a desolation; and Jehovah actually removes earthling men far away, and the deserted condition does become very extensive in the midst of the land. And there will still be in it a tenth, and it must again become something for burning down, like a big tree and like a massive tree in which, when there is a cutting down [of them], there is a stump; a holy seed will be the stump of it.” (11-13) // God’s people would be “refined” to the core, a “stump” would remain – Compare Isaiah 11:1-5; Daniel 12:7. This could also define the length of the current assignment of the “Elijah” for our day.

**Isaiah 9:6,7** See [Who is this mighty God?](#)

The following is taken from the Isaiah page:

**Isaiah 9:6,7** The correct translation is past tense, as seen in the NETS and Tanakh (1985):

**Isaiah 9:6,7 (NETS).**

“Because a child was born for us,

a son also given to us,

whose sovereignty was upon his shoulder,

and *he is* named Messenger of Great Counsel,

for I will bring peace upon the rulers, peace and health to him.

(7) His sovereignty is great,

and his peace has no boundary

upon the throne of Daud and his kingdom,

to make it prosper and to uphold it  
with righteousness and judgement  
from this time onward and forevermore.

The zeal of the Lord Sabaoth will do these things.”

**Isaiah 9:6,7 (vs.5-6; TANAKH);**

“For a child has been born to us,

A son has been given us.

And authority has settled on his shoulders.

He *has been* named

‘The Mighty God is planning grace;

The Eternal Father, a peaceable ruler’ –

(6) In token of abundant authority

And of peace without limit

Upon David’s throne and kingdom,

That it might be firmly established

In justice and equity

Now and evermore.

The zeal of the LORD of Hosts

Shall bring this to pass.”

**Compare a mistranslation of Isaiah 9:6,7 (NWT);** “For there has been a child born to us, there has been a son given to us; and the princely rule will come to be upon his shoulder. And his name *will be* called Wonderful Counselor, Mighty God, Eternal Father, Prince of Peace. To the abundance of the priestly rule and to peace there will be no end, upon the throne of David and upon his kingdom in order to establish it firmly and to sustain it by means of justice and by means of righteousness, from now on and to time indefinite. The very zeal of Jehovah of armies will do this.”

**Isaiah 9:13-17** “And the people themselves have not returned to the One striking them, and Jehovah of armies they have not sought. And Jehovah will cut off from Israel head and tail, shoot and rush, in one day. The aged and highly respected one is the head, and the prophet giving false instruction is the tail. And those who are leading this people on prove to be the ones causing [them] to wander; and those of them who are being led on, the ones who are being confused. That is why Jehovah will not rejoice even over their young men, and upon their fatherless boys

and upon their widows he will have no mercy; because **all of them are apostates** and evildoers and every mouth is speaking senselessness. In view of all this his anger has not turned back, but his hand is stretched out still.” // Compare Jeremiah 17:13 and Daniel 11:33-35. The term “in one day” most likely denotes a short period of time – how short? – Time will tell. // Bold lettering is mine.

**Isaiah 10:5-7** “Aha, the Assyrian, the rod for my anger, and the stick that is in their hand for my denunciation! Against an apostate nation I shall send him, and against the people of my fury I shall issue a command to him, to take much spoil and to take much plunder and to make it a trampling place like the clay of the streets. Though he may not be that way, he will feel inclined; though his heart may not be that way, he will scheme, because to annihilate is in his heart, and to cut off nations not a few.” // It is interesting that “Though he may not be that way” denotes actions of a nation or nations against God’s people may not be the way the nation would normally act – Compare Daniel 12:7; Revelation 13:7

**Isaiah 10:16-22** “Therefore the [true] Lord, Jehovah of armies, will keep sending upon his fat ones a wasting disease, and under his glory a burning will keep burning away like the burning of a fire. And Israel’s Light must become a fire, and his Holy One a flame; and it must blaze up and eat up his weeds and his thorn bushes in one day. And the glory of his forest and of his orchard He will bring to an end, even from the soul clear to the flesh, and it must become like the melting away of one that is ailing. And the rest of the trees of his forest – they will become such a number that a mere boy will be able to write them down. And it will certainly occur in that day that those remaining over of Israel and those who have escaped of the house of Jacob will never again support themselves upon the one striking them, and they will certainly support themselves upon Jehovah, the Holy One of Israel, in truthfulness. A mere remnant of Jacob, to the Mighty God. For although your people, O Israel, would prove to be like the grains of sand of the sea, a mere remnant among them will return. An extermination decided upon will be flooding through in righteousness” // See comments for Isaiah 9:13-17

**Isaiah 11:1-5** “And there must go forth a twig out of the stump of Jesse; and out of his roots a sprout will be fruitful. And upon him the spirit of Jehovah must settle down, the spirit of wisdom and of understanding, the spirit of counsel and of mightiness, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of Jehovah; and there will be enjoyment by him in the fear of Jehovah. And he will not judge by any mere appearance to his eyes, nor reprove simply according to the thing heard by his ears. And with righteousness he must judge the lowly ones, and with uprightness he must give reproof in behalf of the meek ones of the earth. And he must strike the earth with the rod of his mouth; and with the spirit of his lips he will put the wicked one to death. And righteousness must prove to be the belt of his hips, and faithfulness the belt of his loins.” // Compare Jeremiah 33:15; Zechariah 3:8; 6:12; Isaiah 9:6,7; 32:1,2,16-18 // It might be possible that the term “out of the stump of Jesse” could refer to the “core” of faithfulness to Jehovah (in this case) – This is based upon the thoughts of Isaiah 10:16-22 and Isaiah 6:8

**Isaiah 11:6-9** “And the wolf will actually reside for a while with the male lamb, and with the kid the leopard itself will lie down, and the calf and the maned young lion and the well-fed animal all together; and a mere little boy will be leader over them. And the cow and the bear themselves

will feed: together their young ones will lie down. And even the lion will eat straw just like the bull. And the sucking child will certainly play upon the hole of the cobra; and upon the light aperture of a poisonous snake will a weaned child actually put his own hand. They will not do any harm or cause any ruin in all my holy mountain; because the earth will certainly be filled with the knowledge of Jehovah as the waters are covering the very sea.” // This will certainly be symbolic and literal starting with Michael standing up (Daniel 12:1). See also Revelation 21:1-4

**Isaiah 11:10** “And it must occur in that day that there will be the root of Jesse that will be standing up as a signal for the peoples. To him even the nations will turn inquiringly, and his resting place must become glorious.” // See comments for Isaiah 11:1-9

**Isaiah 11:11** “And it must occur in that day that Jehovah will again offer his hand, a second time, to acquire the remnant of his people who will remain over ..” // Most likely, this is referring to Revelation 11:11-13 as the “second time”. The first time would be described at Zechariah 3.

**Isaiah 12:1,2** “And in that day you will be sure to say: “I shall thank you, O Jehovah, for [although] you got incensed at me, your anger gradually turned back, and you proceeded to comfort me. Look! God is my salvation. I shall trust and be in no dread; for Jah Jehovah is my strength and [my] might, and he came to be the salvation of me.” // Compare Hosea 14:1-9; Micah 7:18; See comments for Isaiah 11:6-9. Notice also how God’s people learned to fully trust in him and not in themselves.

**Isaiah 13:4-20** “Listen! A crowd in the mountains, something like a numerous people! Listen! The uproar of kingdoms, of nations gathered together! Jehovah of armies is mustering the army of war. They are coming from the land far away, from the extremity of the heavens, Jehovah and the weapons of his denunciation, to wreck all the earth. (vs.6) “Howl, YOU people, for the day of Jehovah is near! As a despoiling from the Almighty it will come. That is why all hands themselves will drop down, and the whole heart itself of mortal man will melt. And people have become disturbed. Convulsions and birth pains themselves grab hold; like a woman that is giving birth they have labor pains. they look at each other in amazement. Their faces are inflamed faces. (vs.9) “Look! The day of Jehovah itself is coming, cruel both with fury and with burning anger, in order to make the land an object of astonishment, and that it may annihilate [the land’s] sinners out of it. For the very stars of the heavens and their constellations of Kesil will not flash forth their light; the sun will actually grow dark at its going forth, and the moon itself will not cause its light to shine. And I shall certainly bring home [its own] badness upon the productive land, and their own error upon the wicked themselves. And I shall actually cause the pride of the presumptuous ones to cease, and the haughtiness of the tyrants I shall abase. I shall make mortal man rarer than refined gold, and earthling man [rarer] than the gold of Ophir. That is why I shall cause heave itself to become agitated, and the earth will rock out of its place at the fury of Jehovah of armies and at the day of his burning anger...(vs.17) “Here I am arousing against them the Medes, who account silver itself as nothing and who, as respects gold, take no delight in it. And [their] bows will dash even young men to pieces. And the fruitage of the belly they will not pity; for sons their eye will not feel sorry. And Babylon, the decoration of kingdoms, the beauty of the pride of the Chaldeans, must become as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah. She will never be inhabited...” // During the approximate 45 day period,

the nations realize that there is a God and they realize who his people really are. They also realize that they have to destroy “Babylon” to drastically increase their possibility of survival and to show their submission to Jehovah’s arrangement. They also have seen great signs not only showing them that there is a God and what he wants and what he is going to do to unrepentant ones but they see manifestations of His great power – For most, they realize they have no choice but to show repentance and also destroy Babylon’s organization – For others who are stupid, they will not repent and so will be destroyed when Michael stands up. Compare Revelation 6:12-16; 11:11-18; 14:6-12; 16:1-21

**Isaiah 14:1-7** Jehovah chooses his people and people are joyful: “For Jehovah will show mercy to Jacob, and he is yet certain to choose Israel; and he will actually give them rest upon their soil, and the alien resident must be joined to them, and they must attach themselves to the house of Jacob. And peoples will actually take them and bring them to their own place, and the house of Israel must take them to themselves as a possession upon the soil of Jehovah as menservants and as maidservants; and they must become the captors of those holding them captive, and they must have in subjection those who were driving them to work. (vs.3) And it must occur in the day when Jehovah gives you rest from your pain and from your agitation and from the hard slavery in which you were made a slave, that you must raise up this proverbial saying against the king of Babylon and say: “How has the one driving [others] to work come to a stop, the oppression come to a stop! Jehovah has broken to rod of the wicked ones, the staff of the ruling ones, the one striking peoples in fury with a stroke incessantly, the one subduing nations in sheer anger with a persecution without restraint. The whole earth has come to rest, has become free of disturbance. People have become cheerful with joyful cries.” // **Notice the timing:** Alien residents attaching themselves to God’s people, Jehovah has broken the staff of the ruling ones, and the whole earth is free from disturbance – The main fulfillment of this is when Michael stands up – Daniel 12:1. Also it is important to not how God’s people were “captives” just before this – And how their power is to be dashed to pieces – Compare Daniel 11:33; 12:7; Revelation 6:9-11; 7:1-8; 11:2-3; 20:4 comments.

**Isaiah 14:12-25** as part of a proverbial saying against “the king of Babylon” (14:4), these verses can parallel Satan’s attitude which is based upon greed. Notice parts: “O, how you have fallen from heaven, you shining one, son of the dawn! How you have been cut down to the earth, you who were disabling nations! As for you, you have said in your heart, ‘To the heavens I shall go up. Above the stars of God I shall lift up my throne, and I shall sit down upon the mountain of meeting, in the remotest parts of the north. I shall go up above the high places of the clouds; I shall make myself resemble the Most High.’ (vs.15) “However, down to Sheol you will be brought.... (vs.20) ...because you brought your own land to ruin, you killed your own people. To time indefinite the offspring of evildoers will not be named....”

**Isaiah 16** could show a similar attitude and actions of nations and people in our near future where they may try to “conceal” God’s people from persecution: (vs.3); “..Make your shadow just like the night in the midst of noontime. Conceal the dispersed ones; do not betray anyone fleeing. May my dispersed ones reside as aliens even in you, O Moab. Become a place of concealment to them because of the despoiler. For the oppressor has reached his end; the

despoiling has terminated; those trampling down [others] have been finished off the earth. (vs.5) “And in loving kindness a throne will certainly be firmly established; and one must sit down upon it in trueness in the tent of David, judging and seeking justice and being prompt in righteousness....(vs.14) “And now Jehovah has spoken, saying: “Within three years, according to the years of a hired laborer, the glory of Moab must also be disgraced with much commotion of every sort, and those who remain over will be a trifling few, not mighty.” // All those who submit to Jehovah and are judged worthy will be spared on the day of his wrath. Nineveh is a good example. However, as time went on, they ended up being overthrown because they went back to their bad ways. This will probably happen to some during Michael’s reign. Compare Isaiah 65:20; Daniel 7:25; Revelation 12:15,16

**Isaiah 17:4** “And it must occur in that day that the glory of Jacob will become lowly, and even the fatness of his flesh will be made lean.” // compare Revelation 11:2

**Isaiah 17:7-9** “In that day earthling man will look up to his Maker, and his own eyes will gaze at the Holy One of Israel himself. And he will not look to the alters, the work of his hands; and at what his fingers have made he will not gaze, either at the sacred poles or at the incense stands, In that day his fortress cities will become like a place left entirely in the woodland, even the branch that they have left entirely on account of the sons of Israel; and it must become a desolate waste.” // This indicates God’s people (see verses 10-11) finally looking to God for direction and not to “what his fingers have made.”

**Isaiah 17:10,11** “For you have forgotten the God of your salvation; and the rock of your fortress you have not remembered. That is why you plant pleasant plantations, and with the shoot of a stranger you set it. In the day you may carefully fence about the plantation of yours, and in the morning you may cause the seed of yours to sprout, [but] the harvest will certainly flee in the day of the disease and incurable pain.” // By protecting false doctrine from being tested against inspired scriptural reasoning, people show that they are putting more faith in false doctrine than Jehovah’s word itself! – they have “forgotten” Jehovah! I firmly believe this has happened with more than one false teaching – See the Why Satan link and the “1914” link. // The timing of this scripture is seen in Isaiah 17:7.

**Isaiah 19** // I believe an important key to understanding it is found in the verses 23-25; “In that day there will come to be a highway out of Egypt to Assyria, and Assyria will actually come into Egypt, and Egypt into Assyria; and they will certainly render service, Egypt with Assyria. In that day Israel will come to be the third with Egypt and with Assyria, namely, a blessing in the midst of the earth, because Jehovah of armies will have blessed it, saying: “Blessed be my people, Egypt, and the work of my hands, Assyria, and my inheritance, Israel.” It seems that all involved are enjoying blessing from Jehovah’s arrangement.

**Isaiah 21:8-10** According to *The NIV Interlinear Hebrew-English Old Testament*: “And the lookout shouted, “Day after day, my lord, I stand on the watchtower; every night I stay at my post. (vs.9) Look, here comes a man in a chariot with a team of horses. And he gives back the answer: ‘Babylon has fallen, has fallen! All the images of its gods lie shattered on the ground!’ ” (vs.10) O my people, crushed on the threshing floor, I tell you what I have heard from the LORD



Almighty, from the God of Israel.” // This corresponds with the timing of when the Babylon in Revelation falls because when it falls, God’s people are in a “crushed” position. – See Daniel 12:7; Revelation chapter 18 comments

**Isaiah 24:3-6,20** “Without fail the land will be emptied, and without fail it will be plundered, for Jehovah himself has spoken this word. The land has gone to mourning, has faded away. The productive land has withered, has faded away. The high ones of the people of the land have withered. And the very land has been polluted under its inhabitants, for they have bypassed the laws, changed the regulation, broken the indefinitely lasting covenant. That is why the curse itself has eaten up the land, and those inhabiting it are held guilty. That is why the inhabitants of the land have decreased in number, and very few mortal men have remained over.” (vs.20) “The land absolutely moves unsteadily like a drunken man, and it has swayed to and fro like a lookout hut. And its transgression has become heavy upon it, and it must fall, so that it will not rise up again.” // See Isaiah 10:16-22; 9:13-17

**Isaiah 24:21-23** “And it must occur in that day that Jehovah will turn his attention upon the army of the height in the height, and upon the kings of the ground upon the ground. And they will certainly be gathered with a gathering as of prisoners into the pit, and be shut up in the dungeon; and after an abundance of days they will be given attention. And the full moon has become abashed, and the glowing [sun] has become ashamed, for Jehovah of armies has become king in Mount Zion and in Jerusalem and in front of his elderly men with glory.” // The phrase “the army of the height in the height” can refer to fallen angels and the phrase “the kings of the ground upon the ground” can refer to the fallen angels who “control” kingdoms (to an extent) on the earth. Any humans (including human kings) that fight against Michael when he stands up are destroyed at that time – they are not allowed to live. However, Satan (which would include any angels under his authority) is hurled “into the abyss” for 1,000 years. Compare Psalms 2:12; Revelation 16:13,14; 19:17-21; 20:3 . The phrase “his elderly men” reminds me of the “24 elders” mentioned in Revelation – See Revelation 4:4 comments. The phrase “Jehovah of armies has become king in Mount Zion and in Jerusalem” happens in a manner that Jehovah’s son Jesus (also known as “Michael” or “the Lamb”) represents him as he takes rulership over the earth – See Jehovah’s organization link; Psalms 2; 110:1; Daniel 2:44; 12:1; Revelation 7:10; 14:1 // Compare Mathew 6:9-13

**Isaiah 25:1** “O Jehovah, you are my God. I exalt you, I laud your name, for you have done wonderful things, counsels from earlier times, in faithfulness, in trustworthiness.” // This is an excellent example with excellent reasons why we should also laud God’s name Jehovah.

**Isaiah 25:2-5** “For you have made a city a pile of stones, a fortified town a crumbling ruin, a dwelling tower of strangers to be no city, which will not be rebuilt even to time indefinite. That is why those who are a strong people will glorify you; the town of the tyrannical nations, they will fear you. For you have become a stronghold to the lowly one, a stronghold to the poor one in distress that he has, a refuge from the rainstorm, a shade from the heat, when the blast of the tyrannical ones is like a rainstorm against a wall. Like the heat in a waterless country, the noise of strangers you subdue, the heat with the shadow of a cloud. The melody itself of the tyrannical

ones becomes suppressed.” // Here we see Jehovah has turned his attention back to his people – protecting them. Other blessings are mentioned starting with the next verse.

**Isaiah 25:6-9** “And Jehovah of armies will certainly make for all the peoples, in this mountain, a banquet of well-oiled dishes, a banquet of [wine kept on] the dregs, of well-oiled dishes filled with marrow, of [wine kept on] the dregs, filtered. And in this mountain he will certainly swallow up the face of the envelopment that is enveloping over all the peoples, and the woven work that is interwoven upon all the nations. He will actually swallow up death forever, and the sovereign Lord Jehovah will certainly wipe the tears from all faces. And the reproach of his people he will take away from all the earth, for Jehovah himself has spoken [it].” (vs.9) “And in that day one will certainly say: “Look! This is our God. We have hoped in him, and he will save us. This is Jehovah. We have hoped in him. Let us be joyful and rejoice in the salvation by him.” // This “envelopment that is enveloping over all the peoples” could be what is or part of what is next described as “death” and/or imperfection. This “death” is condoned by Satan but Jehovah “swallows it up” // Also **notice the timing**: God’s people had reproach, but Jehovah takes it away – this happens after the three and a half years’ time period of tribulation for God’s people – Compare Revelation 11:2,3; 21:1-5 comments.

**Isaiah 26:4,7,15,19** “Trust in Jehovah, YOU people, for all times, for in Jah Jehovah is the Rock of times indefinite. (vs.7) The path of the righteous one is uprightness. You being upright, you will smooth out the very course of a righteous one. (vs.15) You have added to the nation; O Jehovah, you have added to the nation; you have glorified yourself...(vs.19) Your dead ones will live. A corpse of mine – they will rise up. Awake and cry out joyfully, YOU residents in the dust! For your dew is as the dew of mallows, and the earth itself will let even those impotent in death drop [in birth].” // This is a song mentioned in verse one that is sung “in the land of Judah”. We see here that God’s people will have learned their lesson to only trust in Jehovah, “for all times”. // I believe that this song includes the entire first 19 verses of this chapter – It is difficult to figure but it seems to flow together. // Notice how it is not by any works of God’s people that Jehovah is glorified but it was by his works – Compare Revelation 7:10,11; 14:6,7; 19:6-8 comments.

**Isaiah 26:20,21** “Go, my people, enter into your interior rooms, and shut your doors behind you. Hide yourself but for a moment until the denunciation passes over. For, look! Jehovah is coming forth from his place to call to account the error of the inhabitant of the land against him, and the land will certainly expose her bloodshed and will no longer cover over her killed ones.” // This seems to be a frightening time because of the term “Hide yourself” and that errors are going to be accounted for against humans. This most likely is the day of wrath of Jehovah spoken about in Revelation. Compare Revelation 6:12-17; 11:16-18.

**Isaiah 27:1** “In that day Jehovah, with his hard and great and strong sword, will turn his attention to Leviathan, the gliding serpent, even to Leviathan, the crooked serpent, and he will certainly kill the sea monster that is in the sea.” // This an interesting verse due to different translator’s renderings. The *American Standard Version* renders it as: “In that day Jehovah with his hard and great and strong sword will punish leviathan the swift serpent, and leviathan the crooked serpent; and he will slay the monster that is in the sea.” *THE NEW JERUSALEM BIBLE* translates it as: “That day Yahweh will punish, with his unyielding sword, massive and

strong, Leviathan the fleeing serpent, Leviathan the coiling serpent; he will kill the dragon the sea.” // Most of the translations that I have looked at put a semicolon before the thought of “he will kill...” – I believe that there are two instances spoken about here – One is that it is punished and the other is that it is destroyed – This is supported by Satan’s demise as spoken about in Revelation – See Revelation 20:3,7-10

**Isaiah 28:14-19** “Therefore hear the word of Jehovah, YOU braggarts, YOU rulers of this people who are in Jerusalem: Because YOU men have said: “We have concluded a covenant with Death; and with Sheol we have effected a vision; the overflowing flash flood, in case it should pass through, will not come to us, for we have made a lie our refuge and in falsehood we have concealed ourselves”; therefore this is what the Sovereign Lord Jehovah has said: “Here I am laying as a foundation in Zion a stone, a tried stone, the precious corner of a sure foundation. No one exercising faith will get panicky. And I will make justice the measuring line and righteousness the leveling instrument; and the hail must sweep away the refuge of a lie, and the waters themselves will flood out the very place of concealment. And YOUR covenant with Death will certainly be dissolved, and that vision of YOURS with Sheol will not stand. The overflowing flash flood, when it passes through – YOU must also become for it a trampling place. As often as it passes through, it will take YOU men away, because morning by morning it will pass through, during the day and during the night; and it must become nothing but a reason for quaking to make [others] understand what has been heard.” // This will be true of any false teaching of man – They have fooled themselves that their false teaching is going to protect them from adversity but it does not – They do not even realize that they are teaching falsehood because they refuse to check it against scriptural reasoning – Compare Isaiah 17:10,11 comments and Daniel 11:33-35.

**Isaiah 29:13,14** “And Jehovah says: “For the reason that this people have come near with their mouth, and they have glorified me merely with their lips, and they have removed their heart itself far away from me, and their fear toward me becomes men’s commandment that is being taught, therefore here I am, the One that will act wonderfully again with this people, in a wonderful manner and with something wonderful; and the wisdom of their wise men must perish, and the very understanding of their discreet men will conceal itself.” // This has the same thought as Isaiah 28:14-19 with comments. // The timing for this vision for our day is made clear in verses 17-24.

**Isaiah 29:17-24** “Is it not yet but a very little time and Lebanon must be turned into an orchard and the orchard itself will be accounted just as a forest? And in that day the deaf ones will certainly hear the words of the book, and out of the gloom and out of the darkness even the eyes of the blind ones will see. And the meek ones will certainly increase their rejoicing in Jehovah himself, and even the poor ones of mankind will be joyful in the Holy One of Israel himself, because the tyrant must reach his end, and the bragger must come to his finish, and all those keeping alert to do harm must be cut off, those bringing a man into sin by [his] word, and those who lay bait even for the one reproving in the gate, and those who push aside the righteous one with empty arguments. (vs.22) Therefore this is what Jehovah has said to the house of Jacob, he that redeemed Abraham: “Jacob will not now be ashamed, nor will his own face now grow pale;

for when he sees his children, the work of my hands, in the midst of him, they will sanctify my name, and they will certainly sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and the God of Israel they will regard with awe. And those who are erring in [their] spirit will actually get to know understanding, and even those who are grumbling will learn instruction.” // There are numerous places in these verses which show the primary fulfillment of this is to be in our near future – When Michael stands up – Daniel 12:1-3 Notice too “Jacob will not now be ashamed” – denoting that he had reason to be ashamed – See verses 13,14; 24:3-6 comments

**Isaiah 30:8-11** “Now come, write it upon a tablet with them, and inscribe it even in a book, that it may serve for a future day, for a witness to time indefinite. For it is a rebellious people, untruthful sons, son who have been unwilling to hear the law of Jehovah; who have said to the ones seeing, ‘YOU must not see,’ and to the ones having visions, ‘YOU must not envision for us any straightforward things. Speak to us smooth things; envision deceptive things. Turn aside from the way; deviate from the path. Cause the Holy One of Israel to cease just on account of us.’”

**Isaiah 30:20,21** “And Jehovah will certainly give YOU people bread in the form of distress and water in the form of oppression; yet your Grand Instructor will no longer hide himself, and your eyes must become [eyes] seeing your Grand Instructor. And your own ears will hear a word behind you saying: “This is the way. Walk in it, YOU people,” in case YOU people should go to the right or in case YOU should go to the left.” // Notice how Jehovah hid himself from his people but then he lets himself be found by them and his people’s ears are hearing how to walk straight – compare Malachi 4:4-6; Daniel 11:35; Lamentations

**Isaiah 31:1,3** “Woe to those going down to Egypt for assistance, those who rely on mere horses, and who put their trust in war chariots, because they are numerous, and in steeds, because they are very mighty, but who have not looked to the Holy One of Israel and have not searched for Jehovah himself. And he is also wise and will bring in what is calamitous, and he has not called back his own words; and he will certainly rise up against the house of evildoers and against the assistance of those practicing what is hurtful. The Egyptians, though, are earthling men, and not God; and their horses are flesh, and not spirit. And Jehovah himself will stretch out his hand, and he that is offering help will have to stumble, and he that is being helped will have to fall, and at the same time they will all of them come to an end.” / This could prefigure those who help God’s people when they are rejected by him and God’s people being helped. Daniel 12:7 mentions that the power of the holy ones is dashed to pieces just before Michael stands up. However, those who have tried to help God’s people will be rewarded after Michael stands up – Daniel 12:1; Matthew 25:34-46 // This is also a good example to only put full trust in Jehovah – not man – See Jeremiah 10:23

**Isaiah 32:1,2,16-18** “Look! A king will reign for righteousness itself; and as respects princes, they will rule as princes for justice itself. And each one must prove to be like a hiding place from the wind and a place of concealment from the rainstorm, like streams of water in a waterless country, like the shadow of a heavy crag in an exhausted land. (vs.16) “And in the wilderness justice will certainly reside, and in the orchard righteousness itself will dwell. And the work of the [true] righteousness must become peace; and the service of the [true] righteousness, quietness

and security to time indefinite. And my people must dwell in a peaceful abiding place and in residences of full confidence and in undisturbed resting-places.” // Notice the timeframe – When Michael stands up (Daniel 12:1). Also see Revelation 5:9 where the Lamb has co-rulers. // Compare Isaiah 11:1-5 comments

**Isaiah 33:14** “In Zion the sinners have come to be in dread; shivering has grabbed hold of the apostates: “Who of us can reside for any time with a devouring fire? Who of us can reside for any time with long-lasting conflagrations?” // Compare Jeremiah 17:13; Revelation 11:18

**Isaiah 34:1-3,8** “Come up close, YOU nations, to hear; and YOU national groups, pay attention. Let the earth and that which fills it listen, the productive land and all its produce. For Jehovah has indignation against all the nations, and rage against all their army. He must devote them to destruction; he must give them to the slaughter. And their slain ones will be thrown out; and as for their carcasses, their stink will ascend; and the mountains must melt because of their blood.” (vs.8) For Jehovah has a day of vengeance, a year of retributions for the legal case over Zion.” // Verses 4-7 talk about a lot of blood from those destroyed by Jehovah – Compare Revelation 11:18; 14:18-20; 19:11-18. This happens when Michael stands up – Daniel 12:1

**Isaiah 35:1,4-10** “The wilderness and the waterless region will exult, and the desert plain will be joyful and blossom as the saffron. (vs.4) Say to those who are anxious at heart: “Be strong. Do not be afraid. Look! YOUR own God will come with vengeance itself, God even with a repayment. He himself will come and save YOU people.” (vs.5) “At that time the eyes of the blind ones will be opened, and the very ears of the deaf ones will be unstopped. At that time the lame one will climb up just as a stag does, and the tongue of the speechless one will cry out in gladness. For in the wilderness waters will have burst out, and torrents in the desert plain. And the heat-parched ground will have become as a reedy pool, and the thirsty ground as springs of water. In the abiding place of jackals, a resting-place for [them], there will be green grass with reeds and papyrus plants. (vs.8) “And there will certainly come to be a highway there, even a way; and the Way of Holiness it will be called. The unclean one will not pass over it. And it will be for the one walking on the way, and no foolish ones will wander about [on it]. No lion will prove to be there, and the rapacious sort of wild beasts will not come up on it. None will be found there; and the repurchased ones must walk [there]. And the very ones redeemed by Jehovah will return and certainly come to Zion with a joyful cry; and rejoicing to time indefinite will be upon their head. To exultation and rejoicing they will attain, and grief and sighing must flee away.” // Notice the timing: Those redeemed by Jehovah return and rejoice and blind ones see and deaf ones hear – This will be true on both a spiritual and physical level – Compare Revelation 21:3-4 and Zechariah 3:4 as an example of “error to pass away”.

**Isaiah 40:3-5** “Listen! Someone is calling out in the wilderness: “Clear up the way of Jehovah, YOU people! MAKE the highway for our God through the desert plain straight. Let every valley be raised up, and every mountain and hill be made low. And the knobby ground must become level land, and the rugged ground a valley plain. And the glory of Jehovah will certainly be revealed, and all flesh must see [it] together, for the very mouth of Jehovah has spoken [it].” // This is a straightening work that is needed for God’s people so that they can be accepted by him – because they are crooked. This measuring can only take place when they are “straight”. John

the Baptist, who was also known as the “Elijah” of the first century alluded to this. Jesus also spoke of an “Elijah” for our day too – See Elijah and compare Zechariah 5:7,8; Ezekiel 43:10,11; Daniel 11:35; Revelation 21:9-21 comments.

**Isaiah 40:29-31** “He is giving to the tired one power; and to the one without dynamic energy he makes full might abound. Boys will both tire out and grow weary, and young men themselves will without fail stumble, but those who are hoping in Jehovah will regain power. They will mount up with wings like eagles. They will run and not grow weary; they will walk and not tire out.” // This reminds me of those holy ones of God who have their power dashed to pieces but then after Michael stands up, they regain power and shine brightly – Daniel 12:3,7

**Isaiah 41:13** “For I, Jehovah your God, am grasping your right hand, the One saying to you, ‘Do not be afraid. I myself will help you.: // It is comforting to see that after some time in “sackcloth” Jehovah turns his attention back to his people – Compare Isaiah 12:1,2 comments.

**Isaiah 42:1,6,7** “Look! My servant, on whom I keep fast hold! My chosen one, [whom] my soul has approved! I have put my spirit in him. Justice to the nations is what he will bring forth.” (vs.6,7) “I myself, Jehovah, have called you in righteousness, and I proceeded to take hold of your hand. And I shall safeguard you and give you as a covenant of the people, as a light of the nations, [for you] to open the blind eyes, to bring forth out of the dungeon the prisoner, out of the house of detention those sitting in darkness.” // This “servant” is Jesus. We also see how he is to be a light to the nations and to open the eyes of the blind ones. These “blind ones” very well could be blind to the truth. Other prophecies speak of a literal healing of the blind. Here we also see Jesus “releases” people from prisons. These prisons can be “spiritual” and literal. God’s people will be cleansed, and they will remember the way to walk in uprightness. – Compare Isaiah 11:1-5; Malachi 3:1-4; 4:4; 2 Corinthians 4:4; Revelation 2:10; 5:5-7

**Isaiah 42:16,17,20-25** “And I will make the blind ones walk in a way that they have not known; in a roadway that they have not known I shall cause them to tread. I shall turn a dark place before them into light, and a rugged terrain into level land. these are the things that I will do for them, and I will not leave them.” (vs.17) “They must be turned back, they will be very much ashamed, those who are putting trust in the carved image, those who are saying to a molten image: “YOU are our gods.” (vs.20) “It was a case of seeing many things, but you did not keep watching. It was a case of opening the ears, but you did not keep listening.” (vs.22) “But it is a people plundered and pillaged, all of them being trapped in the holes, and in the houses of detention they have been kept hidden. They have come to be for plunder without a deliverer, for pillage without anyone to say: “Bring back!” (vs.23) “Who among YOU people will give ear to this? Who will pay attention and listen for later times? Who has given Jacob for mere pillage, and Israel to the plunderers? Is it not Jehovah, the One against whom we have sinned, and in whose ways they did not want to walk and whose law they did not listen? So He kept pouring out upon him rage, his anger, and the strength of war. And it kept consuming him all around, but he took no note; and it kept blazing up against him, but he would lay nothing to heart.” // Here we see a figurative spiritual blindness and a plundering (possibly literal too) that was brought upon God’s people by themselves and they then experience Jehovah’s anger. – See Lamentations –



This happens immediately after the fall of literal Jerusalem today and continues for approximately three and a half years.

**Isaiah 43:1,5,10,11** “And now this is what Jehovah has said, your Creator, O Jacob, and your Former, O Israel: “Do not be afraid, for I have repurchased you. I have called [you] by your name. You are mine.” (vs.5) “Do not be afraid, for I with you. From the sunrising I shall bring your seed, and from the sunset I shall collect you together.” (vs.10) “YOU are my witnesses,” is the utterance of Jehovah, “even my servant whom I have chosen, in order that YOU may know and have faith in me, and that YOU may understand that I am the same One. Before me there was no God formed, and after me there continued to be none. I – I am Jehovah, and besides me there is no savior.” // Humans can claim to be one of the witnesses of Jehovah but this is the time when Jehovah himself gives this title to his people – those who have learned to serve Jehovah with exclusive devotion and no longer pollute their worship. // See Isaiah 17:10,11 comments // Also, concerning the collecting of Jacob and Israel together – Compare Revelation 6:9-11 comments about two groups.

**Isaiah 43:25** “I – I am the One that is wiping out your transgressions for my own sake, and your sins I shall not remember.” // Compare Zechariah 3:3,4 // When someone sins against Jehovah, it is only Jehovah that can forgive them.

**Isaiah 44:24-26** “This is what Jehovah has said, your Repurchaser and the former of you from the belly: “I, Jehovah, am doing everything, stretching out the heavens by myself, laying out the earth. Who was with me? [I am] frustrating the signs of the empty talkers, and [I am] the One that makes diviners themselves act crazily; the One turning wise men backwards, and the One that turns even their knowledge into foolishness; the One making the word of his servant come true, and the One that carries out completely the counsel of his own messengers...”

**Isaiah 45:5-7,17,20-25** “I am Jehovah, and there is no one else. With the exception of me there is no God. I shall closely gird you, although you have not known me, in order that people may know from the sunrising of the sun and from its setting that there is none besides me. I am Jehovah, and there is no one else. Forming light and creating darkness, making peace and creating calamity, I, Jehovah, am doing all these things.” (vs.22) “Turn to me and be saved, all YOU [at the] ends of the earth; for I am God, and there is no one else.” (vs.17) “As for Israel, he will certainly be saved in union with Jehovah with a salvation for times indefinite. YOU people will not be ashamed, nor will YOU be humiliated for the indefinite times of eternity.” (vs.20-25) “Collect yourselves and come. Bring yourselves up close together, YOU escapees from the nations. Those carrying the wood of their carved image have not come to any knowledge, neither have those praying to a god that cannot save. Make YOUR report and YOUR presentation. Yes, let them consult together in unity. Who has caused this to be heard from a long time ago? [Who] has reported it from that very time? Is it not I, Jehovah, besides whom there is no other God; a righteous God and a Savior, there being none excepting me? (vs.22) Turn to me and be saved, all YOU [at the] ends of the earth; for I am God, and there is no one else. By my own self I have sworn – out of my own mouth in righteousness the word has gone forth, so that it will not return – that to me every knee will bend down, every tongue will swear, saying, ‘Surely in Jehovah there are full righteousness and strength. All those getting heated up against him will

come straight to him and be ashamed. In Jehovah all the seed of Israel will prove to be right and will boast about themselves.”

Interesting how Jehovah creates peace and calamity to accomplish his will (compare Isaiah 46:8-11) – Of course, his motives are for the end results to be based upon love and for love of righteousness.

Also, it is interesting how Jehovah invites ones to turn to him and be saved – See Psalms 2:12 and Revelation 7:9,10; Isaiah 46:8-11 is similar.

Regarding “from the nations” and “all YOU [at the] ends of the earth”; This shows how Jehovah wants everyone to be saved. Compare Amos 9:11,12; Acts 15:14-18

**Isaiah 46:8-11** “Remember this, that YOU people may muster up courage. Lay it to heart, YOU transgressors. Remember the first things of a long time ago, that I am the Divine One and there is no other God, nor anyone like me; the One telling from the beginning the finale, and from long ago the things that have not been done; the One saying, ‘My own counsel will stand, and everything that is my delight I shall do’; the One calling from the sunrising a bird of prey, from a distant land the man to execute my counsel. I have even spoken [it]; I shall also bring it in. I have formed [it], I shall also do it.” // Compare Isaiah 45:5-7

**Isaiah 47:8-11,13-15** “And now hear this, you pleasure-given [woman], the one sitting in security, the one saying in her heart: “I am, and there is nobody else. I shall not sit as a widow, and I shall not know the loss of children.” But to you these two things will come suddenly, in one day: loss of children and widowhood. In their complete measure they must come upon you, for the abundance of your sorceries, for the full might of your spells – exceedingly. And you kept trusting in your badness. You have said: “There is no one seeing me.” Your wisdom and your knowledge – this is what has led you away; and you keep saying in your heart: “I am, and there is nobody else.” And upon you calamity must come; you will know no charming against it. And upon you adversity will fall; you will not be able to avert it. And upon you there will suddenly come a ruin that you are not accustomed to know.” (vs.13) “You have grown weary with the multitude of your counselors. Let them stand up, now, and save you, the worshipers of the heavens, the lookers at the stars, those giving out knowledge at the new moons concerning the things that will come upon you. Look! They have become like stubble....There will be no one to save you.” // Compare Jeremiah 8:8-14; Daniel 11:33-35; Revelation 11:2,3 // The phrase “in one day” denotes a short time and could mean a literal day in this case but as far as I have realized, time will tell.

**Isaiah 48:1,2** “Hear this, O house of Jacob, YOU who are calling yourselves by the name of Israel and who have come forth from the very waters of Judah, YOU who are swearing by the name of Jehovah and who make mention even of the God of Israel, not in truth and not in righteousness. For they have called themselves as being from the holy city, and upon the God of Israel they have supported themselves, Jehovah of armies being his name.” // This shows that just because one calls themselves by God’s name, it does not mean they are worshipping him correctly. Compare Isaiah 43:10

**Isaiah 48:9-11** “For the sake of my name I shall check my anger, and for my praise I shall restrain myself toward you that there may be no cutting you off. Look! I have refined you, but not in [the form of] silver. I have made choice of you in the smelting furnace of affliction. For my own sake, for my own sake I shall act, for how could one let oneself be profaned? And to no one else shall I give my own glory.” // Many people are willing to fight or undergo suffering for their God but who will stand by their God when their God turns on them because of their wrongdoing? // Compare Exodus 32:11-14; Isaiah 65:8,9; Ezekiel 36; Mathew 6:9-13

**Isaiah 49:6** “And he proceeded to say: “It has been more than a trivial matter for you to become my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob and to bring back even the safeguarded ones of Israel; I also have given you for a light of the nations, that my salvation may come to be to the extremity of the earth.” // This appears to be Jehovah speaking to Isaiah but it looks more like it describes Jehovah’s servant “Sprout!”. It makes me wonder if Isaiah realized how much of the book of Isaiah would influence nations. – Compare Isaiah 11:1-5 comments

**Isaiah 49:13,22,23,26** “Give a glad cry, YOU heavens, and be joyful, you earth. Let the mountains become cheerful with a glad outcry. For Jehovah has comforted his people, and he shows pity upon his own afflicted ones.” (vs.22) “This is what the Sovereign Lord Jehovah has said: “Look! I shall raise up my hand even to the nations, and to the peoples I shall lift up my signal. And they will bring your sons in the bosom, and upon the shoulder they will carry your own daughters. And kings must become caretakers for you, and their princesses nursing women for you. With faces to the earth they will bow down to you, and the dust of your feet they will lick up; and you will have to know that I am Jehovah, of whom those hoping in me will not be ashamed.” (vs.26) “...And all flesh will have to know that I, Jehovah, am your Savior and your Repurchaser, the Powerful One of Jacob.” // Especially will the nations know who God’s people are when he lets everyone know – See Revelation 11:11-13 comments.

**Isaiah 50:1** “This is what Jehovah has said: “Where, then, is the divorce certificate of the mother of YOU people, whom I sent away? Or which one of my creditors is it to whom I have sold YOU people? Look! Because of YOUR own errors YOU have been sold, and because of YOUR own transgressions YOUR mother has been sent away.”

**Isaiah 51:10,11** “Are you not the one that dried up the sea, the waters of the vast deep? The one that made the depths of the sea a way for the repurchased ones to go across? The the redeemed ones of Jehovah themselves will return and must come to Zion with a joyful outcry, and rejoicing to time indefinite will be upon their head. To exultation and rejoicing they will attain. Grief and sighing will certainly flee away.” // Just as Jehovah parted the Red sea to allow deliverance from Egypt, this will happen for God’s people in our near future. Their power will be dashed to pieces but then Jehovah will step in to deliver them and to show the nations that these ones are his people – Compare Daniel 12:7; Revelation 11:11-18

**Isaiah 52:13 thru 53:12** I find this a fascinating account about prophecies of God’s servant Jesus. I also wonder if some of these verses were explained to Jesus’ disciples to help them understand the sufferings he had to go through. (Luke 24:25-27,44-48)

**Isaiah 53:12** "...and he himself carried the very sin of many people..." reminds me of the accounts in Revelation where he is symbolized by a Lamb – See Revelation chapter 5.

**Isaiah 54:5-8, 11-14** "For your Grand Maker is your husbandly owner, Jehovah of armies being his name; and the Holy One of Israel is your Repurchaser. The God of the whole earth he will be called. For Jehovah called you as if you were a wife left entirely and hurt in spirit, and as a wife of the time of youth who was then rejected," your God has said. "For a little moment I left you entirely, but with great mercies I shall collect you together. With a flood of indignation I concealed my face from you for but a moment, but with loving-kindness to time indefinite I will have mercy upon you," your Repurchaser, Jehovah, has said." (vs.11) "O woman afflicted, tempest-tossed, uncomforted, here I am laying with hard mortar your stones, and I will lay your foundation with sapphires. And I will make your battlements of rubies, and your gates of fiery glowing stones, and all your boundaries of delightsome stones. And all your sons will be persons taught by Jehovah, and the peace of your sons will be abundant. You will prove to be firmly established in righteousness itself..." // The term "for a little moment" does show how he does leave his people entirely for a brief time – This would be the approximate three and a half years of sackcloth – See Revelation 11:2,3 // Also, the term wife reminds me of the Lamb's wife mentioned in Revelation 21:9-14 and the importance of a proper "marriage" – Malachi 2:13-17 // Compare Isaiah 11:1-5 comments

**Isaiah 55:1-3** "Hey there, all YOU thirsty ones! Come to the water. And the ones that have no money! Come, buy and eat. Yes, come, buy wine and milk even without money and without price. Why do YOU people keep paying out money for what is not bread, and why is YOUR toil for what results in no satisfaction? Listen intently to me, and eat what is good, and let YOUR soul find its exquisite delight in fatness itself. Incline YOUR ear and come to me. Listen, and YOUR soul will keep alive, and I shall readily conclude with YOU people an indefinitely lasting covenant respecting the loving-kindnesses to David that are faithful." // The waters and food of spiritual truth are free. It is possible that material things under Michael's reign will be free too but if so, there will probably be applied the principle that "the worker deserves his food". I can not say for sure but we will see. // This "fatness" is a spiritual fatness – the one kind of "fatness" one should be glad to have.

**Isaiah 55:6,7** "Search for Jehovah, YOU people, while he may be found. Call to him while he proves to be near. Let the wicked man leave his way, and the harmful man his thoughts; and let him return to Jehovah, who will have mercy upon him, and to our God, for he will forgive in a large way." // This could be part of what is explained as seeking Jehovah and his righteousness. Also, this is a good example for us to follow concerning Jehovah's mercy.

**Isaiah 55:11** "so my word that goes forth from my mouth will prove to be. It will not return to me without results, but it will certainly do that in which I have delighted, and it will have certain success in that for which I have sent it."

**Isaiah 55:13** "Instead of the thicket of thorns the juniper tree will come up. Instead of the stinging nettle the myrtle tree will come up. And it must become for Jehovah something famous, a sign to time indefinite that will not be cut off." // I thought of this verse this fall season when I

could see so many blooming weeds in my field – It took me a whole day to remove all of them. So, this is something else I look forward to.

**Isaiah 56:4,5** “For this is what Jehovah has said to the eunuchs that keep my sabbaths and that have chosen what I have delighted in and that are laying hold of my covenant: “I will even give to them in my house and within my walls a monument and a name, something better than sons and daughters. A name to time indefinite I shall give them, one that will not be cut off.” // These “eunuchs” can be literal or spiritual in nature. However, the point that I like the most is the principle of the passage – That is, Jehovah does reward those faithful to him and does not forget them.

**Isaiah 57:11-13** “Whom did you become frightened at and begin to fear, so that you took up lying? But I was not the one that you remembered. You took nothing to your heart. Was I not keeping silent and hiding matters? So you were in no fear even of me. I myself shall tell forth your righteousness and your works, that they will not benefit you. When you cry for aid your collection of things will not deliver you, but a wind will carry even all of them away. An exhalation will take them away, but the one taking refuge in me will inherit the land and will take possession of my holy mountain.” // When the need arises to protect a false doctrine, it is necessary to lie – because it is not based upon truth. And by lying (which would include supporting a false doctrine without checking it against God’s word), one shows they do not fear Jehovah and actually fear going against the doctrine more. This is why it is absolutely necessary to continually test our understanding of scriptures and the way we worship Jehovah – So we can worship Jehovah properly and give Him the proper respect and glory that he deserves. – See the introduction of the “Why Satan..” link. // The “collection of things” of these people will be carried away. // Compare Joel chapters 1,2; Isaiah 10:16-22

**Isaiah 59:1-3,14,15,19,20** “Look! The hand of Jehovah has not become too short that it cannot save, nor has his ear become too heavy that it cannot hear. No, but the very errors of YOU people have become the things causing division between YOU and YOUR God, and YOUR own sins have caused the concealing of [his] face from YOU to keep from hearing. For YOUR own palms have become polluted with blood, and YOUR fingers with error. YOUR own lips have spoken falsehood. YOUR own tongue kept muttering sheer unrighteousness.” (vs.14) “And justice was forced to move back, and righteousness itself kept standing simply far off. For truth has stumbled even in the public square, and what is straightforward is unable to enter. And the truth proves to be missing, and anyone turning away from badness is being despoiled. And Jehovah got to see, and it was bad in his eyes that there was no justice” (vs.19,20) “And from the sunset they will begin to fear the name of Jehovah, and from the rising of the sun the glory of him, for he will come in like a distressing river, which the very spirit of Jehovah has driven along. (vs.20) “And to Zion the Repurchaser will certainly come, and to those turning from transgression in Jacob,” is the utterance of Jehovah.”// See Lamentations; Malachi 3:1; 4:5,6 comments.

**Isaiah 60:1** “Arise, O woman, shed forth light, for your light has come and upon you the very glory of Jehovah has shown forth.” There is no word or phrase for “O woman” in the original text but an explanation is given in the Ref. footnote: “...because the one addressed as “you” and the verbs in Heb. are fem. sing. ...” // This is talking about God’s cleansed holy people that

experience the “dashing of their power to pieces” at Daniel 12:7 and see the comments on the phrase “come on up here” at Revelation 11:12. This is translated by the Emphasized Bible as; “Arise—shine For thy light |hath come|,—And || the glory of Yahweh || |on thee| hath beamed;” // Also, the word “Arise” denotes an increase in stature or position.

**Isaiah 60:10** “And foreigners will actually build your walls, and their own kings will minister to you; for in my indignation I shall have struck you, but in my goodwill I shall certainly have mercy upon you.” // This shows the turn around. This thought that God would “strike” his people is unthinkable to some who believe that they are serving Jehovah properly – but they have forgotten to seek Jehovah’s will and they continually pursue the will of false gods (false doctrines) instead – thus they are acting as apostates and are adulterating their worship – However, for those who change their ways, God will show mercy on them and bless them.

**Isaiah 60:11,12** “And your gates will actually be kept open constantly; they will not be closed even by day or by night, in order to bring you the resources of the nations, and their kings will be taking the lead. For any nation and any kingdom that will not serve you will perish; and the nations themselves will without fail come to devastation.” // Compare Psalms 2:12; Revelation 21:22-27

**Isaiah 60:15-17** “Instead of your proving to be one left entirely and hated, with nobody passing through, I will even set you as a thing of pride to time indefinite, an exultation for generation after generation. And you will actually suck the milk of nations, and the breast of kings you will suck; and you will be certain to know that I, Jehovah, am your Savior, and the Powerful One of Jacob is your Repurchaser. Instead of the copper I shall bring in gold, and instead of the iron I shall bring in silver, and instead of the wood, copper, and instead of the stones, iron; and I will appoint peace as your overseers and righteousness as your task assigners.” // This is another example of where God’s people were left but then Jehovah turned his attention back to his people and his people no longer were ashamed but could now be proud and at the same time be peaceable and righteous in their ways. // Keep in mind the time period – This covers the time of “sackcloth” of approximately three and a half years right into the reign of God’s servant known as Jesus or Michael or “sprout” or “David”. // Compare Revelation 21:22-27

**Isaiah 60:18-21** “No more will violence be heard in your land, despoiling or breakdown within your boundaries. And you will certainly call your own walls Salvation and you gates Praise. For you the sun will no more prove to be a light by day, and for brightness the moon itself will no more give you light. And Jehovah must become to you an indefinitely lasting light, and your God your beauty. No more will your sun set, nor will your moon go on the wane; for Jehovah himself will become for you an indefinitely lasting light, and the days of your mourning will have come to completion. And as for your people, all of them will be righteous; to time indefinite they will hold possession of the land, the sprout of my planting, the work of my hands, for [me] to be beautified.” // See Isaiah 54:11-13 comments and Revelation 21:22-27

**Isaiah 60:22** “The little one himself will become a thousand, and the small one a mighty nation. I myself, Jehovah, shall speed it up in its own time.” // The number of the remaining ones who have endured are “small” and it is only by Jehovah’s will that they become a “mighty nation”.



Compare Isaiah 10:16-22 where it indicates that there are “few” left remaining – a cleansing has occurred (Daniel 11:35).

**Isaiah 61:5-9** “And strangers will actually stand and shepherd the flocks of YOU people, and the foreigners will be YOUR farmers and YOUR vinedressers. And as for YOU, the priests of Jehovah YOU will be called; the ministers of our God YOU will be said to be. The resources of the nations YOU people will eat, and in their glory YOU will speak elatedly about yourselves. Instead of YOUR shame there will be a double portion, and instead of humiliation they will cry out joyfully over their share. Therefore in their land they will take possession of even a double portion. Rejoicing to time indefinite is what will come to be theirs. For I, Jehovah, am loving justice, hating robbery along with unrighteousness. And I will give their wages in trueness, and an indefinitely lasting covenant I shall conclude towards them. And their offspring will actually be known even among the nations, and their descendants in among the peoples. All those seeing them will recognize them, that they are the offspring whom Jehovah has blessed.” // Again we see that God’s people experienced shame before they are blessed by Jehovah. Notice the covenant relationship too – not “with” but “towards”. This reminds me of Jesus concluding a covenant with his disciples in the upper chamber (Luke 22:28-30)

**Isaiah 62:1-5** “For the sake of Zion I shall not keep still, and for the sake of Jerusalem I shall not stay quiet until her righteousness goes forth just like the brightness, and her salvation like a torch that burns. (vs.2) “And the nations will certainly see your righteousness, [O woman,] and all kings your glory. And you will actually be called by a new name, which the very mouth of Jehovah will designate. And you must become a crown of beauty in the hand of Jehovah, and a kingly turban in the palm of your God. No more will you be said to be a woman left entirely; and your own land will no more be said to be desolate; but you yourself will be called My Delight Is in Her, and your land Owned as a Wife. For Jehovah will have taken delight in you, and your own land will be owned as a wife. For just as a young man takes ownership of a virgin as his wife, your sons will take ownership of you as a wife. And with the exultation of a bridegroom over a bride, your God will exult even over you – See Revelation 21:9-27 (The Lamb’s wife); Malachi 2:13-17; Isaiah 54:6,11-14; 61:5-9

**Isaiah 63:9,10** “During all their distress it was distressing to him. And his own personal messenger saved them. In his love and in his compassion he himself repurchased them, and he proceeded to lift them up and carry them all the days of long ago. (vs.10) But they themselves rebelled and made his holy spirit feel hurt. He now was changed into an enemy of theirs; he himself warred against them.” // The phrase “And his own personal messenger” is literally “And the messenger of his face” (Ref. footnote).

**Isaiah 64:5-12** “...Look! You yourself became indignant, while we kept sinning – in them a long time and should we be saved? ...(vs.7) “And there is no one calling upon your name, no one rousing himself to lay hold on you; for you have concealed your face from us, and you cause us to melt by the power of our error. (vs.8) And now, O Jehovah, you are our Father. We are the clay, and you are our Potter; and all of us are the work of your hand. Do not be indignant, O Jehovah, to the extreme, and do not forever remember [our] error. Look, now, please: we are all your people...(vs.12) ...Will you stay still and let us be afflicted to the extreme?” // Here we see

a definite change in attitude of God's people who are experiencing God's indignation. The ones remaining have learned to worship Jehovah properly with humility – Compare Lamentations 3:42-45

**Isaiah 65:8,9** “This is what Jehovah has said: “In the same way that the new wine is found in the cluster and someone has to say, ‘Do not ruin it, because there is a blessing in it,’ so I shall do for the sake of my servants in order not to bring everybody to ruin. And I will bring forth out of Jacob an offspring and out of Judah the hereditary possessor of my mountains; and my chosen ones must take possession of it, and my own servants will reside there.” // This reminds me of the scripture that states that on account of the chosen ones those days would be cut short – The chosen ones will have straightened their worship – Compare Exodus 32:11-14; Isaiah 48:9-11; Ezekiel 36; Malachi 4:5,6; Matthew 24:22

**Isaiah 65:11-15** seems to be talking about those who worship Jehovah in wrong ways but do not desire to straighten their course. Verse 15 states that Jehovah will put them to death. This could allude to those who act wickedly against the covenant that is mentioned in Daniel 11:32.

**Isaiah 65:17,20-25** “For here I am creating new heavens and a new earth; and the former things will not be called to mind, neither will they come up into the heart. (vs.20) No more will there come to be a suckling a few days old from that place, neither an old man that does not fulfill his days; for one will die as a mere boy, although a hundred years of age; and as for the sinner, although a hundred of years of age he will have evil called down upon him. And they will certainly build houses and have occupancy; and they will certainly plant vineyards and eat [their] fruitage. They will not build and someone else have occupancy; they will not plant and someone else do the eating. For the days of a tree will the days of my people be; and the work of their own hands my chosen ones will use to the full. They will not toil for nothing, nor will they bring to birth for disturbance; because they are the offspring made up of the blessed ones of Jehovah, and their descendants with them. And it will actually occur that before they call out I myself shall answer; while they are yet speaking, I myself shall hear. (vs.25) “The wolf and the lamb themselves will feed as one, and the lion will eat straw just like the bull; and as for the serpent, his food will be dust. They will do no harm nor cause any ruin in all my holy mountain,” Jehovah has said.” // Compare Revelation 21:1-4 // Notice the timing of these blessings – They are when Jehovah turns his attention back to his people which is for our near future. These blessing happen after Michael stands up – See Daniel 12:1

**Isaiah 66:15,16,19,20** “For here Jehovah himself comes as a very fire, and his chariots are like a storm wind, in order to pay back his anger with sheer rage and his rebuke with flames of fire. For as fire Jehovah himself will for a fact take up controversy, yes, with his sword, against all flesh; and the slain of Jehovah will certainly become many. (vs.19) “And I will set among them a sign...who have not heard a report about me or seen my glory; and they will for a certain tell about my glory among the nations. And they will actually bring all YOUR brothers out of all the nations as a gift to Jehovah ... up to my holy mountain, Jerusalem...” // This seems to cover most of the time period of the 45 days and into the beginning of Jesus' 1,000 year reign. It is also interesting how it is stated how the nations would bring “all YOUR brothers out of all the nations...up to” Jehovah's holy mountain. It makes one think this could be somewhat literal –

However, it could simply represent that they would help with assisting Jehovah's people to get to where they are going – I think this will be interesting to see how this is going to be fulfilled. // Compare Revelation 11:11-18; 14:6,7; 19:11-21

## Matthew

*See the chapter on the [original Matthew!](#)*

**Matthew 6:9-13** “YOU must pray, then, this way:” ‘Our Father in the heavens, let your name be sanctified. Let your kingdom come. Let your will take place, as in heaven, also upon earth. Give us today our bread for this day; and forgive us our debts, as we have forgiven our debtors. And do not bring us into temptation but deliver us from the wicked one.’” – Jehovah ends up sanctifying his name before the nations because his people have profaned his name – Isaiah 11:1-10; 24:21-23; 48:1,2; Ezekiel 36:22-28 comments; Daniel 2:44; 12:1; Revelation 21:1-4. Interesting how in the original Matthew, the lord’s prayer is a bit different

**Matthew 11:7-14** – See Elijah link

**Matthew 12:29** “Or how can anyone invade the house of a strong man and seize his movable goods, unless first he binds the strong man?” – This reminds me of Revelation 20:1-3 where “Satan” is “bound ... for a thousand years.”

**Matthew 13:40-43** “Therefore, just as weeds are collected and burned with fire, so it will be in the conclusion of the system of things. The Son of man will send forth his angels, and they will collect out from his kingdom all things that cause stumbling and persons who are doing lawlessness, and they will pitch them into the fiery furnace. There is where [their] weeping and the gnashing of [their] teeth will be. At that time the righteous ones will shine as brightly as the sun in the kingdom of their Father. Let him that has ears listen.” // Jeremiah 8:8-12; Daniel 11:32-35; 12:1-3; Malachi 3:2-4; Revelation 11:15-18

**Matthew 13:47-50** “Again the kingdom of the heavens is like a dragnet let down into the sea and gathering up [fish] of every kind. When it got full they hauled it up onto the beach and, sitting down, they collected the fine ones into vessels, but the unsuitable they threw away. That is how it will be in the conclusion of the system of things: the angels will go out and separate the wicked from among the righteous and will cast them into the fiery furnace. There is where [their] weeping and the gnashing of [their] teeth will be.” // This is a bit different then what is mentioned in verses 40-43. In verses 40-43 it is talking about ones in his kingdom, here these represent ones of the earth – All those who do not repent and submit will be destroyed. – Compare Jeremiah 25:27-31; Psalms 12:2; Daniel 2:44; Revelation 19:11-16

**Matthew 16:19** “I will give you the keys of the kingdom of the heavens, and whatever you may bind on earth will be the thing bound in the heavens, and whatever you may loose on earth will be the thing loosed in the heavens.” // Compare Acts chapter 10 where it is made evident that God’s people can be of the nations along with the Jews.

**Matthew 17:1-13** – See Elijah page

**[Matthew 18:15-20 \(WEB\)](#):** <sup>15</sup>“If your brother sins against you, go, show him his fault between you and him alone. If he listens to you, you have gained back your brother. <sup>16</sup>But if he doesn’t listen, take one or two more with you, that **at the mouth of two or three witnesses every word**

**may be established. [Deuteronomy 19:15](#)** <sup>17</sup> If he refuses to listen to them, tell it to the assembly. If he refuses to hear the assembly also, let him be to you as a Gentile or a tax collector. <sup>18</sup> Most certainly I tell you, whatever things you bind on earth will have been bound in heaven, and whatever things you release on earth will have been released in heaven. <sup>19</sup> Again, assuredly I tell you, that if two of you will agree on earth concerning anything that they will ask, it will be done for them by my Father who is in heaven. <sup>20</sup> For where two or three are gathered together in my name, there I am in the middle of them.”

This is often misinterpreted to think that it takes more than one person to have Jesus’ presence. But that is not the case. The context shows that **this passage is about resolving conflict** among spiritual brothers. It reflects Deuteronomy 19:15-19. Keep in mind that John 5:22-23 states that God (Yahweh) gave his Son (Yeshua) the authority to judge. It does not mean that it takes more than one person to have Jesus’ backing.

**[Deuteronomy 19:15-19 \(WEB\):](#)** <sup>15</sup> One witness shall not rise up against a man for any iniquity, or for any sin that he sins. **At the mouth of two witnesses, or at the mouth of three witnesses, shall a matter be established.** <sup>16</sup> If an unrighteous witness rises up against any man to testify against him of wrongdoing, <sup>17</sup> then **both the men, between whom the controversy is, shall stand before Yahweh, before the priests and the judges who shall be in those days;** <sup>18</sup> and the judges shall make diligent inquisition; and behold, if the witness is a false witness, and has testified falsely against his brother, <sup>19</sup> then you shall do to him as he had thought to do to his brother. So you shall remove the evil from among you.

**[John 5:22-23 \(WEB\):](#)** <sup>22</sup> For the Father judges no one, but he has given all judgment to the Son, <sup>23</sup> that all may honor the Son, even as they honor the Father. He who doesn’t honor the Son doesn’t honor the Father who sent him.

**Matthew 19:3-9** – See Marriage

**Matthew 22:2-14** “The kingdom of the heavens has become like a man, a king, that made a marriage feast for his son. And he sent forth his slaves to call those invited to the marriage feast, but they were unwilling to come. Again he sent forth other slaves, saying, ‘Tell those invited: “Look! I have prepared my dinner, my bulls and fattened animals are slaughtered, and all things are ready. Come to the marriage feast.”’ (vs.5) But unconcerned they went off, one to his own field, another to his commercial business; but the rest, laying hold of his slaves, treated them insolently and killed them. (vs.7) “But the king grew wrathful, and sent his armies and destroyed those murderers and burned their city. then he said to his slaves, ‘The marriage feast indeed is ready, but those invited were not worthy. therefore go to the roads leading out of the city, and anyone YOU find invite to the marriage feast.’ Accordingly those slaves went out to the roads and gathered together all they found, both wicked and good; and the room for the wedding ceremonies was filled with those reclining at the table. (vs.11) “When the king came in to inspect the guests he caught sight there of a man not clothed with a marriage garment. So he said to him, ‘Fellow, how did you get in here not having on a marriage garment?’ He was rendered speechless. Then the king said to his servants, ‘Bind him hand and foot and throw him out into

the darkness outside. There is where [his] weeping and the gnashing of [his] teeth will be.’ (vs.14) “For there are many invited, but few chosen.” // We certainly can see that many of who were chosen to be God’s people throughout the ages had or have decided to not serve him properly – which is not good enough. They have treated him with disrespect by avoiding to look into what he really says in his holy writings and they pursue their own selfish courses. It is also interesting to see the one not clothed with a marriage garment – thus indicating he thought he should be there but he did not clothe himself with righteousness. See Matthew 25:30, 41-46; Daniel 11:34; Revelation 7:9,10

**Matthew 24:3-5** “While he was sitting upon the Mount of Olives, the disciples approached him privately, saying: “Tell us, When will these things be, and what will be the sign of your presence and of the conclusion of the system of things?” (vs.4) “And in answer Jesus said to them: “Look out that nobody misleads YOU; for many will come on the basis of my name, saying, ‘I am the Christ,’ and will mislead many.” // It is interesting that Jesus first of all tells them to look out for ones who mislead. We can see that there are a great many who have been misled by men’s doctrine that is not supported upon the scriptures. Also, of course, to look out for false “Christs”. // Matthew 24:3: “...presence..” – See Matthew 24:39 comments.

**Matthew 24:6-8** “You are going to hear of wars and reports of wars; see that YOU are not terrified. For these things must take place, but the end is not yet. (vs.7) “For nation will rise against nation and kingdom against kingdom, and there will be food shortages and earthquakes in one place after another. All these things are a beginning of pangs of distress.” // This seems to fit in with struggles between the kings of the north and south mentioned in Daniel. This would make sense because Daniel tells of distressing times for both periods of God’s people – Especially Daniel chapters 7,8, and 11. These events can be both physical and literal.

**Matthew 24:9** “Then people will deliver YOU up to tribulation and will kill YOU, and YOU will be objects of hatred by all the nations on account of my name.” // This happens in two time periods – See Revelation 11:3 comments about the “two witnesses.” Many will think that they are doing a good thing in God’s eyes, but their actions are more based upon greed than a sincere desire to do what is right – Compare Matthew 25:31-46

**Matthew 24:10** “Then, also, many will be stumbled and will betray one another and will hate one another.” // Compare Isaiah 3:4; Jeremiah 13:14; Daniel 11:33-35; 12:10

**Matthew 24:11,12** “And many false prophets will arise and mislead many; and because of the increasing of lawlessness the love of the greater number will cool off.” // This “lawlessness” can refer to those acting wickedly against true worship by upholding false doctrines and acting against those who strive for Yahweh’s truth. Jesus and his disciples experienced some of this lawlessness by many of the crooked spiritual shepherds of the time. Compare Isaiah 3:8; 9:13-17; 10:16-22; Jeremiah 9:2,3; Daniel 11:33-35; Revelation 11:2,3; 2 Timothy 3:1-7

**Matthew 24:13** “But he that has endured to the end is the one that will be saved.” // Compare with Daniel 12:12; Revelation 14:12,13; Matthew 24:22



**Matthew 24:14** “And this good news of the kingdom will be preached in all the inhabited earth for a witness to all the nations; and then the end will come.” // The word “preached” can also be translated “be heralded.” (Ref. footnote) – This actually is fully accomplished by an angel flying in mid-heaven – Compare Isaiah 66:19,20; Revelation 14:6,7 comments.

**Matthew 24:15-22** “Therefore, when YOU catch sight of the disgusting thing that causes desolation, as spoken of through Daniel the prophet, standing in a holy place, (let the reader use discernment,) then let those in Judea begin fleeing to the mountains. Let the man on the housetop not come down to take the goods out of his house; and let the man in the field not return to the house to pick up his outer garment. Woe to the pregnant women and those suckling a baby in those days! Keep praying that YOUR flight may not occur in wintertime, nor on the sabbath day; for then there will be great tribulation such as has not occurred since the world’s beginning until now, no, nor will occur again. In fact, unless those days were cut short, no flesh would be saved; but on account of the chosen ones those days will be cut short.” // Here we see Jesus’ reference to Daniel and the literal city of Jerusalem. Daniel speaks of two different occasions of Jerusalem’s demise. One has occurred in the first century, the other will occur soon. – Compare comments for Daniel chapters 7,8, and 11. In verse 22 it makes mentions “on account of the chosen ones” – Compare Isaiah 64:5-12; 65:8,9; Lamentations; Malachi 4:5,6

**Matthew 24:23-27** “Then if anyone says to YOU, ‘Look! Here is the Christ,’ or, ‘There!’ do not believe it. For false Christs and false prophets will arise and will give great signs and wonders so as to mislead, if possible, even the chosen ones. Look! I have forewarned YOU. Therefore, if people say to YOU, ‘Look! He is in the wilderness,’ do not go out; ‘Look! He is in the inner chambers,’ do not believe it. For just as the lightning comes out of eastern parts and shines over to western parts, so the presence of the Son of man will be.” // This goes to show that there will be no question at all when Jesus arrives in power – It will be obvious to all. // Regarding the phrase about “the lightning”, compare Daniel 7:13

**Matthew 24:28** “Wherever the carcass is, there the eagles will be gathered together.” // Compare Amos 8:11 with Revelation 8:1

\*\*\*\*\*

### **Special comment:**

#### **[Matthew 24:23-28 \(WEB\);](#)**

<sup>23</sup> “Then if any man tells you, ‘Behold, here is the Christ,’ or, ‘There,’ don’t believe it. <sup>24</sup> For there will arise false Christ’s, and false prophets, and they will show great signs and wonders, so as to lead astray, if possible, even the chosen ones.

<sup>25</sup> “Behold, I have told you beforehand. <sup>26</sup> If therefore they tell you, ‘Behold, he is in the wilderness,’ don’t go out; ‘Behold, he is in the inner rooms,’ don’t believe it. <sup>27</sup> For as the lightning flashes from the east, and is seen even to the west, so will be the coming of the Son of Man. <sup>28</sup> For wherever the carcass is, there is where the vultures gather together.

**This is a somber warning from Jesus. During the approximate 3.5 year time period of tribulation of “Daniel’s people,” there will be attempts to kill them. Perhaps by persuading them that Jesus arrived in a certain location or invisibly. Their attempts may seem believable, to many. However, Jesus reminds his followers that when he comes, no one earth will escape noticing the event. It will be a truly amazing event! His followers WILL NOT have to be told. ALL WILL KNOW. So don’t fall victim to a trap that may take your life! Be careful! – See [What happens when Christ Comes](#)**

The tribulation for God’s people will be just about over when the great tribulation of the nations begins, as shown in Matthew 24:29+. The nations find themselves unknowingly pitted against Yahweh and his chosen one. This is Armageddon. It is a set of circumstances. Psalms 2 describes it simply. The nations either submit to Yahweh’s Son or perish.

[Psalms 2 \(WEB\);](#)

2 Why do the nations rage,  
and the peoples plot a vain thing?  
2 The kings of the earth take a stand,  
and the rulers take counsel together,  
against Yahweh, and against his Anointed,<sup>[a]</sup> saying,  
3 “Let’s break their bonds apart,  
and cast their cords from us.”  
4 He who sits in the heavens will laugh.  
The Lord will have them in derision.  
5 Then he will speak to them in his anger,  
and terrify them in his wrath:  
6 “Yet I have set my King on my holy hill of Zion.”  
7 I will tell of the decree.  
Yahweh said to me, “You are my son.  
Today I have become your father.  
8 Ask of me, and I will give the nations for your inheritance,  
the uttermost parts of the earth for your possession.  
9 You shall break them with a rod of iron.  
You shall dash them in pieces like a potter’s vessel.”  
10 Now therefore be wise, you kings.  
Be instructed, you judges of the earth.  
11 Serve Yahweh with fear,  
and rejoice with trembling.  
12 Give sincere homage to the Son, lest he be angry, and you perish on the way,  
for his wrath will soon be kindled.  
Blessed are all those who take refuge in him.

\*\*\*\*\*

**Matthew 24:29-31** “Immediately after the tribulation of those days the sun will be darkened, and the moon will not give its light, and the stars will fall from heaven, and the powers of the heavens will be shaken. And then the sign of the Son of man will appear in heaven, and then all the tribes of the earth will beat themselves in lamentation, and they will see the Son of man coming on the clouds of heaven with power and great glory. And he will send forth his angels with a great trumpet sound, and they will gather his chosen ones together from the four winds, from one extremity of the heavens to their other extremity.” // This is most likely the approximate 45-day period – compare Daniel 12:11,12; Revelation 11:11-13 comments

**Matthew 24:32-35** “Now learn from the fig tree as an illustration this point: Just as soon as its young branch grows tender and it puts forth leaves, YOU know that summer is near. Likewise, also YOU, when YOU see all these things, know that he is near at the doors. Truly I say to YOU that this generation will by no means pass away until all these things occur. Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will by no means pass away.” // Notice the phrase “he is near at the doors” denotes just before Michael stands up – Daniel 12:1; Revelation 11:14,15 However, the term “this generation” would refer to those “two witnesses” who experience the tribulation periods. One of those “two witnesses” existed in Jesus’ day. – See Revelation 6:11 comments

**Matthew 24:36** “Concerning that day and hour nobody knows, neither the angels of the heavens nor the Son, but only the Father.” // Jesus never did give his disciples a date when Jerusalem would be destroyed – Just a sign to look out for. And that sign was based upon scriptures in Daniel – And so it is for us today – See the book of Daniel chapters 7,8, and 11.

**Matthew 24:37-42** “For just as the days of Noah were, so the presence of the Son of man will be. For as they were in those days before the flood, eating and drinking, men marrying and women being given in marriage, until the day that Noah entered into the ark; and they took no note until the flood came and swept them all away, so the presence of the Son of man will be. Then two men will be in the field: one will be taken along and the other be abandoned; two women will be grinding at the hand mill: one will be taken along and the other be abandoned. Keep on the watch, therefore, because YOU do not know on what day YOUR Lord is coming.” // This phrase “taken along” is interesting. It gives us the example of Noah. Noah entered the ark and was saved although he did not become a spirit but he was protected. Lot is also a similar example. The exact “day and hour” is not known. I believe that this is referring to the time periods mentioned which start at an unknown date (at the time of Jesus speaking) – This date is not given as a calendar date but rather as a “sign” – See Timeline. However, he is coming very soon once one truly “observes” (understands) the scroll of Revelation – See Revelation 22:7,20 comments.

**Matthew 24:37** “For just as the days of Noah were, so the presence of the Son of man will be.” // This is the same Greek word as found at Matthew 24:3 and 24:39.

**Matthew 24:39** “...so the presence of the Son of man will be.” // This word “presence” seems to be able to be rendered either “presence” or “coming.” It has been assigned the Greek word number 3952 by the *ABINGDON’S STRONG’S EXHAUSTIVE CONCORDANCE OF THE BIBLE* and is “parousia” partly defined as: “...phys. aspect: – coming, presence“. The

book *Vine's Expository Dictionary of Biblical Words* defines it as: "parousia (... , 3952), lit., "a presence," *para*, "with," and *ousia*, "being" (from *eimi*, "to be"), denotes both an "arrival" and a consequent "presence with." **For instance, in a papyrus letter a lady speaks of the necessity of her *parousia* in a place in order to attend to matters relating to her property there.**" (Highlights mine) // From these examples, I have to recommend that the word "presence" as mentioned in Matthew 24:39 be referring to "the flood came and swept them all away" because it is a "separating work" where people either lived or died. This happens upon Jesus' arrival to judge in power. This word (3952) is the same as the Greek word translated "presence" in Matthew 24:37 and Matthew 24:3. I prefer to think of the word "coming" in all these instances where the Greek word "parousia" is used in the book of Matthew and I would reference them to Daniel 12:1 along with a brief definition (This is because I do not know of an English word to fit well). – Daniel 12:1 is where Michael is described as "will stand up" – (The Hebrew word number assigned is 5975 for "stand" and is defined as : "...a prim. root; to stand, in various relations (lit. and fig., intrans. and trans.): – abide (behind), appoint, arise, cease, confirm, continue, dwell, be employed, endure, establish, leav-)make, ordain, be [over], place, (be) present (self), raise up, remain, repair, + serve, set (forth, over, -tle, up), (make to, make to be at a, with- ) stand (by, fast, firm, still, up), (be at a) stay (up), tarry."). Another reason I prefer to view these passages this way is because it does not confuse prophesy as easily for the reader who probably does not understand the usage of "parousia" in these instances. // I do understand that there are differences in translations, and I am not a "translator" by trade. However, I believe the main goal of proper translating is to put forth the most accurate and current meaning without confusion.

Simply put, it means coming and arrival to take action. Jesus helped explain it for us, [as recorded in Luke](#).

**Matthew 24:43-44** "But know one thing, that if the householder had known in what watch the thief was coming, he would have kept awake and not allowed his house to be broken into. On this account YOU too prove yourselves ready, because at an hour that YOU do not think to be it, the Son of man is coming." // How could it be that God's people would not expect his coming? Well, if they all have left true worship – although they would deny it at the time – that is reason enough – Compare Jeremiah 9:2,3; 23:11,12; Ezekiel 13:8-23

**Matthew 24:45-47** "Who really is the faithful and discreet slave whom his master appointed over his domestics, to give them their food at the proper time? Happy is that slave if his master on arriving finds him doing so. Truly I say to YOU, He will appoint him over all his belongings." // It ends up that the slave who provides spiritual guidance based upon God's word possibly before and during this distressing time for God's people is the true faithful and discreet slave for this time period. I believe the key words here are "really" and "proper time". // This could have a relationship with the "Elijah" of our day – See Elijah link.

**Matthew 24:48-51** "But if ever that evil slave should say in his heart, 'My master is delaying,' and should start to beat his fellow slaves and should eat and drink with confirmed drunkards, the master of that slave will come on a day that he does not expect and in an hour that he does not know, and will punish him with the greatest severity and will assign him his part with the

hypocrites. There is where [his] weeping and the gnashing of [his] teeth will be.” // There are those who will desire to stick with their old corrupt ways of worship. I believe these ones will be of those mentioned at Revelation 19:19-21. Compare Daniel 11:32

## **Matthew 25**

**Matthew 25:31-46** “When the Son of man arrives in his glory, and all the angels with him, then he will sit down on his glorious throne. And all the nations will be gathered before him, and he will separate people one from another, just as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats. And he will put the sheep on his right hand but the goats on his left. (vs.34) “Then the king will say to those on his right, ‘Come, YOU who have been blessed by my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for YOU from the founding of the world. For I became hungry and YOU gave me something to eat; I got thirsty and YOU gave me something to drink. I was a stranger and YOU received me hospitably; naked, and YOU clothed me. I fell sick and YOU looked after me. I was in prison and YOU came to me.’ Then the righteous ones will answer him with the words, ‘Lord, when did we see you hungry and feed you, or thirsty, and give you something to drink? When did we see you a stranger and receive you hospitably or naked, and clothe you? When did we see you sick or in prison and go to you?’ And in reply the king will say to them, ‘Truly I say to YOU, To the extent that YOU did it to one of the least of these my brothers, YOU did it to me.’ (vs.41) “Then he will say, in turn, to those on his left, ‘Be on YOUR way from me, YOU who have been cursed, into the everlasting fire prepared for the Devil and his angels. For I became hungry, but YOU gave me nothing to eat, and I got thirsty, but YOU gave me nothing to drink. I was a stranger, but YOU did not receive me hospitably; naked, but YOU did not clothe me; sick and in prison, but YOU did not look after me.’ Then they also will answer with the words, ‘Lord, when did we see you hungry or thirsty or a stranger or naked or sick or in prison and did not minister to you?’ Then he will answer them with the words, ‘Truly I say to YOU. To the extent that YOU did not do it to one of these least ones, YOU did not do it to me.’ And these will depart into everlasting cutting-off, but the righteous ones into everlasting life.”

This happens after Michael stands up (Daniel 12:1).

This shows that those who helped Jesus’ brothers on the earth would be rewarded. In this time period, Jesus’ brothers undergo tribulation for the approximate 3.5 times (years) – However, those who did not, “depart into everlasting cutting-off”. This is the case even though both groups called Jesus “Lord.” It is important to see that those who did not help, did not help because they did not want to. Their actions or lack of show their heart conditions.

**Matthew 25:40** – See Revelation 17:14

## John

### John 1:1c

John speaks a lot about Jesus. See [Who is the Son of the Almighty?](#)

To see highlights for the following scriptures in John, see [“Who can be rightfully called God?”](#)

#### **John 5:42-44 (WEB):**

<sup>42</sup> But I know you, that you don't have God's love in yourselves. <sup>43</sup> I have come in my Father's name, and you don't receive me. If another comes in his own name, you will receive him. <sup>44</sup> How can you believe, who receive glory from one another, and you don't seek the glory that comes from the only God?

#### **John 10:22-29 (WEB):**

<sup>22</sup> It was the Feast of the Dedication<sup>[a]</sup> at Jerusalem. <sup>23</sup> It was winter, and Jesus was walking in the temple, in Solomon's porch. <sup>24</sup> The Jews therefore came around him and said to him, “How long will you hold us in suspense? If you are the Christ, tell us plainly.”

<sup>25</sup> Jesus answered them, “I told you, and you don't believe. The works that I do in my Father's name, these testify about me. <sup>26</sup> But you don't believe, because you are not of my sheep, as I told you. <sup>27</sup> My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me. <sup>28</sup> I give eternal life to them. They will never perish, and no one will snatch them out of my hand. <sup>29</sup> My Father who has given them to me is greater than all. No one is able to snatch them out of my Father's hand.

#### **John 14:6 (WEB):**

<sup>6</sup> Jesus said to him, “I am the way, the truth, and the life. No one comes to the Father, except through me.

#### **John 17:8 (WEB):**

<sup>8</sup> for the words which you have given me I have given to them, and they received them, and knew for sure that I came from you. They have believed that you sent me.

#### **John 19:6-7 (WEB):**

<sup>6</sup> When therefore the chief priests and the officers saw him, they shouted, saying, “Crucify! Crucify!”

Pilate said to them, “Take him yourselves, and crucify him, for I find no basis for a charge against him.”

<sup>7</sup> The Jews answered him, “We have a law, and by our law he ought to die, because he made himself the Son of God.”





## John 20 (WEB):

**20** Now on the first day of the week, Mary Magdalene went early, while it was still dark, to the tomb, and saw the stone taken away from the tomb. **2** Therefore she ran and came to Simon Peter and to the other disciple whom Jesus loved, and said to them, “They have taken away the Lord out of the tomb, and we don’t know where they have laid him!”

**3** Therefore Peter and the other disciple went out, and they went toward the tomb. **4** They both ran together. The other disciple outran Peter, and came to the tomb first. **5** Stooping and looking in, he saw the linen cloths lying, yet he didn’t enter in. **6** Then Simon Peter came, following him, and entered into the tomb. He saw the linen cloths lying, **7** and the cloth that had been on his head, not lying with the linen cloths, but rolled up in a place by itself. **8** So then the other disciple who came first to the tomb also entered in, and he saw and believed. **9** For as yet they didn’t know the Scripture, that he must rise from the dead. **10** So the disciples went away again to their own homes.

**11** But Mary was standing outside at the tomb weeping. So as she wept, she stooped and looked into the tomb, **12** and she saw two angels in white sitting, one at the head, and one at the feet, where the body of Jesus had lain. **13** They asked her, “Woman, why are you weeping?”

She said to them, “Because they have taken away my Lord, and I don’t know where they have laid him.” **14** When she had said this, she turned around and saw Jesus standing, and didn’t know that it was Jesus.

**15** Jesus said to her, “Woman, why are you weeping? Who are you looking for?”

She, supposing him to be the gardener, said to him, “Sir, if you have carried him away, tell me where you have laid him, and I will take him away.”

**16** Jesus said to her, “Mary.”

She turned and said to him, “Rabboni!”<sup>[a]</sup> which is to say, “Teacher!”<sup>[b]</sup>

**17** Jesus said to her, “Don’t hold me, for I haven’t yet ascended to my Father; but go to my brothers and tell them, ‘I am ascending to my Father and your Father, to my God and your God.’”

**18** Mary Magdalene came and told the disciples that she had seen the Lord, and that he had said these things to her. **19** When therefore it was evening on that day, the first day of the week, and when the doors were locked where the disciples were assembled, for fear of the Jews, Jesus came and stood in the middle, and said to them, “Peace be to you.”

**20** When he had said this, he showed them his hands and his side. The disciples therefore were glad when they saw the Lord. **21** Jesus therefore said to them again, “Peace be to you. As the Father has sent me, even so I send you.” **22** When he had said this, he breathed on them, and said to them, “Receive the Holy Spirit! **23** If you forgive anyone’s sins, they have been forgiven them. If you retain anyone’s sins, they have been retained.”

<sup>24</sup> But Thomas, one of the twelve, called Didymus, wasn't with them when Jesus came. <sup>25</sup> The other disciples therefore said to him, "We have seen the Lord!"

But he said to them, "Unless I see in his hands the print of the nails, put my finger into the print of the nails, and put my hand into his side, I will not believe."

<sup>26</sup> After eight days again his disciples were inside and Thomas was with them. Jesus came, the doors being locked, and stood in the middle, and said, "Peace be to you." <sup>27</sup> Then he said to Thomas, "Reach here your finger, and see my hands. Reach here your hand, and put it into my side. Don't be unbelieving, but believing."

<sup>28</sup> Thomas answered him, "My Lord and my God!"

<sup>29</sup> Jesus said to him, "Because you have seen me,<sup>[c]</sup> you have believed. Blessed are those who have not seen, and have believed."

<sup>30</sup> Therefore Jesus did many other signs in the presence of his disciples, which are not written in this book; <sup>31</sup> but these are written, that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and that believing you may have life in his name.

Some wonder why Mary was told to not cling to Christ, yet he told Thomas to touch him. It's rather simple. Mary was overjoyed to see Yeshua (Jesus) alive! She was clinging to him because of being overjoyed! Yeshua gave her an assignment to tell the others. He had not ascended yet and she had work to do, in the meantime! When Thomas saw Yeshua, he doubted, and Yeshua told him to touch him to erase all doubts. Pretty simple.

## **The true meaning of “baptized for the dead” at 1 Corinthians 15:29-32**

This is a passage that has confused many for centuries. Mormons (Seventh Day Adventists) even use their interpretation of it to “baptize” those who have died and include them as members. Some think that the Corinthians “baptized” for dead people. But [baptism](#) does not save, the idea doesn’t make sense, and the Corinthians just didn’t do that. So, what is the correct understanding for this? The context makes it clear.

### **1 Corinthians 15:29-32 (WEB):**

<sup>29</sup> Or else what will they do who are baptized for the dead? If the dead aren’t raised at all, why then are they baptized for the dead? <sup>30</sup> Why do we also stand in jeopardy every hour? <sup>31</sup> I affirm, by the boasting in you which I have in Christ Jesus our Lord, I die daily. <sup>32</sup> If I fought with animals at Ephesus for human purposes, what does it profit me? If the dead are not raised, then “let’s eat and drink, for tomorrow we die.”

### **The true meaning can be ascertained, by taking into consideration the context:**

Evidently, some in Corinth doubted the resurrection of the dead, as Paul mentions. But apparently, those Corinthians didn’t give thought to the resurrection of Christ, who had died and been resurrected. So, Paul uses sarcasm to knock them to their senses! They were all baptized in the name of Christ with the belief that he was resurrected. Paul sarcastically argues that if they didn’t believe in resurrection, they must believe that Christ is dead! So, why are they baptized into someone who is dead!? They might as well party because there’s no hope! But Paul sets them straight by reminding them that he often endangers his life for the resurrected Christ! By this, he reminds them that they are dedicated to the living Christ too. If they believe that Christ was resurrected, how could they doubt that there’s going to be a resurrection, as Christ talked about?

I often wonder what the multiple reasons are for spiritual leaders to not understand this. I believe that they either don’t put the effort into it to figure it out or they have figured it out but keep the truth silent, in fear of reprisals of men. This passage disagrees with many false teachings. The Mormons (Seventh Day Adventists) for sure. But also, many main stream “Christian” churches who teach that when people die, they go to a heaven or fiery hell of torment and ignore Christ’s words mentioned in John 5:28-29 of a resurrection of the good and bad. (Daniel 12:1-2)

See [The resurrection of the good and bad](#)

See [The soul and the spirit](#)

### **Here’s the context:**

### **1 Corinthians 15:1-33 (WEB):**

15 Now I declare to you, brothers, the Good News which I preached to you, which also you received, in which you also stand, <sup>2</sup> by which also you are saved, if you hold firmly the word

which I preached to you—unless you believed in vain. <sup>3</sup> For I delivered to you first of all that which I also received: that Christ died for our sins according to the Scriptures, <sup>4</sup> that he was buried, that he was raised on the third day according to the Scriptures, <sup>5</sup> and that he appeared to Cephas, then to the twelve. <sup>6</sup> Then he appeared to over five hundred brothers at once, most of whom remain until now, but some have also fallen asleep. <sup>7</sup> Then he appeared to James, then to all the apostles, <sup>8</sup> and last of all, as to the child born at the wrong time, he appeared to me also. <sup>9</sup> For I am the least of the apostles, who is not worthy to be called an apostle, because I persecuted the assembly of God. <sup>10</sup> But by the grace of God I am what I am. His grace which was given to me was not futile, but I worked more than all of them; yet not I, but the grace of God which was with me. <sup>11</sup> Whether then it is I or they, so we preach, and so you believed.

<sup>12</sup> Now if Christ is preached, that he has been raised from the dead, how do some among you say that there is no resurrection of the dead? <sup>13</sup> But if there is no resurrection of the dead, neither has Christ been raised. <sup>14</sup> If Christ has not been raised, then our preaching is in vain, and your faith also is in vain. <sup>15</sup> Yes, we are also found false witnesses of God, because we testified about God that he raised up Christ, whom he didn't raise up, if it is so that the dead are not raised. <sup>16</sup> For if the dead aren't raised, neither has Christ been raised. <sup>17</sup> If Christ has not been raised, your faith is vain; you are still in your sins. <sup>18</sup> Then they also who are fallen asleep in Christ have perished. <sup>19</sup> If we have only hoped in Christ in this life, we are of all men most pitiable.

<sup>20</sup> But now Christ has been raised from the dead. He became the first fruit of those who are asleep. <sup>21</sup> For since death came by man, the resurrection of the dead also came by man. <sup>22</sup> For as in Adam all die, so also in Christ all will be made alive. <sup>23</sup> But each in his own order: Christ the first fruits, then those who are Christ's, at his coming. <sup>24</sup> Then the end comes, when he will deliver up the Kingdom to God, even the Father, when he will have abolished all rule and all authority and power. <sup>25</sup> For he must reign until he has put all his enemies under his feet. <sup>26</sup> The last enemy that will be abolished is death. <sup>27</sup> For, "He put all things in subjection under his feet." [Psalm 8:6](#) But when he says, "All things are put in subjection", it is evident that he is excepted who subjected all things to him. <sup>28</sup> When all things have been subjected to him, then the Son will also himself be subjected to him who subjected all things to him, that God may be all in all.

<sup>29</sup> Or else what will they do who are baptized for the dead? If the dead aren't raised at all, why then are they baptized for the dead? <sup>30</sup> Why do we also stand in jeopardy every hour? <sup>31</sup> I affirm, by the boasting in you which I have in Christ Jesus our Lord, I die daily. <sup>32</sup> If I fought with animals at Ephesus for human purposes, what does it profit me? If the dead are not raised, then "let's eat and drink, for tomorrow we die." [Isaiah 22:13](#) <sup>33</sup> Don't be deceived! "Evil companionships corrupt good morals."

## Other Prophecy

**Genesis 3:14,15** “And Jehovah God proceeded to say to the serpent: “Because you have done this thing, you are the cursed one out of all the domestic animals and out of all the wild beasts of the field. Upon your belly you will go and dust is what you will eat all the days of your life. And I shall put enmity between you and the woman and between your seed and her seed. He will bruise you in the head and you will bruise him in the heel.”

We understand this to be between Satan and Jesus. However, it can also be extended in principle to Jesus’ brothers who “conquer” Satan – And one could go deeper and portray Jesus’ brothers in our time as being like Eve in the fact that they are deceived. They do not realize it yet, but they have deceived themselves into thinking that a “false saying” is good. See Isaiah 9:13-17; Jeremiah 17:13; Revelation 3:21; 17:14 comments.

**Genesis 18:18,19** “Why, Abraham is surely going to become a nation great and mighty, and all the nations of the earth must bless themselves by means of him. For I have become acquainted with him in order that he may command his sons and his household after him so that they shall keep Jehovah’s way to do righteousness and judgment; in order that Jehovah may certainly bring upon Abraham what he has spoken about him.”

Compare Isaiah 11:1-10; Zechariah 9:9,10; Revelation 6:9,10; 22:1,2.

**Exodus 32:11-14** “And Moses proceeded to soften the face of Jehovah his God and to say: “Why, O Jehovah, should your anger blaze against your people whom you brought out of the land of Egypt with great power and with a strong hand? Why should the Egyptians say, ‘With evil intent he brought them out in order to kill them among the mountains and to exterminate them from the surface of the ground’? Turn from your burning anger and feel regret over the evil against your people. Remember Abraham, Isaac and Israel your servants, to whom you swore by yourself, in that you said to them, ‘I shall multiply YOUR seed like the stars of the heavens, and all this land that I have designated I shall give to YOUR seed, that they may indeed take possession of it to time indefinite.’” (vs.14) “And Jehovah began to feel regret over the evil that he had spoken of doing to his people.”

This is a good example of how Jehovah changes what he does in order to fulfill his word.  
– Compare Isaiah 48:9-11; 65:8,9; Ezekiel 36

**Psalms 2:1-3** “Why have the nations been in tumult And the national groups themselves kept muttering an empty thing? The kings of earth take their stand And high officials themselves have massed together as one Against Jehovah and against his anointed one, [Saying:] “Let us tear their bands apart And cast their cords away from us!”

This applies to the nations “dashing .. the power of the holy people to pieces” and/or when the kings of the entire inhabited earth are gathered “together to the war of the great day of God the Almighty.” However, because of the language used, I believe it has its main fulfillment as mentioned in Revelation 16:14. – See Daniel 12:7; Revelation 16:14

**Psalms 2:4-9** “The very One sitting in the heavens will laugh; Jehovah himself will hold them in derision. At that time he will speak to them in his anger And in his hot displeasure he will disturb them, {Saying:} “I, even I, have installed my king Upon Zion, my holy mountain.” Let me refer to the decree of Jehovah; He has said to me: “You are my son; I, today, I have become your father. Ask of me, that I may give nations as your inheritance And the ends of the earth as your own possession. You will break them with an iron scepter, As though a potter’s vessel you will dash them to pieces.”

1. Compare Ezekiel 17:22-24; Psalms 110:1; Daniel 2:44; Revelation 5:5,9,10,12,13; 19:11-21.

**Psalms 2:10-12** “And now, O kings, exercise insight; Let yourselves be corrected, O judges of the earth. Serve Jehovah with fear And be joyful with trembling. Kiss the son, that He may not become incensed And YOU may not perish [from] the way, For his anger flares up easily. Happy are those taking refuge in him.”

Compare Ezekiel 18:21,22; Micah 5:15; Zechariah 8:22; Revelation 11:11-18

**Psalms 14:2,3** “As for Jehovah, he has looked down from heaven itself upon the sons of men, To see whether there exists anyone having insight, anyone seeking Jehovah. They have all turned aside, they are [all] alike corrupt; There is no one doing good, Not even one.” – See Elijah page

**Psalms 110:1** “The utterance of Jehovah to my Lord is: “Sit at my right hand Until I place your enemies as a stool for your feet.”

Compare Psalms 2:4-9; Daniel 7:14

**Psalms 110:5-6** “Jehovah himself at your right hand Will certainly break kings to pieces on the day of his anger. He will execute judgment among the nations; He will cause a fullness of dead bodies. He will certainly break to pieces the head one over a populous land.”

**Luke 15:11-32** “Prodigal son”

**Luke 17:20-21** See [The difference between the coming and the arrival of the kingdom of God](#)

**Luke 21** – See Matthew 24

**Luke 21:8** “He said: “Look out that YOU are not misled; for many will come on the basis of my name, saying, ‘I am he,’ and, ‘The due time has approached.’ Do not go after them.”

Notice this is taking about “false Christs” because not only do they claim the time has approached (which can be true) but they also claim to be Jesus.

**Luke 21:24** “and they will fall by the edge of the sword and be led captive into all the nations, and Jerusalem will be trampled on by the nations, until the appointed times of the nations are fulfilled.” – Compare Matthew 24:15

**Luke 22:28-30** “However, YOU are the ones that have stuck with me in my trials; and I make a covenant with YOU, just as my Father has made a covenant with me, for a kingdom, that YOU

may eat and drink at my table in my kingdom, and sit on thrones to judge the twelve tribes of Israel.” – Compare Isaiah 61:5-9 comments

**Luke 24:25-27, 44-48** “So he said to them: “O senseless ones and slow in heart to believe on all the things the prophets spoke! Was it not necessary for the Christ to suffer these things and to enter into his glory? And commencing at Moses and all the Prophets he interpreted to them things pertaining to himself in all the Scriptures. (vs.44) He now said to them: “These are my words which I spoke to YOU while I was yet with YOU, that all the things written in the law of Moses and in the Prophets and Psalms about me must be fulfilled. Then he opened up their minds fully to grasp the meaning of the Scriptures, and he said to them: “In this way it is written that the Christ would suffer and rise from among the dead on the third day, and on the basis of his name repentance for forgiveness of sins would be preached in all the nations – starting out from Jerusalem, YOU are to be witnesses of these things.”

See Isaiah 52:12 thru 53:12.

This is a good example of how someone can come to understand scriptures in a short period of time with God’s support.

**John 5:28,29** “Do not marvel at this, because the hour is coming in which all those in the memorial tombs will hear his voice and come out, those who did good things to a resurrection of life, those who practiced vile things to a resurrection of judgment.”

Compare Isaiah 25:7,8; Daniel 12:1,2; Revelation 20;11,12; 21:3,4.

**Acts 15:14-18** “Symeon has related thoroughly how God for the first time turned his attention to the nations to take out of them a people for his name. And with this the words of the Prophets agree, just as it is written, ‘After these things I shall return and rebuild the booth of David that is fallen down; and I shall rebuild its ruins and erect it again, in order that those who remain of the men may earnestly seek Jehovah, together with people of all the nations, people who are called by my name, says Jehovah, who is doing these things, known from of old.’ ” See Isaiah 45:20-25; Amos 9:11,12

**1 Corinthians 15:23,24** “But each one in his own rank: Christ the first fruits, afterward those who belong to the Christ during his presence. Next, the end...”

*The Interlinear Bible:* “but each in *his* own order: Christ, the first-fruit; afterward those of Christ at his coming. Then *is* the end -...”

See the difference between “coming” and “presence” in Matthew 24:39 Also, it can be rendered of three parties mentioned here: Christ, the “first fruits” and “those of Christ at his coming”. But the context seems to favor two parties. However, when studying the context, it appears that Paul was simply showing that Jesus was to be resurrected first of the humans who died. Then those who belong to Jesus would be resurrected during his presence/coming. Those who “belong” to Jesus during his parousia (3952) can include all who submit to him and in this case, it seems to be referring to those who are resurrected



possibly to rule with Jesus and/or as subjects of the kingdom. See Revelation 14:4; Zechariah 3:1-7; Revelation 11:1; Daniel 12:1,2

Notice that there are two parts of the one group that will rule with Christ. One part is considered “measurable” because their worship was acceptable. The other part (from our day) has to undergo three and a half years of “sackcloth” because they were “wicked” and they need to be “straightened out” in their worship so it can be “measured”. – Zechariah 5:8; Revelation 6:9-11; 11:1-3 comments

**2 Timothy 3:1-7** “But know this, that in the last days critical times hard to deal with will be here. For men will be lovers of themselves, lovers of money, self-assuming, haughty, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, unthankful, disloyal, having no natural affection, not open to any agreement, slanderers, without self control, fierce, without love of goodness, betrayers, headstrong, puffed up [with pride], lovers of pleasures rather than lovers of God, having a form of godly devotion but proving false to its power, and from these turn away. For from these arise those men who slyly work their way into households and lead as their captives weak women loaded down with sins, led by various desires, always learning and yet never able to come to an accurate knowledge of truth.”

Notice that this entire passage can refer to the world of mankind in our day and it can and probably has a more important figurative fulfillment with God’s people today who are needing to be cleansed. Compare Daniel 11:32-35; Jeremiah 25:27-30; Matthew 24:12.

The phrase “disobedient to parents” can refer to a turning away from a straight spiritual course – Compare Malachi 4:5,6 and comments.

## Politics and Military

Many believe that followers of Christ should not be involved in politics. Most of us have seen pictures of Christians killed in the Roman coliseums for refusing to worship the emperor of Rome. They stayed faithful, to their deaths. But that was because they refused to render sacred worship to the emperor. Sacred worship is owed to the Most High God only. Interestingly, [a 1,700 year old letter dating to the early Christian years indicates an active role for Christians in politics](#). So how should Christians today view involvement in politics and the military?

**There is a difference between worship and sacred-worship.** An example of this would be **king Melchizedek**. He was not only a king but a priest of the Most High God ([Genesis 14:18](#)). Melchizedek would accept obeisance (worship) from people but that was a showing of respect for his office. That would not be sacred worship. Another example would be **the coronation of David's son Solomon as king of Israel**. Here, the people bowed down (did obeisance to / worshiped) to the king and to the Most High, Yahweh. However, the sacred worship, the sacrifices were only to Yahweh ([1 Chronicles 29:20-24](#) (WEB)) Then there is **Daniel**. Not only was he a prophet of the Most High God but he worshiped and accepted worship. Daniel only rendered sacred worship to the Most High God. Daniel also accepted worship of the "political" kind (Compare Daniel 2:46 ([ASV](#)) and ([YLT](#))). That is, obeisance. This obeisance (worship), was the political equivalent of showing honor for the office that he held. Then there is the example of **Joseph**. Joseph was sold into slavery in Egypt. Eventually he held a position in which people from far away lands would bow down to him, paying him homage (obeisance / worship). This was showing respect for the political office that he held. It was not sacred worship. Joseph was a servant of the Most High God. ([Genesis 42:6, 18 YLT](#))

**Some people refer to [James 4:4 \(RSV\)](#); "Unfaithful creatures! Do you not know that **friendship with the world is enmity with God**?" Therefore whoever wishes to be a friend of the world makes himself an enemy of God." And they use the phrase, "**friendship with the world**" to be referring to the literal people of the world. So they limit their dealings with "worldly" people. Especially in politics. **However, this phrase is talking about oneself, not other people!** Notice [James 3:6 \(WEB\)](#), where it states *the tongue is pictured as a "world of unrighteousness" among our (body) members*. James goes on in chapter 3 to call the tongue an injurious thing, full of death dealing poison (v8). Verse nine and ten show how one can improperly use the tongue to bless the creator yet use it to curse those created in the likeness of God! Verse 14 and 15 show how some use the tongue to brag and lie against the truth. This is not wisdom from above but is "earthly, animal, demonic." James 4:1 continues on this same topic by asking from what source are the wars and fights originating? The verse identifies the source, causing strife, as in "your *members*," which would be the tongue as mentioned earlier. Remember, the original letter of James was not divided up into chapters and verses. The chapters and verses were added later by another. Chapters 3 and 4 work together. James 4:2-3 further explains that some do not use the tongue to ask for what is right. They keep siding with their "tongues." Note, that James 4:4 originally did not start out with the word, "Adulteresses." This was added by a copyist as mentioned in *Vines* (p.14). That confuses things a bit. James 4:11-12**

echoes James 3:10 in which it is shown to be improper to judge one's neighbor. James 4:15-16 goes on to admonish people to use their tongue to say, "If Yahweh (God) wills" rather than to taking pride in one's self assuming brags. Yes, **the phrase, "friendship with the world is enmity with God," is talking about not wanting to bridle the tongue.** ([James 3-4 \(RSV\)](#))

What about [1 John 5:19 \(WEB\)](#) where it states that the whole world is in the power of the wicked one? *This is even more reason that we should try to place ourselves in positions to help others!* This has been the case since Adam and Eve sinning, following the devil's direction. This will continue to be the case until Revelation 11:15 happens. That is, when the kingdom of the world is handed over to our "Lord and his Christ." *Evil wins when good people just sit by and do nothing.*

**Saluting the flag or a person of authority.** To salute something or someone is to show respect, honor, or homage for. This is not idol worship and certainly not sacred worship. Just as it was proper for Joseph's brothers to bow down to him, saluting a person with authority or a representative of, such as a flag, is proper. It is not sacred worship.

**[The Pledge of Allegiance \(USA\)](#).** It currently is worded; "I pledge allegiance to the Flag of the United States of America, and to the Republic for which it stands, one Nation *under God*, indivisible, with liberty and justice for all." It is noteworthy that the term, "under God" is included. There is nothing wrong for a servant of the Most High to say this pledge. The pledge puts God first. This is not a sacred act but a statement of respect and honor for being a citizen in obeying the laws of the United States of America but putting God first.

**Military service.** Jesus stated to love your neighbor as you love yourself ([Mark 12:30-31 \(WEB\)](#)). We certainly would not go to war with ourselves. However, it is interesting that nothing bad is indicated about John the baptizer admonishing those in the military to be just in their duty ([Luke 3:14 \(WEB\)](#)). It does not say that John told them to get out of the military. Yet, John, was spoken of highly by Jesus and he even baptized Jesus! The military is used to help and protect people. However, the advent of killing innocent people could not be following Jesus' statement to love your neighbor. The order to kill would be coming from a man, not God. All nations believe that God is directing them. But that can't be, if they are killing each other. With these points in mind, and the countless circumstances, it has to be up to the individual whether or not to join the military. *The principle of the Pledge of Allegiance that the United States of America is under God can't be overlooked!*

## Marriage

Please keep in mind that I personally believe the core information presented below is sound. However, everyone is responsible for doing their own research and decision making.

This is an institution in which God desires all parties to be worshiping him properly. Thus, making it a sacred arrangement.

Below I am stating some basics of the sanctity of marriage arrangements that apply to days of old on up through the marriage of the Lamb and bride class made of many.

1. Abraham of the past had Sarah as his wife. There evidently was no external sacred (told by Jehovah to show something) “ring” or other indicator that Abraham was married to Sarah. This was the same with Adam and Eve or any marriages in the ancient past.
2. Abraham had sexual relations with his wife Sarah and with her maidservant when she “gave” her to him to have offspring. Abraham was considered righteous in Jehovah’s eyes.
3. David had sexual relations with his wives and concubines, and he was favored by Jehovah.
4. Solomon had sexual relations with his numerous wives and concubines, and he was favored by Jehovah until he apostatized against Jehovah. (He took in wives that served foreign gods and began serving them)
5. Malachi chapter two discusses ones who “have turned aside from the way. YOU have caused many to stumble in the law. YOU have ruined the covenant of Levi ... Judah has dealt treacherously, and a detestable thing has been committed in Israel and in Jerusalem; for **Judah has profaned the holiness of Jehovah**, which He has loved, and he has **taken possession of the daughter of a foreign god as a bride**. Jehovah will cut off each one that does it.... Jehovah has borne witness between you and the wife of your youth, with whom you yourself have dealt treacherously, although she is your partner and the wife of your covenant...For he has hated a divorcing...and the one who with violence has covered over his garment..”
6. Considering the above, one can see that **if they are serving Jehovah, they are not to take a “foreign god as a bride”** – This would be an act of unfaithfulness to Jehovah, and we know Jehovah requires exclusive devotion. This could be explained as someone who is serving Jehovah in truth is not to take a marriage mate from another faith (“Marry only in the Lord). However, what happens if one mate sticks with Jehovah and the other does not? The innocent mate (that stays with Jehovah) could be free to remarry because the other mate is transgressing against Jehovah. This is spiritual fornication on the part of the mate transgressing against Jehovah.

7. An example of spiritual fornication is given in Revelation 17:2 "...the kings of the earth committed fornication...". This is an example of kings committing spiritual fornication by turning aside from worshipping Jehovah.
8. Matthew 19:3-9: And the Pharisees came up to him, intent on tempting him and saying: **"Is it lawful for a man to divorce his wife on every sort of ground?"** In reply he said: "Did YOU not read that he who created them from [the] beginning made them male and female and said, 'For this reason a man will leave his father and his mother and will stick to his wife, and the two will be one flesh'? So that they are no longer two, but one flesh. Therefore, what God has yoked together let no man put apart." (vs.7) They said to him: "Why, then, did Moses prescribe giving a certificate of dismissal and divorcing her?" (vs.8) He said to them: "Moses, out of regard for YOUR hardheartedness, made the concession to YOU of divorcing YOUR wives, but such has not been the case from [the] beginning. I say to YOU that whoever divorces his wife, except on the ground of fornication, and marries another commits adultery."
  1. This can refer to physical or spiritual fornication on the part of the transgressor.
  2. This also was referring to each person as an individual and was focusing on the issue of a proper divorce – not the number of wives a husband can have.
  3. This counsel can be applied to one or more wives of a husband.
  4. This translation rendering of verse 9 is interesting because it seems that there is planning involved (to divorce improperly with the intent to remarry someone else in mind) when viewed directly from the Greek (Westcott and Hort text of 1881 rendered by *The Kingdom Interlinear Translation of the GREEK SCRIPTURES*): "I am saying but to YOU that who likely might divorce the woman of him not upon fornication and might marry another commits adultery." Different translations render a similar thought of Matthew 19:9 close to Matthew 5:32; "However, I say to YOU that everyone divorcing his wife, except on account of fornication, makes her a subject for adultery, and whoever marries a divorced woman commits adultery."
  5. It is also noteworthy that Jesus was talking about grounds for divorce among God's people not the number of wives a husband can have.
  6. An example that a man can have more than one wife is presented in an illustration he shared with his disciples at Matthew 25:1-13. This is the well-known illustration of 10 virgins who went out to meet the bridegroom. Five were foolish and five were wise. The five wise were invited into the wedding feast. – The point here is that there is no reason given for all five wise virgins to not marry the bridegroom. Why would Jesus use an illustration like this unless it was permitted?
9. The word translated "fornication" at Mathew 5:32 and 19:9 is rendered as word number 4202 (*porneia*) in the *ABINGDON'S STRONG'S EXHAUSTIVE CONCORDANCE OF THE BIBLE*. The word numbered 4203 (*porneuo*) basically means the same thing. The

word *porneia* (4202) is used in Revelation 2:21; “..she is not willing to repent of her fornication.”, Revelation 9:21; “... nor of their fornication..”, Revelation 14:8; “..of her fornication”, Revelation 17:2b; “the wine of her fornication”, Revelation 17:4; “...and the unclean things of her fornication”, Revelation 18:3; “...of her fornication..”, Revelation 19:2; “...who corrupted the earth with her fornication..” The word *porneuo* (4203) is used in Revelation 2:14; “...and to commit fornication”, Revelation 2:20; “... to commit fornication..”, Revelation 17:2a; ” with whom the kings of the earth committed fornication..”, Revelation 18:3b; “... and the kings of the earth committed fornication with her..”, Revelation 18:9; “...who committed fornication with her..”

10. It appears that **the definitions for adultery and fornication basically can mean the same thing, physically and spiritually** – However, Adultery usually is speaking of someone who is or has been married and fornication usually talks about an unmarried person who has not been married – This is generally speaking. When either of these are talked about in the bible, that I know of, they are based upon the fidelity of true worship or worshippers.
11. **Notice the actions against those who apostatize against Jehovah** in Jeremiah 8:8-12: ” ‘How can YOU men say: “We are wise, and the law of Jehovah is with us”? Surely, now, the false stylus of the secretaries has worked in sheer falsehood. The wise ones have become ashamed. they have become terrified and will be caught. Look! They have rejected the very word of Jehovah, and what wisdom do they have? Therefore, I shall give their wives to other men, their fields to those taking possession; for, from the least one even to the greatest one, each one is making unjust gain; from the prophet even to the priest, each one is acting falsely. And they try to heal the breakdown of the daughter of my people lightly, saying: “There is peace! There is peace!” when there is no peace. Did they feel shame because they had done even what was detestable? For one thing, they positively could not feel ashamed; for another thing, they did not know even how to feel humiliated. (vs.12b)” ‘Therefore they will fall among those who are falling. In the time of their being given attention, they will stumble,’ Jehovah has said.” (See Daniel 11:33-35)
  1. It was Jehovah’s desire for the wives of these transgressing men to be given to others – This is another example of grounds for divorce from spiritual fornication. – See [Malachi 2:15](#); Isaiah 4:1
12. **In the times of “long ago”, when the man had consensual relations with a woman, she was to become his wife.** The *original intent* was that both parties were serving Jehovah as Adam and Eve were before they sinned (see why Satan link for more information). A man could have a number of wives as long as they served Jehovah. If either party committed spiritual or physical fornication, the innocent mate could “dismiss / or divorce” the transgressing mate. The innocent mate would show a taking back of the transgressing mate by having sexual relations with the wrongdoer. However, if the innocent mate was serving Jehovah and they took back a mate that was transgressing still against Jehovah, they would be apostatizing against Jehovah. Also, it was not considered

fornication when a wife gave her maidservant to her husband to bear offspring – But the children were to be considered the wife’s (the maidservant’s mistress or the husband’s “slave girl” (Genesis 21:12,13) (Genesis 16:1-10)) It also seems appropriate to “dismiss” a “slave girl” if the “slave girl’s” actions could result in something not approved by Jehovah (Genesis 21:10-12). (Many today view slaves differently than how people did back then. The Law of Moses gave honor and protection to “slaves” – Their treatment was to be based on love, not greed. It is also noteworthy to remember that those who submit to Jehovah’s will are making themselves slaves of Jehovah and Jehovah plans to bless his slaves greatly) A “slave girl” is also known as a concubine. It also shows that no matter how many wives a husband has, as long as they are serving Jehovah, it is agreeable to Jehovah. I believe it is part of Malachi 3:2-4.

13. **Can a woman have more than one husband at a time?** – I do not see any indications to allow this. This is based upon the examples of faithful ones of old. It is also based upon the example of just (one) Jesus marrying his bride class which is made of many (Revelation 19:7,8). This is also reflected in Zechariah 3:7. In both cases, the “brides” or “Joshua” class are to remain loyal to Jehovah in order to benefit from the arrangement.
14. **So what can one do today?** Remember, Jehovah made the marriage arrangement and so it is sacred. The sacredness of a marriage is a high priority. The laws of the land regarding marriage are made by man – they may or may not reflect Jehovah’s principles. Also, Jehovah allows certain governments to exist today. So, following the principle of “pay Cesar’s thing to Cesar”, one would still fall under legal obligations of the nation that they live in but that does not mean to allow the infringement of Jehovah’s marriage or divorce arrangements. However, the sacredness of a marriage relies on whether all parties involved are of Jehovah’s righteous people. So technically, if a husband or wife does not worship Jehovah properly, all involved need to turn to Jehovah properly, to have a healthy-sacred marriage arrangement. This does not mean someone has to leave their mate – Jehovah was very patient with Israel of old. However, being imperfect and being married to someone who is apostatizing can be very dangerous to one’s own spiritual well-being – Remember Solomon. Of course, the degree of apostatizing will vary but one should not underestimate a potentially dangerous situation. Act prudently and wisely.
15. **To “officiate” a divorce in a spiritual sense can be done many ways** – However, we have the example of Jehovah communicating with Israel in good times and bad. Communication can be done many ways such as orally or by a signed statement – It does not seem to matter to Jehovah – But however it is done, it should be done for right reasons and of course explained why to the “transgressing” party – Just as Jehovah explained his reasons for doing things to his people.
16. **Once a spiritual divorce is officiated**, the innocent person should not take back the transgressing one until the transgressing one is no longer transgressing – Otherwise, the innocent one will be purposely adulterating their faith to Jehovah. It would be like Solomon taking a foreign wife that worships another God. However, it may be that if Jehovah is still forgiving his people (and it is assumed the transgressing one is of God’s



people) and Jehovah has not left them yet, the innocent one can take back the transgressing one because they would still be part of “Jehovah’s people in a forgiven state”- But that would change when Jehovah leaves his people. It could also be very spiritually dangerous (perhaps calamitous) for the innocent one due to being imperfect and knowingly adulterating their faith and for other reasons.

17. **If one finds oneself serving Jehovah properly and their mate is not**, it seems that the others in the immediate family may still receive some benefit or sacred protection or direction. We have the example of Lot and his wife and daughters. His wife’s heart was not complete with God, but he still provided a way to protect her because of Lot’s faith. Sadly, it was her own decision to turn away from the protective God given direction. So, it may be the choice of someone to stay with the unbelieving mate as brought out below. But the believing (one serving Jehovah properly) mate does not have to. This is because the one without faith is serving Satan because they are not serving God properly- so they would be considered a spiritual fornicator – which is grounds for spiritual divorce.
18. **If one finds oneself serving Jehovah properly and their mate or baptized children are deliberately apostatizing** (such as refusing to abandon false beliefs after Jehovah leaves his people), this seems to be a circumstance where “sacred protection” as mentioned above may not prove to exist in this case. Ezekiel 14:12-23 comments on how only righteous souls would be able to deliver their own souls – no one else (in the case of “...as regards a land, in case it commits sin against me in acting unfaithfully” – Ezekiel 14:13) See also Ezekiel 18:20.
19. 1 Corinthians 7:1-5 Talks about “**marriage dues**” but it is important to recognize verse 5 – This indicates that both parties are serving God in truth and that neither is adulterating their worship to Jehovah.
20. 1 Corinthians 7:10,11 Is about a husband and wife where both are serving God but are having marital problems and Paul admonishes them to stay together.
21. **1 Corinthians 7:12-16 is Paul’s opinion, not the Lord’s** (vs.12; “But to the others I say, yes, I, not the Lord:”) and talks about situations where a husband or wife is “unbelieving “. Notice verse 15 where it states that a brother or a sister is not in servitude if the unbeliever departs. Also notice verse 14 and 16 where the unbelieving mate is sanctified in relationship to the believer and if the unbeliever desires to stay with the believer, the believing mate could save their spouse. This reminds me of the possibility of Lot’s wife and daughters being “sanctified” because of their father’s faith (Although his wife left his leading and turned back). A very important realization is the definition of “unbelieving“. This would be the Greek word given the identification number of 571 in the *ABINGDON’S STRONG’S EXHAUSTIVE CONCORDANCE OF THE BIBLE* which is simply defined as “faithless” (among other definitions) . This Greek word (apistos) is also used in Luke 12:46; “...and assign him a part with the unfaithful ones.”, 1 Corinthians 6:6; “but brother goes to court with brother, and that before unbelievers?”, 2 Corinthians 6:14; “Do not become unevenly yoked with unbelievers..”, Titus 1:15;

“...But to [persons] defiled and faithless nothing is clean..”, Revelation 21:8; “But as for the cowards and those without faith and those...their portion...the second death.” So it can be concluded that it could be a good thing for the believing mate to stay with the unbelieving mate. However, if the intent of actions of the unbelieving mate are pressuring the believing mate to be unfaithful to Jehovah, the actions of the unbelieving mate could be considered equal to actions of an apostate trying to cause “spiritual fornication” although the mate is an unbeliever. // Another word which is important to understand is the word “servitude “. This Greek word is “douloo” and is assigned the identification number 1402 in the *ABINGDON’S STRONG’S EXHAUSTIVE CONCORDANCE OF THE BIBLE*. It means “to enslave” (literally or figuratively) – bring into bondage. In this case, it would be referring to marital bondage. This word is used in Acts 7:6; “..would enslave..”, Galatians 4:3; “Likewise we also, when we were babes, continued enslaved by the elementary things belonging to the world.”, 2 Peter 2:19; “...enslaved...”

22. Paul mentions at **1 Timothy 3:2,12** that an “overseer” or “ministerial servants” be husbands of one wife. But...
1. It is important to realize how Paul himself defines this and other direction in this letter to Timothy. Paul defines it as “these advises” (**1 Timothy 4:6**) according to the rendering of the NWT (*New World Translation*). *The Interlinear Bible* renders it as “having suggested”. The actual critical Greek word used here is “hupotithemi” (#5294 Strong’s) and it means “to suggest”. I am sure Paul was making suggestions appropriate to the circumstances and times. Paul admits some of his advice is his and “not the Lords” in **1 Corinthians 7:12-16** mentioned above. This does not mean that everything Paul suggested in his letters are suggestions. In **1 Timothy 4:1-3** there is an account of what “the inspired utterance” said – That is not an opinion or suggestion but a fact. It is important to remember also that the chapter and verse numbers were added long after the original documents were written. For instance, 1 Timothy 3:1a “That statement is faithful.”, actually refers to the end of chapter 2.
  2. With the above information in mind, one can see that Paul did not state that it was wrong for a man to have more than one wife. But most likely due to social and other factors, Paul suggested that a man reaching out for an office of overseer only have one wife. Why would Paul say this unless it was permitted among Christians?
  3. Paul also stated that he believed that a man would do well if he remained single and had “authority over his own will” in 1 Corinthians 7:37 but this, again, was his advice as he admitted earlier (1 Corinthians 7:12) and he was not intending to “cast a noose upon” those in the congregation (1 Corinthians 7:35).
23. Even a marriage outside Jehovah’s arrangement is a covenant (agreement) between a husband and a wife and is due respect.

24. There's a difference between a sacred marriage and one that isn't. A sacred marriage does not go against Yahweh's will. It is easily seen biologically and scripturally that Yahweh designed marriages to be between a biological male and female. It's healthy for the growth of humanity. It's good. It agrees with God's command to multiply. Men who lay with men were to be put to death, in the law. Actions such as those of the same sex who desire to marry will never have a sacred marriage, in the eyes of Yahweh. If something is good, then good will result. If all the people who desired to have sex with the same gender were put on an island, they would all be dead in 70-80 years. Their example of lifestyle would not be one of pride but one of death. Is that something that Yahweh would desire or is that something that Satan would desire? – Compare 2 Corinthians 4:4

Encouraging thoughts are that Yahweh doesn't want wicked people to die but to turn around and live. Ezekiel 18:21-23 (WEB):

<sup>21</sup> “But if the wicked turns from all his sins that he has committed, and keeps all my statutes, and does that which is lawful and right, he shall surely live. He shall not die. <sup>22</sup> None of his transgressions that he has committed will be remembered against him. In his righteousness that he has done, he shall live. <sup>23</sup> Have I any pleasure in the death of the wicked?” says the Lord Yahweh; “and not rather that he should return from his way, and live?”

Also, there is something to be said about learned behavior and mental health issues. Things can be unlearned and prophecy states in Isaiah 33:24 (WEB) that “The inhabitant won't say, “I am sick.”

The people who dwell therein will be forgiven their iniquity.

## Points about water baptism (immersion):

Baptism, in the name of Jesus, is an outward showing that one has put old ways behind and is dedicating their life to follow Christ!

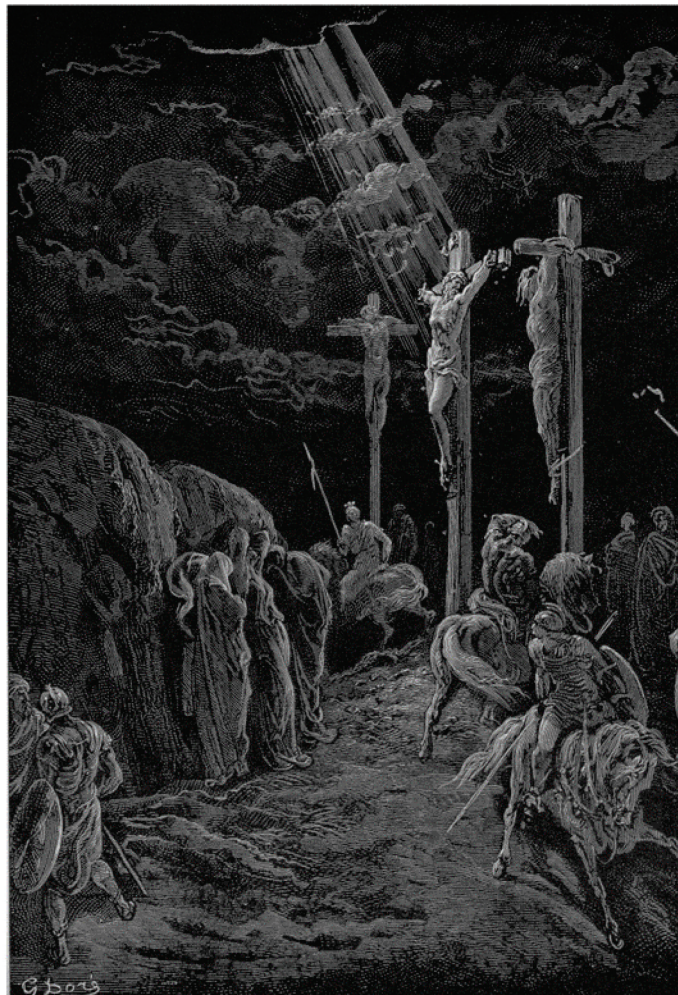
Baptism does not save. The value of Christ's sacrifice of perfect obedience is what saves.

### Acts 10:43 (WEB):

<sup>43</sup> All the prophets testify about him, that through his name everyone who believes in him will receive remission of sins.”

It can be viewed as a “restart” or “rebirth.”

It does not guarantee salvation or forgive sins. People can still turn away or go through the act of baptism without truly meaning it. The value of Christ's sacrifice (not baptism) has led to the forgiveness of sins, with the exception of those sins against his father. See [The sacrifice of Christ](#)



**Remember the two that were impaled on either side of Jesus (Yeshua)?** One truly believed in Jesus and the other didn't care. Jesus told the one who had testified about him that he would see him in paradise. He didn't say anything to the other (Luke 23:39-43 See below). This shows that the heart condition is what is important. It doesn't mean that someone can do bad things until Jesus arrives or until they are about to die, then ask for forgiveness. Once one learns about the truth of Yahweh and his Son Yeshua (Jesus), what they do with that knowledge will show their heart condition. Will someone use their abilities, their talents, they try to help their neighbors to learn of Yahweh (Jehovah) and Yeshua? All it takes is to communicate. It doesn't take money or a car or even a house. But it does take love of one's neighbors. In contrast, for someone to have life giving knowledge and intentionally not share it with their neighbors shows they do not have love of neighbor. Hopefully they will change.

Water baptism as practiced in the first century was by immersion to those who could understand the purposes. Baptism of infants or by sprinkling is not found in scripture but is practiced by some today who think it guarantees salvation. But it does not, whether one is an infant or adult.

An interesting passage to help us understand this is when Jesus returns, and the separating of the sheep-like ones and the goat-like ones occurs. The goat-like ones most likely are baptized, thinking they have done good enough. But they do not show the needed love for God and neighbor. They say they have done things in Jesus' name, but they are discarded. The sheep-like ones on Jesus' right are accepted because of their good actions. These actions come from their heart, whether they are baptized or not. Actions speak louder than words and show the true heart condition.

### [Matthew 25:31-46 \(WEB\)](#)

<sup>31</sup> “But when the Son of Man comes in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then he will sit on the throne of his glory. <sup>32</sup> Before him all the nations will be gathered, and he will separate them one from another, as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats. <sup>33</sup> He will set the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on the left. <sup>34</sup> Then the King will tell those on his right hand, ‘Come, blessed of my Father, inherit the Kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world; <sup>35</sup> for I was hungry and you gave me food to eat. I was thirsty and you gave me drink. I was a stranger and you took me in. <sup>36</sup> I was naked and you clothed me. I was sick and you visited me. I was in prison and you came to me.’

<sup>37</sup> “Then the righteous will answer him, saying, ‘Lord, when did we see you hungry and feed you, or thirsty and give you a drink?’ <sup>38</sup> When did we see you as a stranger and take you in, or naked and clothe you? <sup>39</sup> When did we see you sick or in prison and come to you?’

<sup>40</sup> “The King will answer them, ‘Most certainly I tell you, because you did it to one of the least of these my brothers,<sup>[a]</sup> you did it to me.’ <sup>41</sup> Then he will say also to those on the left hand, ‘Depart from me, you cursed, into the eternal fire which is prepared for the devil and his angels; <sup>42</sup> for I was hungry, and you didn't give me food to eat; I was thirsty, and

you gave me no drink; <sup>43</sup> I was a stranger, and you didn't take me in; naked, and you didn't clothe me; sick, and in prison, and you didn't visit me.'

<sup>44</sup> "Then they will also answer, saying, 'Lord, when did we see you hungry, or thirsty, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in prison, and didn't help you?'

<sup>45</sup> "Then he will answer them, saying, 'Most certainly I tell you, because you didn't do it to one of the least of these, you didn't do it to me.' <sup>46</sup> These will go away into eternal punishment, but the righteous into eternal life."

### Matthew 25:14-30 (WEB)

<sup>14</sup> "For it is like a man going into another country, who called his own servants and entrusted his goods to them. <sup>15</sup> To one he gave five talents, <sup>[a]</sup> to another two, to another one, to each according to his own ability. Then he went on his journey. <sup>16</sup> Immediately he who received the five talents went and traded with them, and made another five talents. <sup>17</sup> In the same way, he also who got the two gained another two. <sup>18</sup> But he who received the one talent went away and dug in the earth and hid his lord's money.

<sup>19</sup> "Now after a long time the lord of those servants came, and settled accounts with them. <sup>20</sup> He who received the five talents came and brought another five talents, saying, 'Lord, you delivered to me five talents. Behold, I have gained another five talents in addition to them.'

<sup>21</sup> "His lord said to him, 'Well done, good and faithful servant. You have been faithful over a few things, I will set you over many things. Enter into the joy of your lord.'

<sup>22</sup> "He also who got the two talents came and said, 'Lord, you delivered to me two talents. Behold, I have gained another two talents in addition to them.'

<sup>23</sup> "His lord said to him, 'Well done, good and faithful servant. You have been faithful over a few things. I will set you over many things. Enter into the joy of your lord.'

<sup>24</sup> "He also who had received the one talent came and said, 'Lord, I knew you that you are a hard man, reaping where you didn't sow, and gathering where you didn't scatter. <sup>25</sup> I was afraid, and went away and hid your talent in the earth. Behold, you have what is yours.'

<sup>26</sup> "But his lord answered him, 'You wicked and slothful servant. You knew that I reap where I didn't sow, and gather where I didn't scatter. <sup>27</sup> You ought therefore to have deposited my money with the bankers, and at my coming I should have received back my own with interest. <sup>28</sup> Take away therefore the talent from him and give it to him who has the ten talents. <sup>29</sup> For to everyone who has will be given, and he will have abundance, but from him who doesn't have, even that which he has will be taken away. <sup>30</sup> Throw out the unprofitable servant into the outer darkness, where there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.'

[Luke 23:39-43 \(WEB\)](#)

<sup>39</sup> One of the criminals who was hanged insulted him, saying, “If you are the Christ, save yourself and us!”

<sup>40</sup> But the other answered, and rebuking him said, “Don’t you even fear God, seeing you are under the same condemnation? <sup>41</sup> And we indeed justly, for we receive the due reward for our deeds, but this man has done nothing wrong.” <sup>42</sup> He said to Jesus, “Lord, remember me when you come into your Kingdom.”

<sup>43</sup> Jesus said to him, “Assuredly I tell you, today you will be with me in Paradise.”



## The Book of Enoch



The book of Enoch, considered apocryphal by most religions today but not all, tells of many elaborations of scripture. Some faiths view it as canonical. In fact, it seems that **the early Christians believed it to be authentic**. Even many “church fathers” believed it to be so.

If the early Christians believed it to be authentic, why can't we?

Sad to say, the Council of Laodicea in 381 AD rejected it. Most likely due to it conflicting with the further growing and establishment of false teachings in mainstream “Christianity.” In any case, it was rejected and fell out of use by most churches.

An interesting point made in more than one place in Enoch is that Yahweh is referred to as The Most High, Lord of spirits, Lord of Glory, The Eternal, The Eternal God, The Holy Great One, and the Ancient One. His son, Yeshua is referred to as the Elect One, son of Man, and The Righteous One.

I find this book very intriguing. It is worded much like Daniel with visions and the descriptions of the Most High for Yahweh. It also follows the patterns of thought concerning judgment and the righteous prevailing. Daniel is more specific with signs and times though. I would call the content and style of Enoch like a mixture of Daniel and Revelation. I personally believe it to be just as authentic as Daniel and Revelation.

I found with this book of Enoch is that I haven't found anything conflicting with scriptural truth, yet. I'm still studying it and will post other findings on this page, as time goes on.

It talks about Michael and Gabriel as being in a group of powerful angels who "keep watch. "

The book also tells of four "figures," also referred to as "four presences" who didn't sleep but continually praised the lord of Glory (Yahweh) and blessed the Elect One (Yeshua) and those who trust in the Lord of Spirits (Yahweh). These four figures surround the Lord of spirits. (Enoch 40) Could this be the four creatures in Revelation that surround the throne? It is!

#### **Revelation 4:6-8 (WEB):**

<sup>6</sup> Before the throne was something like a sea of glass, similar to crystal. In the middle of the throne, and around the throne were four living creatures full of eyes before and behind. <sup>7</sup> The first creature was like a lion, and the second creature like a calf, and the third creature had a face like a man, and the fourth was like a flying eagle. <sup>8</sup> The four living creatures, each one of them having six wings, are full of eyes around and within. They have no rest day and night, saying, "Holy, holy, holy<sup>[a]</sup> is the Lord God, the Almighty, who was and who is and who is to come!"

Is the Michael and Gabriel mentioned in this book the same as the Michael and Gabriel in the book of Daniel? I bet it is. If it is, that means that Michael is a powerful angel who works closely with the son of man (Jesus) to accomplish powerful works! See the chapter on *Is Michael, Jesus?*

## Personal Comments

**When in doubt, check it out.** How we deal with confusing times is important. Just because someone is confused for a time when learning new thoughts does not mean that they are “going crazy.” Jesus’ relatives and others thought he had gone crazy and told others not to listen to him: (Jesus was certainly not confused but his new actions made many of his family wonder)

[Mark 3:21,22 \(DARBY\)](#); “And his relatives having heard [of it] went out to lay hold on him, for they said, He is out of his mind. <sup>22</sup> And the scribes who had come down from Jerusalem said, He has Beelzebub, and, By the prince of the demons he casts out demons.

[John 10:20 \(DARBY\)](#); “But many of them said, He has a demon and raves; why do ye hear him?”

Jesus gave us a perfect example on how to deal with confusing thoughts. When Jesus was tempted (not confused) by the Devil ([Matthew 4:1-11 \(DARBY\)](#)/ [Luke 4:1-13 \(ASV\)](#)), he tried to sow seeds of doubt and temptation in Jesus’ mind. Jesus simply stated, “It is written,” multiple times. So, we need to check the scriptures for answers and not rely on what we “think” sounds right.

[Luke 4:1-13 \(DARBY\)](#);

But Jesus, full of [the] Holy Spirit, returned from the Jordan, and was led by the Spirit in the wilderness

<sup>2</sup> forty days, tempted of the devil; and in those days he did not eat anything, and when they were finished he hungered.

<sup>3</sup> And the devil said to him, If thou be Son of God, speak to this stone, that it become bread.

<sup>4</sup> And Jesus answered unto him saying, It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word of God.

<sup>5</sup> And [the devil], leading him up into a high mountain, shewed him all the kingdoms of the habitable world in a moment of time.

<sup>6</sup> And the devil said to him, I will give thee all this power, and their glory; for it is given up to me, and to whomsoever I will I give it.

<sup>7</sup> If therefore \*thou\* wilt do homage before me, all [of it] shall be thine.

<sup>8</sup> And Jesus answering him said, It is written, Thou shalt do homage to [the] Lord thy God, and him alone shalt thou serve.

<sup>9</sup> And he led him to Jerusalem, and set him on the edge of the temple, and said to him, If thou be Son of God, cast thyself down hence;

<sup>10</sup> for it is written, He shall give charge to his angels concerning thee to keep thee;

<sup>11</sup> and on [their] hands shall they bear thee, lest in any wise thou strike thy foot against a stone.

<sup>12</sup> And Jesus answering said to him, It is said, Thou shalt not tempt [the] Lord thy God.

<sup>13</sup> And the devil, having completed every temptation, departed from him for a time.

By **carefully examining God's word**, the inspired scriptures, we can come to sound conclusions. Just like trying to learn another language, learning something new about God can be confusing, at first. It can challenge deeply rooted beliefs. If you are confused, go over relevant scriptural passages many times. When you do, you will find that things will get clearer, and you will be able to discern what is true.

I do not claim perfection. However, I always do my best when it comes to telling people about God's word and his purposes. I absolutely hate falsehood in God's name. I do not know how to explain it, other than this is who I am.

**All** my children inspire me. I await the time when I can see all my children together, along with my parents and other relatives and friends speaking the language of the Almighty. I hope that my dream of all of us sitting on a hillside, with the sun upon us, enjoying the day and the company of all of us in God's kingdom, comes true. I believe it will.